

ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

Project Manual

Volume 1



**New Fire Station No. 5
Mansfield, Texas**



KOMATSU
ARCHITECTURE

3880 Hulen Street Suite 300
Fort Worth, Texas 76107
(817) 332-1914

KA Project No. 2016.166
Bid Number: 2019-32-01

**PROJECT MANUAL
FOR
NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5
Mansfield, Texas**

OWNER:

CITY OF MANSFIELD
1200 E. Broad Street
Mansfield, Texas 76063

ARCHITECT:

KOMATSU ARCHITECTURE
3880 Hulen Street, Suite 300
Fort Worth, Texas 76107
817.332.1914 phone

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

ARMSTRONG-DOUGLAS PARTNERS
6060 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, Texas 75206
214.237.7022 phone

CIVIL ENGINEER:

JAMES DEOTTE (JD) ENGINEERING, INC.
6707 Brentwood Stair Road, Suite 200
Fort Worth, Texas 76112
817.446.6877 phone

MEP ENGINEER:

SOLARE ENGINEERING UNLIMITED
1300 Summit Avenue, Suite 514
Fort Worth, Texas 76102
817.529.6800 phone

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT:

LEEMING DESIGN GROUP
4913 Rufe Snow Drive, Suite 101b
North Richland Hills, Texas 76180
817.577.0889 phone

BID NO.:

2019-32-01

DATE:

7 November 2019 (100% Construction Documents)

DOCUMENT TOC

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION	SECTION TITLE	ISSUE DATE	REVISED DATE
VOLUME 1			
	Project Title Page	07Nov19	
TOC	Table of Contents: Volume 1 and 2	07Nov19	
CK	Bid Submittal Checklist.....	07Nov19	
INV	Invitation to Bid.....	07Nov19	
I	Instruction to Bidders.....	07Nov19	
P	Bid Proposal	07Nov19	
A	Agreement.....	07Nov19	
PBa	Performance Bond	07Nov19	
PBb	Payment Bond.....	07Nov19	
MB	Maintenance Bond	07Nov19	
CI	Certificate of Insurance.....	07Nov19	
SCa	Supplementary Conditions to EJCDC C-700, 2007 ed.....	07Nov19	
SCb	Supplementary Conditions to AIA A201 - 2017	07Nov19	
GR	General Requirements	07Nov19	
Forms	House Bill 89, Senate Bill 252	07Nov19	
FORM CIQ	Conflict of Interest	07Nov19	
DIVISION 00 – PROCUREMENT AND CONTRACTING REQUIREMENTS			
000107	Seals Pages	07Nov19	
003132	Geotechnical Data.....	07Nov19	
	Geotechnical Report		
007000	General Conditions.....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS			
011000	Summary	07Nov19	
012500	Substitution Procedures	07Nov19	
012500.13	Substitution Request Form.....	07Nov19	
012600	Contract Modification Procedures	07Nov19	
012900	Payment Procedures.....	07Nov19	
013100	Project Management and Coordination	07Nov19	
013200	Construction Progress Documentation.....	07Nov19	
013233	Photographic Documentation	07Nov19	
013300	Submittal Procedures	07Nov19	
013300x	Subcontractors and Major Material Suppliers List	07Nov19	
014000	Quality Requirements.....	07Nov19	
015000	Temporary Facilities and Controls.....	07Nov19	
015300	Mold Prevention Measures.....	07Nov19	
015713	Erosion and Sedimentation Control.....	07Nov19	
016000	Product Requirements.....	07Nov19	
017300	Execution	07Nov19	
017700	Closeout Procedures.....	07Nov19	
017700x	Punch List Form	07Nov19	
017823	Operation and Maintenance Data.....	07Nov19	
017839	Project Record Documents.....	07Nov19	
017900	Demonstration and Training	07Nov19	
DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS			
024113	Selective Site Demolition.....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE			
033000	Structural Cast-in-Place Concrete (S)	07Nov19	
033543	Polished Concrete	07Nov19	
035416	Hydraulic Cement Underlayment.....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 04 – MASONRY			
042000	Unit Masonry	07Nov19	
044300	Stone Masonry Veneer.....	07Nov19	

SECTION	SECTION TITLE	ISSUE DATE	REVISED DATE
047200	Cast Stone Masonry	07Nov19	
048100	Concrete Masonry Unit Assemblies (S).....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 05 – METALS			
051200	Structural Steel (S)	07Nov19	
052100	Steel Joists (S)	07Nov19	
053100	Steel Decking (S)	07Nov19	
054000	Cold-Formed Metal Framing (S).....	07Nov19	
055000	Metal Fabrications	07Nov19	
055100	Metal Stairs	07Nov19	
055213	Pipe and Tube Railings	07Nov19	
DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES			
061000	Rough Carpentry	07Nov19	
061600	Sheathing	07Nov19	
062023	Interior Finish Carpentry.....	07Nov19	
064023	Interior Architectural Woodwork	07Nov19	
DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION			
071900	Water Repellents	07Nov19	
072100	Thermal Insulation.....	07Nov19	
072600	Under Slab Vapor Barrier	07Nov19	
072726	Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers	07Nov19	
074113	Metal Roof Panels	07Nov19	
074243	Aluminum Composite Panel System	07Nov19	
074646	Fiber Cement Siding.....	07Nov19	
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.....	07Nov19	
076210	Flexible Flashing	07Nov19	
077100	Roof Specialties	07Nov19	
078413	Penetration Firestopping	07Nov19	
078446	Fire-Resistive Joint Systems	07Nov19	
079200	Joint Sealants.....	07Nov19	
079500	Expansion Control	07Nov19	
DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS			
081113	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames	07Nov19	
081416	Flush Wood Doors.....	07Nov19	
083113	Access Doors and Frames	07Nov19	
083613	Sectional Doors	07Nov19	
083906	Tornado Resistant Doors and Frames	07Nov19	
084113	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts	07Nov19	
085113	Aluminum Windows.....	07Nov19	
085653	Security Windows.....	07Nov19	
087100	Door Hardware / Hardware Sets	07Nov19	
	Door Hardware Index	07Nov19	
088000	Glazing	07Nov19	
088300	Mirrors	07Nov19	
089000	Louvers and Vents	07Nov19	
DIVISION 09 – FINISHES			
092216	Non-Structural Metal Framing	07Nov19	
092900	Gypsum Board	07Nov19	
093013	Ceramic Tiling	07Nov19	
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings	07Nov19	
096116	Concrete Floor Sealing.....	07Nov19	
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories	07Nov19	
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring.....	07Nov19	
096813	Tile Carpeting	07Nov19	
098116	Acoustical Blanket Insulation.....	07Nov19	
099100	Painting	07Nov19	

SECTION	SECTION TITLE	ISSUE DATE	REVISED DATE
DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES			
101100	Visual Display Boards	07Nov19	
101400	Signage	07Nov19	
102600	Wall and Door Protection.....	07Nov19	
102800	Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories	07Nov19	
104413	Fire Protection Cabinets.....	07Nov19	
104416	Fire Extinguishers.....	07Nov19	
105122	Gear Lockers.....	07Nov19	
107500	Flagpoles	07Nov19	
109900	Miscellaneous Specialties	07Nov19	
DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT			
113100	Residential Appliances	07Nov19	
DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS			
122413	Roller Window Shades	07Nov19	
123617	Stainless Steel Countertops	07Nov19	
123662	Engineered Surfacings	07Nov19	
DIVISION 13 – SPECIAL CONSTRUCTION – Not Used			
DIVISION 14 – CONVEYING EQUIPMENT – Not Used			
DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK			
313116	Termite Control.....	07Nov19	
315000	Excavation Support and Protection	07Nov19	
316329	Drilled Concrete Piers (S).....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS			
321714	Precast Concrete Site Accessories	07Nov19	
321723	Pavement Markings.....	07Nov19	
323119	Decorative Metal Fences and Gates	07Nov19	
323129	Wood Fences and Gates.....	07Nov19	
328400	Planting Irrigation (L)	07Nov19	
329000	Landscape Planting (L).....	07Nov19	
VOLUME 2			
DIVISION 21 – FIRE SUPPRESSION			
210500	Common Work Results for Fire Suppression	07Nov19	
211313	Wet Pipe Sprinkler Systems.....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING			
220500	Common Work Results for Plumbing	07Nov19	
220517	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping.....	07Nov19	
220518	Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping.....	07Nov19	
220519	Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping.....	07Nov19	
220523	General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping.....	07Nov19	
220529	Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment...07Nov19		
220553	Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment	07Nov19	
220719	Plumbing Piping Insulation	07Nov19	
221116	Domestic Water Piping	07Nov19	
221119	Domestic Water Piping Specialties.....	07Nov19	
221316	Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping.....	07Nov19	
221623	Natural Gas Piping	07Nov19	
223400	Fuel-Fired Domestic-Water Heaters.....	07Nov19	
224000	Plumbing Fixtures.....	07Nov19	
DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING			
230000	Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods	07Nov19	
230529	Hangers and Supports for HVAC Equipment	07Nov19	
230553	Identification for HVAC Equipment and Duct.....	07Nov19	
230593	Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC (Small CV).....	07Nov19	

SECTION	SECTION TITLE	ISSUE DATE	REVISED DATE
230713	Duct Insulation.....	07Nov19	
232300	Refrigerant Piping.....	07Nov19	
233113	Metal Ducts	07Nov19	
233300	Air Duct Accessories	07Nov19	
233423	HVAC Power Ventilators	07Nov19	
235400	Split-System Air-Conditioners (Gas Heat)	07Nov19	
DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL			
260500	Common Work Results for Electrical.....	07Nov19	
260519	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables	07Nov19	
260526	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems	07Nov19	
260529	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems	07Nov19	
260533	Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems.....	07Nov19	
260544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling	07Nov19	
260553	Identification for Electrical Systems.....	07Nov19	
262416	Panelboards	07Nov19	
262726	Wiring Devices	07Nov19	
262813	Fuses	07Nov19	
262816	Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers.....	07Nov19	
263213	Engine Generators	07Nov19	
263600	Transfer Switches with Bypass Isolation	07Nov19	
265119	LED Interior Lighting.....	07Nov19	
265619	LED Exterior Lighting	07Nov19	
DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS			
270500	Common Work Results for Communications.....	07Nov19	
270526	Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems	07Nov19	
270544	Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling	07Nov19	
271100	Communications Equipment Room Fittings.....	07Nov19	
271300	Communications Backbone Cabling.....	07Nov19	
271500	Communications Horizontal Cabling	07Nov19	
DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY			
280500	Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security.....	07Nov19	
280526	Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security.....	07Nov19	
280528	Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security	07Nov19	
280553	Identification for Electronic Safety and Security	07Nov19	
280600	Testing for Electronic Safety and Security.....	07Nov19	
281000	Electronic Access Control System.....	07Nov19	
283111	Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System.....	07Nov19	

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

BID SUBMITTAL CHECKLIST

NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5

Bid number 2019-32-01

NO.	ITEM	SECTION	ACKN'd
1	Signed Bid Proposal	P	
2	Addendum Acknowledgement	P	
3	Conflict of Interest Questionnaire	FORM CIQ	
4	Bid Security Included	P	
5	HB 89 Verification	Forms	
6	SB 252 Verification	Forms	
7	Form 1295 filled out on website and print it (www.ethics.state.tx.us/dfs)		
8	Firm Information	I	

NOTE:

THIS CHECKLIST SHALL BE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE BID SUBMISSION.

INVITATION TO BID
New Fire Station No. 5
CITY OF MANSFIELD
BID NUMBER – 2019-32-01

The City of Mansfield, Texas (Owner) will accept sealed bids for the **New Fire Station No. 5**, in accordance with the plans and specifications as prepared by Komatsu Architecture, Fort Worth, Texas.

The Owner will receive sealed bids at **City of Mansfield, City Secretary's Office, 1200 E. Broad St, Mansfield, Texas 76063, Attn: City Secretary until Tuesday, December 17, 2019 at 2:00 pm** at which time the bids will be publicly opened and read aloud. Late bids will not be accepted.

Plans and Contract Documents may be examined without charge at City of Mansfield, City Secretary's Office, 1200 E. Broad St, Mansfield, Texas 76063

Plans and Contract Documents may be purchased from Stewart Engineering Supply, Inc, 3221 E. Pioneer Parkway, Arlington, TX 76010, (817) 640-1767. The cost is to be determined by Stewart Engineering Supply and is not refundable.

Advertisement and bid phase information for the Project can also be found at the following web site:

<http://www.civcastusa.com>

Plans and Contract Documents may be downloaded or viewed free of charge by registering at this web site. It is the downloader's responsibility to determine that a complete set of documents, as defined in the Instructions to Bidders are received. This web site will be updated with addenda, plan holders lists, bid tabulations, additional reports or other information relevant to bidding the Project. A Pre-Bid Conference will be held on **Thursday, December 5, 2019 at 1:30 pm** in the City of Mansfield City Hall Multi-Purpose Room.

A Cashier's Check or an acceptable Bidder's Bond, payable to the City of Mansfield, Texas, in the amount of not less than five percent (5%) of the bid amount, as well as a completed Conflict of Interest Questionnaire as required by state law, as well as the documents described in the Bid Submittal Checklist must accompany the bid.

The successful bidder will be required to provide performance, payment, and maintenance bonds and insurance as detailed in the Contract Documents.

Bid Proposal must be submitted on the forms bound within the bidding documents. No bid may be withdrawn until the expiration of forty five days (45) days from the date bids are opened. The right to accept any bid, or to reject any or all bids and to waive any or all informalities is hereby reserved by the Owner.

Questions regarding this invitation to bid should be directed to Wade McLaurin, Director of Building Services, 817/276-4222 or wade.mclaurin@mansfieldtexas.gov

First Publication **November 20, 2019** – Fort Worth Star Telegram
Second Publication **November 27, 2019** – Fort Worth Star Telegram

INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

1. DEFINED TERMS

Terms used in these Instructions to Bidders, which are defined in the Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract (EJCDC C-700, 2007 ed.), have the meanings assigned to them in the General Conditions (A201 – 2017). The term “BIDDER” means one who submits a Bid directly to CITY OF MANSFIELD, as distinct from a sub-bidder, who submits a bid to a BIDDER. The term “Successful BIDDER” means the BIDDER who submits the best value for the CITY OF MANSFIELD based on the criteria set forth in these documents. The term “Bidding Documents” includes the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid, Instructions to Bidders, the Proposal, and the proposed Contract Documents (including all Addenda issued prior to receipt of Bids).

2. COPIES OF BIDDING DOCUMENTS

2.1 Complete sets of the Bidding Documents in the number and for the deposit sum, if any, stated in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid may be obtained from Stewart Engineering, 3221 E. Pioneer Pkwy, Arlington, Texas, 817-640-1767. Payment for the Bidding Documents is non-refundable.

2.2 Complete sets of Bidding Documents must be used in preparing Bids; neither CITY OF MANSFIELD nor ARCHITECT or ENGINEER assumes any responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.

2.3 CITY OF MANSFIELD, ARCHITECT or ENGINEER in making copies of Bidding Documents available on the above terms do so only for the purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work and do not confer a license or grant for any other use.

3. QUALIFICATIONS OF BIDDER

At a minimum a prospective bidder must affirmatively demonstrate bidder's responsibility. A prospective bidder must meet the following requirements:

- A. Have adequate financial resources or the ability to obtain such resources as required;
- B. Be able to comply with the required or proposed delivery schedule;
- C. Have a satisfactory record of performance;
- D. Have a satisfactory record of integrity and ethics; and
- E. Be otherwise qualified and eligible, as determined by the City, to receive an award.

The City may request representation and other information sufficient to determine bidder's ability to meet these minimum standards listed above.

4. EXAMINATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS AND SITE

- 4.1** It is the responsibility of each BIDDER before submitting a bid to (1) examine the Contract Documents thoroughly, (2) visit the site to become familiar with local conditions that may affect cost, progress, performance or furnishing of the work, (3) consider federal, state and local laws and regulations that may affect cost, progress, performance or furnishing of the work, (4) study and carefully correlate BIDDER'S observations with the Contract Documents and (5) notify ARCHITECT OR ENGINEER and CITY OF MANSFIELD'S REPRESENTATIVE of all conflicts, errors or discrepancies in the Contract Documents.
- 4.2** Information and data reflected in the Contract Documents with respect to underground facilities at or contiguous to the site is based upon information and data furnished to CITY OF MANSFIELD by owners of such underground facilities or by others, and CITY OF MANSFIELD does not assume responsibility for the accuracy or completeness thereof.
- 4.3** Provisions concerning responsibilities for the adequacy of data furnished to prospective BIDDERS on subsurface conditions, underground facilities and other physical conditions, and possible changes in the Contract Documents due to differing conditions appear in Paragraphs 4.02 and 4.03 of the General Conditions.
- 4.4** Before submitting a bid each BIDDER will, at BIDDER'S own expense, make or obtain any additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests and studies and obtain any additional information and data which pertain to the physical conditions (surface, subsurface and underground facilities) at or contiguous to the site or otherwise which may affect cost, progress, performance or furnishing of the work and which BIDDER deems necessary to determine its bid for performing and furnishing the work in accordance with the time, price and other terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.
- 4.5** On request in advance, CITY OF MANSFIELD will provide each BIDDER access to the site to conduct such explorations and tests, as each BIDDER deems necessary for submission of a bid. BIDDER shall fill all holes, clean up and restore the site to its former condition upon completion of such explorations.
- 4.6** The lands upon which the work is to be performed, right-of-way and easements for access thereto and other lands designated for use by CONTRACTOR in performing the work are identified in the Contract Documents. All additional lands and access thereto required for temporary construction activities or storage of materials and equipment are to be provided by CONTRACTOR. Easements for permanent structures or permanent changes in existing structures have been obtained and paid for by CITY OF MANSFIELD.
- 4.7** The submission of a bid will constitute an incontrovertible representation by BIDDER that BIDDER has complied with every requirement of Item 4, that without exception the bid is premised upon performing and furnishing the work required by the Contract Documents and such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures of construction as may be indicated in or required by the Contract Documents, and that

the Contract Documents are sufficient in scope and detail to indicate and convey understanding of all terms and conditions for performance and furnishing of the work.

4.8 Reference is made to the Supplementary Conditions for identification of:

- a). Those reports or explorations and tests of subsurface conditions at the site which have been utilized by CITY OF MANSFIELD in preparation of the Contract Documents. BIDDER may rely upon the accuracy of the technical data contained in such reports, except as qualified in the report, but not upon non- technical data, interpretations or opinions contained therein or for the completeness thereof for the purposes of bidding or construction. CONTRACTOR is alerted to the fact that certain subsurface conditions may change (such as groundwater levels) and that borings provide isolated information at the specific bore location only.
- b). Those drawings of physical conditions in or relating to existing surface and subsurface conditions (except underground facilities and utilities) which are at or contiguous to the site which have been utilized by CITY OF MANSFIELD in preparation of the Contract Documents. BIDDER may rely upon the accuracy of the technical data contained in such drawings but not upon the completeness thereof for the purposes of bidding or construction.

Copies of such reports and drawings will be made available by CITY OF MANSFIELD to any BIDDER on request. Those reports and drawings are not part of the contract documents, but the technical data contained therein upon which BIDDER is entitled to rely as provided in Paragraphs a). and b). are incorporated therein by reference. Such technical data has been identified and established in the Supplementary Conditions.

5. INTERPRETATIONS AND ADDENDA

5.1 CONTRACTOR is notified that the plan drawings are diagrammatic. All questions about the meaning or intent of the Contract Documents are to be directed to CITY OF MANSFIELD or ARCHTECT or ENGINEER. Interpretations or clarifications considered necessary by CITY OF MANSFIELD or ARCHTECT or ENGINEER in response to such questions will be issued by Addenda and mailed or delivered to all parties recorded by plan holders as having received the bidding Documents. Questions received less than 48 hours prior to the time for opening Bids may not be answered. Any addenda issued prior to the opening of bids will be electronically transmitted by facsimile or electronic mail to each CONTRACTOR contemplating the submission of a proposal on this work. The CONTRACTOR will be notified by phone of the issuance of the addenda. The proposal as submitted by the CONTRACTOR will be so constructed as to include any addenda if such are issued by the CITY OF MANSFIELD prior to twenty-four (24) hours of the opening of bids. Only questions answered by formal written Addenda will be binding. Oral and other interpretations or clarifications will be without legal effect.

5.2 Addenda may also be issued to modify the Bidding Documents as deemed advisable by CITY OF MANSFIELD, ARCHTECT or ENGINEER.

6. BID SECURITY

6.1 Each bid must be accompanied by bid security made payable to CITY OF MANSFIELD in an amount of five percent (5%) of the BIDDER'S maximum Bid Price and in the form of a certified bank check or a Bid Bond issued by a surety meeting the requirements of Paragraph 5.1 of the General Conditions.

6.2 The Bid security of the Successful BIDDER will be retained until such BIDDER has executed the Agreement and furnished the required contract security, whereupon the Bid security will be returned. If the Successful Bidder fails to execute and deliver the Agreement and furnish the required contract security within fifteen (15) days after the Notice of Award, CITY OF MANSFIELD may annul the Notice of Award and the bid security of that BIDDER will be forfeited. The bid security of other Bidders whom CITY OF MANSFIELD believes to have a reasonable chance of receiving the award may be retained by CITY OF MANSFIELD until the earlier of the seventh day after the effective Date of the Agreement or the forty-sixth day after the Bid opening, whereupon Bid security furnished by such Bidders will be returned. Bid security with Bids, which are not competitive, can be returned at Bid opening upon BIDDER'S request.

7. CONTRACT TIME

7.1 The number of working days within which the work is to be completed and ready for final payment (the Contract Time) are set forth in the Proposal and Agreement.

7.2 The CONTRACTOR should be aware that the Contract Time is based on a work week of five (5) days, Monday through Friday, beginning on the date stipulated in the Notice to Proceed to run consecutively for the number of work days stipulated in the Contract. A full day will be counted toward the contract time on any day when weather conditions allow a minimum of five (5) consecutive hours of work. The CITY OF MANSFIELD may exclude rain days from Contract Time. The CITY OF MANSFIELD may also exclude time immediately following rain day(s) if ground conditions should warrant delay in construction. The CITY OF MANSFIELD shall notify the CONTRACTOR within twenty-four hours of the CITY'S determination that rain and resultant ground conditions warrant an allowable work delay. Any allowable work delay, as determined by the CITY OF MANSFIELD, shall not penalize the CONTRACTOR as Contract Time. CONTRACT TIME is sufficient for a responsible contractor to complete the project and obtain final approval by the CITY OF MANSFIELD.

8. LIQUIDATED DAMAGES & EARLY COMPLETION INCENTIVE

Provisions for liquidated damages and early completion incentives, if any, are set forth in the Agreement.

9. SUBSTITUTE OR "OR-EQUAL" ITEMS

The Contract, if awarded, shall be based on materials and equipment described in the Drawings and Specifications. Any BIDDER requesting consideration of an "or-equal"

item must make written request through the CITY'S ADMINISTRATIVE COORDINATOR at least five (5) days prior to Bid. It shall be the ARCHITECT or ENGINEER'S discretion whether the material(s), equipment, methods, or items are substantially or functionally equal to that named in the plans and specifications so that no change in related work will be required. Consideration of any requested substitute "or-equal" item that the CONTRACTOR may wish to furnish and/or use may not be considered by the ARCHITECT or ENGINEER until after Bids are submitted unless the ARCHITECT OR ENGINEER should elect to issue Addenda to make such allowance(s) prior to receipt of bids. The procedure for review of "or-equal" is set forth in paragraph 6.05 of the General Conditions.

10. SUBCONTRACTORS, SUPPLIERS AND OTHERS

10.1 Supplementary Conditions require identification of Subcontractors, Suppliers, Vendors and others who furnish principle items of materials, equipment, and portions of Work. The successful BIDDER, and any other BIDDER so requested, must submit a list to the CITY OF MANSFIELD with the required information within five (5) days after the bid opening. Experience statements, evidence of acceptable products and/or qualifications, and other evidence as needed to qualify each such Subcontractor, Supplier, Vendor, person or organization, if requested by CITY OF MANSFIELD, shall accompany such list. Prior to the Effective Date of the Agreement, the apparent Successful BIDDER must receive approval from the CITY OF MANSFIELD for all such Subcontractors, Suppliers, Growers of plant materials, Vendors, and other persons or businesses proposed to provide materials, equipment, and/or portions of work for which such identification is required. If the CITY OF MANSFIELD or ARCHITECT or ENGINEER, after due investigation has reasonable objection to any proposed Subcontractor, Supplier, or Vendor, person or organization, the apparent Successful BIDDER is required to submit an acceptable substitute before the Notice of Award may be given. If the apparent Successful BIDDER'S Bid price is increased (or decreased) by the substitution, the CITY OF MANSFIELD may consider such price adjustment in evaluating Bids and making the Contract Award

If the apparent Successful BIDDER declines to make such substitution(s), the CITY OF MANSFIELD may award the contract to the next lowest responsible BIDDER that proposes to use acceptable Subcontractors, Suppliers, Vendors, and other persons and organizations. Declining to make requested substitutions will not constitute grounds for sacrificing the Bid security of any BIDDER. If written objection is not made by the CITY OF MANSFIELD or ARCHITECT or ENGINEER prior to the Notice of Award, the Subcontractor, Supplier, Vendor, other person or organization as listed may be deemed acceptable, subject to revocation of such acceptance after the Effective Date of the Agreement as provided in Paragraph 6.06 of the General Conditions.

10.2 No CONTRACTOR shall be required to employ any Subcontractor, Supplier, other person or organization or use any Supplier or Vendor against whom CONTRACTOR has reasonable objection.

11. Evaluation and Selection Criteria

The City of Mansfield will select the offeror that submits the proposal that offers the best value for the governmental entity based on the following evaluation criteria:

Cost	40%
Reference/Experience/Previous Projects Strength	30%
Delivery Time/Schedule	20%
Financial Strength	10%

The evaluation process may reveal additional information for consideration. The CITY OF MANSFIELD reserves the right to modify without notice, the evaluation structure and weighted criteria to accommodate these additional considerations to serve the best interest of the City

12. PROPOSAL

12.1 The proposal is included in the Bidding Documents. Additional copies may be obtained from the CITY OF MANSFIELD. All bids must be submitted on the CITY OF MANSFIELD forms.

12.2 The Bidder may use the original Proposal forms included in these bid documents or the Bidder may substitute a computer-generated Proposal for the original Proposal included in these bid documents. If original Proposal is used, it must be completed in ink or by typewriter. If a Substitute Proposal is used, it should be word-for-word as written in the original Proposal contained herein. The Bidder shall also sign the Substitute Proposal.

12.3 Bids by corporations must be executed in the corporate name by the president or a vice-president (or other corporate officer accompanied by evidence of authority to sign) and the corporate seal must be affixed and attested by the secretary or an assistant secretary. The corporate address and state of incorporation must be shown below the signature.

12.4 Bids by partnerships must be executed in the partnership name and signed by a partner, whose title must appear under the signature and the official address of the partnership must be shown below the signature.

12.5 All names must be typed or printed below the signature.

12.6 The Bid shall contain an acknowledgment of receipt of all Addenda (the numbers of which must be filled in on the Proposal).

12.7 The address and telephone number for communications regarding the Bid must be shown.

12.8 In addition to the proposal, please provide the following firm information in the sequence and format prescribed by the following:

A. General:

- Name of firm
- Address of principal office
- Phone
- Fax
- Primary Individual to Contact:
- Form of Business Organization (Corporation, Partnership (type), Individual, Joint Venture, Other)
- Year Founded
- State of Organization
- Year's organization has been in business in construction in its current capacity

B. Experience:

- i. List the firm's major projects (particularly Fire and Municipal facilities) over the last seven years in the construction of projects of comparable size and complexity. For each project, provide the name, nature of the project/function of the building, size (SF), location, cost, substantial completion date, owner and architect.
- ii. List all projects within the last seven years not included in No.1 above which your firm completed in the North Texas area giving the name of the project, location, owner and architect.
- iii. List the major construction projects your organization has in progress, giving the name and location of project, owner, architect, contract amount, percent complete and scheduled completion date.
- iv. Contractor's claim(s) record, from January 1, 2004 to present, which includes, but is not limited to, each lawsuit filed against Contractor and/or each claim referred to arbitration and/or mediation arising out of a public improvement project.

C. Licensing:

- i. List jurisdictions and trade categories in which your organization is legally qualified to do business and indicate registration or license numbers, if applicable.
- ii. List jurisdictions in which your organization's partnership or trade name is filed.

D. Financial:

- i. Attach a financial statement, preferably audited, including your organization's latest balance sheet and income statements showing the following items:

- A. Current assets (e.g., cash, joint venture accounts, accounts receivable, notes receivable, accrued income, deposits, materials inventory, and prepaid expenses.)
 - B. Noncurrent assets (e.g., net fixed assets, other assets).
 - C. Current liabilities (e.g., accounts payable, notes payable (current), accrued expenses, provision for income taxes, advances, accrued salaries and accrued payroll taxes).
 - D. Noncurrent liabilities (e.g., notes payable).
 - E. Capital accounts and retained earnings (e.g., capital, capital stock, authorized and outstanding shares par value, earned surplus and retained earnings).
- ii. Name and address of firm preparing attached financial statement and date thereof.
 - iii. Is the attached financial statement for the identical organization named in 1A above? If not, explain the relationship and financial responsibility of the organization whose financial statement is provided (e.g., parent subsidiary).
 - iv. Will the organization whose financial statement is attached act as guarantor of the contract for construction?
 - v. Provide name, address, and phone for bank reference.
 - vi. Surety: Name of bonding company, name and address of agent. A payment and performance bond for 100% of the construction cost will be required upon execution of a contract. Proof of ability of bond will be required prior to selection.

13. SUBMISSION OF BIDS

Bids must be submitted in the time and place indicated in the Advertisement or Invitation to Bid and shall be enclosed in an opaque sealed envelope, marked with the project title (and, if applicable, the designated portion of the Project for which the bid is submitted), the name and address of the BIDDER and accompanied by the bid security and other required documents. The CONTRACTOR shall acknowledge, on the outside of the envelope, receipt of any addenda. If the bid is sent through the mail or other delivery system, the sealed envelope shall be enclosed in a separate envelope with the notation "BID ENCLOSED" on the face of it. It shall be the BIDDER'S responsibility for the delivery of his Proposal at the proper place by the time stated. The mere fact that a Proposal was dispatched will not be considered.

14. MODIFICATION AND WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS

Bids may be modified or withdrawn by an appropriate document duly executed (in the manner that a bid must be executed) and delivered to the place where Bids are to be submitted at any time prior to the opening of Bids.

15. OPENING OF BIDS

Bids will be opened and (unless obviously non-responsive) read aloud publicly. An abstract of the amounts of the base Bids and major alternates (if any) will be made available to Bidders after the opening of Bids.

16. BIDS TO REMAIN SUBJECT TO ACCEPTANCE

All bids will remain subject to acceptance for forty-five (45) days after the day of the Bids opening, but CITY OF MANSFIELD may, in its sole discretion, release any Bid and return the Bid security prior to that date.

17. AWARD OF CONTRACT

17.1 CITY OF MANSFIELD reserves the right to reject any and all Bids, to waive any and all formalities, and the right to disregard all nonconforming, nonresponsive, unbalanced or conditional Bids. Also, CITY OF MANSFIELD reserves the right to reject the Bid of any BIDDER if CITY OF MANSFIELD believes that it would not be in the best interest of the Project to make an award to that BIDDER, whether because the Bid is not responsible or the BIDDER is unqualified or of doubtful financial ability or fails to meet any other pertinent standard or criteria established by CITY OF MANSFIELD. Discrepancies in the multiplication of units of Work and unit prices will be resolved in favor of the unit prices. Discrepancies between the unit price in words and the unit price in figures will be resolved in favor of the price in words. Discrepancies between the indicated sum of any column of figures and the correct sum thereof will be resolved in favor of the correct Sum.

17.2 In evaluating Bids, CITY OF MANSFIELD will consider the qualifications of the Bidders, whether or not the Bids comply with the prescribed requirements, and such alternates, unit prices and other data, as may be requested in the Bid Form or prior to the Notice of Award. **A bidder may be selected and awarded that provides the highest and best value bid to the City.**

17.3 As provided in the Supplementary Conditions, CITY OF MANSFIELD may consider the qualifications and experience submitted for Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations so identified to provide principle items, materials, equipment, and/or portions of Work. CITY OF MANSFIELD may also consider the source and quality of plant materials, maintenance requirements, operating costs, performance data and guarantees of major items of materials and equipment proposed for incorporation in the Work when such data is required to be submitted prior to the Notice of Award.

17.4 CITY OF MANSFIELD may conduct such investigations as CITY OF MANSFIELD deems necessary to assist in the evaluation of any Bid and to establish the responsibility, qualifications and financial ability of bidders, proposed Subcontractors, Suppliers, and other persons and organizations to perform and furnish the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents to CITY OF MANSFIELD'S satisfaction within the prescribed time.

17.5 If the contract is to be awarded, CITY OF MANSFIELD will give the Successful BIDDER a Notice of Award within forty-five (45) days after the day of the Bid opening.

18. CONTRACT SECURITY

Paragraph 5.01 of the General Conditions and the Supplementary Conditions set forth CITY OF MANSFIELD'S requirements as to maintenance, performance and payment Bonds. When the Successful BIDDER delivers the executed Agreement to CITY OF MANSFIELD, it must be accompanied by the required maintenance, performance and payment Bonds.

19. SIGNING OF AGREEMENT

When CITY OF MANSFIELD gives a Notice of Award to the Successful BIDDER, it will be accompanied by the required number of unsigned counterparts of the Agreement with all other written Contract Documents attached. Within fifteen days, thereafter CONTRACTOR shall sign and deliver the required number of counterparts of the Agreement and attached documents to CITY OF MANSFIELD with the required Bonds. Within ten days, thereafter CITY OF MANSFIELD shall deliver one fully signed counterpart to CONTRACTOR.

20. RETAINAGE

Provisions concerning retainage are set forth in the Agreement.

21. SALES AND USE TAXES

CITY OF MANSFIELD is exempt from Local and State Sales and Use Taxes on materials to be incorporated in the Work. Said taxes shall not be included in the Contract Price. However, CONTRACTOR must pay sales taxes on equipment rental, form materials, etc. not incorporated into the furnished project. Refer to Supplementary Conditions SC-6.10 for additional information.

22. WAGES

Contractors are required to pay not less than the rates determined using the prevailing wage rate as determined by the United States Department of Labor in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. Section 276a et seq.), and its subsequent amendments, to a worker employed by it in the execution of a contract for the construction of a public work, including a building, highway, road, excavation, and repair work or other project development or improvement, paid for in whole or in part from public funds, without regard to whether the work is done under public supervision or direction.. Contractors are required to comply with Texas Government Code, Chapter 2258, Prevailing Wage Rates. A worker is employed on a public work if the worker is employed by the contractor or any subcontractor in the execution of the contract for the project.

Competitive Sealed Proposal for
New Fire Station No. 5
Mansfield, Texas
Bid No. 2019-32-01
PROPOSAL

Date: _____

Pursuant to the Instruction to Bidders, the undersigned has thoroughly examined the Bidding Documents and the Site, understands the work to be done, and hereby proposes to do all the work as provided in the Bidding Documents and subject to the observation and approval of the Owner and Architect, and binds themselves on acceptance of this bid by Owner for performing and completing the said work within the time stated and to furnish all required guarantees for the following prices:

BASE BID

For the construction of the New Fire Station No. 5 and including all labor, materials, services, and necessary for the completion of the Work as indicated in the construction documents.

The Sum of _____ DOLLARS

UNIT PRICES

- A. Unit-Price No. 1: Add per additional foot of 18" diameter pier.
1. _____ Dollars (\$) _____ LF
- B. Unit-Price No. 2: Deduct per reduced foot of 18" diameter piers
1. _____ Dollars (\$) _____ LF
- C. Unit-Price No. 3: Add per LF for casing 18" diameter pier
1. _____ Dollars (\$) _____ LF

EXTRA WORK FEES

The undersigned agrees that for additional work added to the Contract and for extra costs resulting from changes in the work, the allowance for overhead and profit combined shall be in accordance with the following schedule, but in no case shall it exceed a maximum of 15 percent, (Overhead shall include payroll taxes and supervision):

- A. For the Contractor, for any work provided by his own forces: 10 % of the cost.
- B. For the Contractor, for work produced by his subcontractors: 5 % of the amount due the subcontractor.
- C. The General Contractor shall not be allowed to charge the Owner for "extended

overhead" charges relating to change orders or weather delays.

OTHER CONDITIONS

The undersigned agrees to the following:

- A. Will furnish all labor and materials as shown and specified.
- B. Will substantially complete the base proposal work in 360 days including days lost to inclement weather.
- C. Will start work 15 days after notice of award of contract.
- D. Agrees that their Bid shall be good and may not be withdrawn for a period of 60 days after the scheduled closing time for receiving bids.
- E. Understands that the City of Mansfield reserves the right to reject any or all Bids and to waive any informalities in the Bidding and to assign the Work to the Bidder who, in the opinion of the City, serves the City's best interest.
- F. Attests that the bid is submitted without collusion of any other bidder.

BID ACKNOWLEDGMENT

The undersigned certifies that the bid prices contained in this bid have been carefully reviewed and are submitted as correct and final. Bidder further certifies and agrees to furnish any and/or all product/service upon which prices are extended at the price offered, and upon the conditions in the specifications of the Invitation for Bid.

"I hereby certify that the foregoing bid has not been prepared in collusion with any other bidder or other person or persons engaged in the same line of business prior to the official opening of this bid. Further, I certify that the bidder is not now, nor has been for the past six (6) months, directly or indirectly concerned in any pool or agreement or combination to control the price of product/service bid on, or to influence any person or persons to bid or not to bid thereon."

Name of Bidder: _____

Address of Bidder: _____

City: _____ State: _____ Zip Code: _____

Telephone Number _____ Fax _____

E-mail address: _____

By (print name) _____

Title: _____ Federal ID#/SSN #: _____

Signature: _____

Acknowledgement of Addenda: #1 _____ #2 _____ #3 _____ #4 _____ #5 _____

**AGREEMENT
BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR**

THIS AGREEMENT is dated as of the _____ day or _____ in the year of 2019 by and between the City of Mansfield (hereafter called OWNER) and _____ (hereafter called CONTRACTOR). OWNER and CONTRACTOR, in consideration of the mutual covenants hereafter set forth, agree as follows:

Article 1. WORK.

CONTRACTOR shall complete all Work as specified or indicated in the Contract Documents. The Work is generally described as follows:

- A. General Construction of all site and civil work for the facilitation and construction of a new Fire Station No. 5, parking, drive approach, grading, drainage, irrigation and landscape and any associated items related to site work as identified in the plans and specifications.
- B. General Construction of the new building complete and in place ready to occupy as spelled out in the plans and specifications.

The project for which the Work under the Contract Documents may be the whole or only part is generally described as follows: **New Fire Station No. 5.**

Article 2. ARCHITECT, CIVIL ENGINEER, LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT, IRRIGATION DESIGNER, AND OWNER'S ADMINISTRATIVE REPRESENTATIVE.

- 2.1 The Building and Civil project has been designed under the direction of **Wade McLaurin, City of Mansfield** and by **Komatsu Architecture, Fort Worth, Texas** who are hereinafter called ARCHITECT AND ENGINEER and who is to act as ARCHITECT AND ENGINEER designer for architectural and engineering matters, assumes all duties and responsibilities and has the rights and authority assigned to ARCHITECT or ENGINEER in the Contract Documents in connection with completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- 2.2 The project will be coordinated by **Wade McLaurin**, who is hereinafter called OWNER'S ADMINISTRATIVE REPRESENTATIVE for coordination matters, and assumes all duties and responsibilities and has rights and authority assigned to OWNER'S ADMINISTRATIVE REPRESENTATIVE in connection with coordination and completion of the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Article 3. CONTRACT TIME.

- 3.1. The Work shall be completed and ready for substantial completion in accordance with paragraph 14.07 of the General Conditions within **THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTY (360) WORK DAYS** from the date indicated in the Notice to Proceed or when the Contract Time commences to run as provided in paragraph 2.03 of the General Conditions (EJCDC C-700, 2007 ed.).
- 3.2. **Liquidated Damages.** OWNER and CONTRACTOR recognize that time is of the essence of this Agreement and that OWNER will suffer financial loss if the Work is not completed within the times specified in paragraph 3.1 above, plus any extensions thereof allowed in accordance with Article 12 of the General Conditions. They also recognize the delays, expense and difficulties involved in proving in a legal or arbitration proceeding the actual loss suffered by OWNER if the Work is not completed on time. Accordingly, instead of requiring any such proof, OWNER and CONTRACTOR agree that as liquidated damages for delay (but not as a penalty) CONTRACTOR shall pay OWNER Two Hundred Fifty Dollars (\$250.00) for each working day that expires after the time specified in paragraph 3.1 when the Work is approved and ready for final payment.

Article 4. CONTRACT PRICE.

4.1. OWNER shall pay CONTRACTOR for completion of the Work based on a Lump Sum for the scope of work stated in the proposal in accordance with the Contract Documents in the sum of _____

Article 5. PAYMENT PROCEDURES

CONTRACTOR shall submit Applications for Payment in accordance with Article 9 of the AIA 201-2017 Applications for Payment will be processed by Architect and OWNER'S ADMINISTRATIVE COORDINATOR as provided in the contract.

- 5.1. **Progress Payments.** OWNER shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Price on the basis of CONTRACTOR'S Applications for Payment, on or about the thirtieth (30th) day of each month during construction. All progress payments will be on the based on the percentage of work completed in accordance with the unit prices stated in the proposal as determined by Architect and OWNER'S ADMINISTRATIVE COORDINATOR minus five percent (5%) retainage to be held by OWNER until final payment but, in each case, less the aggregate of payments previously made and less such amounts as OWNER shall determine, or Architect or OWNER may withhold, in accordance with Article 9 of the AIA 201-2017.
- 5.2. **Final Payment.** Upon completion and acceptance of the Work in accordance with paragraph Article 9 of the AIA 201-201714.07, OWNER shall pay the remainder of the Contract Price as recommended by Architect or OWNER'S

ADMINISTRATIVE COORDINATOR as provided in said paragraph 9.10.

Article 6. INTEREST.

All moneys not paid when due as provided in Article 9 of the AIA 201-2017 shall not bear interest.

Article 7. CONTRACTOR'S REPRESENTATIONS

In order to induce OWNER to enter into this Agreement CONTRACTOR makes the following representations:

- 7.1. **CONTRACTOR** has familiarized itself with the nature and extent of the Contract Documents, Work, site, locality, and all local conditions, laws, and Regulations that in any manner may affect cost, progress, performance or furnishing of the Work.
- 7.2. **CONTRACTOR** has studied carefully all reports of explorations and tests of subsurface conditions and drawings of physical conditions which are identified in the Supplementary Conditions as provided in Article 3 of the AIA 201-2017 of the General Conditions, and accepts the determination set forth of the extent of the technical data contained in such reports and drawings upon which CONTRACTOR is entitled to rely.
- 7.3. **CONTRACTOR** has obtained and carefully studied (or assumes responsibility for obtaining and carefully studying) all such examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, reports and studies (in addition to or to supplement those referred to in paragraph 7.2 above) which pertain to the subsurface or physical conditions at or contiguous to the site or otherwise may affect the cost, progress, performance or furnishing of Work as CONTRACTOR considers necessary for the performance or furnishing of the Work at the Contract Price, within the Contract Time and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Contract Document, including specifically the provisions of the contract; and no additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, reports, studies or similar information or data are or will be required by CONTRACTOR for such purposes.
- 7.4. **CONTRACTOR** has reviewed and checked all information and data shown or indicated on the Contract Documents with respect to existing Underground Facilities at or contiguous to the site and assumes responsibility for the accurate location of said Underground Facilities. No additional examinations, investigations, explorations, tests, reports, studies or similar information or data in respect of said Underground Facilities are or will be required by CONTRACTOR in order to perform and furnish the Work at the Contract Price, within the Contract Time and in accordance with the other terms and conditions of the Contract Documents, including specifically the provisions of paragraph 4.04 of the General Conditions.

- 7.5. **CONTRACTOR** has correlated the results of all such observations, examinations, investigations, exploration, tests, reports and studies with the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents.
- 7.6. **CONTRACTOR** has given Architect/ENGINEER written notice of all conflicts, errors or discrepancies that he/she has discovered in the Contract Documents and the written resolution thereof by Architect/ENGINEER is acceptable to CONTRACTOR.

Article 8. CONTRACT DOCUMENTS.

The Contract Documents, which comprise the entire agreement between OWNER and CONTRACTOR concerning the Work, consist of the following:

- 8.1. This Agreement (pages 1 to 5, inclusive).
- 8.2. Notice of Award.
- 8.3. CONTRACTOR'S Proposal.
- 8.4. General Conditions.
- 8.5. Supplementary Conditions.
- 8.6. General Requirements.
- 8.7. Specifications
- 8.8. Drawings, consisting of a cover sheet bearing the title "**NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5**" and a plan set of drawings is not attached to the signed Contract Documents but may be obtained from Stewart Engineering, 3221 E. Pioneer, Arlington, Texas, 817-640-1767. Or down loaded from CivcastUSA.com
- 8.9. Performance and Payment Bonds, identified as Section PB and consisting of 4 pages.
- 8.10 Maintenance Bond, identified as Section MB and consisting of 3 pages.

There are no Contract Documents other than those listed above in Article 8. The Contract Documents may only be amended, modified or supplemented as provided for in the General Conditions of AIA 201-2017.

Article 9. MISCELLANEOUS

- 9.1. Terms used in this Agreement, which are defined in Article 1 of the General Conditions, will have the meanings indicated in the General Conditions.
- 9.2. No assignment by a party hereto of any rights under or interests in the Contract Documents will be binding on another party hereto without the written consent of the party sought to be bound, and specifically but without limitation moneys that may become due and moneys that are due may not be assigned without such consent (except to the extent that the effect of this restriction may be limited by law), and unless specifically stated to the contrary in any written consent to an assignment no assignment will release or discharge the assignor from any duty or responsibility under the Contract Documents.
- 9.3. OWNER and CONTRACTOR each binds itself, its partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives to the other party hereto, its partners, successors, assigns and legal representatives in respect of all covenants,

agreements and obligations contained in the Contract Documents.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, OWNER and CONTRACTOR have signed three copies of this Agreement. Two counterparts have been delivered to OWNER and one counterpart have been delivered to CONTRACTOR. All portions of the Contract Documents have been signed or identified by OWNER and CONTRACTOR.

This Agreement will be effective on _____ day of _____ 2019.

Owner
City of Mansfield

Contractor

By _____
Clayton W. Chandler, City Manager

By _____

(Corporate Seal)

(Corporate Seal)

Attest _____
City Secretary

Attest _____

Address for giving notices:

Address for giving notices:

1200 E. Broad Street
Mansfield, Texas
76063

(If OWNER is a public body, attach whose evidence of authority to sign and sent: resolution or other documents authorizing execution of Agreement.)

List name of person to attention notices are to be

(If CONTRACTOR is a corporation Attach evidence of authority to sign.)

Approved as to form only

City Attorney

PERFORMANCE BOND

BOND NO. _____

STATE OF TEXAS §
COUNTY OF _____§

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS:

That _____ of the City Of _____, County of _____, State of _____, (hereinafter referred to as "Principal"), and _____ (hereinafter referred to as "Surety"), authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to act as surety on bonds for principals, are held and firmly bound unto City of Mansfield (hereinafter referred to as "Owner") in the penal sum of

_____ for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, by these presents:

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Owner, dated the ____ day of _____, 2019, to construct the **New Fire Station No. 5** which contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, the condition of this obligation is such, that if the said Principal fully and faithfully executes the work and performance of the contract in accordance with the plans, specifications, and contract documents, including any extensions thereof, and according to the true intent and meaning of said contract and the plans and specifications hereto annexed, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise, to remain in full force and effect.

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code, Public Work Performance and Payment Bonds, as amended, and Chapter 53.201 of the Texas Property Code, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Article to the same extent as if they were fully copied at length herein.

Surety, for value received, stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the contract, or the work performed thereunder, or the plans, specifications, or drawings accompanying the same, shall in anyway affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice or any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the contract, or to the work to be performed thereunder.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and surety have signed and sealed this instrument on this the _____ day of _____, 2019.

PRINCIPAL

By: _____

Title: _____

Address: _____

SURETY

By: _____

Title: _____

Address: _____

The name and address of the Resident Agent of Surety is:

PAYMENT BOND

BOND NO. _____

STATE OF TEXAS §
COUNTY OF _____§

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS:

That _____ of the City of _____, County of _____, State of _____, (hereinafter referred to as "Principal"), and _____ (hereinafter referred to as "Surety"), authorized under the laws of the State of Texas to act as surety on bonds for principals, are held and firmly bound unto City of Mansfield (hereinafter referred to as "Owner") in the penal sum of

_____ for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, by these presents:

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Owner, dated the ____ day of _____, 2019, to construct the **New Fire Station No. 5** which contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, the condition of this obligation is such, that if the bond guarantees the full and proper protection of all claimants supplying labor and material in the prosecution of the work provided for in said contract and for the use of each claimant, and that conversely should the Principal faithfully perform said contract and in all respects duly and faithfully observe and perform all and singular the covenants, conditions, and agreements in and by said contract agreed to by the Principal, and according to the true intent and meaning of said contract and the claims and specifications hereto annexed, then this obligation shall be void; otherwise, to remain in full force and effect.

PROVIDED, HOWEVER, that this bond is executed pursuant to the provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code, Public Work Performance and Payment Bonds, as amended, and Chapter 53.201 of the Texas Property Code, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Article to the same extent as if they were fully copied at length herein.

Surety, for value received, stipulates and agrees that no change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the contract, or to the work performed

thereunder, or the plans, specifications, or drawings accompanying the same, shall in any affect its obligation on this bond, and it does hereby waive notice of any such change, extension of time, alteration or addition to the terms of the contract, or to the work to be performed thereunder.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and surety have signed and sealed this instrument on this the _____ day of _____, 2019.

PRINCIPAL

SURETY

By: _____

By: _____

Title: _____

Title: _____

Address: _____

Address: _____

The name and address of the Resident Agent of Surety is:

MAINTENANCE BOND

BOND NO. _____

STATE OF TEXAS §
COUNTY OF _____ §

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS:

THAT, _____, hereinafter called CONTRACTOR, as principal, and _____, a corporation organized under the laws of the State of Texas, as surety, do hereby acknowledge themselves to be held and bound to pay unto the City of Mansfield, a municipal Corporation, chartered by virtue of the Constitution and Laws of the State of Texas, at Mansfield, in Tarrant County, Texas, the sum of

_____ lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made unto said City of Mansfield and its successors, said CONTRACTOR and surety do hereby bind themselves, their heirs, executors, administrators, assigns and successors, jointly and severally.

This obligation is conditioned, however; that,

WHEREAS, said CONTRACTOR has this day entered into a written Contract with the City of Mansfield, Texas, the OWNER, dated the _____ day of _____, 2019, a copy of which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, the **New Fire Station No. 5** which this contract is hereby referred to and made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied verbatim herein, such project and construction in the City of Mansfield, together with the necessary grading and excavation, which Contract and Specifications therein mentioned adopted by the City are expressly made a part hereof, as though written herein in full; and,

WHEREAS, in said Contract, CONTRACTOR binds itself to use such materials and to so construct the work that it will remain in good repair and conditions for and during the period of two (2) years after the date of final acceptance of the work by the City, and,

WHEREAS, said CONTRACTOR binds itself to maintain said work in good repair and condition for said term of two (2) years; and,

WHEREAS, said CONTRACTOR binds itself to repair or reconstruct the work in whole or in part at any time within said period, if in the opinion of the City of Mansfield, it be necessary; and,

WHEREAS, said CONTRACTOR binds itself, upon receiving notice of the need thereof to repair or reconstruct said work as herein provided.

NOW, THEREFORE, if said CONTRACTOR shall keep and perform its said agreement to maintain, repair or reconstruct said work in accordance with all the terms and conditions of said Contract, these presents shall be null and void, and have no force or effect. Otherwise, this Bond shall be and remain in full force and effect, and said City shall have and recover from the said CONTRACTOR and its surety damages in the premises as prescribed by said Contract.

This obligation shall be a continuing one and successive recoveries may be had hereon for successive breaches until the full amount hereof is exhausted.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, ___ has caused these presents to be executed in five counterparts by its authorized _____ and said _____ has caused these presents to be executed in five counterparts by its Attorney in Fact and attested by its corporate seal, this _____ day of _____, 2019.

CONTRACTOR

By: _____

SURETY

By: _____
ATTORNEY IN FACT

WITNESS:

(SEAL)

CERTIFICATE OF INSURANCE

INSURANCE

SECTION A. Prior to the approval of this agreement/contract by the City, the successful Bidder/Contractor shall furnish a completed Insurance Certificate to the City, which shall be completed by an agent authorized to bind the named underwriters/insurance carriers to the coverages, limits, and termination provisions shown thereon. THE CITY SHALL HAVE NO DUTY TO PAY OR PERFORM UNDER THIS CONTRACT UNTIL SUCH CERTIFICATE HAS BEEN DELIVERED TO THE CITY.

INSURANCE COVERAGE REQUIRED

SECTION B. The City reserves the right to review the insurance requirements of this section during the effective period of the contract and to require adjustment of insurance coverages and their limits when deemed necessary and prudent by the City based upon changes in statutory law, court decisions, or the claims history of the industry as well as the Contractor.

SECTION C. Subject to the Contractor's right to maintain reasonable deductibles in such amounts as are approved by the City, the Contractor shall obtain and maintain in full force and effect for the duration of this contract, and any extension hereof, at the Contractor's sole expense, insurance coverage written by companies approved by the State of Texas and acceptable to the City, in the following types and amounts:

	TYPE	AMOUNT
1	Workers' Compensation and Employer's Liability	Statutory \$1,000,000/1,000,000/1,000,000
2	Commercial General (Public) Liability insurance including coverage for the following: a. Premises Operations b. Independent contractors c. Products/completed operations d. Personal injury e. Advertising injury f. Contractual liability g. Medical payments	Combined single limit for bodily injury and property damage in the amount of \$5,000,000 per occurrence or its equivalent.
3	Comprehensive Automobile insurance , including coverage for loading and unloading hazards, for: a. Owned/leased vehicles b. Non-owned vehicles c. Hired vehicles	Combined single limit for bodily injury and property damage in the amount of \$2,000,000 per accident or its equivalent.

ADDITIONAL POLICY ENDORSEMENTS

The City shall be entitled, upon request, and without expense, to receive copies of the policies and all endorsements thereto and may make any reasonable request for deletion, revision, or modification of particular policy terms, conditions, limitations, or exclusions (except where policy provisions are established by law or regulation binding upon either of the parties hereto or the underwriter of any of such policies). Upon such request by the City, the Contractor shall exercise reasonable efforts to accomplish such changes in policy coverages, and shall pay the cost thereof.

REQUIRED PROVISIONS

The successful Contractor agrees that with respect to the above required insurance, all insurance contracts and certificate(s) of insurance will contain and state, in writing, on the certificate, or its attachment, the following required provisions:

- A. Name the City of Mansfield and its officer, employees, and elected representatives as additional insureds, (as the interest of each insured may appear) as to all applicable coverage;
- B. Provide for 30 days notice to the City for cancellation, nonrenewal, or material change; 10 days notice for workers' compensation coverage;
- C. The Contractor agrees to waive subrogation against the City of Mansfield, its officers, employees, and elected representatives for injuries, including death, property damage, or any other loss to the extent same may be covered by the proceeds of insurance;
- D. All copies of the certificates of insurance shall reference the project name or bid number for which the insurance applies;
- E. Provide that all provisions of this agreement concerning liability, duty, and standard of care, together with the indemnification provision, shall be underwritten by contractual liability sufficient to include such obligations within applicable policies;
- F. For coverages that are only available with claims made policies, the required period of coverage will be determined by the following formula: Continuous coverage for the life of the contract, plus one year (to provide coverage for the warranty period) and an extended discovery period for a minimum of 5 years which shall begin at the end of the warranty period;
- G. Provide for notice to the City of Mansfield at the two addresses shown below by registered mail.

NOTICES

The Contractor shall notify the City in the event of any change in coverage and shall give such notices not less than 30 days prior to the change. The notice must be accompanied by a replacement Certificate of Insurance.

All notices shall be given to the City at the following address:

City Secretaries Office
City Hall
1200 E. Broad St. Mansfield, TX 76063

SECTION D. Approval, disapproval, or failure to act by the City of Mansfield regarding any insurance supplied by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of full responsibility or liability for damages and accidents as set forth in the contract documents. Neither shall the bankruptcy, insolvency, or denial of liability by the insurance company will exonerate the Contractor from liability.

Supplementary Conditions
Engineers Joint Contract Documents Committee
EJDC C-700, 2007 ed.
(Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract)

These Supplementary Conditions amend or supplement the Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract (EJCDC C-700, 2007 ed.) and other provisions of the Contract Documents as indicated below. All provisions, which are not so amended or supplemented, remain in full force and effect.

NUMERICAL DESIGNATIONS OF THE FOLLOWING SECTIONS CORRELATE TO THE AMENDED SECTIONS OF THE GENERAL CONDITIONS.

DEFINITIONS

The terms used in these Supplementary Conditions, which are defined in the Standard General Conditions of the Construction Contract (EJCDC C-700, 2007 ed.) have the meanings assigned to them in the General Conditions.

Working Day – A working day is any calendar day except for the following:

- 1) Saturday or Sunday or any day designated as a holiday by the City of Mansfield.
- 2) Any day in which weather or conditions not under control of the CONTRACTOR prevents construction of the work for a period of at least six (6) hours between 8:00 a.m. and 5:00 p.m. In these Contract Documents the term day refers to a calendar day unless specifically termed a working day.

2.03 COMMENCEMENT OF CONTRACT TIME; NOTICE TO PROCEED

Delete Paragraph 2.03 of the General Conditions in its entirety and insert the following in its place:

“Commencement of Contract Time shall begin on the date indicated in the Notice to Proceed. OWNER may issue a Notice to Proceed at any time suitable to OWNER. The date indicated in the Notice to Proceed will be determined prior to executing the agreement.

2.07 FINALIZING SCHEDULES

The OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE may give final approval to schedules as submitted in accordance with Paragraph 2.05 of the General Conditions or as determined in the Preconstruction Conference without convening a separate conference for that purpose, and will so notify the CONTRACTOR.

3.01 INTENT

Add the following language after the second sentence of Paragraph 3.01.B of the General Conditions:

“In the event there are any conflicts between the plans, the specifications or other Contract Documents the priority of interpretation will be as follows: Signed Contract Agreement, bonds, CONTRACTOR’S Proposal, Project Drawings or Plans, Supplementary Conditions, General Conditions, Project Specifications, Referenced Specifications.

4.04 UNDERGROUND FACILITIES

Add the following language to the beginning of Paragraph 4.04.B of the General Conditions:

“CONTRACTOR shall contact the city water & sewer and public works departments and utility companies which have a franchise to operate in the area of the project site and shall determine the location of their facilities at or contiguous to the site and shall protect same from damage during construction.”

“CONTRACTOR shall contact City of Mansfield for locations of underground facilities.

4.05 REFERENCE POINTS

Delete Paragraph 4.05 of the General Conditions and insert the following in its place:

“Project horizontal and vertical control along the line and grade stakes shall be provided once by the OWNER through his Surveyor. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for protecting and preserving all stakes thus set, and any additional staking shall be at the CONTRACTOR’S expense. The ENGINEER shall be notified at least 48 hours in advance of the need for construction staking.”

5.01 BONDS

Add the following language at the end of Paragraph 5.01.A of the General Conditions:

“All Bonds shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code, as amended.”

Performance and Payments Bonds shall be furnished in favor of the OWNER for one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Price. A Maintenance Bond shall be furnished in the amount of one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Price in favor of the OWNER for a period of two (2) years and shall be executed by an approved surety company authorized to do business in the State of Texas.

5.04 CONTRACTOR'S LIABILITY INSURANCE

CONTRACTOR shall name the City of Mansfield as additional insured's under CONTRACTOR'S general liability policy. The commercial liability insurance form and policy may be used in lieu of comprehensive general liability form. The limits of liability for the insurance required by Paragraph 5.04 of the General Conditions shall provide coverage for not less than the following amounts or greater where required by laws and regulations.

Refer to Section CI for additional information.

5.06 PROPERTY INSURANCE

The OWNER will not obtain Insurance. The contractor must provide insurance covering the losses described in Paragraph 5.06 of the General Conditions for all work in place and materials on hand when such portions of the work are to be included in an application for payment.

6.06 SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS

Add the following language to the end of Paragraph 6.06 of the General Conditions:

"OWNER may furnish to any such Subcontractor, Supplier, Vendor, or other person or organization, to the extent practicable, evidence of amounts paid to CONTRACTOR in accordance with CONTRACTOR'S application for payment."

6.10 SALES TAXES

Add the following language at the end of Paragraph 6.10 of the General Conditions:

This contract is issued by an organization which qualifies for sales, excise and use tax exemption pursuant to the provisions of V.T.C.A., Tax Code, Section

151.309 Governmental Entities. CONTRACTOR may purchase all materials and equipment to be incorporated into the finished work by issuing to his supplier and exemption certificate in lieu of the sales tax. However, in accordance with the provisions of 1HB 11, CONTRACTOR must pay sales tax on equipment rental, and materials and supplies which are purchased but not incorporated into the finished project.

6.20 INDEMNIFICATION OF OWNER BY CONTRACTOR

Delete Paragraph 6.20 of the General Conditions and inset the following in its place:

CONTRACTOR ASSUMES ENTIRE RESPONSIBILITY AND LIABILITY FOR, AND AGREES TO RELEASE, DEFEND, INDEMNIFY AND HOLD OWNER, OWNER'S AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, REPRESENTATIVES AND INSURERS HARMLESS FROM, ANY AND ALL LIABILITIES, CLAIMS, COSTS, EXPENSES, JUDGMENTS, ATTORNEYS' FEES, LITIGATION EXPENSES, CAUSES OF ACTION, DEMANDS, LOSSES AND/OR DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF, IN CONNECTION WITH, OR IN ANY WAY INCIDENTAL TO THE PERFORMANCE OF WORK OR SERVICES UNDER THIS CONTRACT BY CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR'S EMPLOYEES, AGENTS, REPRESENTATIVES AND INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS. THIS PROVISION APPLIES WITH FULL FORCE AND EFFECT FOR ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, DEMANDS, ALLEGATIONS OR ACTIONS FOUNDED IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE NEGLIGENCE, GROSS NEGLIGENCE, INTENTIONAL ACTS, OR ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE, GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR INTENTIONAL ACTS, OF OWNER, OWNER'S AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, REPRESENTATIVES, AND INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS, AS WELL AS CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR'S AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, REPRESENTATIVES AND INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS. THIS INDEMNITY PROVISION IS TO BE CONSTRUED AS BROADLY AS POSSIBLE TO INCLUDE ANY AND ALL LIABILITIES, CLAIMS, COSTS, EXPENSES, JUDGMENTS, CAUSES OF ACTIONS, DEMENDS, LOSSES, AND/OR WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, CAUSES OR ACTION AND DAMAGES SOUNDING IN TORT, PERSONAL INJURIES, CONTRACT DAMAGES, ECONOMIC DAMAGES, STRICT LIABILITY, STRICT PRODUCTS LIABILITY AND PRODUCTS LIABILITY, COMMON LAW NEGLIGENCE AND GROSS NEGLIGENCE, INTENTIONAL TORTS, FEDERAL AND STATE STATUTORY AND COMMON LAW PUNITIVE AND/OR MULTIPLIED DAMAGES, WORKERS' COMPENSATION CLAIMS, CLAIMS UNDER THE TEXAS TORT CLAIMS ACT, EMPLOYMENT DISPUTES, WRONGFUL DISCHARGE, FEDERAL AND STATE CIVIL RIGHTS CLIAAMS, CLAIMS FOUNDED IN CONTRACT OR QUASI-CONTRACT, BREACH OF WARRANTY, CLAIMS UNDER THE TEXAS DECEPTIVE TRADE PRACTICES-COMSUMER PROTECTION ACT, AND ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, CAUSES OF ACTION OR DEMANDS, WHEREBY ANY LOSS IS SOUGHT AND/OR INCURRED AND/OR PAYABLE BY OWNER, OWNER'S AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, REPRESENTATIVES, AND/OR INSURERS. THIS PROVISION IS TO BE CONSTRUED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS, AND IT IS EXPRESSLY RECOGNIZED BY ALL PARTIES TO THE CONSPICUOUSNESS REQUIREMENT AND THE EXPRESS NEGLIGENCE TEST, AND IS VALID AND ENFORCEABLE AGAINST CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR'S AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, REPRESENTATIVES, AND INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS. CONTRACTOR HAS READ, FULLY UNDERSTANDS, AND AGREES TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS PROVISION AND THE INDIVIDUAL SIGNING THIS CONTRACT ON BEHALF OF CONTRACTOR HAS FULL AUTHORITY TO BIND CONTRACTOR TO THIS CONTRACT AND THIS INDEMNITY PROVISION

CONTAINED HEREIN. IT IS FURTHER RECOGNIZED AND AGREED THAT, SHOULD ANY PARTICULAR PORTION OR PROVISION OF THIS INDEMNITY PROVISION BE HELD INVALID, VOID AND/OR UNENFORCEABLE, IT SHALL NOT AFFECT THE VALIDITY AND ENFORCEABILITY OF THE REMAINDER OF THIS PROVISION.

CONTRACTOR AGREES TO MAINTAIN AT CONTRACTOR'S SOLE COST AND EXPENSE, INSURANCE OF ANY AND ALL TYPE AND WITH MINIMUM LIMITS AS FOLLOWS, AND FURNISH CERTIFICATES TO OWNER EVIDENCING SUCH INSURANCE WITH INSURERS ACCEPTABLE TO OWNER:

ALL INSURANCE COVERAGES CARRIED BY THE OWNER, WHETHER OR NOT REQUIRED HEREBY, SHALL EXTEND TO AN PROTECT OWNER, OWNER'S AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, REPRESENTATIVES, AND INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS, TO THE FULL EXTENT OF SUCH COVERAGES AND CONTRACTOR AGREES TO NAME OWNER AS AN ADDITIONAL INSURED UNDER EACH SUCH INSURANCE COVERAGE. SAID INSURANCE SHALL APPLY TO ANY AND ALL LIABILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR, CONTRACTOR'S AGENTS, REPRESENTATIVES, EMPLOYEES, AND/OR INDEPENDENT CONTRACTORS, ARISING FROM THE INDEMNITY PROVISION IN THIS SECTION.

HOWEVER, LIABILITY OF THE CONTRACTOR, AS PROVIDED IN THIS SECTION SHALL NOT BE LIMITED BY THE INSURANCE COVERAGE REQUIRED OF CONTRACTOR IN THIS PROVISION.

9.08 LUMP SUM CONTRACT

It is the general intention of this contract to construct the proposed improvements as shown in the plans. The Plans are diagrammatic; however, lengths, sizes, and quantities shown in the plans are presumed to be accurate as shown. The quantities as shown in the proposal or modified by change order(s) are presumed to be the quantities required to construct the work shown in the plans. The CONTRACTOR shall independently determine the quantities required to construct the work shown in the plans and contract documents, and shall notify the OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE in writing within forty-eight (48) hours of discovering any discrepancies between his independent determination and the quantities shown in the plans and proposal. Completion of the scope of work shown in the plans, contract documents, and change order(s) is the basis for the lump sum to be paid by the City for the completion of work, as modified by change order(s) quantities.

11.03 NO SEPARATE PAY ITEMS

Any and all Work specifically called for in the Contract Documents or which is required for the proper construction of items called for in the Contract Documents is to be performed by the CONTRACTOR unless specifically indicated otherwise. The

cost of all Work in the Proposal and all Work called for or required by the Contract Documents constitutes the Contract Price.

13.03 TESTING ORGANIZATION

Add the following to Paragraph 13.03.C of the General Conditions:

“All inspections, tests or approvals shall be performed by organizations acceptable to OWNER.”

14.02 APPLICATION FOR PROGRESS PAYMENTS

Revise the first sentence of Paragraph 14.02.A.1 of the General Conditions to read as follows:

“At least thirty (30) days before each progress payment,.”

16.01 Methods and Procedures

Replace Section 16.01 of the General Conditions to read as follows:

Neither party shall be required to enter into any Arbitration or Mediation as a prerequisite to taking any other legal action available to them. The parties agree to negotiate any issue in good faith for a period of 30 days before taking other legal action.

Supplementary Conditions
AIA Document A201-2017 Edition
(General Conditions of the Contract for Construction)

Owner: City of Mansfield, Texas

Project: New Fire Station No. 5, Mansfield Texas

1. Amend Section 1.1.2 by adding the following after the second sentence:

1.1.2 As a material consideration for the making of the Contract Documents, modification to this Contract shall not be construed against the maker of said modifications.

2. Add the following to Section 1.2:

1.2.4 In case of discrepancy between two or more drawings (Architectural, Structural, Mechanical, etc.) or drawings and specifications, the Architect shall be the sole judge as to which takes precedence, but in any case it shall be assumed that bids are based on the most expensive procedure shown.

1.2.5 Dimensions found in error should be submitted to the Architect for resolution before proceeding with the Work.

3. Amend 1.5.2 by adding the following at the end of the existing paragraph:

1.5.2 Should the Contractor find discrepancies, omissions or conflicts within the Contract Documents, or be in doubt as to their meaning, the Contractor shall at once notify in writing the Architect and Owner, and Architect will issue a written addendum to all parties that is consistent with the Owner's Scope of the Work.

4. Add the following new Section 1.9:

1.9 Property of Political Subdivision. It is distinctly understood that by virtue of this Contract, no mechanic, contractor, materialmen, artisan, laborer, or subcontractor, whether skilled or unskilled, shall ever in any manner have, claim, or acquire any lien upon the project of whatever nature or kind so erected or to be erected by virtue of this Contract, nor upon any of the land upon which said improvements are so erected, built, or situated, such property being public property belonging to a political subdivision of the State of Texas.

5. Delete the remainder of Section 2.1.1 after the first sentence, and replace it with the following:

2.1.1 ... The Owner shall designate a representative with respect to the Project. Such representative shall not have authority to make final decisions on behalf of the Owner concerning Change Orders, changing the Guaranteed Maximum Price, extending the date of Substantial or Final Completion, or other items requiring City Council approval; however, the Owner or such

authorized representative, shall render decisions in a timely manner in order to avoid unreasonable delay in the service or Work of the Contractor.

6. Delete Section 2.1.2.
7. Delete Section 2.2 “Evidence of the Owner’s Financial Arrangements” in its entirety.
8. Delete Section 2.3.4 and replace it with the following:

2.3.4 The Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations, and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. Owner does not guarantee the accuracy of the survey as describing the site of the Project and Contractor should determine the sufficiency of same before beginning the work. The Owner does not guarantee the utility lines to be in the exact locations as shown on plans and surveys. Contractor shall verify with the utilities the location of utility lines. Any water, gas or sewer line, telephone, telegraph or electric wire, or cable broken or cut which had been previously identified and known by the Contractor or any of his workmen or subcontractors, shall be replaced by the Contractor at his own expense, or by the responsible subcontractor at its own expense, and will not be paid for by the Owner. Repairs shall be made immediately and no other work shall be done until breaks or damages have been repaired and service restored. Any delay caused by the cut or break of a previously identified line shall be solely attributed to the Contractor.

9. Add the following sentence at the end of the existing Section 2.3.5:

Absent such written request, any Claim based upon lack of such information or service shall be waived.

10. Add Section 3.1.4 as follows:

3.1.4 The Contractor represents and warrants the following to the Owner (in addition to the other representations and warranties contained in the Contract Documents), as an inducement to the Owner to execute this Contract, which representations and warranties shall survive the execution and delivery of the Contract and the Final Completion of the Work:

.1 that it is financially solvent, able to pay its debts as they mature, and possessed of sufficient working capital to complete the Work and perform its obligations under the Contract Documents;

.2 that it is able to furnish the tools, materials, supplies, equipment and labor required to timely complete the Work and perform its obligations hereunder and has sufficient experience and competence to do so;

.3 that it is authorized to do business in the State where the Project is located and properly licensed by all necessary governmental, public and quasi-public authorities having jurisdiction over it, the Work, or the site of the Project; and

.4 that the execution of the Contract and its performance thereof are within its

duly authorized powers.

11. Add Section 3.3.4 as follows:

3.3.4 The Contractor shall properly and efficiently coordinate the timing, scheduling and routing of all Work performed by all trades and sub-contractors.

12. Add the following Sections 3.4.4 and 3.4.5:

3.4.4 Prevailing Wages. Attention is called to the Government Code, Chapter 2258, Prevailing Wage Rates. Among other things, this Article provides that it shall be mandatory upon the Contractor and upon any subcontractor under him to pay not less than the prevailing rates of per diem wages in the locality at the time of construction to all laborers, workmen, and mechanics employed by them in the execution of the Contract. No claims for additional compensation shall be considered by Owner because of payments of wage rates in excess of the applicable rate provided herein.

3.4.5 Owner reserves the right to receive and review payroll records, payment records, and earnings statements of employees of Contractor, and of Contractor's Subcontractors, and of Sub-Subcontractors.

13. Add the following Subparagraphs 3.5.3 and 3.5.4:

3.5.3 Except where otherwise stipulated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall, as per its Contract, warranty all materials and workmanship furnished under this Contract for a period of One year after the date of Substantial Completion and shall repair and make good, without expense to the Owner, any and all defects in his work which may develop within that time.

3.5.4 All required warranties on equipment, machinery, materials, or components shall be submitted to the Architect on the manufacturer's or supplier's approved forms at the time of Substantial Completion.

14. Add the following to Section 3.6:

3.6.1 This Project is eligible for exemption from the State Sales Tax on materials incorporated in the Project, provided that Contractor fulfills the requirements of State Tax Laws. For the purpose of establishing exemption, it is understood and agreed that Contractor will be required to segregate materials and labor costs at the time a Contract is awarded, and will accept an exemption certificate from Owner. The Contractor shall pay any taxes otherwise assessed because of Contractor's failure to comply with the requirements of State Law to qualify for that tax exemption.

15. Add the following to Section 3.12:

3.12.10.1 In the second sentence of Section 3.12.10.1, add the word "reasonably" before the word "rely".

16. Add the following to Section 3.12:

3.12.11 The Architect's review of Contractor's submittals will be limited to examination of an initial submittal and one (1) resubmittal. The Owner is entitled to obtain reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for evaluation of additional submittals.

17. Add the following to the end of Section 3.16:

Contractor shall ensure that the Work, at all times, is performed in a manner that affords Owner reasonable access, both vehicular and pedestrian, to the site of the Work and all adjacent areas. The Work shall be performed in such a manner that public areas adjacent to the Site of the Work shall be free from all debris, building material and equipment likely to cause hazardous conditions. Contractor shall use its best efforts to minimize any interference with the occupancy or beneficial use of any area or building adjacent to the site of the Work, or the building, in the event of partial occupancy. The presence of the Owner, Architect or their representatives does not constitute acceptance or approval of the Work.

18. Delete the last sentence of Section 3.17 and replace it with the following:

However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process or product is an infringement of a copyright or patent, the Contractor shall be responsible for the loss unless the information is promptly furnished to the Architect.

19. Add Section the following to Section 4.2.2:

4.2.2.1 The Owner is entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for site visits made necessary by the fault of the Contractor or by defects and deficiencies in the work.

20. Delete Section 4.2.13 and replace it with the following:

The Owner's decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect will be final if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents. The Architect shall be the sole interpreter of the design intent with respect to such matters, but the Architect's authority with respect thereto shall not contravene any other rights of the Owner ascribed to the Owner by other provisions of the Contract.

21. Add the following Sections 5.3.1 and 5.3.2:

5.3.1 Contractor shall promptly notify Owner and Architect of any material defaults by any Subcontractor. Notwithstanding any provision contained in Article 5 to the contrary, it is hereby acknowledged and agreed that Owner has in no way agreed, expressly or implicitly, nor will Owner agree, to allow any Subcontractor or other materialman or workman employed by Contractor the right to obtain a personal judgment or to create a lien against Owner for the amount due from the Contractor.

5.3.2 In the event of any termination of the Contract in accordance with Article 14, Owner shall not be liable to any subcontractor. Contractor shall be responsible for any claim of a subcontractor for Work executed under the Contract.

22. Add Section 5.4.4 as follows:

5.4.4 Such assignment shall not constitute a waiver by Owner of its rights against Contractor, including, but not limited to, claims for defaults, delays or defects for which a subcontractor or material vendor may also be liable. Owner shall only be responsible for compensating subcontractors for Work performed or material furnished from and after the date on which the Owner gives written notice of its acceptance of the subcontract agreement. Owner shall not be responsible for any Work performed or materials furnished by subcontractors prior to the date of Owner's written notice of acceptance.

23. In both the third and fourth sentences of Section 7.4, add the words "and the Owner" after the word "Architect".

24. Add Section 9.5.5 as follows:

9.5.5 Notwithstanding any provision contained within this Article, if the Work has not attained Substantial Completion or Final Completion by the required dates, subject to extensions of time allowed under these Conditions, then Owner may withhold any further payment to Contractor to the extent necessary to preserve sufficient funds to complete the construction of the Project and to cover liquidated damage. The Owner shall not be deemed in default by reason of withholding such payment.

25. Delete Section 9.6.7 and replace with the following language:

9.6.7 Payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or materials properly provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor of which payment was made by the Owner.

26. Delete the phrase "Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents," from the beginning of Section 9.6.8.

27. Add Section 9.7.1 as follows:

9.7.1 If the Owner is entitled to reimbursement or payment from the Contractor under or pursuant to the Contract Documents, then such payment shall be made promptly upon demand by the Owner. Notwithstanding anything contained in the Contract Documents to the contrary, if the Contractor fails to promptly make any payment due to Owner, or the Owner incurs any costs and expense to cure any default of the Contractor or to correct defective Work, pursuant to the Contract, the Owner shall have an absolute right to offset such amount against the Contract Sum and, in the Owner's sole discretion and without waiving any other remedies, may elect either to:

.1 deduct an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled from any payment then or thereafter due to Contractor from the Owner, or

.2 issue a written notice to the Contractor reducing the Contract Sum by an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled.

28. Add the following to Section 9.8.3:

9.8.3.1 The Architect will perform no more than two (2) inspections to determine whether the Work or a designated portion thereof has attained Substantial Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner is entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for any additional inspections.

29. Add the following to Section 9.8.5:

9.8.5.1 The application for payment to release retainage will not be approved by the Architect until the completed and corrected closeout documents are provided to the Architect by the Contractor. Closeout documents shall be delivered to the Architect under conditions and times set forth in the contract documents and specifications.

30. Add the following new Section 9.8.6:

9.8.6 Notwithstanding any provision contained within this Article, if the work has not attained Substantial Completion with the contract time, subject to extensions of time allowed under these Conditions, Owner may withhold any further payment to Contractor to the extent necessary to preserve sufficient funds to complete the construction of the Project and to cover liquidated damages assessed against Contractor up to the time of Application for Payment and to the time it is reasonably anticipated that Substantial Completion will be achieved.

31. Add the following to Section 9.10.1:

9.10.1.1 The Architect will perform no more than one (1) inspection to determine whether the Work or a designated portion thereof has attained Final Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner is entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for any additional inspections.

32. Replace 9.10.4 in its entirety with the following language:

9.10.4 The making of final payment shall not constitute a waiver of any Claims by the Owner.

33. Add the following section 9.11:

9.11 The time of completion is the essence of this Contract. Should the Contractor fail to reach Substantial Completion of the Project within the time required by the Contract Documents, plus any additional time allowed by the Owner, Contractor shall pay, or there shall be deducted from any amounts due and owing to Contractor, liquidated damages for each day that any Work shall

remain uncompleted after the time for Substantial Completion of the Project, plus any additional time allowed by the Owner. The liquidated damages sum shall be \$ 500 per day. The liquidated damage sum for such delay, failure or non-completion is fixed and agreed upon between Owner and Contractor as the most reasonable estimate of Owner's actual damages because of the impracticability and extreme difficulty of fixing and ascertaining the Owner's true actual damages.

34. Add Sections 11.1.6, 11.1.7 and 11.1.8 as follows:

11.1.6 By signing this Contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the Contractor is representing to the Owner that all employees of the Contractor who will provide services on the project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the Contractor for administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

11.1.7 The Contractors' failure to comply with any of these provision is a breach of contract by the Contractor which entitles the Owner to declare the Contract void if the Contractor does not remedy the breach within ten days after receipt of notice of breach from the Owner.

11.1.8 Any failure of Contractor to comply with the reporting provisions of the policies shall not affect the coverage provided to the Owner, its officers, employees, or volunteers.

35. Delete Section 11.4 and replace with the following:

11.4 CONTRACTOR'S BONDS

11.4.1 With the execution and delivery of the Contract, the Contractor shall furnish and file with the Owner, the surety bonds specified in this Section. Without exception, the Owner's bond forms must be used, and exclusive venue for any lawsuit in connection with the bonds shall be Tarrant County. The surety bonds shall be in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 2253, Government Code, Vernon's Texas Codes Annotated. These bonds shall automatically be increased by the amount of any change order or supplemental agreement which increases the Contract Sum with or without notice to the surety, but in no event shall a change which reduces the Contract Sum reduce the penal amount of such bonds.

11.4.2 The Contractor shall provide good and sufficient performance bond in an amount not less than one hundred (100) percent of the approximate total amount of the Contract, as evidenced by the proposal tabulation, or otherwise guaranteeing the full and faithful execution of the Work and performance of the Contract in accordance with the Contract Documents, including any extensions, for the protection of the Owner. This bond shall provide for the repair and/or replacement of all defects due to faulty materials and workmanship that appear within a period of one year from the date of completion and acceptance of the improvement by the Owner or such lesser or greater period as may be designated in the Contract Documents.

11.4.3 The Contractor shall provide good and sufficient payment bond in an amount not less than

one hundred (100) percent of the approximate total amount of the Contract, as evidenced by the proposal tabulation, or otherwise guaranteeing the full and proper protection of all claimants supplying labor and material in the execution of the Work provided for in this Contract and for the use of each claimant.

11.4.4 No sureties shall be accepted by the Owner who are now in default or delinquent on any bonds or who are interested in any litigation against the Owner. All bonds shall be made on forms furnished by the Owner, and shall be executed by not less than one corporate surety authorized to do business in the State of Texas and acceptable to the Owner. Each bond shall be executed by the Contractor and surety. Each surety shall designate an agent resident in the Owner's jurisdictional area acceptable to the Owner to whom any requisite notices may be delivered and on whom service of process may be obtained in matters arising out of the suretyship.

11.4.5 If at any time the Owner determines that the Contractor's surety has experienced financial losses such that the Owner's ability to enforce the bond obligations is substantially at risk, the Contractor shall within thirty (30) days after notice from the Owner to do so, substitute an acceptable bond (or bonds), or provide an additional bond, in such form and sum and signed by such other surety or sureties as may be satisfactory to the Owner. The premiums on such bonds shall be paid by the Contractor without recourse to the Owner. No further progress payments under the contract shall be deemed due or payable until the substitute or additional bonds shall have been furnished and accepted by the Owner; however, in such event, final payment shall be due and payable as provided in this Contract whether or not such additional bonds are obtained, to the extent that the project is complete and the Owner is not exposed to liability for payment bond claims.

36. Add the following to Section 12.2.2:

12.2.2.4 Upon request by the Owner or prior to the expiration of one year from the date of Substantial Completion, the Architect will conduct and the Contractor shall attend a meeting with the Owner to review the facility operations and performance.

37. Delete Section 13.5 and replace with the following:

13.5 Payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is overdue, at the rate provided by Section 2251.025, Texas Government Code.

38. Add the following new Section 13.6:

13.6 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY

13.6.1 The Contractor shall maintain policies of employment as follows:

13.6.1.1 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, color, sex, or national origin. Contractor shall take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, religion, color, sex, or national origin.

The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants, notices setting forth the nondiscrimination policies.

13.6.1.2 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by them or on their behalf, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, religion, color, sex, or national origin.

39. Add Section 13.7 as follows:

13.7 IMMUNITIES

13.7 Contractor stipulates that Owner is a political subdivision of the State of Texas, and, as such, may enjoy immunities from suit and liability under the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas. By entering into this Agreement, Owner does not waive any of its immunities from suit and/or liability, except as otherwise specifically provided herein and as specifically authorized by law.

40. Amend Section 14.1.3 as follows:

Delete the phrase "as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination" at the end of Section 14.1.13, and replace it with the phrase "through the date of termination."

41. Add the following subsections to Section 14.2.1:

.5 fails to furnish the Owner, upon request, with assurances satisfactory to the Owner, evidencing the Contractor's ability to complete the Work in compliance with all the requirements of the Contract Documents;

.6 engages in conduct that would constitute a violation of state or federal criminal law, including but not limited to, the law prohibiting certain gifts to public servants, or engages in conduct that would constitute a violation of the Owner's ethics or conflict of interest policies; or

.7 fails to proceed continuously and diligently with the construction and completion of the Work; except as permitted under the Contract Documents.

➤ Amend Section 14.3.2 as follows:

Delete "shall" and replace it with "may" after the words "Contract Time".

42. Delete Section 14.4.1 and replace with the following:

14.4.1 The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract, or any part or portion thereof, for the Owner's convenience and without cause.

43. Delete Section 14.4.3 and replace with the following:

14.4.3 In the case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall only be entitled to receive payment for work properly executed through the date of termination.

44. Add the following Section 14.4.4:

14.4.4 Owner shall be entitled to delete or terminate any portion of the Contract bid as an alternate component, at any time at the Owner's convenience and without cause. In the event of such termination, the Contractor shall only be entitled to receive payment for Work executed on the alternate component, if any, through the date of termination.

45. Delete Section 5.1.2 in its entirety.

46. Add the following to Section 15.1.6:

15.1.6.3 Claims for increase in the Contract Time shall set forth in detail the circumstances that form the basis for the Claim, the date upon which each cause of delay began to affect the progress of the Work, the date upon which each cause of delay ceased to affect the progress of the Work and the number of days' increase in the Contract Time claimed as a consequence of each such cause of delay. The Contractor shall provide such supporting documentation as the Owner may require including, where appropriate, a revised construction schedule indicating all the activities affected by the circumstances forming the basis of the Claim.

15.1.6.4 Extension of time for completion of the work on account of weather or other circumstances beyond the Contractor's control will be subject to submission of verifiable data. Request for extension of time shall be submitted in writing with each Request for Payment. If Contractor fails to submit request, time extension will not be approved for the pay period.

15.1.6.5 No extension of time shall be made to the Contractor because of hindrances or delays from any cause which is the fault of Contractor or Contractor's Subcontractors or under Contractor's control. Claims for extension of time may only be considered because of rain delays, or hindrances or delays which are the fault of Owner and/or under Owner's control, but only to the extent that Substantial Completion of the Project is adjusted beyond the original Substantial Completion date. City Council approval shall be required for any extension of time. No damages shall be paid for delays. Contractor shall only be entitled to time extensions per the terms of the Contract Documents.

47. Delete Section 15.3.3 in its entirety.

48. Delete Section 15.4 "Arbitration" in its entirety.

EXECUTED this _____ day of _____, 2019.

OWNER:

By: _____

Title: _____

CONTRACTOR:

By: _____

Title: _____

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

1. ABBREVIATIONS

Whenever the abbreviations defined herein occur on the plans, in the specifications, contract, bonds, advertisement, proposal or in any other document or instrument herein contemplated or to which the specifications apply or may apply, the intent and meaning shall be as shown below.

AASHTO	American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials
Ac.	Acres
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASA	American Standards Association
Asph.	Asphalt
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
AT&SF	Atchison, Topeka and Santa Fe Railroad
Ave.	Avenue
AWS	American Welding Society
AWWA	American Water Works Associations
B/B	Back-of-curb to Back-of-curb
Bldg.	Building
Blvd.	Boulevard
CH	Chord of Curve
CI	Cast Iron
CL	Centerline
CMP	Corrugated Metal Pipe
CO	Cleanout
Conc.	Concrete
Cond.	Conduit
Const.	Construct
Corr.	Corrugated
Cr.	Circle
Ct.	Court
Cu.	Cubic
Culv.	Culvert
CY	Cubic yard
Dia.	Diameter
DPL or DP&L	Dallas Power and Light Company
Dr.	Driveway or Drive
Elev.	Elevation
Esmt.	Easement
Exist. Or EX.	Existing
F	Fahrenheit
F/F	Face-of-curb to Face-of-curb
FH	Fire Hydrant

FL	Flowline
Ft. or ‘	Foot or Feet
Gal.	Gallon
GTE	General Telephone and Electric Company
GV	Gate Valve
Hdwl.	Headwall
HP	Horsepower
Hr.	Hour
ID	Inside Diameter
In. or “	Inch or Inches
L	Length of Curve
Lat.	Lateral
Lb.	Pound
LF	Linear Foot or Feet
Line.	Linear
Ln.	Lane
LSG	Lone Star Gas Company
Max.	Maximum
MH	Manhole
Min.	Minimum
Mono.	Monolithic
NCTCOG	North Central Texas Council of Governments
No.	Number
OD	Outside Diameter
%	Percent
PC	Point of Curvature
PCC	Point of Compound Curvature
PI	Plasticity Index or Point of Intersection
PRC	Point of Reverse Curvature
PSI	Pounds per Square Inch
PT	Point of Tangency
PVC	Polyvinyl Chloride or Point of Vertical Curvature
PVT	Point of Vertical Tangency
R	Radius
RCCP	Reinforced Concrete Cylinder Pipe
RCP	Reinforced Concrete Pipe
Reinf.	Reinforced or Reinforcing
Rem.	Remove
Rep.	Replace
Ret.	Retaining
R/W, R-of-W, or R.O.W.	Right-of-Way Sani, or San. Sanitary
Sec.	Second

SD	Storm Drain
SS	Sanitary Sewer
Sq.	Square
St.	Street or Storm
Sta.	Station
Std.	Standard
SWBT or SWB	Southwestern Bell Telephone Company
SY	Square Yard
T	Tangent Length of Curve
TESCO	Texas Electric Service Company
THD or SDHPT	Texas State Department of Highways and Public Transportation
Tr.	Terrace
UE	Underground Electric Cable
UT	Underground Telephone Cable
VC	Vertical Curve
VCP	Vitrified Clay Pipe
Vert.	Vertical
Vol.	Volume
VPI	Vertical Point of Intersection
W	Water Line
WUT Co.	Western Union Telegraph Company
Yd.	Yard

2. SUBMITTALS

Within ten (10) days after the CONTRACTOR receives a Notice of Award the CONTRACTOR will submit the following schedules in accordance with Paragraph 2.05B of the General Conditions.

- A. An estimated progress schedule showing the estimated starting and completion times, in days, from Notice to Proceed for the major components of the work. Show time for cleanup, and inspection on the schedule.
- B. The CONTRACTOR shall submit a schedule showing the values of the various stages of construction. The percentage of the total project completed and unit prices in the proposal will serve as the schedule of values used to determine partial payments.

Traffic control and sequence of construction plan details.

3. TESTING

All geotechnical testing required shall be provided by the Owner. Contractor shall secure an independent testing laboratory to provide required testing for building related components:

Retests due to original test failure shall be at the CONTRACTOR'S expense. Cleaning, sterilizing, hydrostatic testing, air testing and mandrel testing of water and sanitary sewer lines required by the City of Mansfield shall be performed by and paid for by the CONTRACTOR. The cost for testing paid by the CONTRACTOR should be included in the unit price of the items being tested.

4. UTILITIES

The OWNER will not furnish water for use on this project. It shall be the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR to reimburse the OWNER for all construction related water use, including water required to establish turf grass. The CONTRACTOR shall notify the OWNER to request a meter reading prior to use. The OWNER will not furnish electric power or any other utility required for performance of the work. CONTRACTOR shall furnish these items and the cost thereof included in the related unit prices for the work. The OWNER will furnish electric power and water connection with meter required for performance of the work. All other parts and materials are the responsibility of the CONTRACTOR.

5. SECURITY

The CONTRACTOR will be responsible for the security of his work, materials, equipment, and supplies from the time he is given Notice to Proceed until the OWNER'S final payment and acceptance of the work. Security measures taken by the CONTRACTOR shall not prevent access to the traveling public.

6. DIRT AND DUST CONTROL

It shall be the contractor's continuous responsibility at all times, including nights, holidays, weekends, etc., to maintain all street and pavement in the work area relatively free of dirt and dust in a manner which will not cause inconvenience to the public. Dust control will be achieved by the application of water by sprinkling in amounts sufficient to control dust.

7. EROSION CONTROL AND DRAINAGE

It shall be the CONTRACTOR'S responsibility to maintain adequate temporary surface drainage during construction so as to prevent flooding and nuisance ponding. Where existing grading is disturbed during construction, The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for restoring the original conditions of grade and cross section after the work of construction is completed. The CONTRACTOR shall take all precautions required to prevent soil erosion during the construction. If excessive erosion occurs, the CONTRACTOR shall take immediate measures to prevent further erosion and correct the damages.

The CONTRACTOR and Subcontractor shall execute the sample letter provided in Division 2. The CONTRACTOR shall comply with the requirements of the Pollution Prevention Plans and the final NPDES General permits Regulations for Storm Water

discharges from construction sites. Copies of the NPDES Regulations, NOI form, NOT form, and sample compliance letter is attached in the Division 2.

The CONTRACTOR'S attention is directed to the Code of Federal regulations (CFR) Section 33, Parts 320 through 330 concerning General Regulation Policy of the Corps of Engineers concerning "waters of the United States". The CONTRACTOR, shall avoid releasing excavated or dredged materials, construct coffer dams, or perform the work in a manner which shall violate the applicable CFR regarding 404 Permits such that an additional or separate 404 Permit is required on this project. The cost for any special improvements, or damages assessed by the Corps of Engineers due to the negligent acts of the CONTRACTOR, may be deducted from payments due to the CONTRACTOR by the OWNER.

8. INGRESS AND EGRESS

The CONTRACTOR shall do his utmost to provide ingress and egress to all existing streets and private driveways at all times. Ingress and egress must be maintained, without fail, to adjacent properties during construction.

9. TRAFFIC CONTROL

The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for providing traffic control during the construction of this project consistent with the provisions set forth in the latest publication of the "Texas Manual on Uniform Traffic Control devices for Streets and Highways", issued under the authority of the "State of Texas Uniform Act Regulating Traffic on Highways", codified as Article 6701d, Vernon's Civil Statutes, pertinent sections being Section No.'s 27, 29, 30 and 31.

The CONTRACTOR shall prepare an Alternate Traffic Control Plan with details for each segment or stage of construction, which requires lane closure, re-routing or different controls of traffic. The Traffic Control Plan shall be drawn at a scale not less than 1"=200' unless approved by the City Engineer and such that it is legible and shall include any proposed lane closing, street closings, detours, barricade and cone placements, sign placement, including advance warning signs, and pavement markings if necessary. The Contractor shall furnish and erect suitable barricades, signs, and appropriate pavement markings to protect motorists and pedestrians, as set forth in the latest edition of the TEXAS MANUAL ON UNIFORM TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES. The barricades, signs, and pavement markings shall be constructed, placed and adequately maintained as set forth in the Traffic Control Plan or as directed by the Engineer or his/her authorized representative. Two-way traffic shall be maintained on all roadways at all times unless the closure is specifically approved and acknowledged in writing by the City Engineer. No direct compensation will be made for the traffic control plan or for furnishing, installing and maintaining barricades, signs, pavement markings, and detours and their subsequent removal. The Alternate Traffic Control Plan will be prepared and submitted to the City Engineer prior to the Pre-construction Conference.

The CONTRACTOR will not remove any regulatory sign, instructional sign, street name sign or other sign which has been erected by the City. If it is determined that a sign must be removed to permit required construction the CONTRACTOR shall contact the City of Mansfield to remove the sign.

Payment for work and all associated appurtenances required for traffic control shall be considered as incidental to the cost of the project.

10. TRENCH AND SUBSURFACE CONSTRUCTION

The CONTRACTOR'S attention is directed to Federal Laws contained in the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and the standards and regulations issued thereunder. The CONTRACTOR directed to comply with these and all other applicable federal, state and local laws. It is the CONTRACTOR'S responsibility to instruct his workmen in the proper safety standards and monitor his activities to ensure compliance.

The CONTRACTOR shall provide a trench safety plan which specifically addresses and identifies the trenches to be made on this project and provides the trenching details to provide a safe work place in accordance with state law and OSHA regulations. The trench safety plan shall bear the seal and signature of a registered professional engineer licensed in the state of this project with experience in preparation of trench safety systems. The plan shall include all soils investigation and test data used by the engineer in developing the plan. The CONTRACTOR shall conduct his trenching operations in accordance with this plan. The CONTRACTOR shall be responsible for daily inspection and report documentation of trench conditions and shall provide copies of reports to the ENGINEER on a weekly basis. All costs for implementation of the trench safety plan should be included in the bid item for trench safety.

11. INSPECTION

The CONTRACTOR shall notify the ARCHITECT and the ADMINISTRATIVE REPRESENTATIVE of the City of Mansfield prior to beginning construction and shall keep them informed as to the daily schedule for performance of the work. The inspectors will be available to inspect the work on any working day from 8:00 a.m. to 5:00 p.m. The CONTRACTOR will not perform work that requires inspection at any other times unless he has made prior arrangements with the City of Mansfield.

12. TREES AND SHRUBS

The CONTRACTOR shall not remove any trees or shrubs unless such removal is called for in the plans or written authorization is received from the OWNER. Trees shall not be pruned without permission from the OWNER. Any trees or other landscape features to be restored or replaced at the CONTRACTOR'S expense. Trimming or pruning to facilitate the work will be permitted only by experienced workmen in an approved manner. Pruned limbs of one-inch (1") diameter or larger shall be thoroughly treated as soon as possible with a tree wound dressing.

13. FILL REQUIREMENTS

All earth fill should be placed in loose lifts not exceeding nine inches in uncompacted thickness at a moisture content within five (5%) of optimum. Each lift should be compacted to between 95 to 100 percent (95-100%) maximum as determined in the Standard Proctor Compaction Test and between 90 and 95 percent (90-95%) in parkway. Each lift should be compacted, tested, and approved before another lift is added. The fill should be placed in layers beginning at the low side in part-width layers and increasing the widths as the fill is raised. The layers should be parallel to the finish grade. Proper drainage must be maintained to prevent ponding water.

14. GRASS WORK

Unless specified elsewhere in plans, all areas disturbed during construction will be seeded. or sodded. Any of these areas located within an existing residential neighborhood will be sodded with the same type of grass that was existing before construction began. If questions arise regarding the type of existing grass cover, then Bermuda grass will be used. Sodding, seeding and fertilizing shall be done in accordance with the North Central Texas Council of Governments Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction.

Seeded and sodded areas shall be fertilized with a 16-8-8 (N-P-K) meeting the requirements of the NCTCOG specifications. Application rate of fertilizer shall be as recommended by manufacturer of fertilizer.

The CONTRACTOR shall maintain sodded and seeded areas for a two (2) month period following planting or until the grass has an established minimum height of two inches.

15. EXCESS EXCAVATION MATERIALS

Excess excavation materials from the project shall be disposed legally offsite by the Contractor. Materials unacceptable as fill material, such as rocks, and any construction debris shall be removed from this site and disposed in accordance with City, State and Federal guidelines at an approved location. There will be no separate pay for this work.

16. SUBSIDIARY WORK

Any and all work specifically governed by documentary requirements for the project, such as conditions imposed by the Plans, the General Contract Documents or these Special Documents, in which no specific items for bid has been provided for in the Proposal, shall be considered as a subsidiary item of work, the cost of which shall be included in the price bid in the lump sum Proposal.

17. TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS – Civil Work.

Materials and Method of Construction for all items to be constructed under this contract

shall be in conformance with Division 2 through Division 8 of the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, North Central Texas, published by the NCTCOG unless superseded by City of Mansfield standard details or if work to be completed is within the State right-of-way it shall be in accordance with TxDOT Specifications, latest edition. The standard specifications are included in the Contract Documents by reference. Copies of these specifications are not supplied to the CONTRACTOR. The CONTRACTOR can obtain copies of these specifications from the North Central Council of Governments, P.O. Box Drawer COG, Arlington, Texas 76005-5888, (817) 640-3300.

18. CLEANUP

During the construction the CONTRACTOR shall at all times keep the jobsite free from waste, debris and rubbish and shall maintain a daily routine of cleanup. Upon completion of the work as a whole and prior to final acceptance, the CONTRACTOR shall clean and remove from the site all debris and surplus or discarded materials. He shall leave the site in a neat and orderly condition.

19. CLARIFICATION OF BID ITEMS

See the Bid Proposal and set of plans for list of Bid Items included with this project.



HOUSE BILL 89 VERIFICATION

I, _____, the undersigned representative of
(Individual's Name)

(Business or Company)

hereinafter referred to as "Company", do hereby verify that the company named above, under the provisions of Subtitle F, Title 10, Government Code Chapter 2270:

- 1. Does not boycott Israel currently; and
- 2. Will not boycott Israel during the term of the contract.

Pursuant to Section 2270.01, Texas Government Code:

- 1. "Boycott Israel" means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israel-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes; and
- 2. "Company" means a for-profit sole proprietorship, organization, association, corporation, partnership, joint venture, limited partnership, limited liability partnership, or any limited liability company, including a wholly owned subsidiary, majority-owned subsidiary, parent company or affiliate of those entities or business associations that exist to make a profit.

SIGNATURE OF COMPANY REPRESENTATIVE

PRINTED NAME OF COMPANY REPRESENTATIVE

Date:



SENATE BILL 252 CERTIFICATION

On this date, I, _____, an employee of the City of Mansfield, Texas, pursuant to Texas Government Code, Chapter 2252, Section 2252.152 and Section 2252.153, certify that I did review the website of the Comptroller of the State of Texas concerning the listing of companies that is identified under Section 806.051, Section 807.051 or Section 2253.253, and I have ascertained that the below-named company is not contained on said listing of companies which do business with Iran, Sudan or any Foreign Terrorist Organization.

COMPANY NAME

CONTRACT NUMBER

CERTIFICATION CHECK PERFORMED BY:

EMPLOYEE SIGNATURE

PRINTED NAME OF EMPLOYEE

Date:

CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

FORM CIQ

For vendor or other person doing business with local governmental entity

This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 1491, 80th Leg., Regular Session.

This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code by a person who has a business relationship as defined by Section 176.001(1-a) with a local governmental entity and the person meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).

By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the person becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. See Section 176.006, Local Government Code.

A person commits an offense if the person knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a Class C misdemeanor.

OFFICE USE ONLY

Date Received

1 Name of person who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.

2 Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire.

(The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date the originally filed questionnaire becomes incomplete or inaccurate.)

3 Name of local government officer with whom filer has employment or business relationship.

Name of Officer

This section (item 3 including subparts A, B, C & D) must be completed for each officer with whom the filer has an employment or other business relationship as defined by Section 176.001(1-a), Local Government Code. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.

A. Is the local government officer named in this section receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the filer of the questionnaire?

Yes No

B. Is the filer of the questionnaire receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government officer named in this section AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

Yes No

C. Is the filer of this questionnaire employed by a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership of 10 percent or more?

Yes No

D. Describe each employment or business relationship with the local government officer named in this section.

4

Signature of person doing business with the governmental entity

Date

SECTION 000107
PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

The following specifications sections have been provided by the Architect:

ARCHITECT: KOMATSU ARCHITECTURE
3880 Hulen Street, Suite 300
Fort Worth, Texas 76107
817.710.1394 phone



DIVISION 01 – GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

011000 Summary
012500 Substitution Procedures
012500.13 Substitution Request Form
012600 Contract Modification Procedures
012900 Payment Procedures
013100 Project Management and Coordination
013200 Construction Progress Documentation
013233 Photographic Documentation
013300 Submittal Procedures
013300x Subcontractors and Major Material Suppliers List
014000 Quality Requirements
015000 Temporary Facilities and Controls
015300 Mold Prevention Measures
015713 Erosion and Sedimentation Control
016000 Product Requirements
017300 Execution
017700 Closeout Procedures
017700x Punch List Form
017823 Operation and Maintenance Data
017839 Project Record Documents
017900 Demonstration and Training

DIVISION 02 – EXISTING CONDITIONS

024113 Selective Site Demolition

DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE

033543 Polished Concrete
035416 Hydraulic Cement Underlayment

DIVISION 04 – MASONRY

042000 Unit Masonry
044300 Stone Masonry Veneer
047200 Cast Stone Masonry

DIVISION 05 – METALS

055000 Metal Fabrications
055100 Metal Stairs
055213 Pipe and Tube Railings

DIVISION 06 – WOOD, PLASTICS, AND COMPOSITES

061000 Rough Carpentry
061600 Sheathing
062023 Interior Finish Carpentry
064023 Interior Architectural Woodwork

DIVISION 07 – THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

071900	Water Repellents
072100	Thermal Insulation
072600	Under Slab Vapor Barrier
072726	Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers
074113	Metal Roof Panels
074243	Aluminum Composite Panel System
074646	Fiber Cement Siding
076200	Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
076210	Flexible Flashing
077100	Roof Specialties
078413	Penetration Firestopping
078446	Fire-Resistive Joint Systems
079200	Joint Sealants
079500	Expansion Control

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

081113	Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
081416	Flush Wood Doors
083113	Access Doors and Frames
083613	Sectional Doors
083906	Tornado Resistant Doors and Frames
084113	Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
085113	Aluminum Windows
085653	Security Windows
087100	Door Hardware / Hardware Sets
	Door Hardware Index
088000	Glazing
088300	Mirrors
089000	Louvers and Vents

DIVISION 09 – FINISHES

092216	Non-Structural Metal Framing
092900	Gypsum Board
093013	Ceramic Tiling
095113	Acoustical Panel Ceilings
096116	Concrete Floor Sealing
096513	Resilient Base and Accessories
096519	Resilient Tile Flooring
096813	Tile Carpeting
098116	Acoustical Blanket Insulation
099100	Painting

DIVISION 10 – SPECIALTIES

101100	Visual Display Boards
101400	Signage
102600	Wall and Door Protection
102800	Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories
104413	Fire Protection Cabinets
104416	Fire Extinguishers
105122	Gear Lockers
107500	Flagpoles
109900	Miscellaneous Specialties

DIVISION 11 – EQUIPMENT

113100	Residential Appliances
--------	------------------------

DIVISION 12 – FURNISHINGS

122413	Roller Window Shades
123617	Stainless Steel Countertops
123662	Engineered Surfacing

DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK

313116	Termite Control
315000	Excavation Support and Protection

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS

321714 Precast Concrete Site Accessories
321723 Pavement Markings
323119 Decorative Metal Fences and Gates
323129 Wood Fences and Gates

END OF PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

SECTION 000107
PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

The following specifications have been provided by the Landscape Architect:

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT: **LEEMING DESIGN GROUP**
4913 Rufe Snow Drive, Suite 101b
North Richland Hills, Texas 76180
817.577.0889 phone

DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS
328400 Planting Irrigation
329000 Landscape Planting

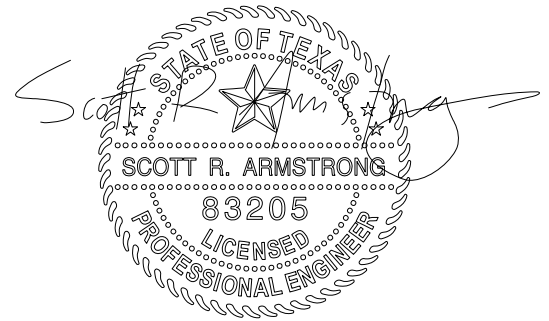


END OF PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

SECTION 000107
PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

The following specifications sections have been provided by the Structural Engineer:

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER: **ARMSTRONG-DOUGLASS PARTNERS**
6060 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, Texas 75206
214.237.7022 phone



11/07/2019

- DIVISION 03 – CONCRETE**
033000 Structural Cast-in-Place Concrete
- DIVISION 04 – MASONRY**
048100 Concrete Masonry Unit Assemblies
- DIVISION 05 – METALS**
051200 Structural Steel
052100 Steel Joists
053100 Steel Decking
054000 Cold-Formed Metal Framing
- DIVISION 31 – EARTHWORK**
316329 Drilled Concrete Piers

END OF PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

DOCUMENT 003132

GEOTECHNICAL DATA

- 1.1 SUMMARY
 - A. This document includes information pertaining to geotechnical data.
- 1.2 INVESTIGATION
 - A. An investigation of subsurface soil conditions at the building site was authorized by the Owner, and was subsequently performed by Alpha Testing, Inc., 5058 Brush Creek Road, Ft. Worth, TX. 76119, report no. W182356, dated October 22, 2018.
- 1.3 REPORT
 - A. The Geotechnical Investigation Report is for information only, and is not a warranty of subsurface conditions.
 - B. The Report is made available for information only, and is not a Contract Document.
 - C. The information contained in the Report represents design criteria, recommendations, and guidelines that were utilized as the basis of design for the engineering of the earthwork operations, paving design, and foundation design indicated in the Contract Documents. No changes in this design criteria will be considered or permitted. Where options are indicated, the options were considered by the respective design team members and implemented in the construction documents.
- 1.4 RESPONSIBILITY
 - A. Bidders are expected to examine the site and subsurface investigation reports and then decide for themselves the character of the materials to be encountered.
 - B. The Architect and Owner assume no responsibility for variations in subsoil conditions, quality, or stability, or for the presence, level, and extent of underground water.
 - C. The Architect and Owner assume no responsibility for Bidder's interpretation of data contained in the Report.

END OF DOCUMENT



GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION

NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5

Southeast Corner of National Parkway and South Holland Road
Mansfield, Texas
ALPHA Report No. W182356
October 22, 2018

Prepared for:

CITY OF MANSFIELD
1200 East Broad Street
Mansfield, Texas 76063
Attention: Mr. Barry Bondurant

Prepared By:



WHERE IT ALL BEGINS

October 22, 2018

City of Mansfield

1200 East Broad Street
Mansfield, Texas 76063

Attention: Mr. Barry Bondurant

Re: Geotechnical Exploration
New Fire Station No. 5
Southeast Corner of National Parkway and South Holland Road
Mansfield, Texas
ALPHA Report No. W182356

Attached is the report of the geotechnical exploration performed for the project referenced above. This study was authorized by Mr. Barry Bondurant on August 24, 2018 and performed in accordance with ALPHA Proposal No. 67025, dated August 23, 2018.

This report contains results of field explorations and laboratory testing and an engineering interpretation of these with respect to available project characteristics. The results and analyses were used to develop design recommendations to aid design and construction of foundations and pavement.

ALPHA TESTING, INC. appreciates the opportunity to be of service on this project. If we can be of further assistance, such as providing material testing services during construction, please contact our office.

Sincerely,

ALPHA TESTING, INC.



October 22, 2018

Oleg Novitchkov, E.I.T.
Geotechnical Project Manager

Brian J. Hoyt, P.E.
Geotechnical Department Manager

ON/BJH/on
Copies: (1-PDF) Client



TABLE OF CONTENTS

ALPHA REPORT NO. W182356

1.0	PURPOSE AND SCOPE.....	1
2.0	PROJECT CHARACTERISTICS	1
3.0	FIELD EXPLORATION	2
4.0	LABORATORY TESTS	2
5.0	GENERAL SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS.....	2
6.0	DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS	3
6.1	Drilled Pier Foundation System.....	3
6.2	Floor Slab for Pier-Supported Structure	4
	6.2.1 Subgrade Improvement Using Moisture-Conditioned Soil.....	5
6.3	Seismic Considerations.....	6
6.4	Flatwork	6
6.5	Area Pavement.....	7
	6.5.1 Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) Pavement	7
	6.5.2 Pavement Subgrade Preparation.....	8
6.6	Drainage and Other Considerations.....	8
7.0	GENERAL CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES AND GUIDELINES.....	9
7.1	Site Preparation and Grading.....	9
7.2	Foundation Excavations.....	11
7.3	Fill Compaction	12
7.4	Groundwater	13
8.0	LIMITATIONS.....	13

APPENDIX

A-1	Methods of Field Exploration Boring Location Plan – Figure 1
B-1	Methods of Laboratory Testing Swell Test Results – Figure 2 Logs of Borings Key to Soil Symbols and Classifications



1.0 PURPOSE AND SCOPE

The purpose of this geotechnical exploration is for ALPHA TESTING, INC. (ALPHA) to evaluate for the Client some of the physical and engineering properties of subsurface materials at selected locations on the subject site with respect to formulation of appropriate geotechnical design parameters for the proposed construction. The field exploration was accomplished by securing subsurface samples from widely spaced test borings performed across the expanse of the site. Engineering analyses were performed from results of the field exploration and results of laboratory tests performed on representative samples.

Also included are general comments pertaining to reasonably anticipated construction problems and recommendations concerning earthwork and quality control testing during construction. This information can be used to evaluate subsurface conditions and to aid in ascertaining construction meets project specifications.

Recommendations provided in this report were developed from information obtained in test borings depicting subsurface conditions only at the specific boring locations and at the particular time designated on the logs. Subsurface conditions at other locations may differ from those observed at the boring locations, and subsurface conditions at boring locations may vary at different times of the year. The scope of work may not fully define the variability of subsurface materials and conditions that are present on the site.

The nature and extent of variations between borings may not become evident until construction. If significant variations then appear evident, our office should be contacted to re-evaluate our recommendations after performing on-site observations and possibly other tests.

2.0 PROJECT CHARACTERISTICS

It is proposed to construct a single-story fire station with a plan area of about 11,500 SF with associated parking and drives on a tract of land located on the southeast corner of National Parkway and South Holland Road in Mansfield, Texas. Future plans could also include a second garage in the southeast corner of the property. A site plan illustrating the general outline of the property is provided as Figure 1, the Boring Location Plan, in the Appendix.

At the time of the field exploration, the site was a vacant grassy tract of land. Review of topographical maps available at www.dfwmaps.com indicates the site is relatively level. Grading plans were not provided for this study. For the purpose of our analysis, we have assumed cuts and fill of up to 2 ft will be required to achieve final grade within the building pad area. No information regarding previous earthwork on site was provided to us at the time of our study.

We understand the new structure will be designed for potential seasonal movement of about 1 inch. No below grade slabs are planned. The pavement for the project will consist of Portland cement concrete (PCC).



3.0 FIELD EXPLORATION

Subsurface conditions on the site were explored by drilling two (2) test borings to a depth of about 45 ft and one (1) test boring to a depth of about 25 ft for the building and two (2) test borings to a depth of about 5 ft for the pavement. The borings were drilled in general accordance with ASTM Standard D 420 using standard rotary drilling equipment. The approximate location of each test boring is shown on the Boring Location Plan, Figure 1, enclosed in the Appendix. Details of drilling and sampling operations are briefly summarized in Methods of Field Exploration, Section A-1 of the Appendix.

Subsurface types encountered during the field exploration are presented on Log of Boring sheets included in the Appendix. The boring logs contain our Field Technician's and Engineer's interpretation of conditions believed to exist between actual samples retrieved. Therefore, these boring logs contain both factual and interpretive information. Lines delineating subsurface strata on the boring logs are approximate and the actual transition between strata may be gradual.

4.0 LABORATORY TESTS

Selected samples of the subsurface materials were tested in the laboratory to evaluate their engineering properties as a basis in providing recommendations for foundation design and earthwork construction. A brief description of testing procedures used in the laboratory can be found in Methods of Laboratory Testing, Section B-1 of the Appendix. Individual test results are presented on Log of Boring sheets or on summary data sheets enclosed in the Appendix.

5.0 GENERAL SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS

Based on geological atlas maps available from the Bureau of Economic Geology, published by the University of Texas at Austin, the project site lies within the Eagle Ford formation. The Eagle Ford formation is composed predominantly of shale with occasional platy beds of sandstone and limestone. Residual overburden soils associated with the Eagle Ford formation generally consist of clay soils with moderate to very high shrink/swell potential.

Subsurface conditions encountered in Borings 1 and 2 generally consisted of clay to depths of about 13 ft and 10 ft below the ground surface, respectively, underlain by alternating layers of clayey sand, clayey gravel, sandy clay and/or clay to depths of about 18 ft and 15 ft. Shale was then encountered which extended to the 45 ft termination depth of the borings. Clay and shaly clay were encountered in Boring 3, 4 and 5 extending to the respective termination depths (25 ft and 5 ft) of the borings. More detailed stratigraphic information is presented on the Log of Boring sheets attached to this report.

The granular materials (clayey sand and clayey gravel) encountered in Borings 1 and 2 are considered relatively permeable and are expected to have a relatively rapid response to water movement. However, the clay, sandy clay, shaly clay and shale encountered in the borings are considered relatively impermeable and are anticipated to have a relatively slow response to water movement. Therefore, several days of observation would be required to evaluate actual groundwater levels within the depths explored. Also, the groundwater level at the subject site is anticipated to fluctuate seasonally depending on the amount of rainfall, prevailing weather conditions, and subsurface drainage characteristics.



Free groundwater was encountered in Borings 1, 2, and 3 on drilling tools at depths of about 11 ft to 14 ft below the ground surface. Groundwater was also observed in Borings 1, 2, and 3 immediately upon completion of the drilling, at depths of about 10 ft to 11 ft. It is common to encounter seasonal groundwater in granular materials, from fractures within the clayey matrix, at the soil/rock (shale) interface or from fractures in the rock, particularly during or after periods of precipitation. If more detailed groundwater information is required, monitoring wells or piezometers can be installed.

Further details concerning subsurface materials and conditions encountered can be obtained from the boring logs provided in the Appendix of this report.

6.0 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS

The following design recommendations were developed on the basis of the previously described Project Characteristics (Section 2.0) and General Subsurface Conditions (Section 5.0). If project criteria should change, including structure locations on the site, our office should conduct a review to determine if modifications to the recommendations are required. Further, it is recommended our office be provided with a copy of the final plans and specifications for review prior to construction.

The following design criteria were developed assuming the finish building pad elevation is constructed within 2 ft of existing grade as encountered during drilling. Cutting and filling on the site more than 2 ft can alter the recommended foundation design parameters. Therefore, it is recommended our office be contacted before performing other cutting and filling on site to verify the appropriate design parameters are utilized for final foundation design.

6.1 Drilled Pier Foundation System

Our findings indicate the structural frame and walls of the proposed building could be supported using a system of drilled, straight-shaft piers bearing at least 3 ft into gray shale. Deeper penetrations will be required to develop skin friction and/or uplift resistance. Gray shale was encountered at a depth of about 28 ft below existing grade in Borings 1 and 2.

Layers of clayey sand and clayey gravel were encountered in Borings 1 and 2 below depths of about 13 ft and 10 ft, respectively. Groundwater was also encountered at depths of about 10 ft to 14 ft below the ground surface in Borings 1, 2 and 3. Due to the presence of granular soils and groundwater, we expect casing will be required to install drilled piers. We recommend test piers be performed outside the building pad area prior to construction to verify groundwater conditions and constructability of drilled piers.

Drilled piers bearing in gray shale can be dimensioned using the net allowable end-bearing pressure and skin friction values in Table A.



	End Bearing (kips per sq ft)	Skin Friction (kips per sq ft)	Resistance to Uplift (kips per sq ft)
Gray shale (neglecting upper 3 ft)	25	3.5	2.7

The skin friction component should be applied only to the portion of the shaft located in shale, neglecting the upper 3 ft of shale and the portion above the bottom of any temporary casing. The minimum clear spacing between piers should be at least two (2) pier shaft diameters to develop the full load carrying capacity from skin friction. The recommended bearing pressure contains a factor of safety of at least three (3) considering a general bearing capacity failure and the skin friction values have a factor of safety of at least two (2). Normal elastic settlement of piers under loading is estimated at less than about 4 inch.

Each pier should be designed with sufficient full-length reinforcing steel and a sufficient embedment into the gray shale to resist the uplift pressure (soil-to-pier adhesion) due to potential soil swell along the shaft from post construction heave and other uplift forces applied by structural loadings. The magnitude of uplift adhesion due to soil swell along the pier shaft cannot be defined accurately and can vary according to the actual in-place moisture content of the soils during construction. It is estimated this uplift adhesion will not exceed about 2.2 kips per sq ft. This soil adhesion is approximated to act uniformly over the portion of the pier shaft in contact with clayey soils within 12 ft of final grade. The uplift adhesion due to soil swell can be neglected over the portion of the shaft in contact with any non-expansive material used in the building pad. A reduced uplift adhesion value of 1.2 kips per sq ft can be use for piers in contact with moisture conditioned soil.

All grade beams connecting piers should be formed and not cast in earthen trenches. Grade beams should be formed with a nominal 12-inch void at the bottom. Commercially available cardboard box forms (cartons) are made for this purpose. The cardboard cartons should extend the full length and width of the grade beams. Prior to concrete placement, cartons should be inspected to verify they are firm, properly placed, and capable of supporting wet concrete. Some type of permanent soil retainer, such as pre-cast concrete panels, must be provided to prevent soils adjacent to grade beams from sloughing into the void space at the bottom of the grade beams. Additionally, backfill soils placed adjacent to grade beams must be compacted as outlined in Section 7.3 of this report.

6.2 Floor Slab for Pier-Supported Structure

Our findings indicate the floor slab constructed within 2 ft of the existing ground surface could experience soil-related potential seasonal movements of about 6 inches due to shrinking and swelling of active clay soils.

Potential seasonal movements were estimated in general accordance with methods outlined by Texas Department of Transportation (TxDOT) Test Method Tex-124-E, from results of absorptions swell tests and engineering judgement and experience. Estimated movements were calculated assuming the moisture content of the in-situ soil within the normal zone of seasonal moisture content change varies between a "current" condition and a "wet" condition as defined by Tex-124-E. Also, it was assumed a 1 psi surcharge load from the floor slab and/or flatwork acts



on the subgrade soils. Movements exceeding our estimates could occur if positive drainage of surface water is not maintained or if soils are subject to an outside water source, such as leakage from a utility line or subsurface moisture migration from off-site locations

In view of estimated potential seasonal movements, the most positive floor system is a slab suspended completely above the existing expansive clayey soils. At least 12 inches of void space should be provided between the bottom of the lowest hanging beam or utility and top surface of the underlying expansive soils. Cardboard carton forms or a deeper crawl space can be used to create the minimum void space. A ventilated crawl space is preferred. Provisions should be made for (a) adequate drainage of the under-floor space and (b) differential movement of utility lines, including areas where the utility penetrates through the grade beam and/or where the utility penetrates below grade areas.

If a soil-supported floor slab is used for the building, consideration should be given to a "floating" (fully ground supported, and not structurally connected to walls or foundations) floor slab. This can reduce the risk of cracking and displacement of the floor slab due to differential movements between the slab and foundations. A floor slab doveled into perimeter grade beams can develop a plastic hinge (crack) parallel to and approximately 5 to 10 ft inside the building perimeter. Differential movements can still occur between the grade beam and a "floating" floor slab. The structural engineer should determine the need for connections between the slab and structural elements and determine if control joints to limit cracking are needed. A properly designed and constructed moisture barrier should be placed between the slab and subgrade soils to retard moisture migration through the slab.

We understand it could be desired to reduce potential seasonal movements of the grade supported floor slab to about 1 inch. Potential seasonal movement can be reduced to about 1 inch by placing a 2 ft cap of non-expansive fill material below the bottom of the floor slab in conjunction with moisture conditioned soils extending to a depth of 10 ft below the bottom of the non-expansive fill. Moisture conditioning procedures are discussed in more detail in Section 6.2.1. Non-expansive fill could consist of select fill or flexible base material and is described in Section 7.3. In choosing this method of floor slab movement reduction, the Owner is accepting some post construction seasonal movement of the floor slab (about 1 inch).

Granular soil layers could complicate water pressure injection at this site. Our office should be contacted if recommendations for water pressure injection are desired.

6.2.1 Subgrade Improvement Using Moisture-Conditioned Soil

Movement of the floor slab could be reduced to about 1 inch by placing at least 2 ft of non-expansive fill (select fill or flexible base) between the bottom of the floor slab and the top surface of moisture-conditioned on-site clay soils. The moisture conditioned clays should extend to a depth of 10 ft below the bottom of the non-expansive fill.

Moisture-conditioning consists of over-excavating the site soils, then processing and compacting the specified minimum thickness of soil at a "target" moisture content approximated to be at least 5 percentage points above the material's optimum moisture content as determined by the standard Proctor method (ASTM D 698). The moisture-conditioned soil should be placed in 8-in thick loose lifts and compacted to a dry density of 93 to 97 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density. Moisture conditioning of



the on-site soil should extend throughout the entire building pad area and, at least 5 ft beyond the perimeter of the building and below any adjacent flatwork for which it is desired to reduce movements. In entrance areas, the moisture conditioning process should extend at least 10 ft beyond the perimeter of the building. However, select, non-expansive material should not extend beyond the building limits. If flatwork or paving is not planned adjacent to the structures (i.e. above the moisture-conditioned soils), a moisture barrier consisting of a minimum of 10 mil plastic sheeting with 8 to 12 inches of soil cover should be provided above the moisture conditioned soils. Moisture-conditioned soils should be maintained in a moist condition prior to placement of the required thickness of non-expansive material, plastic sheeting or flatwork.

The resulting estimated potential seasonal movement (about 1 inch) was calculated assuming the moisture content of the moisture-conditioned soil varies between the “target” moisture content and the “wet” condition, while the deeper undisturbed in-situ soil within the normal zone of seasonal moisture content change varies between the “dry” condition and the “wet” condition as defined by methods outlined in Texas Department of Transportation Test Method Tex-124-E.

The purpose of moisture-conditioning is to reduce the free swell potential of the moisture-conditioned soil to 1 percent or less. Additional laboratory tests (i.e., standard Proctors tests, absorption swell tests, etc.) should be conducted during construction to verify the “target” moisture content for moisture-conditioning (estimated at 4 percentage points above the material’s standard Proctor optimum moisture content) is sufficient to reduce the free swell potential of the processed soil to 1 percent or less. In addition, it is recommended samples of the moisture-conditioned material be routinely obtained during construction to verify the free swell of the improved material is 1 percent or less.

Installation of moisture-conditioned clays should be monitored and tested on a full-time basis by a representative of ALPHA, to verify the soils tested were placed with the proper lift thickness, moisture content, and degree of compaction.

6.3 Seismic Considerations

The Site Class for seismic design is based on several factors that include soil profile (soil or rock), shear wave velocity, and strength, averaged over a depth of 100 ft. Since our borings did not extend to 100-foot depths, we based our determinations on the assumption that the subsurface materials below the bottom of the borings were similar to those encountered at the termination depth of the borings. Based on Section 1613.3.2 of the 2012 International Building Code and Table 20.3-1 in the 2010 ASCE-7, we recommend using Site Class C (very dense soil and soft rock) for seismic design at this site.

6.4 Flatwork

Flatwork, pavement and any other soil-supported structural elements will be subjected to the same level of movement as discussed in Section 6.2 (about 6 inches). If this level of movement is not acceptable, flatwork could be supported on drilled pier foundations as described in Section 6.1. As an alternative, subgrade improvements consisting of moisture conditioning as described in Section 6.2.1 could be considered for reduction in soil movements in any areas where post-construction movements are critical.



6.5 Area Pavement

To permit correlation between information from test borings and actual subgrade conditions exposed during construction, a qualified Geotechnical Engineer should be retained to provide subgrade monitoring and testing during construction. If there is any change in project criteria, the recommendations contained in this report should be reviewed by our office.

Calculations used to determine the required pavement thickness are based only on the physical and engineering properties of the materials used and conventional thickness determination procedures. Pavement joining buildings should be constructed with a curb and the joint between the building and curb should be sealed. Related civil design factors such as subgrade drainage, shoulder support, cross-sectional configurations, surface elevations, reinforcing steel, joint design and environmental factors will significantly affect the service life and must be included in preparation of the construction drawings and specifications, but all were not included in the scope of this study. Normal periodic maintenance will be required for all pavement to achieve the design life of the pavement system.

Please note, the recommended pavement sections provided below are considered the minimum necessary to provide satisfactory performance based on the expected traffic loading. In some cases, City minimum standards for pavement section construction may exceed those provided below.

6.5.1 Portland Cement Concrete (PCC) Pavement

Following subgrade improvement as recommended in Section 6.5.1, PCC (reinforced) pavement sections are recommended in Table B.

Paving Areas and/or Type	Subgrade Thickness, Inches	PCC Thickness, Inches	WinPAS ESAL Estimate
Light Duty (passenger vehicle traffic only)	Scarified and Compacted (native), 6	5	130,000
Apparatus and Dumpster Traffic	Lime Stabilized, 6	8	2,800,000

Please note; if traffic volumes exceed the values in Table B, our office should be contacted to re-evaluate the recommended pavement sections.

Lime stabilization of the pavement subgrade is not necessary for pavements subjected *exclusively* to passenger vehicle traffic, although lime stabilization in these areas would be generally beneficial to the long-term performance of the pavement and improve constructability. Prior to construction of pavement on native clay subgrade soil, the exposed subgrade should be scarified to a depth of at least 6 inches and compacted to at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within the range of -1 to +3 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture content.



Portland cement concrete should have a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 lbs per sq inch (psi) at 28 days in parking areas subjected exclusively to passenger vehicle traffic. We recommend a minimum compressive strength of 3,500 lbs per sq inch (psi) at 28 days for the street, drive lanes, fire lanes, and truck areas. Concrete should be designed with 5 ± 1 percent entrained air. Joints in concrete paving should not exceed 15 ft. Reinforcing steel should consist of No. 3 bars placed at 18 inches on-center in two directions.

As an alternative, mechanical lime stabilization of the pavement subgrade could be eliminated by increasing the PCC thickness in the pavement sections presented in Table B by 1 inch. Prior to construction of pavement on untreated clay subgrade soil, the exposed subgrade should be scarified to a depth of at least 6 inches and compacted to at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within the range of -1 to +3 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture content.

6.5.2 Pavement Subgrade Preparation

After final subgrade elevation is achieved, the exposed surface of the pavement subgrade soil should be scarified to a depth of 6 inches and mixed with a minimum of 8 percent hydrated lime (by dry soil weight) in conformance with TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 260. Assuming an in-place unit weight of 100 pcf for the pavement subgrade soils, this percentage of lime equates to about 36 lbs of lime per sq yard of treated subgrade. The actual amount of lime required should be confirmed by additional laboratory tests (ASTM C 977 Appendix XI) prior to construction. In all areas where hydrated lime is used to treat subgrade soil, routine Atterberg-limit tests should be performed to verify the resulting plasticity index of the soil-lime mixture is at/or below 15.

The soil-lime mixture should be compacted to at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within the range of 0 to +4 percentage points of the mixture's optimum moisture content.

It is recommended lime stabilization procedures extend at least 1 ft beyond the edge of the pavement to reduce effects of seasonal shrinking and swelling upon the extreme edges of pavement. Mechanical lime treatment of the pavement subgrade soil will not prevent normal seasonal movement of the underlying untreated materials. Pavement and other flatwork will have the same potential for movement as slabs constructed directly on the existing undisturbed soils. Good surface drainage and perimeter drainage with a minimum slope of 2 percent away from the pavement is recommended. The use of sand as a leveling course below pavement supported on expansive clays should be avoided. Normal maintenance of pavement should be expected over the life of the structures.

6.6 Drainage and Other Considerations

Adequate drainage should be provided to reduce seasonal variations in the moisture content of foundation soils. All pavement and sidewalks within 5 ft of the structures should be sloped away from the buildings to prevent ponding of water around the foundations. Final grades within 5 ft of the structures should be adjusted to slope away from the structures at a minimum slope of 2 percent. Maintaining positive surface drainage throughout the life of the structures is essential.



In areas with pavement or sidewalks adjacent to the new structures, a positive seal must be maintained between the structure and the pavement or sidewalk to minimize seepage of water into the underlying supporting soils. Post-construction movement of pavement and flat-work is common. Normal maintenance should include examination of all joints in paving and sidewalks, etc. as well as re-sealing where necessary.

Several factors relate to civil and architectural design and/or maintenance, which can significantly affect future movements of the foundation and floor slab system:

- Preferably, a complete system of gutters and downspouts should carry runoff water a minimum of 5 feet from the completed structures.
- Large trees and shrubs should not be allowed closer to the foundations than a horizontal distance equal to roughly one-half of their mature height due to their significant moisture demand upon maturing.
- Moisture conditions should be maintained "constant" around the edge of the slabs. Ponding of water in planters, in unpaved areas, and around joints in paving and sidewalks can cause slab movements beyond those predicted in this report.
- Planter box structures placed adjacent to the buildings should be provided with a means to assure concentrations of water are not available to the subsoil stratigraphy.

Trench backfill for utilities should be properly placed and compacted as outlined in Section 7.3 and in accordance with requirements of local City standards. Since granular bedding backfill is used for most utility lines, the backfilled trench should not become a conduit and allow access for surface or subsurface water to travel toward the new structures. Concrete cut-off collars or clay plugs should be provided where utility lines cross building lines to prevent water from traveling in the trench backfill and entering beneath the structures.

7.0 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES AND GUIDELINES

Variations in subsurface conditions could be encountered during construction. To permit correlation between test boring data and actual subsurface conditions encountered during construction, it is recommended a registered Professional Engineering firm be retained to observe construction procedures and materials.

Some construction problems, particularly degree or magnitude, cannot be anticipated until the course of construction. The recommendations offered in the following paragraphs are intended not to limit or preclude other conceivable solutions, but rather to provide our observations based on our experience and understanding of the project characteristics and subsurface conditions encountered in the borings.

7.1 Site Preparation and Grading

All areas supporting floor slabs, pavement, flatwork, or areas to receive new fill should be properly prepared.



- After completion of the necessary stripping, clearing, and excavating and prior to placing any required fill, the exposed soil subgrade should be carefully evaluated by probing and testing. Any undesirable material (organic material, wet, soft, or loose soil) still in place should be removed.
- The exposed soil subgrade should be further evaluated by proof-rolling with a heavy pneumatic tired roller, loaded dump truck or similar equipment weighing approximately 20 tons to check for pockets of soft or loose material hidden beneath a thin crust of possibly better soil.
- Proof-rolling procedures should be observed routinely by a Professional Engineer, or his designated representative. Any undesirable material (organic material, wet, soft, or loose soil) exposed during the proof-roll should be removed and replaced with well-compacted material as outlined in Section 7.3.
- Prior to placement of any fill, the exposed soil subgrade should then be scarified to a minimum depth of 6 inches and recompacted as outlined in Section 7.3.

If fill is to be placed on existing slopes (natural or constructed) steeper than six horizontal to one vertical (6:1), the fill materials should be benched into the existing slopes in such a manner as to provide a minimum bench-key width of five (5) ft. This should provide a good contact between the existing soils and new fill materials, reduce potential sliding planes, and allow relatively horizontal lift placements.

Even if fill is properly compacted, fills in excess of about 10 ft are still subject to settlements over time of up to about 1 to 2 percent of the total fill thickness. This should be considered when designing utility lines under pavement or other deep fills.

Slope stability analysis of embankments (natural or constructed) was not within the scope of this study.

The contractor is responsible for designing any excavation slopes, temporary sheeting or shoring. Design of these structures should include any imposed surface surcharges. Construction site safety is the sole responsibility of the contractor, who shall also be solely responsible for the means, methods and sequencing of construction operations. The contractor should also be aware that slope height, slope inclination or excavation depths (including utility trench excavations) should in no case exceed those specified in local, state and/or federal safety regulations, such as OSHA Health and Safety Standard for Excavations, 29 CFR Part 1926, or successor regulations. Stockpiles should be placed well away from the edge of the excavation and their heights should be controlled so they do not surcharge the sides of the excavation. Surface drainage should be carefully controlled to prevent flow of water over the slopes and/or into the excavations. Construction slopes should be closely observed for signs of mass movement, including tension cracks near the crest or bulging at the toe. If potential stability problems are observed, a geotechnical engineer should be contacted immediately. Shoring, bracing or underpinning required for the project (if any) should be designed by a professional engineer registered in the State of Texas.



Due to the nature of the clay soils found near the surface at the borings, traffic of heavy equipment (including heavy compaction equipment) may create pumping and general deterioration of shallow soils. Therefore, some construction difficulties should be anticipated during periods when these soils are saturated.

7.2 Foundation Excavations

All foundation excavations should be properly monitored to verify loose, soft, or otherwise unsuitable material are removed. All foundation excavations should be monitored to verify foundations bear on suitable material. The bearing stratum exposed in the base of all foundation excavations should be protected against any detrimental change in conditions. Surface runoff water should be drained away from excavations and not allowed to collect. All concrete for foundations should be placed as soon as practical after the excavation is made. Piers should be excavated and concrete placed the same day.

Prolonged exposure of the bearing surface to air or water will result in changes in strength and compressibility of the bearing stratum. Therefore, if delays occur, straight-shaft pier excavations should be slightly enlarged and deepened, or a new design penetration made in order to provide a fresh bearing surface.

All pier shafts should be at least 1.5 ft in diameter for pier stability considerations, to facilitate clean-out of the base and for proper monitoring. Concrete placed in pier holes should be directed through a tremie, hopper, or equivalent. Placement of concrete should be vertical through the center of the shaft without hitting the sides of the pier or reinforcement to reduce the possibility of segregation of aggregates. Concrete placed in piers should have a minimum slump of 5 inches (but not greater than 7 inches) to avoid potential honey-combing.

Observations during pier drilling should include, but not necessarily be limited to, the following items:

- Verification of proper bearing strata and consistency of subsurface stratification with regard to boring logs,
- Confirmation the minimum required penetration into the bearing strata is achieved,
- Complete removal of cuttings from bottom of pier holes,
- Proper handling of any observed water seepage and sloughing of subsurface materials,
- No more than 2 inches of standing water should be permitted in the bottom of pier holes prior to placing concrete, and
- Verification of pier diameter and steel reinforcement.

Groundwater was encountered in the borings at depths of about 10 ft to 14 ft below the ground surface. In addition, granular soils were encountered in Borings 1 and 2 below 10 ft of the ground surface. Groundwater and/or caving granular soils should be expected during pier installation. Temporary casing will be required to prevent sloughing of granular soils and/or to control water



seepage during pier drilling. Casing should be seated below the depth of seepage. As casing is extracted, care should be taken to maintain a positive head of plastic concrete and minimize the potential for intrusion of water seepage or sloughing of sandy soils. It is recommended a separate bid item be provided for casing on the contractors' bid schedule. Adjustments in the depths of the piers should be observed in the field by ALPHA personnel.

7.3 Fill Compaction

Select Fill (Non-Expansive Fill): Select fill used as non-expansive fill should have a liquid limit less than 35, a plasticity index (PI) not less than 4 nor greater than 15. Select fill should not contain deleterious material and debris. Select fill should be compacted to a dry density of at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within the range of -1 to +3 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture content. The plasticity index and liquid limit of material used as select, non-expansive fill should be verified during fill placement using laboratory tests. Atterberg limits tests to verify the select, non-expansive fill shall be performed at a frequency of at least one test per 2 feet of thickness per 5,000 square feet. Atterberg limits shall be staggered between various lifts within each 5,000 square feet.

Flexible Base Material (Non-Expansive Fill): Flexible base material used as non-expansive fill for the building pad area should meet the requirements of TxDOT Item 247, Type A or D, Grade 1-2. The material should be compacted to a minimum 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within -2 to +3 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture content.

The following recommendations pertain to fill placement and compaction for general site grading outside the building pad area. Moisture conditioned fill placed within the building pad areas should conform to the requirements in Section 6.2.

Clay soils used for general fill with a plasticity index equal to or greater than 25 should be compacted to a dry density between 93 and 98 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698). The compacted moisture content of the clays during placement should be within the range of +2 to +6 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture.

Clayey soils used for general fill with a plasticity index less than 25 should be compacted to a dry density of at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698). The compacted moisture content of the clays during placement should be within the range of -1 to +3 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture.

Clay fill should be processed and the largest particle or clod should be less than 6 inches prior to compaction.

In cases where either mass fills or utility lines are more than 10 ft deep, the fill/backfill below 10 ft should be compacted to at least 98 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within - 2 to +2 percentage points of the material's optimum moisture content. The portion of the fill/backfill shallower than 10 ft should be compacted as outlined herein.

Compaction should be accomplished by placing fill in about 8-inch thick loose lifts and compacting each lift to at least the specified minimum dry density. Field density and moisture content tests should be performed on each lift.



7.4 Groundwater

Groundwater was encountered in the borings at depths of about 10 ft to 14 ft below the ground surface. From our experience, shallower groundwater seepage could be encountered in excavations for foundations, utilities and other general excavations at this site. The risk of seepage increases with depth of excavation and during or after periods of precipitation. Standard sump pits and pumping may be adequate to control seepage on a local basis.

Where groundwater is encountered in granular soils, sump pits may not be adequate to control seepage and supplemental dewatering measures may be necessary to control groundwater seepage. Supplemental dewatering measures include (but are not limited to) submersible pumps in slotted casings and well points.

In any areas where cuts made, attention should be given to possible seasonal water seepage that could occur through natural cracks and fissures in the newly exposed stratigraphy. In these areas subsurface drains may be required to intercept seasonal groundwater seepage. The need for these or other dewatering devices should be carefully addressed during construction. Our office could be contacted to visually observe final grades to evaluate the need for such drains.

8.0 LIMITATIONS

Professional services provided in this geotechnical exploration were performed, findings obtained, and recommendations prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices. The scope of services provided herein does not include an environmental assessment of the site or investigation for the presence or absence of hazardous materials in the soil, surface water or groundwater. ALPHA, upon written request, can be retained to provide these services.

ALPHA is not responsible for conclusions, opinions or recommendations made by others based on this data. Information contained in this report is intended for the exclusive use of the Client (and their designated design representatives), and is related solely to design of the specific structures outlined in Section 2.0. No party other than the Client (and their designated design representatives) shall use or rely upon this report in any manner whatsoever unless such party shall have obtained ALPHA's written acceptance of such intended use. Any such third party using this report after obtaining ALPHA's written acceptance shall be bound by the limitations and limitations of liability contained herein, including ALPHA's liability being limited to the fee paid to it for this report. Recommendations presented in this report should not be used for design of any other structures except those specifically described in this report. In all areas of this report in which ALPHA may provide additional services if requested to do so in writing, it is presumed that such requests have not been made if not evidenced by a written document accepted by ALPHA. Further, subsurface conditions can change with passage of time. Recommendations contained herein are not considered applicable for an extended period of time after the completion date of this report. It is recommended our office be contacted for a review of the contents of this report for construction commencing more than one (1) year after completion of this report. Non-compliance with any of these requirements by the Client or anyone else shall release ALPHA from any liability resulting from the use of, or reliance upon, this report.



Recommendations provided in this report are based on our understanding of information provided by the Client about characteristics of the project. If the Client notes any deviation from the facts about project characteristics, our office should be contacted immediately since this may materially alter the recommendations. Further, ALPHA is not responsible for damages resulting from workmanship of designers or contractors. It is recommended the Owner retain qualified personnel, such as a Geotechnical Engineering firm, to verify construction is performed in accordance with plans and specifications.



APPENDIX



A-1 METHODS OF FIELD EXPLORATION

Using standard rotary drilling equipment, a total of five (5) test borings were performed for this geotechnical exploration at the approximate locations shown on the Boring Location Plan, Figure 1. The boring locations were staked by using a handheld GPS device or by pacing/taping and estimating right angles from landmarks which could be identified in the field and as shown on the site plan provided during this study. The locations of the test borings shown on the Boring Location Plan are considered accurate only to the degree implied by the methods used to define them.

Relatively undisturbed samples of the cohesive subsurface materials were obtained by hydraulically pressing 3-inch O.D. thin-wall sampling tubes into the underlying soils at selected depths (ASTM D 1587). These samples were removed from the sampling tubes in the field and evaluated visually. One representative portion of each sample was sealed in a plastic bag for use in future visual evaluation and possible testing in the laboratory.

The Texas Cone Penetration (TCP) test was used to assess the apparent in-place strength characteristics of the rock type materials. The TCP test consists of a 3-inch diameter steel cone driven by a 170-pound hammer dropped 24 inches (340 ft-pounds of energy) and is the basis for TxDOT strength correlations. Depending on the resistance (strength) of the materials, either the number of blows of the hammer required to provide 12 inches of penetration, or the inches of penetration of the cone due to 100 blows of the hammer are recorded on the field logs and are shown on the Log of Boring sheets as “TX Cone” (reference: TxDOT Test Method TEX 132-E).

Logs of the borings are included in the Appendix. The logs show visual descriptions of subsurface strata encountered using the Unified Soil Classification System. Sampling information, pertinent field data, and field observations are also included. Samples not consumed by testing will be retained in our laboratory for at least 14 days and then discarded unless the Client requests otherwise.

NATIONAL PARKWAY



SOUTH HOLLAND ROAD



GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION
NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5
SEC NATIONAL PARKWAY AND SOUTH HOLLAND ROAD
MANSFIELD, TEXAS
ALPHA PROJECT NO. W182356



 APPROXIMATE BORING LOCATION

FIGURE 1

BORING LOCATION PLAN



B-1 METHODS OF LABORATORY TESTING

Representative samples were evaluated and classified by a qualified member of the Geotechnical Division and the boring logs were edited as necessary. To aid in classifying the subsurface materials and to determine the general engineering characteristics, natural moisture content tests (ASTM D 2216), Atterberg-limit tests (ASTM D 4318), percent material passing the No. 200 sieve tests (ASTM D 1140) and dry unit weight determinations were performed on selected samples. In addition, unconfined compressive strength tests (ASTM D 21166) and pocket-penetrometer tests were conducted on selected soil samples to evaluate soil shear strength. Results of the laboratory tests described above are provided on the Log of Boring sheets.

In addition to the Atterberg-limit tests, the expansive properties of the clay soils were further analyzed by absorption swell tests in general accordance with ASTM D 4546. The swell test is performed by placing a selected sample in a consolidation machine and applying either the approximate current or expected overburden pressure and then allowing the sample to absorb water. When the sample exhibits very little tendency for further expansion, the height increase is recorded and the percent free swell and total moisture gain calculated. Results of the absorption swell tests are provided on the Swell Test Data sheet, Figure 2 included in this Appendix.

SWELL TEST DATA

Boring No.	Sample Depth	Vertical Pressure, psf	Liquid Limit	Plastic Limit	Plasticity Index	Initial Moisture	Final Moisture	Free Swell
1	5	625	83	26	57	24%	28%	2.1%
2	5	625	78	28	50	21%	30%	2.9%

FIGURE 2 SWELL DATA SHEET

GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION

NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5

SEC OF NATIONAL PARKWAY AND

SOUTH HOLLAND ROAD

MANSFIELD, TEXAS

ALPHA REPORT NO. W182356



Client: City of Mansfield

Location: Mansfield, Texas

Project: New Fire Station No. 5

Surface Elevation: _____

Start Date: 9/18/2018 **End Date:** 9/18/2018

West: _____

Drilling Method: CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER



















North: _____

Hammer Drop (lbs / in): 140 / 30






Depth, feet	Graphic Log	GROUND WATER OBSERVATIONS		Sample Type	Recovery % RQD	TX Cone or Std. Pen. (blows/ft.in)	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Unconfined Comp. Strength (tsf)	% Passing No. 200 Sieve	Unit Dry Weight (pcf)	Water Content, %	Liquid Limit	Plastic Limit	Plasticity Index	
		▽ On Rods (ft):	▼ After Drilling (ft):												
		14	10												
		After _____ Hours (ft):													
		MATERIAL DESCRIPTION													
5		Dark Brown CLAY					2.75				29				
							1.75				28				
							4.5+				22	78	28	50	
							3.75				25				
8.0		Gray and Tan CLAY													
10.0		Tan and Gray CLAYEY GRAVEL					2.75				27				
15.0		Tan SANDY CLAY					3.75		43		15	48	17	31	
20.0							0.75				23				
23.0		Tan CLAY													
25.0							1.25				31				
28.0															
30.0		Gray SHALE				100/ 3"					26				
35.0						100/ 1.75"					27				
40.0						100/ 1.75"					27				
45.0						100/ 1.5"					30				
		TEST BORING TERMINATED AT 45 FT													

KEY TO SOIL SYMBOLS AND CLASSIFICATIONS

SOIL & ROCK SYMBOLS

	(CH), High Plasticity CLAY
	(CL), Low Plasticity CLAY
	(SC), CLAYEY SAND
	(SP), Poorly Graded SAND
	(SW), Well Graded SAND
	(SM), SILTY SAND
	(ML), SILT
	(MH), Elastic SILT
	LIMESTONE
	SHALE / MARL
	SANDSTONE
	(GP), Poorly Graded GRAVEL
	(GW), Well Graded GRAVEL
	(GC), CLAYEY GRAVEL
	(GM), SILTY GRAVEL
	(OL), ORGANIC SILT
	(OH), ORGANIC CLAY
	FILL

SAMPLING SYMBOLS

	SHELBY TUBE (3" OD except where noted otherwise)
	SPLIT SPOON (2" OD except where noted otherwise)
	AUGER SAMPLE
	TEXAS CONE PENETRATION
	ROCK CORE (2" ID except where noted otherwise)

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS (blows/ft)

VERY LOOSE	0 TO 4
LOOSE	5 TO 10
MEDIUM	11 TO 30
DENSE	31 TO 50
VERY DENSE	OVER 50

SHEAR STRENGTH OF COHESIVE SOILS (tsf)

VERY SOFT	LESS THAN 0.25
SOFT	0.25 TO 0.50
FIRM	0.50 TO 1.00
STIFF	1.00 TO 2.00
VERY STIFF	2.00 TO 4.00
HARD	OVER 4.00

RELATIVE DEGREE OF PLASTICITY (PI)

LOW	4 TO 15
MEDIUM	16 TO 25
HIGH	26 TO 35
VERY HIGH	OVER 35

RELATIVE PROPORTIONS (%)

TRACE	1 TO 10
LITTLE	11 TO 20
SOME	21 TO 35
AND	36 TO 50

PARTICLE SIZE IDENTIFICATION (DIAMETER)

BOULDERS	8.0" OR LARGER
COBBLES	3.0" TO 8.0"
COARSE GRAVEL	0.75" TO 3.0"
FINE GRAVEL	5.0 mm TO 3.0"
COURSE SAND	2.0 mm TO 5.0 mm
MEDIUM SAND	0.4 mm TO 5.0 mm
FINE SAND	0.07 mm TO 0.4 mm
SILT	0.002 mm TO 0.07 mm
CLAY	LESS THAN 0.002 mm

DOCUMENT 007000

GENERAL CONDITIONS

1.1 GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The 'General Conditions of the Contract for Constructions', AIA Document A201, Seventeenth Edition, 2017, Articles 1 through 15 inclusive, and EJCDC C-700, 2007 Edition are a part of this Contract and are available for review from the Architect. The General Conditions and all modifications listed shall apply to all various subcontractors and sub-subcontractors.
- B. Refer to Document SCa for Supplementary Conditions relating to EJCDC and Document SCb for Supplementary Conditions relating to A201.

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 011000**SUMMARY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
 - 1. Project information.
 - 2. Work covered by Contract Documents.
 - 3. Work by Owner.
 - 4. Owner-furnished products.
 - 5. Access to site.
 - 6. Work restrictions.
 - 7. Specification and drawing conventions.

1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Mansfield Fire Station No. 5
 - 1. Project Location: Mansfield, Texas.
- B. Owner: City of Mansfield.
- C. Architect: Komatsu Architecture, 3880 Hulen Street, Suite 300, Ft. Worth, Texas 76107.

1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of the Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:
 - 1. New construction for a new one-story Type II-B fire station building including four apparatus bays, offices, dorm, dining functions and all associated sitework as indicated on the Drawings. Building construction includes slab on grade with pier and grade beam foundations, load-bearing CMU, cold-formed metal framing with brick veneer and metal wall panel cladding including continuous insulation and standing seam metal roof on steel joist framing.
- B. Type of Contract
 - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

1.5 WORK BY OWNER

- A. General: Cooperate fully with Owner so work may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying work under this Contract or work by Owner. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed by Owner.

1.6 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Work includes receiving, unloading, handling, storing, protecting, and installing Owner-furnished products and making building services connections.

1.7 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.

1.8 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
 - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. On-Site Work Hours: Limit work in the existing building to normal business working hours of 7 a.m. to 7 p.m., Monday through Friday.
- C. Nonsmoking Building: Smoking is not permitted within the building or within 25 feet of entrances, operable windows, or outdoor air intakes.

1.9 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
 - 1. Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
 - 2. Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on the Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on the Drawings to identify materials and products:
 - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
 - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.
 - 3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)****END OF SECTION**

SECTION 012500
SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit one PDF file of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Substitution Request Form: Use CSI Form 13.1A.
 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
 - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation can not be provided, if applicable.
 - b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
 - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable specification section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
 - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
 - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
 - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
 - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
 - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
 - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
 - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
 - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
 - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
 - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
 3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within 7 days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of

acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.

- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
- b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately upon discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after commencement of the Work. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
 - a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
 - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
 - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
 - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
 - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
 - f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
 - i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
 - j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 012500.13

SUBSTITUTION REQUEST FORM

PROJECT: _____

(After Contract Award)

TO: _____

NO. _____

DATE: _____

Contractor hereby requests acceptance of the following product or system as a substitution in accordance with provisions of Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures:"

1. SPECIFIED PRODUCT OR SYSTEM

Substitution request for: _____

Specification Section No.: _____ Article/ Paragraph: _____

2. REASON FOR SUBSTITUTION REQUEST

SPECIFIED PRODUCT . . .

PROPOSED PRODUCT . . .

- Is no longer available. Will reduce construction time
Is unable to meet project schedule. Will result in cost savings of
Is unsuitable for the designated application. \$ _____ to Project
Cannot interface with adjacent materials. Is for supplier's convenience
Is not compatible with adjacent materials. Is for subcontractor's convenience
Cannot provide the specified warranty. Other: _____
Cannot be constructed as indicated _____
Cannot be obtained due to one or more of the following:
Strike Bankruptcy of manufacturer or supplier
Lockout Similar occurrence (explain below)

3. SUPPORTING DATA

- Drawings, specifications, product data, performance data, test data, and any other necessary information to facilitate review of the Substitution Request are attached.
Sample is attached. Sample will be sent if requested.

4. QUALITY COMPARISON

Provide all necessary side-by-side comparative data as required to facilitate review of Substitution Request:

SPECIFIED PRODUCT PROPOSED PRODUCT

Manufacturer: _____

Name / Brand: _____

Catalog No.: _____

Vendor: _____

Variations: _____

(Add Additional Sheets If Necessary)

Local Distributor or Supplier: _____

Maintenance Service Available: Yes No

Spare Parts Source: _____

Warranty: Yes No _____ Years

5. PREVIOUS INSTALLATIONS

Identification of at least three similar projects on which proposed substitution was used:

PROJECT #1:

Project: _____

Address: _____

Architect: _____

Owner: _____

Contractor: _____

Date Installed: _____

PROJECT #2:

Project: _____

Address: _____

Architect: _____

Owner: _____

Contractor: _____

Date Installed: _____

PROJECT #3:

Project: _____

Address: _____

Architect: _____

Owner: _____

Contractor: _____

Date Installed: _____

6. EFFECT OF SUBSTITUTION

Proposed substitution affects other work or trades: No Yes (if Yes, explain)

Proposed substitution requires dimensional revisions or redesign of architectural, structural, M-E-P, life safety, or other work:

No Yes (if Yes, attach data explaining revisions)

7. STATEMENT OF CONFORMANCE OF REQUEST TO CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS

Contractor and Subcontractor have investigated the proposed substitution and hereby represent that:

- A. They have personally investigated the proposed substitution and believe that it is equal to or superior in all respects to specified product, except as stated above;
- B. The proposed substitution is in compliance with applicable codes and ordinances;
- C. The proposed substitution will provide same warranty as specified for specified product;
- D. They will coordinate the incorporation of the proposed substitution into the Work, and will include modifications to the Work as required to fully integrate the substitution;
- E. They have included complete cost data and implications of the substitution (attached);
- F. They will pay any redesign fees incurred by the Architect or any of the Architect's consultants, and any special inspection costs incurred by the Owner, caused by the use of this product;
- G. They waive all future claims for added cost or time to the Contract related to the substitution, or that become known after substitution is accepted.
- H. The Architect's approval, if granted, will be based upon reliance upon data submitted and the opinion, knowledge, information, and belief of the Architect at the time decision is rendered and Addendum is issued; and that Architect's approval therefore is interim in nature and subject to reevaluation and reconsideration as additional data, materials, workmanship, and coordination with other work are observed and reviewed.

Contractor: _____
(Name of Contractor)

Date: _____ By: _____

Subcontractor: _____
(Name of Subcontractor)

Date: _____ By: _____

Note: Unresponsive or incomplete requests will be rejected and returned without review.

8. ARCHITECT'S REVIEW AND ACTION

- Substitution is accepted.
- Substitution is accepted, with the following comments: _____

-
- Resubmit Substitution Request:
 - Provide more information in the following areas: _____
 - _____
 - _____
 - Provide proposal indicating amount of savings / credit to Owner
 - Bidding Contractor shall sign Bidder's Statement of Conformance
 - Bidding Subcontractor shall sign Bidder's Statement of Conformance
 - Substitution is not accepted:
 - Substitution Request received too late.
 - Substitution Request received directly from subcontractor or supplier.
 - Substitution Request not submitted in accordance with requirements.
 - Substitution Request Form is not properly executed.
 - Substitution Request does not indicate what item is being proposed.
 - Insufficient information submitted to facilitate proper evaluation.
 - Proposed product does not appear to comply with specified requirements.
 - Proposed product will require substantial revisions to Contract Documents.

By: _____

Date: _____

Architect has relied upon the information provided by the Contractor, and makes no claim as to the accuracy, completeness, or validity of such information. If an accepted substitution is later found to be not in compliance with the Contract Documents, Contractor shall provide the specified product.

9. OWNER'S REVIEW AND ACTION

- Substitution is accepted; Architect to prepare Change Order.
- Substitution is not accepted.
- Owner will pay Architect directly for redesign fees.
- Include Architect's Additional Service fee for implementing the substitution in the Change Order.

By: _____
(Owner/Owner's Representative)

Date: _____

END OF FORM

SECTION 012600
CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after Contract award.
- 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK
- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions." or Architect's Bulletin form.
- 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS
- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
1. Proposal Requests issued by are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating the cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
 - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 - e. Quotation Form: Use CSI Form 13.6B "Proposal Worksheet Summary" and 13.6C "Proposal Worksheet Detail". AIA G709 or Architect's Bulletin form.
- B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to the Owner.
1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
 2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
 3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
 4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
 5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
 6. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
 7. Proposal Request Form: Use Contractors standard proposal request form as approved by Owner and Architect.

1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

- A. Allowance Adjustment: Refer to Division 01 Section "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.
- B. Unit Price Adjustment: Refer to Division 01 Section "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit price work.

1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

- A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, prepare and issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner, Architect and Contractor on AIA Document G701 or Contractors standard change order document.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

- A. Work Change Directive: Owner may instruct the Architect to issue a Work Change Directive on AIA Document G714 or Architect's Bulletin form. Work Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.
 - 1. Work Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.
- B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Work Change Directive.
 - 1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 012900
PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
1. Correlate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:
 - a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.
 - b. Submittal schedule.
 - c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Sub-schedules for Phased Work: Where the Work is separated into phases requiring separately phased payments; provide sub-schedules showing values correlated with each phase of payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use the Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
 - a. Project name and location.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Architect's project number.
 - d. Contractor's name and address.
 - e. Date of submittal.
 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
 3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:
 - a. Related Specification Section or Division.
 - b. Description of the Work.
 - c. Name of subcontractor.
 - d. Name of manufacturer or fabricator.
 - e. Name of supplier.
 - f. Change Orders (numbers) that affect value.
 - g. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.
 - 1) Labor.
 - 2) Materials.
 - 3) Equipment.
 4. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with the Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of Contract Sum.
 - a. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for project closeout requirements in an amount totaling five percent of the Contract Sum and subcontract amount.
 5. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
 6. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

- a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site. Include evidence of insurance and photo documentation.
- 7. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
- 8. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
- 9. Purchase Contracts: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each purchase contract. Show line-item value of purchase contract. Indicate owner payments or deposits, if any, and balance to be paid by Contractor.
- 10. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.
 - a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in-place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.
- 11. Schedule Updating: Update and resubmit the schedule of values before the next Applications for Payment when Change Orders or Construction Change Directives result in a change in the Contract Sum.

1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
 - 1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.
- B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 or other Contractor form as approved by Owner / Architect, and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application for Payment Forms: Use forms acceptable to and Owner for Applications for Payment. Submit forms for approval with initial submittal of schedule of values.
- E. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
 - 1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
 - 2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
 - 3. Include amounts of Change Orders and Construction Change Directives issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
 - 4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- F. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
 - 1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
 - 2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
 - 3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
 - a. Materials previously stored and included in previous Applications for Payment.
 - b. Work completed for this Application utilizing previously stored materials.
 - c. Additional materials stored with this Application.
 - d. Total materials remaining stored, including materials with this Application.
- G. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.
 - 1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- H. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.

1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retain age, on each item.
 2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
 3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
 4. Waiver Forms: Submit waivers of lien on forms, executed in a manner acceptable to Owner.
- I. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
1. List of subcontractors.
 2. Schedule of values.
 3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
 4. Combined Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final) incorporating Work of multiple contracts, with indication of acceptance of schedule by each Contractor.
 5. Products list (preliminary if not final).
 6. Schedule of unit prices.
 7. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
 8. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
 9. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
 10. Copies of building permits.
 11. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
 12. Initial progress report.
 13. Report of preconstruction conference.
 14. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
 15. Performance and payment bonds.
 16. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.
- J. Submit evidence of correction of non-conforming work prior to subsequent application for payment.
- K. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After issuing the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
 2. This application shall reflect Certificates of Partial Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- L. Final Payment Application: Submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
 2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
 3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
 4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
 5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
 6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
 7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
 8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
 9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)****END OF SECTION**

SECTION 013100
PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
1. General project coordination procedures.
 2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
 3. Coordination drawings.
 4. Requests for Information (RFIs).
 5. Project Web site.
 6. Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information from each other during construction.
- 1.4 COORDINATION
- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
 5. Progress meetings.
 6. Pre-Installation conferences.
 7. Project closeout activities.
 8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
 9. Project closeout activities.
- 1.5 COORDINATION DRAWINGS
- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings in accordance with requirements in individual Sections, where installation is not completely shown on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

- a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
 - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to the coordination drawings by multiple contractors in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
 - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
 - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
 - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
 - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
 - g. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, fire alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
 2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
 3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, fire alarm, and electrical equipment.
 4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
 5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
 6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
 - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
 - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
 - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
 7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
 - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inch diameter and larger.
 - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire alarm locations.
 - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.
 - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes dimensioned from column center lines.
 8. Fire Protection System: Show the following:
 - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
 9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are the Contractor's responsibility. If the Architect determines that the coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, the Architect will so inform the Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
 10. Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints in accordance with requirements of Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files in accordance with the following requirements:
1. File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Drawings.
 2. File Preparation Format: RFA, RVT, or DWG, Version, operating in Microsoft Windows operating system.
 3. File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using Portable Data File (PDF) format.
 4. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of digital data files of the Drawings for use in preparing

coordination digital data files.

- a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data files as they relate to the Drawings.
- b. Digital Data Software Program: The Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2010 (.dwg) Revit 2013 (.rvt).
- c. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in a form acceptable to the Architect.

1.6 KEY PERSONNEL

- A. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and email addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
 1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

1.7 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI. All RFIs should be sent directly to the Architect via email or posted to project collaboration site (if one is being utilized). The Architect will redistribute to the appropriate reviewer.
 1. Submit one (1) RFI per email only.
 2. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
 3. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
 1. Project name.
 2. Project number.
 3. Date.
 4. Name of Contractor.
 5. Name of Architect.
 6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
 7. RFI subject.
 8. RFI Question
 9. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
 10. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 11. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
 12. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's solution(s) impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
 13. Contractor's signature.
 14. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
 - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect. RFIs should be emailed to Architect with the following format standards: 1) RFI should include RFI # in subject line of email along with brief description; 2) Body of email should include question or description of RFI and suggestion. Sketches or other necessary documents should be attached to email in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow 7 business days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
 1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:
 - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
 - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
 - c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
 - d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
 - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
 - f. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for

- response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures."
 - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.
- F. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Submit log with not less than the following:
1. RFI Log Date
 2. Project name.
 3. Name and address of Contractor.
 4. Name and address of Architect and Construction Manager.
 5. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
 6. RFI description.
 7. Date the RFI was submitted.
 8. Request Date
 9. Date Architect's and Construction Manager's response was received.
 10. Identification of related Minor Change in the Work, Construction Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
 11. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- 1.8 PROJECT MEETINGS
- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
 2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
 3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Pre-construction Conference: Schedule and conduct a pre-construction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.
1. Conduct the conference to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
 - a. Tentative construction schedule.
 - b. Phasing.
 - c. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
 - d. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
 - e. Lines of communications.
 - f. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
 - g. Procedures for RFIs.
 - h. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
 - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
 - j. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
 - k. Submittal procedures.
 - l. Sustainable design requirements.
 - m. Preparation of record documents.
 - n. Use of the premises.
 - o. Work restrictions.
 - p. Working hours.
 - q. Owner's occupancy requirements.
 - r. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
 - s. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
 - t. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
 - u. Construction waste management and recycling.
 - v. Parking availability.
 - w. Office, work, and storage areas.

- x. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
 - y. First aid.
 - z. Security.
 - aa. Progress cleaning.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- C. Pre-Installation Conferences: Conduct a pre-installation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
 2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
 - a. Contract Documents.
 - b. Options.
 - c. Related RFIs.
 - d. Related Change Orders.
 - e. Purchases.
 - f. Deliveries.
 - g. Submittals.
 - h. Review of mockups.
 - i. Possible conflicts.
 - j. Compatibility problems.
 - k. Time schedules.
 - l. Weather limitations.
 - m. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - n. Warranty requirements.
 - o. Compatibility of materials.
 - p. Acceptability of substrates.
 - q. Temporary facilities and controls.
 - r. Space and access limitations.
 - s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
 - u. Installation procedures.
 - v. Coordination with other work.
 - w. Required performance results.
 - x. Protection of adjacent work.
 - y. Protection of construction and personnel.
 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct Project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 90 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
 - a. Preparation of record documents.
 - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
 - c. Submittal of written warranties.
 - d. Requirements for preparing sustainable design documentation.
 - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
 - f. Requirements for demonstration and training.
 - g. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
 - h. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.

- i. Submittal procedures.
 - j. Coordination of separate contracts.
 - k. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
 - l. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
 - m. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
- 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.
- E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at agreed upon intervals.
 - 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
 - 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Owner's Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Architect, each contractor, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
 - 1) Review schedule for next period.
 - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site utilization.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Progress cleaning.
 - 10) Quality and work standards.
 - 11) Status of correction of deficient items.
 - 12) Field observations.
 - 13) Status of RFIs.
 - 14) Status of proposal requests.
 - 15) Pending changes.
 - 16) Status of Change Orders.
 - 17) Pending claims and disputes.
 - 18) Documentation of information for payment requests.
 - 4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
 - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- F. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at regular intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and pre-installation conferences.
 - 1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
 - 2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
 - a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

- b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
- c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:
 - 1) Interface requirements.
 - 2) Sequence of operations.
 - 3) Status of submittals.
 - 4) Deliveries.
 - 5) Off-site fabrication.
 - 6) Access.
 - 7) Site utilization.
 - 8) Temporary facilities and controls.
 - 9) Work hours.
 - 10) Hazards and risks.
 - 11) Progress cleaning.
 - 12) Quality and work standards.
 - 13) Change Orders.
- 3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION

SECTION 013200
CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
1. Contractor's construction schedule.
 2. Daily construction reports.
 3. Material location reports.
 4. Field condition reports.
 5. Special reports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
 2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
 3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.
- B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of the Project.
- C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.
- D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.
- E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
 2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
 3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.
- F. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
1. PDF electronic file.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
1. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, using software indicated, and labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
- C. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
 3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
 4. Earnings Report: Compilation of Contractor's total earnings from commencement of the Work until most recent Application for Payment.

- D. Material Location Reports: Submit at prior to application for payment. .
- E. Field Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- F. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Scheduling Consultant Qualifications: An experienced specialist in CPM scheduling and reporting, with capability of producing CPM reports and diagrams within 24 hours of Architect's request.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate preparation and processing of schedules and reports with performance of construction activities and with scheduling and reporting of separate contractors.
- B. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
 1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
 2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work to date of Substantial Completion.
 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each principal element of the Work. Comply with the following:
 1. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for long lead items (as identified by Contractor) and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
 2. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
 3. Startup and Testing Time: Include not less than 15 days for startup and testing.
 4. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
 5. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for punch list and final completion.
- C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
 1. Phasing: Arrange list of activities on schedule by phase.
 2. Work under More Than One Contract: Include a separate activity for each contract.
 3. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
 4. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Division 01 Section "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 5. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date indicated in Division 01 Section "Summary." Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
 6. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
 - a. Coordination with existing construction.
 - b. Limitations of continued occupancies.
 - c. Uninterruptible services.
 - d. Partial occupancy before Substantial Completion.
 - e. Use of premises restrictions.
 - f. Provisions for future construction.
 - g. Seasonal variations.
 - h. Environmental control.
 7. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Subcontract awards.
 - b. Submittals.

- c. Purchases.
 - d. Mockups.
 - e. Fabrication.
 - f. Sample testing.
 - g. Deliveries.
 - h. Installation.
 - i. Tests and inspections.
 - j. Adjusting.
 - k. Curing.
 - l. Startup and placement into final use and operation.
8. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
- a. Structural completion.
 - b. Permanent space enclosure.
 - c. Completion of mechanical installation.
 - d. Completion of electrical installation.
 - e. Substantial Completion.
- D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- E. Cost Correlation: At the head of schedule, provide a cost correlation line, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show dollar volume of the Work performed as of dates used for preparation of payment requests.
- 1. Refer to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- F. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
- 1. Unresolved issues.
 - 2. Unanswered RFIs.
 - 3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
 - 4. Notations on returned submittals.
- G. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required achieving compliance, and dating by which recovery will be accomplished.
- H. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- 2.2 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)
- A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.
- B. Start-up Network Diagram: Submit diagram within 14 days of date established for commencement of the Work. Outline significant construction activities for the first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.
- C. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a cost- and resource-loaded, time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.
- 1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 60 days after date established for commencement of the Work.
 - a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
 - 2. Conduct educational workshops to train and inform key Project personnel, including subcontractors' personnel, in proper methods of providing data and using CPM schedule information.
 - 3. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
 - 4. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to correlate with Contract Time.
- D. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the start-up network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
- 1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
 - a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
 - b. Mobilization and demobilization.
 - c. Purchase of materials.
 - d. Delivery.

- e. Fabrication.
 - f. Utility interruptions.
 - g. Installation.
 - h. Work by Owner that may affect or be affected by Contractor's activities.
 - i. Testing.
 - j. Punch list and final completion.
 - k. Activities occurring following final completion.
2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
 3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
 4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
 - a. Sub-networks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
 5. Cost- and Resource-Loading of CPM Schedule: Assign cost to construction activities on the CPM schedule. Do not assign costs to submittal activities. Obtain Architect's approval prior to assigning costs to fabrication and delivery activities. Assign costs under principal subcontracts for testing and commissioning activities, operation and maintenance manuals, punch list activities, Project record documents, and demonstration and training (if applicable), in the amount of 5 percent of the Contract Sum.
 - a. Each activity cost shall reflect an appropriate value subject to approval by Architect.
 - b. Total cost assigned to activities shall equal the total Contract Sum.
- E. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.
- F. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
 2. Description of activity.
 3. Principal events of activity.
 4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
 5. Early and late start dates.
 6. Early and late finish dates.
 7. Activity duration in workdays.
 8. Total float or slack time.
 9. Average size of workforce.
 10. Dollar value of activity (coordinated with the schedule of values).
- G. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
1. Identification of activities that have changed.
 2. Changes in early and late start dates.
 3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
 4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
 5. Changes in the critical path.
 6. Changes in total float or slack time.
 7. Changes in the Contract Time.
- H. Value Summaries: Prepare two cumulative value lists, sorted by finish dates.
1. In first list, tabulate activity number, early finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
 2. In second list, tabulate activity number, late finish date, dollar value, and cumulative dollar value.
 3. In subsequent issues of both lists, substitute actual finish dates for activities completed as of list date.
 4. Prepare list for ease of comparison with payment requests; coordinate timing with progress meetings.
 - a. In both value summary lists, tabulate "actual percent complete" and "cumulative value completed" with total at bottom.
 - b. Submit value summary printouts one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
- 2.3 REPORTS
- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
1. List of subcontractors at Project site.

2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
 3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
 4. Equipment at Project site.
 5. Material deliveries.
 6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
 7. Accidents.
 8. Meetings and significant decisions.
 9. Unusual events (refer to special reports).
 10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
 11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
 12. Emergency procedures.
 13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
 14. Change Orders received and implemented.
 15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
 16. Services connected and disconnected.
 17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
 18. Partial completions and occupancies.
 19. Substantial Completions authorized.
- B. Material Location Reports: prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site.
- C. Field Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between field conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- 2.4 SPECIAL REPORTS
- A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
- B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE
- A. Scheduling Consultant: Engage a consultant to provide planning, evaluation, and reporting using CPM scheduling.
1. In-House Option: Owner may waive the requirement to retain a consultant if Contractor employs skilled personnel with experience in CPM scheduling and reporting techniques. Submit qualifications.
 2. Meetings: Scheduling consultant shall attend all meetings related to Project progress, alleged delays, and time impact.
- B. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
1. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
 2. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
 3. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- C. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
 2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 013233
PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
1. Pre-construction photographs.
 2. Periodic construction photographs.
 3. Final completion construction photographs.
- 1.3 UNIT PRICES
- A. Basis for Bids: Base number of construction photographs on average of 20 photographs per week over the duration of Project.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.
1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of 8 megapixels.
 2. Format: Minimum 1600 by 1200 pixels, 400 dpi minimum, in unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, un-cropped, date- and time- stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
 3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
 - a. Name of Project.
 - b. Name of Architect.
 - c. Name of Contractor.
 - d. Date photograph was taken.
 - e. Description of location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
- A. Auxiliary Services: Cooperate with photographer and provide auxiliary services requested including access to Project site and use of temporary facilities, including temporary lighting required to produce clear, well-lit photographs.
- 1.6 USAGE RIGHTS
- A. Obtain and transfer copyright usage rights from photographer to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA
- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 1600 by 1200 pixels and 400 dpi.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS
- A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
 2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.

- C. Pre-construction Photographs: Before commencement of excavation, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
 - 1. Flag construction limits before taking construction photographs.
 - 2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
 - 3. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs monthly (or mutually agreed number), coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
- E. Time-Lapse Sequence Construction Photographs: Take photographs as indicated, to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.
 - 1. Frequency: Take photographs weekly, with timing each month adjusted to coincide with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment.
 - 2. Vantage Points: Following suggestions by Architect and Contractor, photographer to select vantage points. During each of the following construction phases, take not less than two of the required shots from same vantage point each time to create a time-lapse sequence as follows:
 - a. Commencement of the Work, through completion of subgrade construction.
 - b. Above-grade structural framing.
 - c. Exterior building enclosure.
 - d. Interior Work, through date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 013300
SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as action submittals.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as informational submittals.
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or modifications to submittals noted by the Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
 - 1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
 - 2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with start-up construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead-time for manufacture or fabrication.
 - 3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
 - 4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
 - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
 - b. Specification Section number and title.
 - c. Submittal category: Action, informational.
 - d. Name of subcontractor.
 - e. Description of the Work covered.
 - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
 - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
 - h. Scheduled dates for installation.
 - i. Activity or event number.

1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic copies of CAD Drawings, or Revit Model will be provided by Architect for Contractor's use in preparing coordination submittals.
 - 1. Architect will furnish Contractor one set of drawing files for use in preparing Shop Drawings and Project record drawings.

2. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
 3. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD 2010 (.dwg) and Revit 2013 (.rvt).
 4. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in Project Manual.
 5. The following CAD files / BIM Model will be furnished for each appropriate discipline: AE floor, finish, reflected ceiling and site plans.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
 2. Submit one (1) submittal per email only.
 3. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are approved by Architect.
 4. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
 5. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
 6. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals. Submittals received after 1:00 pm will be considered to have been received the following day.
1. Allow 10 business days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination. Allow 4-week review time for large or complex submittals will require additional review time. The following are examples but not limited to such submittals, Millwork, Curtain Wall, Structural Steel, Doors Frames Hardware (total opening).
 2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
 3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 10 business days for review of each resubmittal.
 4. Sequential Review: Where sequential review of submittals by Architect's consultants, Owner, or other parties is indicated, allow 20 business days for initial review of each submittal.
- D. Identification and Information: Place a permanent label or title block on each copy submittal item for identification.
1. On large format Shop Drawings, Contractor shall stamp each individual page as well as the reviewer's stamp.
 2. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
 3. Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
 4. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Name of subcontractor.
 - f. Name of supplier.
 - g. Name of manufacturer.
 - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A).
 - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - l. Other necessary identification.
- E. Identification and Information: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file with links enabling navigation to each item.

2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
 - a. For typical projects that do not require separate submittals for different buildings or sub the submittal file name shall use Specification Section number followed by a dash and then a sequential number. Resubmittals shall include a numerical suffix after another dash. Include brief description of submittal after sequential number or resubmittal suffix. (e.g., 061000-001-0 Rough Carpentry).
 - b. For complex projects that require project identifier for separate buildings within a project or require individual submittals to be submitted by multiple subcontractors, the submittal file name shall follow the following. Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number. Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point. Project Identifier should follow in parentheses (e.g., 061000-001-0 (LNHS) Rough Carpentry).
3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
4. Include the following information on an inserted cover sheet:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name and address of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
 - f. Name of subcontractor.
 - g. Name of supplier.
 - h. Name of manufacturer.
 - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
 - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
 - l. Related physical samples submitted directly.
 - m. Other necessary identification.
5. Include the following information as keywords in the electronic file metadata:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
 - c. Manufacturer name.
 - d. Product name.
- F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by the Architect.
- G. Deviations: Identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals.
- H. Additional Paper Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
 - a. Submit one copy of submittal to concurrent reviewer in addition to specified number of copies to Architect.
- I. Transmittal: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review, received from sources other than Contractor.
 1. Transmittal Form: Use standard contractor form as approved by Architect Owner.
 2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- J. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
 3. Include all submitted information from previous submittal in resubmittal, to form a comprehensive document for Architect's review.
 4. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with 'Reviewed', 'Furnish as Corrected' notation from Architect's action stamp, or with approval notation from alternate reviewer
- K. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, and installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- L. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals that are marked with 'Reviewed', 'Furnish as Corrected' notation from Architect's action stamp, or with approval notation from alternate reviewer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES**

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
1. Email or upload electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Architect's Info Exchange Folder (Newforma) specifically established for Project.
 - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
 2. Action Submittals: For large format drawings and submittals (larger than 11 x 17), submit PDF file plus 2 hard copies. For smaller format drawings and submittals (11x17 or less), provide only PDF file. Architect will return only the marked-up PDF.
 3. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
 4. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."
 5. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
 - a. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically-submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
 - b. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.
 6. Test and Inspection Reports Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
 - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
 - c. Standard color charts.
 - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
 - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
 - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
 - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - h. Availability and delivery time information.
 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
 - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
 - b. Printed performance curves.
 - c. Operational range diagrams.
 - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
 5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
 6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
 - a. Identification of products.
 - b. Schedules.
 - c. Compliance with specified standards.
 - d. Notation of coordination requirements.
 - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
 - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
 - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
 2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
 3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:

4. For large format drawings and submittals (larger than 11 x 17), submit PDF file plus 2 hard copies. For smaller format drawings and submittals (11x17 or less), provide only PDF file. Architect will return only the marked-up PDF.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
 2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
 - a. Generic description of Sample.
 - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
 - c. Sample source.
 - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
 3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
 - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
 - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
 4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit three full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
 5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
 - a. Number of Samples: Submit sets of Samples. Architect will retain one sample set; remainder will be returned. Mark up and retain one returned Sample set as a Project record sample.
 - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
 - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents.
 2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
 3. Number and name of room or space.
 4. Location within room or space.
 5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- G. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
- H. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
- I. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Use CSI Form 1.5A. Include the following information in tabular form:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
 2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
 3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
 4. Submit subcontract list in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.

- J. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
 - K. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
 - L. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on American Welding Society (AWS) forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
 - M. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
 - N. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
 - O. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - P. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - Q. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - R. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
 - S. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
 - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
 - 2. Date of evaluation.
 - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
 - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
 - 5. Description of product.
 - 6. Test procedures and results.
 - 7. Limitations of use.
 - T. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
 - U. Pre-construction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
 - W. Field Test Reports: Submit reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - X. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
 - Y. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.
- 2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES
- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
 - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.
 - B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally-signed PDF electronic file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and

sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.

1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance/Material Submittals: Refer to requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.
- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action, as follows:
 1. Reviewed
 2. Revise and Resubmit
 3. Rejected
 4. Furnish As Corrected
 5. No Action Taken.
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- E. Incomplete submittals are not acceptable, will be considered non-responsive, and will be returned without review.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

END OF SECTION



SUBCONTRACTORS AND MAJOR MATERIAL SUPPLIERS LIST

Project: _____

From (Contractor): _____

Date: _____

To (A/E): _____

A/E Project Number: _____

Contract For: _____

List Subcontractors and Major Material Suppliers proposed for use on this Project as required by the Construction Documents. Attach supplemental sheets if necessary.

Section Number	Section Title	Firm	Address	Phone Number (Fax Number)	Contact
----------------	---------------	------	---------	---------------------------	---------

Attachments

Signed by: _____ Date: _____

Copies: Owner Consultants _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ File

SECTION 014000**QUALITY REQUIREMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 1. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
 - 2. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
 - 3. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Sections:
 - 1. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.
- C. Mockups: Full size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
 - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size, physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
 - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on the project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies and subassemblies.
 - 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.
- D. Pre-construction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for the Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, i.e., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
 - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade or trades.

- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS
- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- C. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
1. Specification Section number and title.
 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
 3. Description of test and inspection.
 4. Identification of applicable standards.
 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN
- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice to Proceed, and not less than five days prior to pre-construction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: Include in quality-control plan a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
 2. Project title and number.
 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
 8. Complete test or inspection data.
 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
 13. Recommendations on retesting and re-inspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- D. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.

1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
 - G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
 - H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
 - I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
 - J. Pre-construction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform pre-construction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
 - a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
 - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
 - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
 - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
 - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
 2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 - K. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Notify Architect 7 days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at the Project.
 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
 5. Obtain Architect's review of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
 - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed, unless otherwise indicated.
 - L. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup in accordance with approved Shop Drawings. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual specification sections, along with supporting materials.
- 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
 2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
 3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
 5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.

6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
 - B. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
 - C. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in pre-installation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
 - D. Re-testing/Re-inspecting: Provide quality-control services, including retesting and re-inspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
 - E. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
 1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
 3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
 4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
 5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
 6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
 - F. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
 1. Access to the Work.
 2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
 3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
 4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
 5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
 6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
 7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.
 - G. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- 1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS
- A. Special Tests and Inspections: Conducted by a qualified testing agency as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as indicated in individual Specification Sections, and as follows:
 1. Verifying that manufacturer maintains detailed fabrication and quality-control procedures and reviewing the completeness and adequacy of those procedures to perform the Work.
 2. Notifying Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities and deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
 3. Submitting a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service to Architect with copy to Contractor and to authorities having jurisdiction.
 4. Submitting a final report of special tests and inspections at Substantial Completion, which includes a list of unresolved deficiencies.
 5. Interpreting tests and inspections and stating in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.
 6. Retesting and re-inspecting corrected work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
 - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
 - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
 - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
 - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and modifications as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
 - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Division 01 Section "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 015000**TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Owner's own forces, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Sewer Service: Pay sewer service use charges for sewer usage by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Water Service: Pay water service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- D. Electric Power Service: Pay electric power service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage, including delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage, discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water damaged Work.
 - 1. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
- D. Dust-Control and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust-control and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
 - 1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of the work.
 - 2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
 - 3. Location of proposed air filtration system discharge.
 - 4. Other dust-control measures.
 - 5. Waste management plan.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
- C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top rails.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch-thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch-OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch-OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch-OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10 mils minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84.
- D. Dust Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.
- E. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
 - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases.
 - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 10 individuals. Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot- square tack and marker boards.
 - 3. Drinking water and private toilet.
 - 4. Coffee machine and supplies.
 - 5. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
 - 6. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
 - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
 - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
 - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures".
- C. Air Filtration Units: HEPA primary and secondary filter-equipped portable units with four-stage filtration. Provide single switch for emergency shutoff. Configure to run continuously.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
 - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
 - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
 - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Install water service and distribution piping in sizes and pressures adequate for construction.
- D. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- E. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
 - 1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed in accordance with approved coordination drawings.
 - a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
 - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
 - 2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust containment devices.
 - 3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.
- F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
 - 1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- G. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
 - 1. Install electric power service overhead, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Connect temporary service to Owner's existing power source, as directed by Owner.
- H. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
 - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
 - 2. Install lighting for Project identification sign.
- I. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.
 - 1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
 - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine in each field office.
 - b. Provide one telephone line(s) for Owner's use.
 - 2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
 - a. Police and fire departments.
 - b. Ambulance service.
 - c. Contractor's home office.
 - d. Architect's office.
 - e. Engineers' offices.
 - f. Owner's office.
 - g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
 - 3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone or portable two-way radio for use when away from field office.
- J. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. Equip computer with not less than the following:
 - 1. Processor: Intel Pentium D or Intel CoreDuo, 1.8 GHz processing speed.
 - 2. Memory: 2 gigabyte.
 - 3. Disk storage: 80 gigabyte hard disk drive and combination DVD-RW/CD-RW drive.
 - 4. Display: 19-inch LCD monitor with 128 Mb dedicated video RAM.

5. Full-size keyboard and mouse.
6. Network Connectivity: 10/100BaseT Ethernet.
7. Operating System: Microsoft Windows XP Professional or Microsoft Windows Vista Business.
8. Productivity Software:
 - a. Microsoft Office Professional, XP or higher, including Word, Excel, and Outlook.
 - b. Adobe Reader 7.0 or higher.
9. Printer: "All-in-one" unit equipped with printer server, combining color printing, photocopying, scanning, and faxing, or separate units for each of these 3 functions.
10. Internet Service: Broadband modem, router and ISP, equipped with hardware firewall, providing minimum 384 Kbps upload and 1 Mbps download speeds at each computer. Include wireless service for tablet use.
11. Internet Security: Integrated software, providing software firewall, virus, spyware, phishing and spam protection in a combined application.
12. Backup: External hard drive, minimum 40 gigabyte, with automated backup software providing daily backups.

3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Use of Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
 1. Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
 2. Prepare subgrade and install sub-base and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 3. Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, re-grading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
- C. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
 2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- D. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- E. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
 1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties nor endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
 2. Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.
- F. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated with Owner, Contractor's and Architect's name. Logos shall be approved by the Owner and Architect. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
 - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
 3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.
- G. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.
- I. Temporary Stairs: Until permanent stairs are available, provide temporary stairs where ladders are not adequate.
- J. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.

3.4 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
 - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Division 01 Section "Summary."
- B. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements of 2003 EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent and requirements specified in Division 31 Section "Site Clearing."
- C. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.
- D. Tree and Plant Protection: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."
- E. Pest Control: Engage pest-control service to recommend practices to minimize attraction and harboring of rodents, roaches, and other pests and to perform extermination and control procedures at regular intervals so Project will be free of pests and their residues at Substantial Completion. Obtain extended warranty for Owner. Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.
- F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
 - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
 - 2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weather-tight enclosure for building exterior.
 - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
 - 1. Prohibit smoking in construction areas.
 - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
 - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

3.5 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
 - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
 - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
 - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
 - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Phase: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
 - 1. Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
 - 2. Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.

3. Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
 4. Discard or replace water-damaged material.
 5. Do not install material that is wet.
 6. Discard, replace or clean stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
 7. Perform work in a sequence that allows any wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in drywall or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Phase of Construction: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
1. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
 2. Use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
 3. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
 - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
 - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record daily readings over a forty-eight hour period. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
 - c. Remove materials that can not be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.
- 3.6 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL
- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
 - B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
 - C. Operate Project-identification-sign lighting daily from dusk until 12:00 midnight.
 - D. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
 - E. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 015300**MOLD PREVENTION MEASURES****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes: Administrative and procedural requirements to help prevent mold contamination in construction.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Reports: Submit reports required in this Section, including but not limited to the following:
1. Sightings of existing mold.
 2. Window and storefront testing.
 3. Moisture contents of materials.
 4. Exterior sealant cracks, damage, and deterioration.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Pre-construction Meeting: Review requirements of this Section at Pre-construction Meeting.
- 1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Do not bring finish materials into building until building is in a conditioned state. Protect finish materials stored within building. Stage materials off the floor and cover with waterproof covering. Examples of these materials include, but are not limited to, insulation, gypsum products, wall coverings, carpet, ceiling tile, wood products, etc.
- C. Remove from Project site damaged materials or materials that have become wet. Do not install such materials.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Remove water found within building during construction immediately.
1. Energize lift stations and sump pumps as early in Project as possible. Use temporary pumps if necessary to get water out of building and drain lines.
- B. Ventilation:
1. Seal off return air ducts and diffusers to prevent construction dust and moisture from entering HVAC system.
 2. Provide temporary outside air ventilation as building becomes enclosed.
- C. Maintain clean project site, free from hazards, garbage, and debris.
- D. Eating, drinking, and smoking are not permitted within building.
- E. Slope perimeter grades, both temporary and final grades, away from building structure.
- F. Flash roof penetrations immediately. Do not allow water to penetrate to floor below.
- G. Seal window openings prior to window installation with plastic to prevent moisture entry.
- H. Cover stored and installed ductwork and installed duct openings with plastic to prevent dust, debris, and moisture from entering ductwork. Repair damaged plastic barrier.
- I. Do not operate air handling equipment below 60 degrees F supply air temperature until building is 100 percent enclosed.
- J. Monitor humidity and temperature for conformance to installation requirements defined by material and equipment manufacturers.
- K. Check moisture content of gypsum board prior to applying finishes. Record findings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Roof Drains: Connect roof drainage system to storm drainage lines as soon as possible.
- B. Floor Drains: Connect floor drains as soon as possible. Do not cover floor drains with tape or other obstructions during construction. Clean out floor drain lines to mains prior to Substantial Completion.
- C. Wall Assemblies:
 - 1. Install exterior wall insulation, vapor retarder, and gypsum board only after building is enclosed.
 - 2. Keep bottom of installed gypsum board off floor 1/2 inch.
- D. Cavity Conditions: Clean and inspect cavity conditions prior to covering, sealing, or restricting access. Vacuum clean cavity spaces prior to covering or enclosing.
- E. Plumbing: Pressure test plumbing piping identified as insulated on Project prior to installation of insulation.
- F. Roof Mounted Equipment: Inspect rooftop units and other roof-mounted equipment for signs of rain leaks immediately after first rain. Water test with hose immediately after installation. Seal leaks immediately.
- G. Windows and Storefront: Water test windows to manufacturer's and Project Manual's specifications. Record findings and forward to Architect.
- H. Sealants: Inspect exterior sealants for cracks, damage, or deterioration. Record findings and forward to Architect.
- I. HVAC Equipment (Permanent HVAC Equipment Used for Temporary Conditioning of Building During Construction Phases): Change filters and clean ductwork interior to remove dirt, dust, debris, and moisture buildup prior to turning Project over to Owner.

3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Remove damaged materials or materials that have become wet. Replace with new materials.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train and educate Owner's maintenance personnel on use of building systems. Explain how improper operation and shutting down systems during off periods can create mold problems.
- B. Schedule with Owner a review of building for mold problems at 1 year warranty walk-through. Inspect exterior sealants and masonry joints for cracks and other damage or deterioration where water can penetrate building envelope.
- C. Explain to Owner the need for Owner to establish annual building review for mold.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 015713**EROSION AND SEDIMENTATION CONTROL****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes providing temporary erosion- and sedimentation-control measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff or airborne dust to adjacent properties and walkways, according to erosion- and sedimentation-control Drawings and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Temporary measures include the following.
 - 1. Silt fences and straw bales.
 - 2. Sediment barriers and check dams.
 - 3. Stabilized construction entrance.
 - 4. Construction of temporary swales and sedimentation basins as required.
 - 5. Seeding, sodding, and hydromulching.
- B. Comply with all local, state, and federal regulations regarding erosion control including the applicable provisions of the National Pollution Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) regulations from the Federal Clean Water Act.
- C. Should any provisions of this section be at variance with erosion control plan prepared by the civil engineer, the civil engineer's directive shall take precedence.

1.2 NOTICE OF INTENT

- A. Contractor and Owner shall jointly submit an EPA Notice of Intent (NOI) prior to construction.
- B. Contractor shall prepare the report, coordinate with Owner, and file in accordance with regulations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SILT FENCE

- A. Filter Fabric: Non-woven polypropylene, polyethylene or polyamide thermoplastic fibers with non-raveling edges. The fabric shall be non-biodegradable, inert to most soil chemicals, ultraviolet resistant, unaffected by moisture or other weather conditions, and permeable to water while retaining sediment. The filter fabric shall be supplied in rolls a minimum of 36 inches wide.
 - 1. Acceptable Products: Lundin "Silt Buster", Mirafi "Envirofence" or acceptable substitution.
- B. Wire Fence Support: Welded wire fabric 2 x 4 - W1.0 x W1.0.
- C. Fence Posts: Painted or galvanized steel Tee or Y-posts with anchor plates, not less than 5 feet in length with a minimum weight of 1.3 pounds per foot. Hangers shall be adequate to secure fence and fabric to posts. Posts and anchor plates shall conform to ASTM A-702. Provide plastic caps to prevent impalement.

2.2 STRAW BALES

- A. Standard rectangular hay bales bound by baling wire.

2.3 SEDIMENT TRAPS

- A. Standard manufacture designed to fit the intended inlet.

2.4 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE

- A. Aggregate: Graded mixture of crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448 and TEX 401-A coarse-aggregate; with 0 percent being retained by a 5-inch sieve and 100 percent being retained by a 3-inch sieve.

2.5 GRASS

- A. Materials and seeding and sodding shall conform to applicable Division 32 section.

2.6 FERTILIZER

- A. Use commercial grade fertilizers to insure germination and growth. Analysis by weight shall be 16-4-8 or 15-5-10 for Nitrogen, Phosphoric Acid and Potash.

2.7 WATER

- A. Use clean potable water for maintaining the grass.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 GENERAL**

- A. Keep disturbed areas to a minimum required to adequately perform the work. At all times maintain the site in such a manner that minimizes erosion of the site. The execution of work under this section shall be in conformance with the NPDES rulings and the site Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.

3.2 SILT FENCES

- A. Silt fence shall be a minimum of 24 inches (0.6 meter) high. Posts shall be embedded a minimum of 12 inches in the ground, placed a maximum of 8 feet apart and set on a slight angle toward the anticipated runoff source.
 - 1. When directed by the Engineer or designated representative, posts shall be set at specified intervals to support concentrated loads.
- B. Securely attach filter fabric to posts and wire support fence, with the bottom 12 inches of filter fabric buried in a trench a minimum of 6 inches deep and 6 inches (150 mm) wide to prevent sediment from passing under the fence.
 - 1. When silt fence is constructed on impervious material, a 12-inch flap of fabric shall be extended upstream from the bottom of the silt fence and weighted to limit particulate loss.
 - 2. No horizontal joints will be allowed in the filter fabric.
 - 3. Vertical joints shall be overlapped a minimum of 12 inches with the ends sewn or otherwise securely tied.
- C. Silt fence shall be maintained for the duration of the project, and repaired, replaced, and/or relocated when necessary or as directed by the Engineer or designated representative. Accumulated silt shall be removed when it reaches a depth of 6 inches.

3.3 EROSION CONTROL BARRIERS

- A. Provide erosion control barriers at intervals along swales and ditches as shown on the Drawings or as necessary to meet the requirements of the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.
- B. Barriers: Silt fence or hay bales placed as indicated on the Drawings.
- C. Maintain barriers in good working condition and replace when damaged.

3.4 STABILIZED CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE

- A. Remove trees, brush, stumps, obstructions, and other objectionable material and disposed of in a manner that will not interfere with the excavation, grading, and construction of the entrance as indicated on the Drawings.
 - 1. Stabilized construction entrance shall not drain onto the public right-of-way and shall not allow surface water runoff to exit the construction site.
 - 2. When necessary, vehicle wheels shall be cleaned to remove sediment prior to entrance onto public right of way.
 - a. When vehicle washing is required, it shall be done on an area stabilized with crushed stone, which drains into an approved sediment trap or sediment basin.
 - 3. Sediment shall be prevented from entering any storm drain, ditch or watercourse through use of sand bags, gravel, boards, silt fence or other methods approved by the Engineer or designated representative.
- B. The entrance shall be maintained in a condition that will prevent tracking or disposition of sediment onto public right of way. Provide periodic top dressing with additional stone as conditions demand, as well as the repair and/or cleanout of any measures used to trap sediment. Sediment that is spilled, dropped, washed, or tracked onto public right-of-way shall be removed immediately.

3.5 TEMPORARY AND PERMANENT SWALES

- A. Description:
 - 1. Provide temporary and permanent drainage swales as required to carry drainage away from the work area to an approved outfall point.
 - 2. Unless otherwise shown on the drawings, swales shall be earthen "V" shaped channels graded to a sufficient depth and slope to carry the anticipated runoff, but at least 2 feet deep with a slope of 0.1 percent.
 - 3. Swales not designated to remain in place at the completion of the contract shall be cleaned of any muck, debris and other unsuitable material and filled with approved fill before final grading operations begin.
 - 4. Swales shall have erosion control barriers as required.
 - 5. All permanent swales shall be sodded to a minimum width of 10 feet on either side of the centerline of the swale.

- B. Maintenance:
1. During the course of construction maintain temporary swales constructed for this contract so as to allow proper drainage from the construction area. Before Contractor leaves the site at the end of construction, place temporary swales to remain in good working condition.
 2. Work with other contractors at the site in maintaining existing swales and ditches.
 3. Where necessary for access to the work areas, install adequately sized culverts and maintain to provide the access without disturbing the site drainage.
 4. Take care not to rut and damage sodded swales. Immediately repair damaged swales.
 5. Keep sodded swales mowed.
- 3.6 DRAINAGE DITCHES
- A. Immediately hydromulch drainage ditches upon final grading.
 - B. Repair erosion of the banks of the drainage ditches immediately and re-stabilize.
 - C. Place sediment barriers at intervals along the ditch as shown on the plans or as necessary to help trap sediment on the site. Daily remove sediment and other debris trapped by the barriers.
 - D. Maximum Ditch Side Slopes: 3 feet horizontal to 1 foot vertical.
 - E. Maintenance of the ditches during construction shall include but not be limited to mowing, re-grading, sediment removal, re-hydromulching, bank repair and debris removal.
 - F. Sediment removed from the ditches may be respread on the site as directed by the Owner.
- 3.7 FILL AND CUT SLOPES
- A. Fill slopes in all cases shall be no steeper than 3:1 unless specifically stated on the plans or approved by the Owner's soils engineer.
 - B. When cut slopes exceed 2:1 for depths over 3 feet, proper bracing and shoring per OSHA requirements shall be used and maintained.
 - C. For permanent slopes, cut or fill, between 2:1 and 10:1, erosion protection shall be provided with hydromulching, sodding, seeding, or other method as approved.
- 3.8 SEDIMENTATION BASINS
- A. Description:
 1. Provide sedimentation ponds where indicated.
 2. Route drainage from cleared areas through the sedimentation basin.
 3. Operate and maintain the pond during construction.
 - B. Maintenance:
 1. Maintain the pond and the outfall and sediment retarding structure in good working condition throughout the time the pond is to be in operation.
 2. When sediment and debris fill the pond to over one third (1/3) its designed capacity, clean out the pond.
 3. Stockpile, in its' own separate area, the sediment from the clearing operation, or remove from the site, as required. Make adequate drainage provisions such that drainage from the sediment stockpile drains back into the sediment pond. When approved by the Owner, sediment removed from the pond may be spread over the site.
- 3.9 SEEDING
- A. Seed disturbed portions of the site and stockpile areas within 14 days if the phasing of the construction operations are anticipated to leave those portions of the areas unworked for 21 days or more.
 - B. Maintain seeded areas until the project is accepted by the Owner. Maintain by watering, fertilizing, reseeding, mowing and erosion repair as may be required. Cut grass when the average height of the grass reaches 6 inches. Clippings may be mulched back into the seeded areas.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 016000
PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged from other projects are not considered new products.
 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
 - a. Form of Approval: As specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
 - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- B. Contractor prohibited from allowing the installation of any hazardous materials in the project including, but not limited to, asbestos containing materials, carcinogens, lead based paints and coatings, etc.

1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weather-tight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
 4. Store foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
 5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
 6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
 7. Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.
- 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES
- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
 2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
 2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
 3. Refer to Divisions 02 through 49. Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES
- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
 2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
 3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
 4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
 5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
 6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
 7. Where all other criteria are met, contractor shall give preference to products that:
 - a. Have longer warranted life span under normal use.
 - b. Result in less construction waste
 8. Do not use the following products:

- a. Products containing CFCs or HCFCs.
 - b. Composite wood products containing added urea formaldehyde.
 - c. Wood products harvested from old growth timber.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:
- 1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
 - 3. Products:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Non-restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product.
 - 4. Manufacturers:
 - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Non-restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
 - 5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
- 1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.
- 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS
- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- 1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
 - 2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
 - 3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
 - 4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
 - 5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**END OF SECTION**

SECTION 017300**EXECUTION****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Construction layout.
 2. Field engineering and surveying.
 3. Installation of the Work.
 4. Cutting and patching.
 5. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
 6. Progress cleaning.
 7. Starting and adjusting.
 8. Protection of installed construction.
 9. Correction of the Work.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by land surveyor.
- D. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from the Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural element during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
 2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements include the following:
 - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
 - b. Fire separation assemblies.
 - c. Air or smoke barriers.
 - d. Fire-suppression systems.
 - e. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
 - f. Control systems.
 - g. Communication systems.
 - h. Conveying systems.
 - i. Electrical wiring systems.
 - j. Operating systems of special construction.

3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
 - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
 - b. Membranes and flashings.
 - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
 - d. Equipment supports.
 - e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
 - f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
 4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.
- C. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.
- 1.6 WARRANTY
- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
1. For projects requiring compliance with sustainable design and construction practices and procedures, utilize products for patching that comply with requirements of Division 01 Section "Sustainable Design Requirements."
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to the Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.
1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
1. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
 - a. Description of the Work.
 - b. List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
 - c. List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
 - d. Recommended corrections.
 2. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

3. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
4. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
5. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility and Owner that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of the Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
 1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
 2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
 3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
 4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
 5. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
 6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Identification: Owner will identify existing benchmarks, control points, and property corners.
- B. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
 1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
 2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
- C. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
 1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
 2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary

- reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
- D. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.
- E. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
1. Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
 2. Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."
- 3.5 INSTALLATION
- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
 2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
 3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.
- F. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- G. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- H. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- I. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.
- 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING
- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
- B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- D. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching in accordance with requirements of Division 01 Section "Summary."
- E. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent

interruption to occupied areas.

- F. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.
 2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
 3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
 4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
 6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- G. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
 2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
 - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
 - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
 3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
 - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
 4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or re-hang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
 5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weather-tight condition.
- H. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces.

3.7 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.
 2. Pre-installation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at pre-installation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend pre-installation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

3.8 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
 2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
 3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
 - a. Utilize containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.

4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where more than one installer has worked.
 - B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
 - C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
 1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
 2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
 - D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
 - E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
 - F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
 - G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls." Division 01 Section "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
 - H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
 - I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
 - J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.
- 3.9 STARTING AND ADJUSTING
- A. Coordinate startup and adjusting of equipment and operating components with requirements in Division 01 Section "General Commissioning Requirements."
 - B. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
 - C. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
 - D. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
 - E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
- 3.10 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION
- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
 - B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.
- 3.11 CORRECTION OF THE WORK
- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
 - B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
 - C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
 - D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
 - E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 017700**CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Substantial Completion procedures.
 2. Final completion procedures.
 3. Warranties.
 4. Final cleaning.

1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete with request.
1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of items on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
 2. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
 3. Submit specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
 4. Obtain and submit releases permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
 5. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, operation and maintenance manuals, final completion construction photographic documentation, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
 6. Deliver tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
 7. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
 8. Complete startup testing of systems.
 9. Submit test/adjust/balance records.
 10. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
 11. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
 12. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
 13. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
 14. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection for Substantial Completion. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
 2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.4 FINAL COMPLETION

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
 2. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
 3. Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.

4. Submit pest-control final inspection report and warranty.
 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection for acceptance. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Re-inspection: Request re-inspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected. Include cost for re-inspection based on incomplete work of the Contractor.
- 1.5 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)
- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction. Use CSI Form 14.1A attached or form provided by Contractor and approved by Architect.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first.
 2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
 3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Name of Architect.
 - d. Name of Contractor.
 - e. Page number.
 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
 - a. PDF electronic file.
- 1.6 WARRANTIES
- A. Submittal Time: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where commencement of warranties other than date of Substantial Completion is indicated.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
 4. Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide table of contents at beginning of document.
- D. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.
1. Use cleaning products that meet Green Seal GS-37, or if GS-37 is not applicable, use products that comply with the California Code of Regulations maximum allowable VOC levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 FINAL CLEANING**

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
 - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
 - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
 - c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
 - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
 - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
 - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
 - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
 - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
 - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
 - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
 - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
 - l. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
 - 1) Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
 - m. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
 - n. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
 - o. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
 - p. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
 - q. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter upon inspection.
 - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report upon completion of cleaning.
 - r. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
 - s. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Pest Control: Engage an experienced, licensed exterminator to make a final inspection and rid Project of rodents, insects, and other pests. Prepare a report.

END OF SECTION



Project: _____

From (A/E): _____

Site Visit Date: _____

To (Contractor): _____

A/E Project Number: _____

Contract For: _____

The following items require the attention of the Contractor for completion or correction. This list may not be all-inclusive, and the failure to include any items on this list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

Item Number	Room Number	Location (Area)	Description	Correction/Completion Date	Verification A/E Check
-------------	-------------	-----------------	-------------	----------------------------	------------------------

Attachments

Signed by: _____ Date: _____

Copies: Owner Consultants _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ File

SECTION 017823**OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
 2. Emergency manuals.
 3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 4. Product maintenance manuals.
 5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.
- 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual specification sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
1. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to modifications and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically-indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
 - a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically-linked operation and maintenance directory.
 - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
 2. One paper copy. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves. Architect will return.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY
- A. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
1. List of documents.
 2. List of systems.
 3. List of equipment.
 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
 2. Table of contents.
 3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
1. Subject matter included in manual.
 2. Name and address of Project.
 3. Name and address of Owner.
 4. Date of submittal.
 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Agent.
 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
 2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based upon file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel upon opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
 - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
 - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents and indicate Specification Section number on bottom of spine. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
 - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as

foldouts.

- b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
 1. Type of emergency.
 2. Emergency instructions.
 3. Emergency procedures.
- B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
 1. Fire.
 2. Flood.
 3. Gas leak.
 4. Water leak.
 5. Power failure.
 6. Water outage.
 7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 8. Chemical release or spill.
- C. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.
- D. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 1. Instructions on stopping.
 2. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 3. Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
 4. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 5. Special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
 1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 3. Operating standards.
 4. Operating procedures.
 5. Operating logs.
 6. Wiring diagrams.
 7. Control diagrams.
 8. Piped system diagrams.
 9. Precautions against improper use.
 10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
 1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
 4. Equipment function.
 5. Operating characteristics.
 6. Limiting conditions.
 7. Performance curves.
 8. Engineering data and tests.
 9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:
 1. Startup procedures.
 2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 4. Regulation and control procedures.
 5. Instructions on stopping.
 6. Normal shutdown instructions.

7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 9. Special operating instructions and procedures.
- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.
- 2.5 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS
- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
 - B. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
 - C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
 1. Product name and model number.
 2. Manufacturer's name.
 3. Color, pattern, and texture.
 4. Material and chemical composition.
 5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
 - D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
 1. Inspection procedures.
 2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
 5. Repair instructions.
 - E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
 - F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- 2.6 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS
- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
 - B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
 - C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
 - D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
 1. Test and inspection instructions.
 2. Troubleshooting guide.
 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
 - E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.

2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION AND DELIVERY

- A. Operation and Maintenance Documentation Directory: Prepare a separate manual that provides an organized reference to emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- B. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- C. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- E. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- F. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."
- G. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.
- H. Include transmittal with all deliveries to Owner. Request receipt confirmation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 017839**PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
1. Record Drawings.
 2. Record Specifications.
 3. Record Product Data.
 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
1. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
 - a. Initial Submittal: Submit one paper copy and PDF electronic files of marked-up record prints and one set(s) of plots from corrected record digital data files. Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
 - b. Final Submittal: Submit one paper copy and PDF electronic files of marked-up record prints. Print each Drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
 - c. Final Submittal: Submit one paper copy and PDF electronic files of marked-up record prints, one set(s) of record digital data files, and three set(s) of record digital data file plots. Plot each drawing file, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit one paper copy and one PDF copy of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy and one PDF copy of each submittal.
1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Refer to other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one paper copy of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report indicating items incorporated in Project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including modifications, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS
- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
 - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
 - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
 - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
 - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
 - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.
 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
 - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.

- c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
 - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
 - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
 - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
 - g. Actual equipment locations.
 - h. Duct size and routing.
 - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
 - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
 - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
 - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
 - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
 - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
- 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Utilize personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
 - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
 - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
 - 6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
- 1. Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as the original Contract Drawings.
 - 2. Format: DWG [DXF] [DGN], Version [Insert designation], operating in Microsoft Windows Apple Macintosh operating system.
 - 3. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 - 4. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
 - 5. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect through Construction Manager for resolution.
- C. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings where Architect determines that neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings are suitable to show actual installation.
- 1. New Drawings may be required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
 - 2. Consult Architect and Construction Manager for proper scale and scope of detailing and notations required to record the actual physical installation and its relation to other construction. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.
- D. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
- 1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
 - 2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
 - 3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
 - 4. Identification: As follows:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Date.
 - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
 - d. Name of Architect and Construction Manager.
 - e. Name of Contractor.
- 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS
- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
- 1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 - 2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.

3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
 4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
 5. Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file paper copy scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked up paper copy of Specifications.

2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
 2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
 3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as annotated PDF electronic file paper copy scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked up paper copy of Product Data.
1. Include record Product Data directory organized by specification section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.
- B. Format: Submit miscellaneous record submittals as PDF electronic file paper copy scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked up miscellaneous record submittals.
1. Include miscellaneous record submittals directory organized by specification section number and title, electronically linked to each item of miscellaneous record submittals.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and modifications to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's and Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 017900**DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for products in those Sections.
- 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
1. Indicate proposed training modules utilizing manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For facilitator.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
- D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
- B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.
- C. Pre-Instruction Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to demonstration and training including, but not limited to, the following:
1. Inspect and discuss locations and other facilities required for instruction.
 2. Review and finalize instruction schedule and verify availability of educational materials, instructors' personnel, audiovisual equipment, and facilities needed to avoid delays.
 3. Review required content of instruction.
 4. For instruction that must occur outside, review weather and forecasted weather conditions and procedures to follow if conditions are unfavorable.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
 - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
 - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
 - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
 - c. Operating standards.
 - d. Regulatory requirements.
 - e. Equipment function.
 - f. Operating characteristics.
 - g. Limiting conditions.
 - h. Performance curves.
 - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
 - a. Emergency manuals.
 - b. Operations manuals.
 - c. Maintenance manuals.
 - d. Project record documents.
 - e. Identification systems.
 - f. Warranties and bonds.
 - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
 - 3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
 - b. Instructions on stopping.
 - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
 - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
 - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
 - 4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
 - a. Startup procedures.
 - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
 - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
 - d. Regulation and control procedures.
 - e. Control sequences.
 - f. Safety procedures.
 - g. Instructions on stopping.
 - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
 - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
 - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
 - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
 - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
 - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
 - 5. Adjustments: Include the following:
 - a. Alignments.
 - b. Checking adjustments.
 - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
 - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
 - 6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnostic instructions.
 - b. Test and inspection procedures.
 - 7. Maintenance: Include the following:
 - a. Inspection procedures.
 - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
 - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
 - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
 - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
 - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
 - g. Instruction on use of special tools.

8. Repairs: Include the following:
 - a. Diagnosis instructions.
 - b. Repair instructions.
 - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
 - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
 - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Division 01 Section "Operations and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

3.2 INSTRUCTION

- A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
- B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
- C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
 1. Schedule training with Owner, through Construction Manager, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- D. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.
- E. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 024113**SELECTIVE SITE DEMOLITION****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes the following:
 - 1. Demolition and removal of selected site elements and building remnants.
 - 2. Demolition and removal of existing paving, curbs, sidewalks, and adjacent landscape work to limits indicated on Drawings.
- B. Items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered during selective demolition shall remain Owner's property. Carefully remove and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and deliver promptly to Owner.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standard Institute (ANSI):
 - 1. ANSI A 10.6 "Demolition, Safety Requirements"
- B. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
 - 1. NFPA 241 "Standard for Safeguarding Construction, Alteration, and Demolition Operations"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site, unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction and deliver them to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare them for reuse, and reinstall them where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following under provisions of Section 013300.
- B. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
 - 1. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
 - 2. Coordination for shut-off, capping, and continuation of utility services as required.
 - 3. Owner's On-Site Operations: Provide a detailed sequence of demolition and removal work to ensure uninterrupted progress of Owner's off-site operations.
 - 4. Means of protection for items to remain and items in path of waste removal from site.
- C. Qualification Data: Qualification data for firms and persons specified in "Quality Assurance" article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include list of completed projects with project name, addresses, names of Architects and Owners, and other information specified.
- D. Pre-demolition Photographs or Videotapes: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by selective demolition operations. Comply with Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation." Submit before Work begins.
- E. Landfill Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of hazardous wastes by a landfill facility licensed to accept hazardous wastes.
- F. Closeout Submittals: Record documents, indicating locations of encountered items, whether currently in use or abandoned in place.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
 - 1. Contractor: Contractor is responsible for quality control of the Work.
 - 2. Demolition Firm: A firm experienced in successfully demolition and removal of work similar to that indicated for this Project, with a record of successful performance, and with sufficient capacity to provide demolition, removal, and legal disposal of debris without causing delay in the Work.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with all applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal, State and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction. Obtain necessary approvals from all such authorities.
 - 1. Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

- 2. Comply with ANSI A 10.6 and NFPA 241.
 - C. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Review methods and procedures related to selective demolition.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS OR SITE CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Requirements: Proceed with the Work in accordance with governmental requirements.
 - B. Condition of Site Elements: Owner assumes no responsibility for actual condition of site elements to be demolished.
 - 1. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner insofar as practicable. However, variations may occur by Owner's removal and salvage operations prior to start of demolition work.
 - C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
 - D. Recycled Materials: Items of recycled value to Contractor may be removed from structure as work progresses. Recycled items shall be transported from site as they are removed. Comply with governing regulations pertaining to environmental protection.
 - E. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
 - 1. Hazardous Materials: If materials suspected of containing hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
 - F. Explosives: Use of explosives will not be permitted.
 - G. Traffic: Conduct demolition operations and removal of debris to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities.
 - H. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by governing regulations.
 - I. Protections: Ensure safe passage of persons around areas of demolition. Conduct operations to prevent injury to adjacent buildings, structures, other facilities, and persons.
 - 1. Erect temporary covered passageways as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Provide shoring, bracing, or support to prevent movement, settlement or collapse of structures to be demolished and adjacent facilities to remain.
 - J. Damages: Promptly repair damages caused to adjacent facilities by demolition operations at no cost to Owner.
 - K. Utility Services: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain, keep in service, and protect against damage during demolition operations.
 - 1. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving adjacent facilities, except when authorized in writing by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to governing authorities.
 - L. Utility Services: Refer to applicable Sections for disconnecting, removal, and capping of utility services. Do not start demolition work until utility disconnections have been completed and verified in writing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped.
 - B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective demolition required.
 - C. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and reinstalled and items to be removed and salvaged.
 - D. When unanticipated mechanical, electrical, or structural elements that conflict with intended function or design are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report to Architect.
 - E. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions by use of preconstruction photographs and preconstruction videotapes.
 - 1. Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Photographic Documentation.

3.2 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
 1. Comply with requirements for existing services/systems interruptions specified in Division 01 Section "Summary of Work."
- B. Service/System Requirements: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off indicated utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
 1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
 2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, before proceeding with selective demolition provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.

3.3 PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 1. Comply with requirements for access and protection specified in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of existing adjacent buildings.
- C. Temporary Shoring: Provide and maintain interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or structural support to preserve stability and prevent unexpected movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
 1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of demolition.
- D. Pollution Controls: Use water sprinkling, temporary enclosures, and other suitable methods to limit dust and dirt rising and scattering in air to lowest practical level. Comply with governing regulations pertaining to environmental protection.
 1. Do not use water when it may create hazardous or objectionable conditions such as ice, flooding, and pollution.

3.4 DEMOLITION

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
 1. Proceed with demolition in systematic manner, from top of structure to ground. Complete demolition work above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on lower levels.
 2. Demolish concrete and masonry in small sections.
 3. Break up and remove concrete slabs-on-grade, unless otherwise shown to remain.
- B. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition.
- C. Below-Grade Construction:
 1. Demolish and remove below-grade construction and concrete slabs on grade.
 2. Filling Basements and Voids: Completely fill below-grade areas and voids resulting from demolition of structures.
 3. Use satisfactory soil materials consisting of stone, gravel, and sand, free from debris, trash, frozen materials, roots and other organic matter.
 4. Prior to placement of fill materials, ensure that areas to be filled are free of standing water, frost, frozen material, trash and debris.
 5. Place fill materials in horizontal layers not exceeding 6" in loose depth. Compact each layer at optimum moisture content of fill material to a density equal to original adjacent ground, unless subsequent excavation for new work is required.
 6. After fill placement and compaction, grade surface to meet adjacent contours and to provide flow to surface drainage structures.

3.5 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in an EPA-approved landfill.
 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.

- B. At the end of each workday, remove unused materials, debris and containers from the site.
- C. Burning of removed materials from demolished structures will not be permitted on site.
- D. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.
- E. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 03 30 00

STRUCTURAL CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Drilled Piers
 - 2. Grade Beams
 - 3. Suspended Floor Slab
 - 4. Concrete Fill on Metal Deck

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Indicate amounts of mixing water or admixtures to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
- C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

- D. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.
- E. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
 - 1. Aggregates.
- F. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 - 1. Cementitious materials.
 - 2. Admixtures.
 - 3. Form materials and form-release agents.
 - 4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
 - 5. Waterstops.
 - 6. Floor and slab treatments.
 - 7. Bonding agents.
 - 8. Adhesives.
 - 9. Vapor retarders.
 - 10. Semirigid joint filler.
 - 11. Joint-filler strips.
 - 12. Repair materials.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C94/C94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.
 - 1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
 - 1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete," Sections 1 through 5.
 - 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- E. Concrete Testing Service: Engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
 - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.
- D. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.
- E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars, #3 - #11: ASTM A615, Grade 60, deformed.
- B. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- C. Reinforcing steel to contain a minimum of 90% recycled material and a minimum of 85% post-consumer recycled material.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A615, Grade 60, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.
- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150, Type I/II, gray. Supplement with the following at contractor's discretion:
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class F.
 - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C989, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C33, Class 3M coarse aggregate or better, graded. Provide aggregates from a single source.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: Per ACI 318 limitations related to spacing of steel reinforcement, depth of slab or thickness of concrete member.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- C. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C330, 1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- D. Water: ASTM C1602/C1602M.

2.6 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C494/C494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C1017/C1017M, Type II.

2.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Rubber Strip Waterstops: Manufactured rectangular or trapezoidal strip, bentonite-free hydrophilic polymer modified chloroprene rubber, for adhesive bonding to concrete, 3/8 by 3/4 inch (10 by 19 mm).
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Deneef Construction Chemicals; Swellseal.
 - b. Greenstreak; Hydrotite.
 - c. Mitsubishi International Corporation; Adeka Ultra Seal.
 - d. Progress Unlimited, Inc.; Superstop.

2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarder: Refer to plans. Install per manufacturer's recommendations.

2.9 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.
 - 1. Products:
 - a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; BurkeFilm.
 - c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Aquafilm.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.

- f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
- g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
- h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
- j. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; Confilm.
- k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
- l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
- m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
- n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
- o. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Finishing Aid.
- p. Unitex; Pro-Film.
- q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Monofilm ER.
- r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

B. Water: Potable.

C. Sheet materials for curing: ASTM C171

D. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor coverings.

1. Products:

- a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB.
- b. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II.
- c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20.
- d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Cure and Seal WB.
- e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-18).
- f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Aqua Cure VOX.
- g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Cure & Seal 309 Emulsion.
- h. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
- j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
- k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure.
- l. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 150E.
- m. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
- n. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB 150.
- o. Unitex; Hydro Seal.
- p. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Hydrasheen 15 percent
- q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 309.

2.10 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

- B. Latex-modified portland cement concrete joint filler with a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi at 28 days.
- C. Self-leveling Underlayment: portland cement-based compound with a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi at 28 days. Underlayment shall be capable of being applied with a feathered edge.
- D. Patching Mortar: ASTM C928; portland cement-based mortar with a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi at 28 days.
- E. Bonding Agent: ASTM C1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- F. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than 0.0217-inch- (0.55-mm-) thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.
- G. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch (0.85 mm) thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Limit the water-to-cementitious materials (w/cm) ratio in concrete for floors to receive moisture-sensitive flooring to no higher than 0.45.
- C. Cementitious Materials: Percentages, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete shall be determined by the concrete supplier to maximize the amount of recycled material in the concrete while controlling workability, setting time, rate of strength gain, and other properties to facilitate construction operations.
 - 1. Cementitious materials other than portland cement shall make up a minimum of 15 percent of the total cementitious materials in any mix.
 - 2. Limit cementitious materials other than portland cement to no more than 20 percent of the total cementitious materials in floor slabs to receive moisture-sensitive flooring.
- D. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.
- E. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in pumped concrete to achieve a flowable mix, taking into account the pumping length and configuration.
4. Use water-reducing admixture in concrete for concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.

2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Refer to sheet S1.10 of the structural drawings for Usage, Concrete 28-Day Compressive Strength, Slump and Maximum Aggregate Size.

2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.14 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C94/C94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Form vertical faces of all footings, stem walls and pilasters.
- C. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- D. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 1. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 2. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) for rough-formed finished surfaces.

- E. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.
- F. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- G. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- H. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- I. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- J. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- K. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- L. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- M. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
 - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
 - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
 - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Refer to plans. Install per manufacturer recommendations.

3.5 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 - 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
 - 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.6 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 - 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 - 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
 - 3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
 - 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 - 5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 - 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slab-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
 - 1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 - 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.8 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Water-reducing admixture, high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizer may be added during batching or at the Project site to the dosage specified in the mix design. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for timing of addition, dosage, and mixing requirements prior to placement. Samples for quality assurance tests shall be obtained after admixture addition and additional mixing in accordance with ASTM C94.
- C. Water is permitted to be added to a batch of concrete at the project site before placement provided that the amount of water added does not exceed the allowed amount indicated on the delivery ticket. Water addition shall only be permitted before any portion of the load is discharged. Samples for quality assurance tests shall be obtained after water addition and additional mixing in accordance with ASTM C94.
 - 1. Do not add water to concrete after plasticizing or high-range water-reducing admixtures are added to the concrete at the Project site to achieve flowable concrete.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

- F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.9 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to receive a rubbed finish.
- C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed finished as-cast concrete where indicated:
1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.
 2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix one part portland cement to one and one-half parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches so color of dry grout will match adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and

remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.

- D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
 - 1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.
- C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Do not burnish or over-work the slab surface. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
 - 1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 - 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E1155/E1155M, for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.
- D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
 - 1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
- E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

3.11 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.

3.12 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
 - 1. In areas to receive flooring or cementitious toppings, after curing period has elapsed, remove evaporation retarder without damaging concrete surfaces by bead blasting to a surface profile of CSP 2 or other method as recommended by flooring or topping manufacturer.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.
- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
 - 1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.

- c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage for not less than seven days.
 - a. In areas to receive flooring or cementitious toppings, after curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by bead blasting to a surface profile of CSP 2 or other method as recommended by flooring or topping manufacturer.
4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage for not less than seven days.
 - a. In areas to receive flooring or cementitious toppings, after curing period has elapsed, remove curing and sealing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by bead blasting to a surface profile of CSP 2 or other method as recommended by flooring or topping manufacturer.

3.13 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Defer joint filling until concrete has aged at least one month(s). For joints under flooring, defer joint filling until ready to begin flooring installation. Do not fill joints until construction traffic has permanently ceased.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install latex-modified portland cement based joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least 2 inches (50 mm) deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and grind joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.14 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
 - 3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
 - 1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 - 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 - 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 - 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and

primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.

6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks greater than 1/32" (0.8 mm) wide and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing and Inspecting: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.
- C. Inspections:
1. Steel reinforcement placement.
 2. Headed bolts and studs.
 3. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 4. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 5. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 6. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- D. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 150 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day, but not less than one for each 5000 ft² (465 m²) surface area for slabs or walls.

- a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
2. Slump: ASTM C143/C143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
3. Air Content: ASTM C231/C231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample. The provisions of ASTM C94 shall apply for acceptance of air concrete of concrete.
4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C1064/C1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
5. Concrete Density: ASTM C138/C138M; one test for each composite sample.
6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C39/C39M.
 - a. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C31/C31M.
 - 1) Cast and laboratory cure one set of cylinders for each composite sample.
 - 2) Cast and field cure one set of cylinders on the following schedule:
 - a) Footings: one (1) for each pour.
 - b) Slab on grade: one (1) for each pour.
 - c) All other concrete: one (1) for every ten (10) composite samples, with a minimum of one (1) for each concrete mixture.
 - 3) One set equals either of the following for each compressive strength test, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a) Five (5) standard 6 in x 12 in cylinders or
 - b) Seven (7) standard 4 in x 8 in cylinders
 - 4) A strength test shall consist of two (2) 6 in x 12 in cylinders or three (3) 4 in x 8 in cylinders tested at the indicated age.
 - a) One (1) strength test at 3 days
 - b) One (1) strength test at 7 days
 - c) One (1) strength test at 28 days
 - d) One (1) cylinder will be retained in reserve for later testing if required, unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete. This requirement shall not apply if the strength of the field-cured specimens exceeds f'_c by more than 500 psi (3.45 MPa).

- c. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if both of the following requirements are met:
- 1) Every arithmetic average of any three (3) consecutive strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength, and
 - 2) No individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than:
 - a) 500 psi (3.45 MPa) for $f'_c \leq 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa)
 - b) $0.1f'_c$ for $f'_c > 5000$ psi (34.5 MPa)
7. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, structural engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
8. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
9. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C42/C42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
10. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
11. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

SECTION 033543**POLISHED CONCRETE****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Polished concrete floor finish consisting of thorough cleaning of new concrete slab, dry grinding to remove surface imperfections and irregularities, application of hardener and polishing.
- 1.3 REFERENCES
- A. NFSI - National Floor Safety Institute; Test Method 101A; current edition.
- 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
- A. Polished Concrete Floor Finish: A multi-step finishing process on concrete floor surfaces consisting of dry grinding and polishing to the scheduled reflective sheen.
- 1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Completed polished concrete floor surface shall have a static Coefficient of Friction or Slip Coefficient of 0.6, minimum, when tested in accordance with NFSI Test Method 101A.
- 1.6 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's product data sheets on densifier, sealer, and joint filler materials. Provide manufacturer's product data on polishing equipment, including grinding machine, grinding heads, grinding pads and dust extraction system.
- B. Samples: Submit two polished concrete finish samples, 6 x 6 inch in size, illustrating sheen level of polished concrete.
- C. Test Reports: Submit test reports or certification from NFSI confirming that polished concrete floor finish has been tested in accordance with Method 101A and has passed phase 2 level of certification.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate complete preparation and finishing instructions for each level of sheen.
- E. Maintenance Data: Indicate manufacturer's recommended cleaning and maintenance instructions for polished concrete floor finish.
- 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the work of this Section and trained by equipment manufacturer in proper operation of equipment; successfully completed not less than 3 previous projects of similar scope.
- B. Pre-Installation Conference:
1. Prior to application of polished concrete floor finish, conduct a pre-installation conference at the project site.
 2. Attendance: Contractor, job superintendent, and suppliers of hardeners and sealers related to polished concrete floor finish work.
 3. Agenda: Finish criteria, mock-ups, preparation, application process and protection of completed floors.
- C. Provide list of not less than 5 successful projects, complete with name and contact information of owner, documenting past performance.
- 1.8 MOCK-UP
- A. Provide polished concrete floor finish mock-up, 10 feet long by 10 feet wide, illustrating completed finish including selected sheen level.
- B. Locate mock-up where directed.
- C. Accepted mock-up will serve as standard to judge quality and workmanship of completed polished concrete floor finish.
- D. Accepted mock-up may remain as part of the Work, if undisturbed.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Take precautions to prevent staining of concrete prior to application of concrete floor polishing:
- B. Prohibit parking of vehicles on concrete slab.
- C. If construction equipment must be used for application, diaper components that might drip oil, hydraulic fluid, or other liquids.
- D. Prohibit acids and acidic detergents from contacting concrete surfaces.
- E. Sequence application of concrete polishing after completion of other construction activities that would be damaging to completed polished finish.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACCEPTABLE HARDENING/SEALING MANUFACTURERS

- A. Everhard Densifier by American Concrete Technologies, Inc.
- B. FGS Permashine by L&M Construction Chemicals.
- C. Retro-Plate 99, by Advanced Floor Products, Inc.
- D. Ashford Formula by CureCrete.
- E. Vitraflor/Stabilizer Pro by Bomanite.

2.2 EQUIPMENT

- A. Grinding Machine: Counter rotating head floor grinding machine and edge grinder.
- B. Dust Extraction System: Provide complete with squeegee attachment.
- C. Grinding Heads:
 - 1. Metal Bonded SF-80, SF-150 or SF-300 diamonds depending on application.
 - 2. Resin Bonded: HTC phenolic resin diamonds in 400, 800, 1500, and 3000 grits.
- D. Grinding Pads for Edges:
 - 1. Swiflex Telum grits 40 or 60 and 120, depending upon application.
 - 2. KGS Speedline grits 200, 400, 800, 1500, and 3000.

2.3 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Acceptable Control Joint Filler:
 - 1. Metzger McGuire MM 80 epoxy joint filler.
 - 2. Hi-Tech Structural Systems Polyurea Joint Filler HT-PE85.
- B. Self-Leveling Underlayment: As recommended by system manufacturer for use in areas requiring deep grinding to remove deep surface imperfections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine concrete floors for defects and conditions that cannot be corrected by preparatory work.
- B. Do not proceed until defects are corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean concrete surfaces free of dirt, debris, paint/oil splatters and other residue.
- B. Remove curing compounds and sealers from concrete surfaces.
- C. Leave concrete surfaces clean and dry, ready for polishing process.
- D. Protect adjacent surfaces and finishes from damage by concrete polishing procedures.
- E. Fill control joints with joint filler and shave prior to the grinding and polishing process.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply concrete polishing in accordance with manufacturer's instructions to the selected sheen level.
- B. Grind concrete floor to within 5 inches of walls and partitions using SF-40 grit, removing construction debris and floor slab imperfections and imparting a uniform scratch pattern in concrete surfaces. Thoroughly vacuum floor using a squeegee vacuum attachment to completely remove dust and debris.
- C. Apply liquid densifier, undiluted, at approximate rate of 200 s.f. per gal (or as otherwise recommended by manufacturer) in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Remove excess material from surfaces. Allow to cure for 1 to 2 hours before proceeding with grinding and polishing.
- D. Grind concrete floor to within 5 inches of walls and partitions using metal bonded diamond grits, SF-80, SF-150 and SF-300 in succession, grinding 90 degrees from each previous grind and removing scratches from each previous grind. After each grind, thoroughly vacuum floor using a squeegee vacuum attachment to completely remove dust and debris.

- E. Grind edges of floor using KGS 60, 120 and 220-grit grinding pads, completely removing scratches from each previous grind. After each grind, thoroughly vacuum floor using a squeegee vacuum attachment to completely remove dust and debris.
- F. Polish concrete floor, to sheen level indicated, with resin bonded diamond grits of 400 and 800 as applicable, first polishing floor edges with pads of same grit and then polishing field of floor, completely removing scratches from each previous grit.
- G. Completed polished concrete floor shall have uniform sheen level and shall match accepted mock-up.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 035416**HYDRAULIC CEMENT UNDERLAYMENT****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling underlayment for application below interior floor coverings.
- B. Related Sections:
1. Division 09 Sections for patching and leveling compounds applied with floor coverings.
- 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Installer who is approved by manufacturer for application of underlayment products required for this Project.
- B. Product Compatibility: Manufacturers of underlayment and floor-covering systems certify in writing that products are compatible.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- D. Sound Transmission Characteristics: Where indicated, provide hydraulic-cement underlayment systems identical to those of assemblies tested for STC and IIC ratings per ASTM E 90 and ASTM E 492 by a qualified testing agency.
- 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store materials to comply with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ventilation, ambient temperature and humidity, and other conditions affecting underlayment performance.
1. Place hydraulic-cement-based underlayments only when ambient temperature and temperature of substrates are between 50 and 80 deg F.
- 1.6 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate application of underlayment with requirements of floor-covering products and adhesives, specified in Division 09 Sections, to ensure compatibility of products.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 HYDRAULIC-CEMENT-BASED UNDERLAYMENTS
- A. Underlayment: Hydraulic-cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in minimum uniform thickness of 1/4 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Ardex; K-15 Self-Leveling Underlayment Concrete.
 - b. Dayton Superior Corporation; EconoLevel.
 - c. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Flo-Top Level Magic TAMMS SLU.
 - d. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Levelex.
 - e. MAPEI Corporation; Novoplan Easy.
 2. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement, or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined by ASTM C 219.
 3. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109.
 4. Underlayment Additive: Resilient-emulsion product of underlayment manufacturer, formulated for

- use with underlayment when applied to substrate and conditions indicated.
- B. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch; or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Provide aggregate when recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer for underlayment thickness required.
 - C. Water: Potable and at a temperature of not more than 70 deg F.
 - D. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended in writing for substrate, conditions, and application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
 - A. General: Prepare and clean substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Treat nonmoving substrate cracks according to manufacturer's written instructions to prevent cracks from telegraphing (reflecting) through underlayment.
 - 2. Fill substrate voids to prevent underlayment from leaking.
 - B. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically remove, according to manufacturer's written instructions, laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, form-release agents, dust, dirt, grease, oil, and other contaminants that might impair underlayment bond.
- 3.3 APPLICATION
 - A. General: Mix and apply underlayment components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Close areas to traffic during underlayment application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
 - 2. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum underlayment-to-substrate and intercoat adhesion.
 - B. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
 - C. Apply underlayment to produce uniform, level surface.
 - 1. Apply a final layer without aggregate to product surface.
 - 2. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - D. Cure underlayment according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
 - E. Do not install floor coverings over underlayment until after time period recommended in writing by underlayment manufacturer.
 - F. Remove and replace underlayment areas that evidence lack of bond with substrate, including areas that emit a "hollow" sound when tapped.
- 3.4 PROTECTION
 - A. Protect underlayment from concentrated and rolling loads for remainder of construction period.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 042000**UNIT MASONRY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Reference Section 040511, Mortar and Section 04273, Unit Masonry for structural requirements.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units.
 - 2. Face brick.
 - 3. Mortar and grout.
 - 4. Steel reinforcing bars.
 - 5. Masonry joint reinforcement.
 - 6. Ties and anchors.
 - 7. Embedded flashing.
 - 8. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).
- B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each type and color of the following:
 - 1. Face brick.
 - 2. Pigmented mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
 - 3. Weep holes and vents.
 - 4. Accessories embedded in masonry.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- D. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units:
 - a. Include data on material properties.
 - b. For brick, include size-variation data verifying that actual range of sizes falls within specified tolerances.
 - c. For exposed brick, include test report for efflorescence according to ASTM C 67.
 - 2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
 - 3. Pre-blended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 5. Reinforcing bars.
 - 6. Joint reinforcement.
 - 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
- E. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- F. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.
- G. Shop drawings showing size, placement, and location of reinforcing steel.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.

- B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
 - C. Masonry Standard: Comply with ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
 - D. Sample Panels: Build sample panels to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects. Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for mockups.
 - 1. Build sample panels for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 60 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness.
 - 2. Where masonry is to match existing, erect panels adjacent and parallel to existing surface.
 - 3. Clean one-half of exposed faces of panels with masonry cleaner indicated.
 - 4. Protect approved sample panels from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 5. Approval of sample panels is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; aesthetic qualities of workmanship; and other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - a. Approval of sample panels does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in sample panels unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for each type of exposed unit masonry construction in sizes approximately 96 inches long by 60 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
 - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in exterior wall mockup.
 - b. Include lower corner of window opening framed with stone trim at upper corner of exterior wall mockup. Make opening approximately 12 inches wide by 16 inches high.
 - c. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length in corner of exterior wall mockup approximately 16 inches down from top of mockup, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit masonry above half of flashing).
 - d. Include metal studs, sheathing, sheathing joint-and-penetration treatment, moisture barrier, veneer anchors, flashing, cavity drainage material, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
 - 2. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 3. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of masonry units; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to masonry unit colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities specifically approved by Architect in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless such deviations are specifically approved by Architect, in writing.
 - 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
 - F. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
 - B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
 - C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
 - D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for use with dispensing silos. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.
 - E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides of walls and hold cover securely in place.
 - 2. Where one wythe of multi-wythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.
- C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 - 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
- D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.
- E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

- A. Coordinate with Section 042731 Unit Masonry for structural requirements.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the standard. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work.
- C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide units that comply with requirements for fire-resistance ratings indicated as determined by testing according to ASTM E 119, by equivalent masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 - 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.
 - 1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested according to ASTM E 514 as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, shall show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) ACM Chemistries; RainBloc.
 - 2) BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheapel Plus.
 - 3) Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block.
- C. CMUs: ASTM C 90.
 - 1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 2150 psi.
 - 2. Density Classification: Lightweight.
 - 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
 - 4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.
 - 5. Faces to Receive Plaster: Where units are indicated to receive a direct application of plaster, provide textured-face units made with gap-graded aggregates.

2.3 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide one of the following:
- B. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.4 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units:
 1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
 2. Provide special shapes for applications where stretcher units cannot accommodate special conditions, including those at corners, movement joints, bond beams, sashes, and lintels.
 3. Provide special shapes for applications requiring brick of size, form, color, and texture on exposed surfaces that cannot be produced by sawing.
 4. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C 216.
 1. Products: As scheduled.
 2. Grade: As scheduled.
 3. Type: As scheduled.
 4. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 3350 psi.
 5. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67.
 6. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested according to ASTM C 67 and is rated "not effloresced."
 7. Size: As scheduled.
 8. Application: Use where brick is exposed unless otherwise indicated.
 9. Color and Texture: As scheduled.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C 979. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
 - b. Lanxess Corporation; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
 - c. Solomon Colors, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
- E. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 2. For joints less than 1/4 inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
- F. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.
- G. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. ACM Chemistries; RainBloc for Mortar.
 - b. BASF Aktiengesellschaft; Rheopel Mortar Admixture.
 - c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.
- H. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615 or ASTM A 996, Grade 60.
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951.
 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.

4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: 0.148-inch diameter.
 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches o.c.
 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Either ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

2.7 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated.
1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82; with ASTM A 153, Class B-2 coating.
 2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Commercial Steel, G60 Z180 zinc coating.
 3. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A 153, Class B coating.
 4. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- B. Wire Ties, General: Unless otherwise indicated, size wire ties to extend at least halfway through veneer but with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face. Outer ends of wires are bent 90 degrees and extend 2 inches parallel to face of veneer. **Provide tie length as required to accommodate rigid insulation on the sheathing.**
- C. Individual Wire Ties: Rectangular units with closed ends and not less than 4 inches wide.
1. Where wythes do not align, use adjustable ties with pintle-and-eye connections having a maximum adjustment of 1-1/4 inches.
 2. Wire: Fabricate from 3/16-inch diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire. Mill-galvanized wire ties may be used in interior walls unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Partition Top anchors: 0.105-inch-thick metal plate with 3/8-inch-diameter metal rod 6 inches long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- E. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches wide by 1/4 inch thick by 24 inches long, with ends turned up 2 inches or with cross pins unless otherwise indicated.
1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153.
- F. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:
1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to metal studs, and as follows:
 - a. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
 2. Screw-Attached, Masonry-Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie and a metal anchor section.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 213.
 - 2) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; 315-D with 316.
 - 3) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; DW-10.
 - 4) Wire-Bond; 1004, Type III.
 - b. Anchor Section: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal plate with screw holes top and bottom, 2-3/4 inches wide by 3 inches high; with projecting tabs having slotted holes for inserting vertical legs of wire tie specially formed to fit anchor section.
 - c. Anchor Section: Gasketed sheet metal plate, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 6 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
 - d. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.075-inch-thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
 - e. Wire Ties: Triangular-, rectangular-, or T-shaped wire ties fabricated from 0.187-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel wire.
 3. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, No. 10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) ITW Buildex; Teks Maxiseal with Climaseal finish.
 - 2) Textron Inc., Textron Fastening Systems; Elco Dril-Flex with Stalgard finish.

2.8 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Section 076210, Flexible Flashing.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.
- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Maze weep vent.
 - 2) Blok-Lok Limited; Cell-Vent.
 - 3) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Cell Vents.
 - 4) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 85 Cell Vent.
 - 5) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Quadro-Vent.
 - 6) Wire-Bond; Cell Vent.
- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
 - b. Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
 - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
 - 2. Provide one of the following configurations:
 - a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches high, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
- F. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.
 - b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
 - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.
 - d. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.

2.10 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 - 2. Use portland cement-lime mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. For exterior masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
 - 4. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime mortar.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.
 - 3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
 - 4. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.

- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
 - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 - 2. Mix to match Architect's sample.
 - 3. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints with the following units:
 - a. Face brick.
 - b. Cast stone trim units.
- E. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 2000 psi.
 - 3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches as measured according to ASTM C 143.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
 - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
- F. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- G. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds 30 g/30 sq. in. per minute when tested per ASTM C 67. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

3.3 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
 - 1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
 - 2. For location of elements in plan do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.
 - 3. For location of elements in elevation do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch in a story height or 1/2 inch total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
 - 1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 - 2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 - 3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 - 4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 - 5. For lines and surfaces do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.

6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
 7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
- C. Joints:
1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
 2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch.
 3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
 4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.
 5. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch from one masonry unit to the next.

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: As scheduled; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4-inches. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above unless otherwise indicated.
Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 1. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 48 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
 3. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 07 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow brick CMUs as follows:
 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
 4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Lay solid masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.
 1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
 2. Allow cleaned surfaces to dry before setting.
 3. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
- D. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
 1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer 3/4 inch or more in width.

- E. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 CAVITY WALLS

- A. Bond wythes of cavity walls together using one of the following methods:
 1. Individual Metal Ties: Provide ties as shown installed in horizontal joints, but not less than one metal tie for 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area spaced not to exceed 32 inches o.c. horizontally and 16 inches o.c. vertically. Stagger ties in alternate courses. Provide additional ties within 12 inches of openings and space not more than 36 inches apart around perimeter of openings. At intersecting and abutting walls, provide ties at no more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.
 - a. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties.
 - b. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
 2. Masonry Joint Reinforcement: Installed in horizontal mortar joints.
 - a. Where bed joints of both wythes align, use ladder-type reinforcement extending across both wythes.
 - b. Where bed joints of wythes do not align, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties.
 - c. Where one wythe is of clay masonry and the other of concrete masonry, use adjustable (two-piece) type reinforcement with continuous horizontal wire in facing wythe attached to ties to allow for differential movement regardless of whether bed joints align.
 3. Masonry Veneer Anchors: Comply with requirements for anchoring masonry veneers.
- B. Keep cavities clean of mortar droppings and other materials during construction. Bevel beds away from cavity, to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
- C. Installing Cavity-Wall Insulation: Place small dabs of adhesive, spaced approximately 12 inches o.c. both ways, on inside face of insulation boards, or attach with plastic fasteners designed for this purpose. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other confining obstructions in cavity, with edges butted tightly both ways. Press units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown.
 1. Fill cracks and open gaps in insulation with crack sealer compatible with insulation and masonry.

3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to wall framing and concrete and masonry backup with masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
 1. Fasten screw-attached anchors through sheathing to wall framing and to concrete and masonry backup with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
 2. Embed tie sections in masonry joints. Provide not less than 2 inches of air space between back of masonry veneer and face of sheathing.
 3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
 4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 16 inches o.c. vertically and 24 inches o.c. horizontally (or 12 inches on center vertically and 32 inches on center horizontally) with not less than 1 anchor for each 2.67 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings and at intervals, not exceeding 36 inches, around perimeter.

3.8 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
 1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Form expansion joints in brick as follows:
 1. Build flanges of metal expansion strips into masonry. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
 2. Build flanges of factory-fabricated, expansion-joint units into masonry.

3. Build in compressible joint fillers where indicated.
 4. Form open joint full depth of brick wythe and of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch for installation of sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- D. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch (larger where indicated)
1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.9 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.
- B. Provide concrete masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches for brick-size units and 24 inches for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

3.10 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, CAVITY DRAINAGE

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape as recommended by flashing manufacturer.
 2. At multi-wythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through outer wythe, turned up a minimum of 8 inches, and through inner wythe to within 1/2 inch of the interior face of wall in exposed masonry. Where interior face of wall is to receive furring or framing, carry flashing completely through inner wythe and turn flashing up approximately 2 inches on interior face.
 3. At masonry-veneer walls, extend flashing through veneer, across air space behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least 8 inches; with upper edge tucked under building paper or building wrap, lapping at least 4 inches.
 4. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches to form end dams.
 5. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 6. Install metal drip edges with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
 7. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
 8. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.

Cut flexible flashing off flush with face of wall after masonry wall construction is completed.
- C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.
- D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.
- E. Install weep holes in head joints in exterior wythes of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing and as follows:
 1. Use specified weep/vent products to form weep holes.
 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.

3.11 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- B. Inspections: Level 1 or Level 2 special inspections according to the "International Building Code."
 - 1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
 - 2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
 - 3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.
- C. Testing Prior to Construction: One set of tests.
- D. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, according to ASTM C 140 for compressive strength.
- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.
- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.

3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- C. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
 - 6. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.

3.14 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 044300**STONE MASONRY VENEER****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following applications of stone masonry:
 1. Anchored to unit masonry backup.
 2. Anchored to cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.
- B. Products installed, but not furnished, in this Section include:
 1. Steel lintels and shelf angles for stone masonry specified in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications."

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 1. For stone varieties proposed for use on Project, include test data indicating compliance with physical properties required by referenced ASTM standards.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Full range for colored mortar and other items involving color selection.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 1. For each stone type indicated. Include at least three samples in each set for each type of stone, exhibiting extremes of the full range of color and other visual characteristics expected in completed Work. Samples will establish the standard by which stone provided will be judged.
 2. For each color of mortar required. Label Samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs experienced stonemasons and stone fitters. Similar project size, scope and complexity of work.
- B. Source Limitations for Stone: Obtain each variety of stone, regardless of finish, from one quarry, whether specified in this Section or in another Section of the Specifications, with resources to provide materials of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.
- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings. If not shown on drawings, provide mockup based on the following below:
 2. Build mockups for each type of stone masonry in sizes approximately 48 inches long by 48 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
 - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
 - b. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length by 61-inch width, match actual conditions of project, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit stone masonry above half of flashing).
 - c. Include studs, sheathing, veneer anchors, flashing, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
 3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 4. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of stone; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to stone colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities Architect specifically approves in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
 - B. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
 - C. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
 - D. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Protection of Stone Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed stone masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches down both sides and hold cover securely in place.
 - B. Stain Prevention: Immediately remove mortar and soil to prevent them from staining the face of stone masonry.
 - 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and mortar splatter by coverings spread on the ground and over the wall surface.
 - 2. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 - 3. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt on completed stone masonry.
 - C. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace stone masonry damaged by frost or freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
 - D. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Advise installers of other work about specific requirements for placement of reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and similar items to be built into stone masonry.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 STONE MASONRY VENEER
- A. Type, Color, Finish Face Size: As scheduled.
 - 1. Finish: Honed.
 - 2. Thickness: 4 inches.
 - B. Limestone: Comply with ASTM C 568.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Stone variety: As scheduled.
 - b. Producer/Distributor: As scheduled.
- 2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS
- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
Low-Alkali Cement: Not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
 - B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
 - C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Essroc, Italcementi Group; Capitol PCL Blend or Saylor's Plus.
 - b. Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime.
 - c. Lafarge North America; Eaglebond.
 - d. Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.
 - D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following:
 - a. Lafarge North America; Lafarge Mortar Cement or Magnolia Superbond Mortar Cement.

- E. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Essroc, Italcementi Group; Brixment.
 - b. Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Buff Masonry Cement.
 - c. Lafarge North America; Magnolia Masonry Cement.
 - d. Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Masonry Cement.
- F. Aggregate: ASTM C 144 and as follows:
 - 1. For pointing mortar, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing No. 16 sieve.
- G. Water: Potable.

2.3 VENEER ANCHORS

- A. Materials:
 - 1. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, with ASTM A 153, Class B-2.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, cold-rolled, carbon-steel sheet hot-dip galvanized after fabrication to comply with ASTM A 153, Class B-2.
- B. Size: Sufficient to extend at least halfway, but not less than 1-1/2 inches, through stone masonry and with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
- C. Wire Veneer Anchors: Wire ties formed from W1.7 or 0.148-inch-diameter, hot-dip galvanized -steel wire.
 - 1. Ties are bent in the form of loops with legs not less than 15 inches in length and with last 2 inches bent at 90 degrees.
 - 2. Ties are bent in the form of rectangular loops with ends bent downward for inserting into eyes projecting from masonry joint reinforcement specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."
 - 3. Ties are bent in the form of triangular loops designed to be attached to masonry joint reinforcement specified in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" with vertical wires passing through ties and through eyes projecting from masonry joint reinforcement.
- D. Adjustable, Screw-Attached Veneer Anchors: Units consisting of a wire tie section and a metal anchor section that allow vertical adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall, for attachment over sheathing to metal studs, and as follows:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - Dur-O-Wal, a Dayton Superior Company; D/A 213.
 - Heckmann Building Products Inc.; 315-D with 316.
 - Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; DW-10.
 - 2. Structural Performance Characteristics: Capable of withstanding a 100-lbf load in both tension and compression without deforming or developing play in excess of 0.05 inch.
 - 3. Anchor Section: Gasketed sheet metal plate, 1-1/4 inches wide by 6 inches long, with screw holes top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation or sheathing; and raised rib-stiffened strap, 5/8 inch wide by 6 inches long, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and plate for inserting wire tie. Provide anchor manufacturer's standard, self-adhering, modified bituminous gaskets manufactured to fit behind anchor plate and extend beyond pronged legs.
 - 4. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from 0.067-inch-thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication.
- E. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C 954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene washer, No. 10 diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than 3 exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours per ASTM B 117.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ITW Buildex; Teks Maxiseal with Climaseal finish.
 - b. Textron Inc., Textron Fastening Systems; Elco Drill-Flex with Stalgard finish.

2.4 STONE TRIM ANCHORS

- A. Stone Trim Anchors: Units fabricated with tabs or dowels designed to engage kerfs or holes in stone trim units and holes for fasteners or postinstalled anchor bolts for fastening to substrates or framing as indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Halfen Anchoring Systems; Meadow Burke.
 - b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
 - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.
- B. Materials: Fabricate anchors from stainless steel, ASTM A 240, Type 304. Fabricate dowels from stainless steel, ASTM A 276, Type 304.

- C. Fasteners for Stone Trim Anchors: Annealed stainless-steel bolts, nuts, and washers; ASTM F 593 for bolts and ASTM F 594 for nuts, Alloy Group 1A1.
- 2.5 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS
- A. Refer to specification 076210, Flexible Flashing.
- 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES
- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene or PVC.
 - B. Weep Hole/Vent Products: Use one of the following unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Mesh Weep Holes/Vents: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full width of head joint and 2 inches high by thickness of stone masonry; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) CavClear/Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Weep Vents.
 - 2) Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net Weep Vents.
 - C. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
 - 1. Provide one of the following configurations:
 - a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches wide, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break.
 - b. CavClear/Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
 - c. Dur-O-Wal, a Dayton Superior Company; Polytite MortarStop.
 - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd; Mortar Net.
- 2.7 MORTAR MIXES
- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Do not use calcium chloride.
 - 2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
 - 3. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious and aggregate materials together before adding water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that will retain its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for one to two hours. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within 30 minutes of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.
 - B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in the form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
 - C. Mortar for Stone Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
 - 1. Mortar for Setting Stone: Type N.
 - 2. Mortar for Pointing Stone: Type N.
 - D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
 - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 - 2. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- 2.8 FABRICATION
- A. Fabricate stone to comply with sizes, shapes, and tolerances recommended by applicable stone association or, if none, by stone source, for faces, edges, beds, and backs.
 - 1. For limestone, comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."
 - B. Cut or select stone to produce pieces of thickness, size, and shape indicated, including details on Drawings. Dress joints (bed and vertical) straight and at right angle to face unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Cut and drill sinkages and holes in stone for anchors and supports.
 - D. Carefully inspect stone at quarry or fabrication plant for compliance with requirements for appearance, material, and fabrication. Replace defective units before shipment.
 - 1. Clean sawed backs of stone to remove rust stains and iron particles.
 - E. Thickness of Stone: Provide thickness indicated, but not less than the following:
 - 1. Thickness: 4 inches plus or minus 1/4 inch.
 - F. Shape stone for type of masonry pattern as follows:

1. Split-bed, random-range ashlar with random course heights and random lengths (interrupted coursed).
- G. Finish exposed faces and edges of stone to comply with requirements indicated for finish and to match approved samples and mockups.
 1. Finish: Smooth, (Honed).
 2. Finish for Sills: Smooth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces indicated to receive stone masonry, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine substrate to verify that inserts, reinforcement, veneer anchors, flashing, and other items installed in substrates and required for or extending into stone masonry are correctly installed.
- C. Examine wall framing, sheathing, and air barrier to verify that stud locations are suitable for spacing of veneer anchors and that installation will result in a weatherproof covering.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Accurately mark stud centerlines on face of weather-resistant sheathing paper before beginning stone installation.
- B. Coat concrete and unit masonry backup with asphalt dampproofing.
- C. Clean dirty or stained stone surfaces by removing soil, stains, and foreign materials before setting. Clean stone by thoroughly scrubbing with fiber brushes and then drenching with clear water. Use only mild cleaning compounds that contain no caustic or harsh materials or abrasives.

3.3 SETTING OF STONE MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Perform necessary field cutting and trimming as stone is set.
 1. Use power saws to cut stone that is fabricated with saw-cut surfaces. Cut lines straight and true, with edges eased slightly to prevent snipping.
- B. Sort stone before it is placed in wall to remove stone that does not comply with requirements relating to aesthetic effects, physical properties, or fabrication, or that is otherwise unsuitable for intended use.
- C. Arrange stones in three-course, random-range ashlar pattern with random course heights, random lengths (interrupted coursed), and uniform joint widths.
- D. Arrange stones with color and size variations uniformly dispersed for an evenly blended appearance.
- E. Set stone to comply with requirements indicated on Drawings. Install supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure stone masonry in place. Set stone accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
- F. Maintain uniform joint widths except for variations due to different stone sizes and where minor variations are required to maintain bond alignment if any. Lay walls with joints not less than 3/8 inch at narrowest points or more than 3/8 inch at widest points.
- G. Provide sealant joints of widths and at locations indicated. Keep sealant joints free of mortar and other rigid materials. Sealant joints is specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install metal expansion strips in sealant joints at locations indicated. Build flanges of expansion strips into masonry by embedding in mortar between stone masonry and backup wythe. Lap each joint 4 inches in direction of water flow. Seal joints below grade and at junctures with horizontal expansion joints if any.
- I. Install embedded flashing and weep holes at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated.
 1. At stud-framed walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, up the face of sheathing at least 8 inches, and behind weather-resistant sheathing paper.
 2. At multi-wythe masonry walls, including cavity walls, extend flashing through stone masonry, turned up a minimum of 4 inches, and extend into or through inner wythe to comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry."
 3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing full length of angles but not less than 6 inches into masonry at each end.
 4. At sills, extend flashing not less than 4 inches at ends.
 5. At ends of head and sill flashing turn up not less than 2 inches o form end dams.
 6. Install metal drip edges with ribbed sheet metal flashing by interlocking hemmed edges to form hooked seam. Seal seam with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.

7. Extend sheet metal flashing 1/2 inch beyond face of masonry at exterior and turn flashing down to form a drip.
 8. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
 9. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch back from outside face of wall and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
- J. Place weep holes and vents in joints where moisture may accumulate, including at base of cavity walls, above shelf angles, and at flashing.
1. Use rectangular plastic tubing mesh weep holes/vents to form weep holes.
 2. Space weep holes 24 inches o.c.
 3. Place cavity drainage material in cavities to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Miscellaneous Masonry Accessories" Article.
- K. Install vents in vertical head joints at the top of each continuous cavity at spacing indicated. Use rectangular plastic tubing mesh weep holes/vents to form vents.
1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.
- 3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES
- A. Variation from Plumb: For vertical lines and surfaces, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more. For external corners, expansion joints, control joints, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.
 - B. Variation from Level: For bed joints and lines of exposed lintels, sills, parapets, horizontal grooves, and other conspicuous lines, do not exceed 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2 inch in 40 feet or more.
 - C. Variation of Linear Building Line: For position shown in plan, do not exceed 1/2 inch in 20 feet or 3/4 inch in 40 feet or more.
 - D. Measure variation from level, plumb, and position shown in plan as variation of the average plane of the face of each stone from level, plumb, or dimensioned plane.
 - E. Variation in Mortar-Joint Thickness: Do not vary from joint size range indicated.
 - F. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Stones: Do not exceed one-half of tolerance specified for thickness of stone.
- 3.5 INSTALLATION OF ANCHORED STONE MASONRY
- A. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement by inserting pintles into eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
 - B. Anchor stone masonry to unit masonry with wire anchors unless otherwise indicated. Connect anchors to masonry joint reinforcement with vertical rods inserted through anchors and through eyes of masonry joint reinforcement projecting from unit masonry.
 - C. Anchor stone masonry to stud framing with adjustable, screw-attached veneer anchors unless otherwise indicated. Fasten anchors through sheathing to framing with two screws.
 - D. Embed veneer anchors in mortar joints of stone masonry at least halfway, but not less than 1-1/2 inches, through stone masonry and with at least 5/8-inch cover on outside face.
 1. Install continuous wire reinforcement in horizontal joints and attach to seismic veneer anchors as stone is set.
 - E. Space anchors to provide not less than 1 anchor per 2 sq. ft. of wall area. Install additional anchors within 12 inches of openings, sealant joints, and perimeter at intervals not exceeding 12 inches.
 - F. Set stone in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated. Build anchors into mortar joints as stone is set.
 - G. Provide 2-inch cavity between stone masonry and backup construction unless otherwise indicated. Keep cavity free of mortar droppings and debris.
 1. Place mortar spots in cavity at veneer anchors to maintain spacing.
 2. Slope beds toward cavity to minimize mortar protrusions into cavity.
 3. Do not attempt to trowel or remove mortar fins protruding into cavity.
 - H. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depth of not less than 3/4 inch before setting mortar has hardened. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides.
- 3.6 POINTING
- A. Prepare stone-joint surfaces for pointing with mortar by removing dust and mortar particles. Where setting mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas, apply pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch deep until a uniform depth is formed.

- B. Point stone joints by placing and compacting pointing mortar in layers not more than 3/8 inch deep. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- C. Tool joints, when pointing mortar is thumbprint hard, with a smooth jointing tool to produce the following joint profile:
 - 1. Joint Profile: Concave.

3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stone masonry of the following description:
 - 1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged stone. Stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
 - 2. Defective joints.
 - 3. Stone masonry not matching approved samples and mockups.
 - 4. Stone masonry not complying with other requirements indicated.
- B. Replace in a manner that results in stone masonry matching approved samples and mockups, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean stone masonry as work progresses. Remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean stone masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on mockup; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before cleaning stone masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and non-masonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent, polyethylene film, or waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaner; remove cleaner promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean limestone masonry to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

3.8 EXCESS MATERIALS AND WASTE

- A. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 047200**CAST STONE MASONRY****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Cast stone as indicated on the Drawings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For cast stone units, include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for cast stone units. Include dimensions, details of reinforcement and anchorages if any, and indication of finished faces.
 - 1. Include building elevations showing layout of units and locations of joints and anchors.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For colored mortar.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each color and texture of cast stone required, 10 inches square in size.
 - 2. For colored mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project.
- E. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
 - 1. Include copies of material test reports for completed projects, indicating compliance of cast stone with ASTM C 1364.
- F. Material Test Reports: For each mix required to produce cast stone, based on testing according to ASTM C 1364, including test for resistance to freezing and thawing.
 - 1. Provide test reports based on testing within previous two years.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of cast stone units similar to those indicated for this Project, that has sufficient production capacity to manufacture required units, and is a plant certified by the Cast Stone Institute.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations for Cast Stone: Obtain cast stone units through single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color, from one manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings. If not shown on drawings, provide mockup based on the following below:
 - 2. Build mockups for each type of stone masonry in sizes approximately 96 inches long by 60 inches high by full thickness, including face and backup wythes and accessories.
 - a. Include a sealant-filled joint at least 16 inches long in mockup.
 - b. Include through-wall flashing installed for a 24-inch length by 61-inch width, match actual conditions of project, with a 12-inch length of flashing left exposed to view (omit stone masonry above half of flashing).
 - c. Include studs, sheathing, veneer anchors, flashing, and weep holes in exterior masonry-veneer wall mockup.
 - 3. Protect accepted mockups from the elements with weather-resistant membrane.
 - 4. Approval of mockups is for color, texture, and blending of stone; relationship of mortar and sealant colors to stone colors; tooling of joints; and aesthetic qualities of workmanship.
 - a. Approval of mockups is also for other material and construction qualities Architect specifically approves in writing.
 - b. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Coordinate delivery of cast stone with unit masonry work to avoid delaying the Work and to minimize the need for on-site storage.
- B. Pack, handle, and ship cast stone units in suitable packs or pallets.
 - 1. Lift with wide-belt slings; do not use wire rope or ropes that might cause staining. Move cast stone units, if required, using dollies with wood supports.
 - 2. Store cast stone units on wood skids or pallets with non-staining, waterproof covers, securely tied. Arrange to distribute weight evenly and to prevent damage to units. Ventilate under covers to prevent condensation.
- C. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- D. Store mortar aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F and above and will remain so until cast stone has dried, but no fewer than seven days after completing cleaning.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CAST STONE MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1364 and the following:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce cast stone color indicated.
- B. Coarse Aggregates: Granite, quartz, or limestone complying with ASTM C 33; gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.
- C. Fine Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone complying with ASTM C 33, gradation and colors as needed to produce required cast stone textures and colors.
- D. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, non-fading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.
- E. Admixtures: Use only admixtures specified or approved in writing by Architect.
 - 1. Do not use admixtures that contain more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 2. Use only admixtures that are certified by manufacturer to be compatible with cement and other admixtures used.
 - 3. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
 - 4. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
- F. Reinforcement: Deformed steel bars complying with ASTM A 615, Grade 60. Use galvanized or epoxy-coated reinforcement when covered with less than 1-1/2 inches of cast stone material.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating: ASTM A 767.
- G. Embedded Anchors and Other Inserts: Fabricated from stainless steel complying with ASTM A 240, ASTM A 276, or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

2.2 CAST STONE MASONRY

- A. Provide cast stone units complying with ASTM C 1364 using either the vibrant dry tamp or wet-cast method.
- B. Fabricate units with sharp arris and accurately reproduced details, with indicated texture on all exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Slope exposed horizontal surfaces 1:12 to drain unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide raised fillets at backs of sills and at ends indicated to be built into jambs.
 - 3. Provide drips on projecting elements unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances:
 - 1. Variation in Cross Section: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than 1/8 inch.
 - 2. Variation in Length: Do not vary from indicated dimensions by more than L/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater, but in no case by more than 1/4 inch.

3. Warp, Bow, and Twist: Not to exceed L/360 of the length of unit or 1/8 inch, whichever is greater.
 4. Location of Grooves, False Joints, Holes, Anchorages, and Similar Features: Do not vary from indicated position by more than 1/8 inch (on formed surfaces of units and 3/8 inch) on unformed surfaces.
- D. Cure units as follows:
1. Cure units in enclosed moist curing room at 95 to 100 percent relative humidity and temperature of 100 deg F for 12 hours or 70 deg F for 16 hours.
 2. Keep units damp and continue curing to comply with one of the following:
 - a. No fewer than five days at mean daily temperature of 70 deg F or above.
- E. Acid-etch units after curing to remove cement film from surfaces to be exposed to view.
- F. Color and Texture: Provide units with fine-grained texture and buff color resembling Indiana limestone.
- 2.3 MORTAR MATERIALS
- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
 - B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
 - C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
 - D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.
 1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
 2. For joints less than 1/4-inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No.16 sieve.
 3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
 - E. Water: Potable.
- 2.4 ACCESSORIES
- A. Anchors: Type and size indicated, fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36, and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123.
 - B. Dowels: 1/2-inch-diameter, round bars, fabricated from steel complying with ASTM A 36, and hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 123.
 - C. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cast stone manufacturer and expressly approved by cleaner manufacturer for use on cast stone and adjacent masonry materials.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Diedrich Technologies, Inc.
 - b. EaCo Chem, Inc.
 - c. ProSoCo, Inc.
- 2.5 MORTAR MIXES
- A. Comply with requirements in Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for mortar mixes.
 - B. Do not use admixtures including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 2. Use portland cement-lime masonry cement or mortar cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
 - C. Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification.
 1. For setting mortar, use Type N.
 2. For pointing mortar, use Type N.
- 2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Engage a qualified independent testing agency to sample and test cast stone units according to ASTM C 1364.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 SETTING CAST STONE IN MORTAR

- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 - 2. Coordinate installation of cast stone with installation of flashing specified in other Sections.
- B. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar or setting in mortar.
- C. Set units in full bed of mortar with full head joints unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Set units with joints 3/8 inch wide unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Build anchors and ties into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 3. Fill dowel holes and anchor slots with mortar.
 - 4. Fill collar joints solid as units are set.
 - 5. Build concealed flashing into mortar joints as units are set.
 - 6. Keep head joints in coping and other units with exposed horizontal surfaces open to receive sealant.
 - 7. Keep joints at shelf angles open to receive sealant.
- D. Rake out joints for pointing with mortar to depths of not less than 3/4 inch. Rake joints to uniform depths with square bottoms and clean sides. Scrub faces of units to remove excess mortar as joints are raked.
- E. Point mortar joints by placing and compacting mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch. Compact each layer thoroughly and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
- F. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide sealant joints at copings and other horizontal surfaces, at expansion, control, and pressure-relieving joints, and at locations indicated.
 - 1. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 - 2. Build in compressible foam-plastic joint fillers where indicated.
 - 3. Form joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
 - 4. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
 - 5. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.3 SETTING ANCHORED CAST STONE WITH SEALANT-FILLED JOINTS

- A. Set cast stone as indicated on Drawings. Set units accurately in locations indicated with edges and faces aligned according to established relationships and indicated tolerances.
 - 1. Install anchors, supports, fasteners, and other attachments indicated or necessary to secure units in place.
 - 2. Shim and adjust anchors, supports, and accessories to set cast stone in locations indicated with uniform joints.
- B. Keep cavities open where unfilled space is indicated between back of cast stone units and backup wall; do not fill cavities with mortar or grout.
- C. Fill anchor holes with sealant.
 - 1. Where dowel holes occur at pressure-relieving joints, provide compressible material at ends of dowels.
- D. Set cast stone supported on clip or continuous angles on resilient setting shims. Use material of thickness required to maintain uniform joint widths. Hold shims back from face of cast stone a distance at least equal to width of joint.
- E. Keep joints free of mortar and other rigid materials. Remove temporary shims and spacers from joints after anchors and supports are secured in place and cast stone units are anchored. Do not begin sealant installation until temporary shims and spacers are removed.
 - 1. Form open joint of width indicated, but not less than 3/8 inch.
- F. Prime cast stone surfaces to receive sealant and install compressible backer rod in joints before applying sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Prepare and apply sealant of type and at locations indicated to comply with applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Variation from Plumb: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- B. Variation from Level: Do not exceed 1/8 inch in 10 feet, 1/4 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2 inch maximum.
- C. Variation in Joint Width: Do not vary joint thickness more than 1/8 inch in 36 inches or one-fourth of nominal joint width, whichever is less.

- D. Variation in Plane between Adjacent Surfaces (Lipping): Do not vary from flush alignment with adjacent units or adjacent surfaces indicated to be flush with units by more than 1/16 inch, except where variation is due to warpage of units within tolerances specified.

3.5 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace stained and otherwise damaged units and units not matching approved Samples. Cast stone may be repaired if methods and results are approved by Architect.
- B. Replace units in a manner that results in cast stone matching approved Samples, complying with other requirements, and showing no evidence of replacement.
- C. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed cast stone as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample; leave one sample uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of cast stone.
 - 3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean cast stone by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
 - 6. Clean cast stone with proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 04 81 00

CONCRETE MASONRY UNIT ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes unit masonry assemblies consisting of the following:
 - 1. Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
 - 2. Mortar and grout.
 - 3. Reinforcing steel.
 - 4. Masonry joint reinforcement.
 - 5. Ties and anchors.
 - 6. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
 - 7. Masonry-cell insulation.
 - 8. Cavity-wall insulation.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 7 Section "Water Repellents" for water repellents applied to unit masonry assemblies.
 - 2. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealing control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
- C. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
 - 1. Dovetail slots for masonry anchors, installed under Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural frame, installed under Division 5 Section "Structural Steel."
- D. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section include the following:
 - 1. Cast-stone trim, furnished under Division 4 Section "Cast Stone."
 - 2. Steel lintels for unit masonry, furnished under Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."
 - 3. Manufactured reglets in masonry joints for metal flashing, furnished under Division 7 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Allowances: The following are included under the allowances indicated as specified in Division 1 Section "Allowances":
 - 1. Face brick under the Face Brick Allowances.
 - 2. Field quality-control testing under Testing and Inspecting Allowance.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths (f'_m) at 28 days.
- B. Determine net-area compressive strength (f'_m) of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Determine net-area compressive strength (f'_m) of masonry by testing masonry prisms according to ASTM C 1314.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For the following:
 1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
 2. Stone Trim Units: Show sizes, profiles, and locations of each stone trim unit required.
 3. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315, "Details and Detailing of Concrete Reinforcement." Show elevations of reinforced walls.
 4. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For the following:
 1. Face brick, in the form of straps of five or more bricks.
 2. Colored mortar.
 3. Weep holes/vents.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of the following:
 1. Pigmented and colored-aggregate mortar. Make Samples using same sand and mortar ingredients to be used on Project. Label samples to indicate types and amounts of pigments used.
 2. Stone trim.
 3. Weep holes/vents.
 4. Accessories embedded in masonry.
- E. List of Materials Used in Constructing Mockups: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.
 1. Submittal is for information only. Neither receipt of list nor approval of mockup constitutes approval of deviations from the Contract Documents unless such deviations are specifically brought to the attention of Architect and approved in writing.

- F. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
 - G. Material Certificates: Include statements of material properties indicating compliance with requirements including compliance with standards and type designations within standards. Provide for each type and size of the following:
 - 1. Masonry units.
 - a. Include material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
 - b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.
 - 2. Cementitious materials. Include brand, type, and name of manufacturer.
 - 3. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 4. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 5. Reinforcing bars.
 - 6. Joint reinforcement.
 - 7. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.
 - H. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
 - 1. Include test reports, per ASTM C 780, for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification.
 - 2. Include test reports, per ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.
 - I. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined according to Tables 1 and 2 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 - J. Cold-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with cold-weather requirements.
 - K. LEED Submittals:
 - 1. Credit MR 4.1 and MR 4.2: For products having recycled content, provide documentation indicating percentages, by weight, of postconsumer and preconsumer recycled content. Include statement indicating costs for each product having recycled content.
 - 2. Credit MR 5.1 and MR 5.2: Identify each regional material along with the location of its harvest, extraction, or manufacture. Include material cost for each item.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1093 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
 - B. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, through one source from a single manufacturer for each product required.

- C. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from a single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from one source or producer for each aggregate.
- D. Preconstruction Testing Service: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform preconstruction testing indicated below. Payment for these services will be made by Owner. Retesting of materials that fail to meet specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
 - 1. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit required, per ASTM C 140.
 - 2. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix required, per ASTM C 780.
 - 3. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix required, per ASTM C 1019.
 - 4. Prism Test: For each type of construction required, per ASTM C 1314.
- E. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies with fire-resistance ratings determined per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency, by equivalent concrete masonry thickness, or by other means, as acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- G. Installer: Minimum 5 years experience in similar types of work and able to furnish a list of previous jobs and references if requested by Owner's Representative.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.
- B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.
- C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.
- D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers designed for lifting and emptying into dispensing silo. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location or in a metal dispensing silo with weatherproof cover.
- E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.
 - 1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides and hold cover securely in place.

2. Where 1 wythe of multiwythe masonry walls is completed in advance of other wythes, secure cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down face next to unconstructed wythe and hold cover in place.
- B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least 3 days after building masonry walls or columns.
 - C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.
 1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
 2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.
 3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
 4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.
 - D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
 1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and above and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than 7 days after completing cleaning.
 - E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 MASONRY UNITS, GENERAL

- A. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to exceed tolerances and to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated in the

standard. Do not use units where such defects, including dimensions that vary from specified dimensions by more than stated tolerances, will be exposed in the completed Work or will impair the quality of completed masonry.

2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMUs)

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows:
1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
 2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent where indicated.
1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive according to ASTM E 514, with test period extended to 24 hours, show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) Addiment Incorporated; Block Plus W-10.
 - 2) Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block.
 - 3) Master Builders, Inc.; Rheopel.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 90.
1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
 2. Weight Classification: Normal weight.
 3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch less than nominal dimensions.
 4. Exposed Faces: Provide color and texture matching the range represented by Architect's sample.
 5. Faces to Receive Plaster: Where units are indicated to receive a direct application of plaster, provide textured-face units made with gap-graded aggregates.

2.4 MASONRY LINTELS

- A. General: Provide masonry lintels complying with requirements below.
- B. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam concrete masonry units with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.5 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement complying with ASTM C 150, Type I or Type III, and hydrated lime complying with ASTM C 207, Type S.
- D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91.
1. Products:
 - a. Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
 - b. Essroc, Italcementi Group; Brixment or Velvet.
 - c. Holcim (US) Inc.; Mortamix Masonry Cement, Rainbow Mortamix Custom Buff Masonry Cement White, Mortamix Masonry Cement.
 - d. Lafarge North America Inc.; Magnolia Masonry Cement, Lafarge Masonry Cement, Florida Super Masonry, Trinity Super White Masonry Type S, Trinity White Masonry Type N.
 - e. Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Masonry Cement, Lehigh White Masonry Cement.
 - f. National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.
- E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329.
1. Products:
 - a. Lafarge North America Inc.; Lafarge Mortar Cement or Magnolia Superbond Mortar Cement.
- F. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
1. Products:
 - a. Bayer Corporation, Industrial Chemicals Div.; Bayferrox Iron Oxide Pigments.
 - b. Davis Colors; True Tone Mortar Colors.
 - c. Solomon Grind-Chem Services, Inc.; SGS Mortar Colors.
- G. Colored Cement Product: Packaged blend made from portland cement and lime, masonry cement or mortar cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
1. Formulate blend as required to produce color indicated or, if not indicated, as selected from manufacturer's standard colors.
 2. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 3. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
 4. Products:
 - a. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
 - 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Riverton Portland Cement Lime Custom Color.
 - 2) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Cement/Lime.
 - 3) Lafarge North America Inc.; Eaglebond.
 - 4) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Portland/Lime Cement.

b. Colored Masonry Cement:

- 1) Capital Materials Corporation; Flamingo Color Masonry Cement.
- 2) Essroc, Italcementi Group; Brixment-in-Color.
- 3) Holcim (US) Inc.; Rainbow Mortamix Custom Color Masonry Cement.
- 4) Lafarge North America Inc.; Florida Custom Color Masonry or Magnolia Masonry Cement.
- 5) Lehigh Cement Company; Lehigh Custom Color Masonry Cement.
- 6) National Cement Company, Inc.; Coosa Masonry Cement.

c. Colored Mortar Cement:

- 1) Lafarge North America Inc.; Magnolia Superbond Mortar Cement.

H. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6.5 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

I. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

J. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for structural-clay tile facing units (and approved for such use by manufacturer of units); in color indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's colors.

K. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.

1. Products:

- a. Addiment Incorporated; Mortar Kick.
- b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Accelguard 80.
- c. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Morset.
- d. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Trimix-NCA.

L. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with concrete masonry units, containing integral water repellent by same manufacturer.

1. Products:

- a. Addiment Incorporated; Mortar Tite.
- b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co. - Conn.; Dry-Block Mortar Admixture.
- c. Master Builders, Inc.; Color Cure Mortar Admix or Rheomix Rheopel.

M. Water: Potable.

2.6 REINFORCEMENT

- A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).
- B. Masonry Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951.
 - 1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
 - 2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized, carbon steel.
 - 3. Wire Size for Side Rods: W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm) diameter.
 - 4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: W2.8 or 0.188-inch (4.8-mm) diameter.
 - 5. Wire Size for Veneer Ties: W1.7 or 0.148-inch (3.8-mm) diameter.
 - 6. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
 - 7. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units.
- C. Masonry Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder type with single pair of side rods.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS ANCHORS

- A. Unit Type Inserts in Concrete: Cast-iron or malleable-iron wedge-type inserts.
- B. Dovetail Slots in Concrete: Furnish dovetail slots with filler strips, of slot size indicated, fabricated from 0.034-inch (0.9-mm), galvanized steel sheet.
- C. Anchor Bolts: Headed or L-shaped steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers; hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C; of dimensions indicated.
- D. Postinstalled Anchors: Provide chemical or torque-controlled expansion anchors, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in solid or grouted unit masonry and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Corrosion Protection: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5 (5 microns) for Class SC 1 service condition (mild).
 - 2. Corrosion Protection: Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Alloy Group 1 or 4) for bolts and nuts; ASTM A 666 or ASTM A 276, Type 304 or 316, for anchors.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.
- B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D 2000, Designation M2AA-805 or PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

- C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated, organic roofing felt complying with ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).
- D. Weep/Vent Products: Use one of the following, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Wicking Material: Absorbent rope, made from cotton or UV-resistant synthetic fiber, 1/4 to 3/8 inch (6 to 10 mm) in diameter, in length required to produce 2-inch (50-mm) exposure on exterior and 18 inches (450 mm) in cavity between wythes. Use only for weeps.
 2. Round Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Medium-density polyethylene, 3/8-inch (9-mm) OD by 4 inches (100 mm) long.
 3. Rectangular Plastic Weep/Vent Tubing: Clear butyrate, 3/8 by 1-1/2 by 3-1/2 inches (9 by 38 by 89 mm) long.
 4. Cellular Plastic Weep/Vent: One-piece, flexible extrusion made from UV-resistant polypropylene copolymer, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe, in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Maze weep vent.
 - 2) Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Cell Vents.
 - 3) Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 85 Cell Vent.
 - 4) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; Quadro-Vent.
 - 5) Wire-Bond; Cell Vent.
 5. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth 1/8 inch (3 mm) less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net Weep Vents.
 6. Aluminum Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, L-shaped units made from sheet aluminum, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a vertical channel with louvers stamped in web and with a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; painted before installation to comply with Division 9 painting Sections in color approved by Architect to match that of mortar.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #343W - Wilko Weep Hole.
 7. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: One-piece, offset, T-shaped units made from flexible, injection-molded PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color approved by Architect to match that of mortar.
 - a. Products:
 - 1) Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #343 Louvered Weep Hole.
 - 2) Williams Products, Inc.; Williams-Goodco Brick Vent.
 - 3) Wire-Bond; Louvered Weepholes.

- E. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
1. Provide one of the following configurations:
 - a. Strips, full-depth of cavity and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dovetail shaped notches 7 inches (175 mm) deep that prevent mesh from being clogged with mortar droppings.
 - b. Strips, not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick and 10 inches (250 mm) wide, with dimpled surface designed to catch mortar droppings and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
 - c. Sheets or strips full depth of cavity and installed to full height of cavity.
 - d. Sheets or strips not less than 3/4 inch (19 mm) thick and installed to full height of cavity with additional strips 4 inches (100 mm) high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity and prevent weep holes from being clogged with mortar.
 2. Products:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Mortar Break or Mortar Break II.
 - b. Archovations, Inc.; CavClear Masonry Mat.
 - c. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; Polytite MortarStop.
 - d. Mortar Net USA, Ltd.; Mortar Net.
- F. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells with loops for holding reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.142-inch (3.6-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units with either two loops or four loops as needed for number of bars indicated.
1. Products:
 - a. Dayton Superior Corporation, Dur-O-Wal Division; D/A 810, D/A 812 or D/A 817.
 - b. Heckmann Building Products Inc.; No. 376 Rebar Positioner.
 - c. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc.; #RB or #RB-Twin Rebar Positioner.
 - d. Wire-Bond; O-Ring or Double O-Ring Rebar Positioner.

2.9 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
 2. Limit cementitious materials in mortar to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
 3. Limit cementitious materials in mortar for exterior and reinforced masonry to portland cement, mortar cement, and lime.
 4. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.

- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
- D. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated or needed to provide required compressive strength of masonry.
 - 1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M or S.
 - 2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S or N.
 - 3. For exterior, above-grade, load-bearing and non-load-bearing walls and parapet walls; for interior load-bearing walls; for interior non-load-bearing partitions; and for other applications where another type is not indicated, use Type N.
 - 4. For interior non-load-bearing partitions, Type O may be used instead of Type N.
- E. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products.
 - 1. Pigments shall not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
 - 2. Pigments shall not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement or mortar cement by weight.
 - 3. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- F. Colored-Aggregate Mortar: Produce required mortar color by using colored aggregates and natural color or white cement as necessary to produce required mortar color.
 - 1. Mix to match Architect's sample.
- G. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.
 - 1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with Table 1.15.1 in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
 - 2. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm) as measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.
- H. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: Mix epoxy pointing mortar to comply with mortar manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Test: For each type of unit furnished, per ASTM C 140.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
 - 2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
 - 3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.

- B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Build cavity and composite walls and other masonry construction to full thickness shown. Build single-wythe walls to actual widths of masonry units, using units of widths indicated.
- B. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.
- C. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match the construction immediately adjacent to opening.
- D. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- E. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures.
 - 1. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- F. Matching Existing Masonry: Match coursing, bonding, color, and texture of existing masonry.
- G. Comply with construction tolerances in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 and with the following:
 - 1. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
 - 2. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
 - 3. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2 inch (12 mm) maximum.
 - 4. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (12 mm). Do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
 - 5. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm). Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
 - 6. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) except due to warpage of masonry units within tolerances specified for warpage of units.
 - 7. For exposed bed joints and head joints of stacked bond, do not vary from a straight line by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) from one masonry unit to the next.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in bond pattern indicated on Drawings; do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than 4-inches (100-mm). Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less than nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by racking back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.
- E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.
- F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below and rod mortar or grout into core.
- H. Fill cores in hollow concrete masonry units with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items, unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Build non-load-bearing interior partitions full height of story to underside of solid floor or roof structure above, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Install compressible filler in joint between top of partition and underside of structure above.
 - 2. Fasten partition top anchors to structure above and build into top of partition. Grout cells of CMUs solidly around plastic tubes of anchors and push tubes down into grout to provide 1/2-inch (13-mm) clearance between end of anchor rod and end of tube. Space anchors 36 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Wedge non-load-bearing partitions against structure above with small pieces of tile, slate, or metal. Fill joint with mortar after dead-load deflection of structure above approaches final position.
 - 4. At fire-rated partitions, treat joint between top of partition and underside of structure above to comply with Division 7 Section "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems."

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay hollow concrete masonry units as follows:
 - 1. With face shells fully bedded in mortar and with head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
 - 2. With webs fully bedded in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
 - 3. With webs fully bedded in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.

4. With entire units, including areas under cells, fully bedded in mortar at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.
- B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
1. For glazed masonry units, use a nonmetallic jointer 3/4 inch (19 mm) or more in width.
- C. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint), unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL MEMBERS

- A. Anchor masonry to structural members where masonry abuts or faces structural members to comply with the following:
1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch (25 mm) in width between masonry and structural member, unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
 2. Anchor masonry to structural members with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
 3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.

3.6 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

- A. General: Install control and expansion joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.
- B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:
1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of concrete masonry units on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
 2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
 3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar or rake out joint for application of sealant.
 4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.
- C. Provide horizontal, pressure-relieving joints by either leaving an air space or inserting a compressible filler of width required for installing sealant and backer rod specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," but not less than 3/8 inch (10 mm).
1. Locate horizontal, pressure-relieving joints beneath shelf angles supporting masonry.

3.7 LINTELS

- A. Install steel lintels where indicated.

- B. Provide masonry lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.
- C. Provide minimum bearing of 8 inches (200 mm) at each jamb, unless otherwise indicated.

3.8 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

- A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.
 - 1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
 - 2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other temporary loads that may be placed on them during construction.
- B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602.
- C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.
 - 1. Comply with requirements in ACI 530.1/ASCE 6/TMS 602 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
 - 2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches (1520 mm).

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspectors: Owner will engage qualified independent inspectors to perform inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas, as needed to perform inspections.
 - 1. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
- B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections indicated below and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Payment for these services will be made by Owner.
 - 2. Retesting of materials failing to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.
- C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. (465 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.
- D. Clay Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 67.
- E. Concrete Masonry Unit Test: For each type of unit provided, per ASTM C 140.
- F. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.

- G. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, per ASTM C 1019.
- H. Prism Test: For each type of construction provided, per ASTM C 1314 at 7 days and at 28 days.

3.10 PARGING

- A. Parge exterior faces of below-grade masonry walls, where indicated, in 2 uniform coats to a total thickness of 3/4 inch (19 mm). Dampen wall before applying first coat and scarify first coat to ensure full bond to subsequent coat.
- B. Use a steel-trowel finish to produce a smooth, flat, dense surface with a maximum surface variation of 1/8 inch per foot (3 mm per 300 mm). Form a wash at top of parging and a cove at bottom.
- C. Damp-cure parging for at least 24 hours and protect parging until cured.

3.11 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.
- C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:
 - 1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
 - 2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
 - 3. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
 - 4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
 - 5. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
 - 6. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Clean concrete masonry by cleaning method indicated in NCMA TEK 8-2A applicable to type of stain on exposed surfaces.
 - 8. Clean stone trim to comply with stone supplier's written instructions.
 - 9. Clean limestone units to comply with recommendations in ILI's "Indiana Limestone Handbook."

3.12 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.
- B. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
 - 1. Crush masonry waste to less than 4 inches (100 mm) in each dimension.
 - 2. Mix masonry waste with at least two parts of specified fill material for each part of masonry waste. Fill material is specified in Division 2 Section "Earthwork."
 - 3. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within 18 inches (450 mm) of finished grade.
- C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 81 00

SECTION 05 12 00
STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Structural steel.
 - 2. Architecturally exposed structural steel.
 - 3. Grout.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Quality Requirements" for independent testing agency procedures and administrative requirements.
 - 2. Division 5 Section "Steel Deck" for field installation of shear connectors.
 - 3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels or shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame, miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
 - 4. Division 9 painting Sections for surface preparation and priming requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.
- B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Structural steel designated as architecturally exposed structural steel in the Contract Documents.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of simple shear connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand ASD loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
 - 1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's "Manual of Steel Construction, Allowable Stress Design," 13th Edition.
 - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Fabricator's responsibilities include using a qualified professional engineer to prepare structural analysis data for structural-steel connections.
- B. Construction: Type PR, partially restrained.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 - 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 - 2. Include embedment drawings.
 - 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
 - 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
 - 5. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator, and testing agency.
- E. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:
 - 1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
 - 2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 - 3. Direct-tension indicators.
 - 4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 - 5. Shear stud connectors.
- F. Source quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category CSE.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category Sbd.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code-Steel."
- D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. AISC's "Specification for the Allowable Stress Design for Structural Steel Buildings."
 - 3. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
 - 4. AISC's "Specification for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Single-Angle Members."
 - 5. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS**

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992.
- B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36.
- D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B, structural tubing.
- E. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E or S, Grade B.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain at interior locations; hot-dip zinc coating (ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C) or mechanically deposited zinc coating (ASTM B 695, Class 50) at exterior locations.
 - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8,) compressible-washer type.
 - a. Finish: Plain at interior locations; mechanically deposited zinc coating (ASTM B 695, Class 50) or mechanically deposited zinc coating (ASTM B 695, Class 50) at exterior locations.
- B. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.

- C. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Configuration: Hooked.
 - 2. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Plain.
- D. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon steel.
 - 4. Finish: Plain.
- E. Threaded Rods: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
 - 1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Plain.
- F. Clevises and Turnbuckles: ASTM A 108, Grade 1035, cold-finished carbon steel.
- G. Eye Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1030, cold-finished carbon steel.
- H. Sleeve Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1018, cold-finished carbon steel.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's "Allowable Stress Design for Structural Steel Buildings, 13th Edition."
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

- B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for structural steel identified as architecturally exposed structural steel.
 - 1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale and roughness.
 - 2. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
- C. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- D. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- E. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.
- F. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 1, "Solvent Cleaning."
- G. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. At architecturally exposed steel, remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 2. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).

2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
 5. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than 1.5 mils (0.038 mm). Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.8 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.
1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.
 2. Galvanize lintels located in exterior walls.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Allowable Stress Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings, 13th Edition."

- B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
 - 1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 - 2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.
 - 3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
 - 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
 - 1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 - 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Architect. Finish thermally cut sections within smoothness limits in AWS D1.1.
- H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings" for

- bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. At architecturally exposed steel, remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 3. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.
- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 2. Conduct tests on additional 10% of shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.
 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

SECTION 05 21 00

STEEL JOISTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. K-series steel joists.
- 2. KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- 3. K-series steel joist substitutes.
- 4. Long-span steel joists.
- 5. Joist girders.
- 6. Joist accessories.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing bearing plates in concrete.
- 2. Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies" for installing bearing plates in unit masonry.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SJI "Specifications": Steel Joist Institute's "Standard Specifications, Load Tables and Weight Tables for Steel Joists and Joist Girders."
- B. Special Joists: Steel joists or joist girders requiring modification by manufacturer to support non-uniform, unequal, or special loading conditions that invalidate load tables in SJI's "Specifications."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide special joists and connections capable of withstanding design loads indicated.
- B. Design special joists to withstand design loads with total load deflections no greater than the following:
 - 1. Floor Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.
 - 2. Roof Joists: Vertical deflection of 1/360 of the span.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of joist, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, designation, number, type, location, and spacings of joists. Include joining and anchorage details, bracing, bridging, joist accessories; splice and connection locations and details; and attachments to other construction.
 - 1. Indicate locations and details of bearing plates to be embedded in other construction.
 - 2. Comprehensive engineering analysis of special joists signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for its preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that joists comply with requirements.
- E. Mill Certificates: Signed by bolt manufacturers certifying that bolts comply with requirements.
- F. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.
- G. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
- H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For joists.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer certified by SJI to manufacture joists complying with applicable standard specifications and load tables of SJI "Specifications."
 - 1. Manufacturer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services for designing special joists to comply with performance requirements.
- B. SJI Specifications: Comply with standard specifications in SJI's "Specifications" that are applicable to types of joists indicated.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle joists as recommended in SJI's "Specifications."
- B. Protect joists from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

1.8 SEQUENCING

- A. Deliver steel bearing plates to be built into cast-in-place concrete construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Steel: Comply with SJI's "Specifications" for web and steel-angle chord members.
- B. Steel Bearing Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Threaded Fasteners: ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6), carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and threaded fasteners; carbon-steel nuts; and flat, unhardened steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain, uncoated.
- D. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M) hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain.
- E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.
- F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.

2.2 PRIMERS

- A. Primer: SSPC-Paint 15, or manufacturer's standard shop primer complying with performance requirements in SSPC-Paint 15.

2.3 K-SERIES STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists of type indicated according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members, underslung ends, and parallel top chord.
 - 1. Joist Type: K-series steel joists and KCS-type K-series steel joists.
- B. Steel Joist Substitutes: Manufacture according to "Standard Specifications for Open Web Steel Joists, K-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle or -channel members.
- C. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- E. Top-Chord Extensions: Extend top chords of joists with SJI's Type S top-chord extensions where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- F. Extended Ends: Extend bearing ends of joists with SJI's Type R extended ends where indicated, complying with SJI's "Specifications."
- G. Do not camber joists.

- H. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.4 LONG-SPAN STEEL JOISTS

- A. Manufacture steel joists according to "Standard Specifications for Longspan Steel Joists, LH-Series and Deep Longspan Steel Joists, DLH-Series" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; of joist type and end and top-chord arrangements as indicated.
- B. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joists.
- D. Camber long-span steel joists according to SJI's "Specifications."
- E. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.5 JOIST GIRDERS

- A. Manufacture joist girders according to "Standard Specifications for Joist Girders" in SJI's "Specifications," with steel-angle top- and bottom-chord members; with end and top-chord arrangements as indicated.
- B. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for shop welding, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- C. Provide holes in chord members for connecting and securing other construction to joist girders.
- D. Camber joist girders according to SJI's "Specifications."
- E. Equip bearing ends of joists with manufacturer's standard beveled ends or sloped shoes if joist slope exceeds 1/4 inch per 12 inches (1:48).

2.6 JOIST ACCESSORIES

- A. Bridging: Schematically indicated. Detail and fabricate according to SJI's "Specifications." Furnish additional erection bridging if required for stability.
- B. Fabricate steel bearing plates with integral anchorages of sizes and thicknesses indicated. [Shop prime paint] [Hot-dip zinc coat according to ASTM A 123/A 123M].
- C. Steel bearing plates with integral anchorages are specified in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications."
- D. Supply miscellaneous accessories, including splice plates and bolts required by joist manufacturer to complete joist installation.

2.7 CLEANING AND SHOP PAINTING

- A. Clean and remove loose scale, heavy rust, and other foreign materials from fabricated joists and accessories by power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
- B. Do not prime paint joists and accessories to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- C. Apply 1 coat of shop primer to joists and joist accessories to be primed to provide a continuous, dry paint film not less than 1 mil (0.025 mm) thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates, embedded bearing plates, and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not install joists until supporting construction is in place and secured.
- B. Install joists and accessories plumb, square, and true to line; securely fasten to supporting construction according to SJI's "Specifications," joist manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Before installation, splice joists delivered to Project site in more than one piece.
 - 2. Space, adjust, and align joists accurately in location before permanently fastening.
 - 3. Install temporary bracing and erection bridging, connections, and anchors to ensure that joists are stabilized during construction.
 - 4. Delay rigidly connecting bottom-chord extensions to columns or supports until dead loads have been applied.
- C. Field weld joists to supporting steel bearing plates and framework. Coordinate welding sequence and procedure with placement of joists. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
- D. Bolt joists to supporting steel framework using carbon-steel bolts.
- E. Install and connect bridging concurrently with joist erection, before construction loads are applied. Anchor ends of bridging lines at top and bottom chords if terminating at walls or beams.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and bolted connections and to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test and inspection reports.

- B. Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Bolted connections will be visually inspected.
- D. High-strength, field-bolted connections will be tested and verified according to procedures in RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490 Bolts."
- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test and inspection reports have indicated are not in compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Additional testing will be performed to determine compliance of corrected Work with specified requirements.

3.4 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists, bearing plates, abutting structural steel, and accessories.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by hand-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 2, or power-tool cleaning, SSPC-SP 3.
 - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that joists and accessories are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 21 00

SECTION 05 31 00

STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Roof deck
 - 2. Composite floor deck
 - 3. Non-composite floor deck
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for concrete fill.
 - 2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
 - 3. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck, signed by product manufacturer.
- D. Welding certificates.
- E. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

- C. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."
- D. FMG Listing: Provide steel roof deck evaluated by FMG and listed in its "Approval Guide, Building Materials" for Class 1 fire rating and Class 1-90 windstorm ratings.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

1.6 COORDINATION

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Steel Deck:
 - a. ASC Profiles, Inc.
 - b. Canam Steel Corp.;The Canam Manac Group.
 - c. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
 - d. DACS, Inc.
 - e. D-Mac Industries Inc.
 - f. Epic Metals Corporation.
 - g. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
 - h. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
 - i. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Division.
 - j. Roof Deck, Inc.
 - k. United Steel Deck, Inc.
 - l. Valley Joist; Division of EBSCO Industries, Inc.
 - m. Verco Manufacturing Co.
 - n. Wheeling Corrugating Company; Div. of Wheeling-Pittsburgh Steel Corporation.

2.2 ROOF DECK

- A. Steel Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Steel Roof Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, and with the following:

1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Deck Profile: As indicated.
4. Profile Depth: As indicated.
5. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
6. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
7. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

2.3 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

- A. Composite Steel Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 1. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, with top surface phosphatized and unpainted and underside surface shop primed with manufacturers' standard gray or white baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 2. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
 3. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 4. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
 5. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.4 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

- A. Noncomposite Steel Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 30, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
 1. Uncoated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum.
 2. Prime-Painted Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) minimum, with underside surface shop primed with manufacturer's standard baked-on, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - a. Color: Manufacturer's standard.
 3. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230) G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
 4. Profile Depth: As indicated.
 5. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.

- 6. Span Condition: Triple span or more.
- 7. Side Laps: Overlapped or interlocking seam at Contractor's option.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.
- B. Mechanical Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
- C. Side-Lap Fasteners: Corrosion-resistant, hexagonal washer head; self-drilling, carbon-steel screws, No. 10 (4.8-mm) minimum diameter.
- D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.
- E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.
- F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 30 for overhang and slab depth.
- G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Piercing Hanger Tabs: Piercing steel sheet hanger attachment devices for use with floor deck.
- I. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, 0.0598 inch (1.52 mm) thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum diameter.
- J. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- K. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 30, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
- B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels, if required to meet deflection limitations.
- C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

- D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.
- E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.
- F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.
- G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.
- H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.
- I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

- A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated or arc seam welds with an equal perimeter that is not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) long, and as follows:
 - 1. Weld Diameter: As indicated.
 - 2. Weld Spacing: as indicated.
 - 3. Weld Washers: Install weld washers at each weld location if uncoated steel thickness is less than 0.028 inch (0.71 mm)..
 - 4. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: As indicated.
- B. End Bearing: Install deck ends over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), with end joints as follows:
 - 1. End Joints: Lapped 2 inches (51 mm) minimum.
- C. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.
 - 1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels, unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Contracting Officer will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.
- C. Testing agency will report inspection results promptly and in writing to Design/Built Contractor and Design/Built Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work that does not comply with specified requirements.

- E. Additional inspecting, at Design/Built Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of corrected work with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions to ensure that steel deck is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION **05 31 00**

SECTION 05 40 00
COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
2. Interior non-load-bearing wall framing.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated, or at a minimum, meet the provisions of ASCE 7-05.
2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/600 of the wall height.
 - b. Interior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft. (239 Pa).
3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F (67 deg C).

4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of 1 inch (25 mm)].
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
 2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
 3. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
 1. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- E. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:
 1. Steel sheet.
 2. Expansion anchors.
 3. Power-actuated anchors.
 4. Mechanical fasteners.
 5. Vertical deflection clips.
 6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
 7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.
- F. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, and metallic-coating thickness.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 - 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
 - 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- H. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:
1. Allied Studco.
 2. AllSteel Products, Inc.
 3. California Expanded Metal Products Company.
 4. Clark Steel Framing.
 5. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
 6. Craco Metals Manufacturing, LLC.
 7. Custom Stud, Inc.
 8. Dale/Incor.
 9. Design Shapes in Steel.
 10. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
 11. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
 12. Innovative Steel Systems.
 13. MarinoWare; a division of Ware Industries.
 14. Quail Run Building Materials, Inc.
 15. SCAFCO Corporation.
 16. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
 17. Steel Construction Systems.
 18. Steeler, Inc.
 19. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
 20. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
1. Grade: ST33H (ST230H) for 16 gauge and heavier, ST50H (ST340H) for 18 gauge and lighter.
 2. Coating: G60 (Z180).
- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
1. Grade: Match stud grade.
 2. Coating: G90 (Z275).

2.3 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard punched C-shaped steel studs, 8" in depth, of thickness, width and spacing as required by supplier to meet performance requirements. Verify depth limitations with architectural drawings.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard unpunched U-shaped steel track, of thickness, depth, and width as indicated.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of thickness, depth, and width as indicated.

2.4 INTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard punched C-shaped steel studs, of thickness, depth, width and spacing as required by supplier to meet performance requirements. Verify depth limitations with architectural drawings.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard unpunched U-shaped steel track, of thickness, depth, and width as indicated.
- C. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 - 3. Web stiffeners.
 - 4. Anchor clips.
 - 5. End clips.
 - 6. Foundation clips.
 - 7. Gusset plates.
 - 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
 - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
 - 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
 - 11. Backer plates.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C or by mechanically deposition according to ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of 1/8 inch (3 mm).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding 1/16 inch (1.6 mm).
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 07 Section "Thermal Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:
 - 1. Stud Spacing: 16 inches (610 mm).
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 - 1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches (1220 mm) apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 18 inches (450 mm) of single deflection track. Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid

blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.

2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 4. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

SECTION 055000
METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors.
 2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
 3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
 4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
 5. Shelf angles.
 6. Metal bollards.
 7. Cast metal nosings.
 8. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section:
1. Loose steel lintels.
 2. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, slotted-channel inserts, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Delegated Design: Design ladders alternating tread devices, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
 2. Metal nosings and treads.
 3. Paint products.
 4. Grout.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 METALS, GENERAL**

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.2 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, standard weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4.
 - 1. Size of Channels: 1-5/8 by 1-5/8 inches.
 - 2. Material: Galvanized steel, ASTM A 653, structural steel, Grade 33, with G90coating; 0.108-inch nominal thickness.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
 - 1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade AASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593; with hex nuts, ASTM F 594; and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1.
- E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- F. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
- G. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.
- H. Lag Screws: ASME B18.2.
- I. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
- J. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.
- K. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.
- L. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- M. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47 malleable iron or ASTM A 27 cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.
- N. Post-Installed Anchors: chemical anchors.
 - 1. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.
- C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.
- D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- E. Non-shrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
- F. Non-shrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Pre-assemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32-inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
 - 1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches, with a minimum 6-inch embedment and 2-inch hook, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.
 - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.

2.7 SHELF ANGLES

- A. Fabricate shelf angles from steel angles of sizes indicated and for attachment to concrete framing. Provide horizontally slotted holes to receive 3/4-inch bolts, spaced not more than 6 inches from ends and 24 inches o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Provide mitered and welded units at corners.
 - 2. Provide open joints in shelf angles at expansion and control joints. Make open joint approximately 2 inches larger than expansion or control joint.
- B. For cavity walls, provide vertical channel brackets to support angles from backup masonry and concrete.
- C. Galvanize shelf angles located in exterior walls.
- D. Furnish wedge-type concrete inserts, complete with fasteners, to attach shelf angles to cast-in-place concrete.

2.8 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe.
 - 1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch-thick steel plate.
 - 2. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide necessary cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
 - 3. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide necessary cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.
- B. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe with 1/4-inch-thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard.
- C. Prime bollards with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 ALUMINUM NOSING

- A. Basis-Of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide F7-E3 Series as manufactured by Ecoglo, Inc., info@ecoglo.us; 888.679.4022; www.ecoglo.us ; or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. American Safety Tread Co., Inc.
 2. Balco Inc.
 3. Wooster Products Inc.
- B. For substitution requests, refer to "Section 012500 – Substitution Procedures".
- C. Apply bituminous paint to concealed surfaces of nosing.
- D. Adhesive: As recommend by manufacturer.

2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates.
- C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.11 LOOSE STEEL LINTELS

- A. Fabricate loose steel lintels from steel angles and shapes of size indicated for openings and recesses in masonry walls and partitions at locations indicated. Fabricate in single lengths for each opening unless otherwise indicated. Weld adjoining members together to form a single unit where indicated.
- B. Galvanize loose steel lintels located in exterior walls.

2.12 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.
- C. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.13 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153 for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123 for other steel and iron products.
 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
- B. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:

1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
 2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.
- 3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS
- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
 - B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
- 3.3 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS
- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
 - B. Anchor bollards in concrete with pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with non-shrink, non-metallic grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward bollard.
 - C. Place removable bollards over internal sleeves and secure with 3/4-inch machine bolts and nuts. After tightening nuts, drill holes in bolts for inserting padlocks. Owner will furnish padlocks.
 - D. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.
 1. Do not fill removable bollards with concrete.
- 3.4 INSTALLING NOSINGS, TREADS, AND THRESHOLDS
- A. Center nosings on tread widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. For nosings, follow printed manufacturer installation guides. Architect to select preferred method of installation from manufacturers options.
- 3.5 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES
- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
 - B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
 1. Use non-shrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use non-shrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.
- 3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
 - B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
 - C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 055100
METAL STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 06 Section "061000 – Rough Carpentry" for wood blocking for anchoring railings.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Structural Performance of Stairs: Provide metal stairs capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft.
 2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf applied on an area of 4 sq. in.
 3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing loads in addition to loads specified above.
 5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch, whichever is less.
- B. Delegated Design: Design stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, licensed to practice in the project location, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For metal stairs and the following:
1. Prefilled metal-pan stair treads.
 2. Paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
 2. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for stairs.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with "Recommended Voluntary Minimum Standards for Fixed Metal Stairs" in NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for class of stair designated, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
1. Preassembled Stairs: Commercial class.
- C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 2. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- 1.6 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so that they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 METALS, GENERAL
- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- 2.2 FERROUS METALS
- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- B. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36 or ASTM A 283, Grade C or D.
- C. Iron Castings: Either gray or malleable iron, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 30, unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.
 2. Malleable Iron: ASTM A 47.
- D. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 25, unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.
- E. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011, either commercial steel, Type B, or structural steel, Grade 30, unless another grade is required by design loads.
- 2.3 NOSINGS
- A. For aluminum nosings, refer to Section "055000 – Metal Fabrications".
- 2.4 FASTENERS
- A. General: Provide zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 25 for exterior use, and Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A, Property Class 4.6; with hex nuts, ASTM A 563; and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
1. Provide hot-dip or mechanically deposited, zinc-coated anchor bolts.
- D. Machine Screws: ASME B18.6.
- E. Plain Washers: Round, ASME B18.22.1.
- F. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, ASME B18.21.1.
- 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- D. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Welded Wire Fabric: ASTM A 185, 6 by 6 inches (W1.4 by W1.4), unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL
- A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.
1. Join components by welding, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- B. Preassembled Stairs: Assemble stairs in shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- E. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- F. Weld connections to comply with the following:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously, unless otherwise indicated.

5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

2.7 STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

- A. Stair Framing:
 1. Fabricate stringers of steel channels.
 - a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel stringers.
 2. Construct platforms of steel headers and miscellaneous framing members as needed to comply with performance requirements.
 3. Weld or bolt stringers to headers; weld or bolt framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.
 4. Where stairs are enclosed by gypsum board shaft-wall assemblies, provide hanger rods or struts to support landings from floor construction above or below. Locate hanger rods and struts where they will not encroach on required stair width and will be within the fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.
 5. Where masonry walls support metal stairs, provide temporary supporting struts designed for erecting steel stair components before installing masonry.
- B. Metal-Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements but not less than 0.0677 inch.
 1. Steel Sheet: Uncoated cold or hot-rolled steel sheet, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subtreads where they will be concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.
 3. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
 4. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal-pan subtreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.
 5. Provide subplatforms of configuration indicated or, if not indicated, the same as subtreads. Weld subplatforms to platform framing.
 - a. Smooth Soffit Construction: Construct subplatforms with smooth soffits.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal stairs after assembly.
- C. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.
 1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.
- B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
- C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- F. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- G. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete. Center nosings on tread width.
- 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
 - A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 055213
PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Steel pipe railings.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Delegated Design: Design railings, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. General: In engineering railings to withstand structural loads indicated, determine allowable design working stresses of railing materials based on the following:
1. Steel: 72 percent of minimum yield strength.
- C. Structural Performance: Railings shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:
 - a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. applied in any direction.
 - b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
 - c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
 2. Infill of Guards:
 - a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft.
 - b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on exterior metal fabrications by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects.
1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- E. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.
- F. Delegated Design: Design stairs, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, licensed to practice in the project location, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
 2. Railing brackets.
 3. Grout, anchoring cement, and paint products.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of railing from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

1.7 COORDINATION AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.
- B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- C. Schedule installation so wall attachments are made only to completed walls. Do not support railings temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discoloring, or blemishes.
- B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
- B. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.

2.3 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide the following:
 - 1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railings: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
 - 2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railings: Type 304 stainless-steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A 153 or ASTM F 2329 for zinc coating.
- B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.
- C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:
 - 1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.
 - 3. Provide Phillips flat-head machine screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI #25.
- C. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 09 painting Sections.
- D. Non-shrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, non-staining, non-corrosive, non-gaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.
- B. Assemble railings in the shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for re-assembly and coordinated installation. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.
- C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

- D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.
- E. Fabricate connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and welded surface matches contours of adjoining surfaces.
- I. Form changes in direction as follows:
 - 1. By bending.
- J. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required; maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.
- K. Close exposed ends of railing members with prefabricated end fittings.
- L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch or less.
- M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers, or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.
- N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.
- O. For railing posts set in concrete, provide steel sleeves not less than 6 inches long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.

2.6 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- D. Provide exposed fasteners with finish matching appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanized Railings:
 - 1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
 - 2. Hot-dip galvanize indicated steel and iron railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
 - 3. Comply with ASTM A 123 for hot-dip galvanized railings.
 - 4. Comply with ASTM A 153 for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
 - 5. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
 - 6. Fill vent and drain holes that will be exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.
- B. For non-galvanized steel railings, provide non-galvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.
- C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:
 - 1. Railings Indicated to Receive Primers Specified in Division 09 Section "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
- D. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements have been clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
- B. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.
 1. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that have been coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
 2. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet.
 3. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet
- C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

- A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

- A. Use metal sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts have been inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with non-shrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, welded to post after placing anchoring material.
- C. Leave anchorage joint exposed with anchoring material flush with adjacent surface.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

- A. Anchor railing ends at walls with round flanges anchored to wall construction and connected to railing ends using non-welded connections.
- B. Attach railings to wall with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
 1. Use type of bracket with flange tapped for concealed anchorage to threaded hanger bolt.
 2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
- C. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:
 1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
 2. For steel-framed partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into fire-retardant-treated wood backing between studs. Coordinate with stud installation to locate backing members.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 061000
ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 2. Wood blocking and nailers.
 3. Plywood backing panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal 38 mm actual or greater but less than 5 inches nominal 114 mm actual in least dimension.
- B. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 2. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 3. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
 3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
 4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
 5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
 6. For adhesives, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
 7. For composite wood products, documentation indicating that product contains no added formaldehyde.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect lumber from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by

the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
 2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
 3. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with the ground.
1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.
1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
 2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D 2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
 3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D 3201 at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.
 4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber shall be tested according ASTM D 5664 and design value adjustment factors shall be calculated according to ASTM D 6841.
- C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.
- E. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
 2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide No. 2 grade lumber and any of the following species:
1. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 2 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

- 2.5 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS
- A. Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exterior, AC, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.
- 2.6 FASTENERS
- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.
1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A ; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to four times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.
- C. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- D. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- E. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
 2. Table R602.3 (1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
- 3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION
- A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- 3.3 PROTECTION
- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 061600
SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Wall sheathing.
 2. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory."
- 2.2 WALL SHEATHING
- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C 1177.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; GlasRoc.
 - b. G-P Gypsum Corporation; Dens-Glass Gold.
 - c. Temple-Inland Inc.; GreenGlass
 - d. United States Gypsum Co.; Securock.
 2. Type and Thickness: Type X, 1/2 inch thick.
 3. Size: 48 by 108 inches.
- 2.3 SHEATHING JOINT-AND-PENETRATION TREATMENT MATERIALS
- A. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Elastomeric, medium-modulus, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant compatible with joint substrates formed by gypsum sheathing and other materials, recommended by sheathing manufacturer for application indicated and complying with requirements for elastomeric sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- B. Sealant for Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing: Silicone emulsion sealant complying with ASTM C 834, compatible with sheathing tape and sheathing and recommended by tape and sheathing manufacturers for use with glass-fiber sheathing tape and for covering exposed fasteners.
1. Sheathing Tape: Self-adhering glass-fiber tape, minimum 2 inches wide, 10 by 10 or 10 by 20 threads/inch of type recommended by sheathing and tape manufacturers for use with silicone emulsion sealant in sealing joints in glass-mat gypsum sheathing and with a history of successful in-service use.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL**

- A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.
- B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's "International Building Code."
- D. Use common wire nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections. Install fasteners without splitting wood.
- E. Coordinate wall sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.
- F. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.
- G. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
 - 2. Install boards with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
 - 3. Install boards with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.
- B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.
- C. Vertical Installation: Install board vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges of each board with those of adjacent boards. Attach boards at perimeter and within field of board to each stud.
 - 1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of boards.
 - 2. For sheathing under stucco cladding, boards may be initially tacked in place with screws if overlying self-furring metal lath is screw-attached through sheathing to studs immediately after sheathing is installed.
- D. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.
 - 2. Apply glass-fiber sheathing tape to glass-mat gypsum sheathing joints and apply and trowel silicone emulsion sealant to embed entire face of tape in sealant. Apply sealant to exposed fasteners with a trowel so fasteners are completely covered. Seal other penetrations and openings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 062023
INTERIOR FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Interior standing and running trim.
 - 2. Shelving and clothes rods.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 - 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 - 2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
 - 3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 - 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 - 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 - 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.
- B. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.
- C. MDO Plywood: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials, dimensions, profiles, textures, and colors and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
 - 3. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of paneling indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. For each species and cut of lumber and panel products with non-factory-applied finish, with 1/2 of exposed surface finished, 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.
 - 2. For each finish system and color of lumber and panel products with factory-applied finish, 50 sq. in. for lumber and 8 by 10 inches for panels.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect materials against weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.
- B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL**

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.
 - 1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.
 - 2. For exposed lumber, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by inspection agency.
- B. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- C. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea-formaldehyde resin.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Lumber: Comply with performance requirements in AWWPA C20, Interior Type A. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.
- B. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not contain colorants and provide materials that do not have marks from spacer sticks on the exposed face.
- C. Do not use material that does not comply with requirements for untreated material or is warped or discolored.
- D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
 - 2. For exposed plywood indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark back of each piece.
- E. Application: Where indicated or required by code.

2.3 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM

- A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):
 - 1. Species and Grade: As scheduled; A finish; NHLA.
 - 2. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
 - 3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
 - 4. Gluing for Width: Use for lumber trim wider than 6 inches.
 - 5. Veneered Material: Not allowed.
 - 6. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
 - 7. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.
- B. Hardwood Moldings for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish): WMMPA HWM 2, N-grade wood moldings made to patterns included in WMMPA HWM 1.
 - 1. Species: As scheduled.
 - 2. Kiln-dried softwood or MDF, with exposed surfaces veneered with species indicated, may be used in lieu of solid wood.
 - 3. Maximum Moisture Content: 9 percent.
 - 4. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
 - 5. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.

2.4 SHELVING AND CLOTHES RODS

- A. Closet Shelving: Made from one of the following materials, 3/4 inch thick. Do not use particleboard or MDF that contains urea formaldehyde.
 - 1. MDF with solid-wood front edge.
 - 2. Wood boards as specified above for lumber trim for opaque hardwood lumber trim for transparent finish.
- B. Shelf Cleats: 3/4-by-3-1/2-inch boards, as specified above for shelving.
- C. Shelf Brackets with Rod Support: BHMA A156.16, B04051; prime-painted formed steel.
- D. Standards for Adjustable Shelf Brackets: BHMA A156.9, B04102; zinc-plated steel.
- E. Adjustable Shelf Brackets: BHMA A156.9, B04112; zinc-plated steel.
- F. Standards for Adjustable Shelf Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; zinc-plated steel.
- G. Adjustable Shelf Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04081 or B04091; zinc-plated steel.
- H. Clothes Rods: 1-5/16-inch- diameter, stainless steel tubes.
- I. Rod Flanges: Stainless steel.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.

1. Where galvanized finish is indicated, provide fasteners and anchorages with hot-dip galvanized coating complying with ASTM A 153.
 - B. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.
- 2.6 FABRICATION
- A. Back out or kerf backs of the following members except those with ends exposed in finished work:
 1. Interior standing and running trim except shoe and crown molds.
 2. Wood board paneling.
 - B. Ease edges of lumber less than 1 inch in nominal thickness to 1/16-inch radius and edges of lumber 1 inch or more in nominal thickness to 1/8-inch radius.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.
 - B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
- A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.
 1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
 - B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.
 1. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand where face fastening is unavoidable.
 3. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
 4. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.
- 3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION
- A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.
 1. Match color and grain pattern of trim for transparent finish (stain or clear finish) across joints.
 2. Install trim after gypsum board joint finishing operations are completed.
 3. Drill pilot holes in hardwood before fastening to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.
- 3.5 SHELVING AND CLOTHES ROD INSTALLATION
- A. Cut shelf cleats at ends of shelves about 1/2 inch less than width of shelves and sand exposed ends smooth.
 - B. Install shelf cleats by fastening to framing or backing with finish nails or trim screws, set below face and filled. Space fasteners not more than 16 inches o.c. Use 2 fasteners at each framing member or fastener location for cleats 4 inches nominal actual in width and wider.
 1. Apply a bead of multipurpose construction adhesive to back of shelf cleats right before installing. Remove adhesive that is squeezed out immediately after fastening shelf cleats in place.

- C. Install shelf brackets according to manufacturer's written instructions, spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors.
 - D. Install standards for adjustable shelf supports according to manufacturer's written instructions. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors. Space fasteners not more than 12 inches o.c.
 - E. Install standards for adjustable shelf brackets according to manufacturer's written instructions, spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. and within 6 inches of end of shelves. Fasten to framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors.
 - F. Cut shelves to neatly fit openings with only enough gap to allow shelves to be removed and reinstalled. Install shelves, fully seated on cleats, brackets, and supports.
 - 1. Fasten shelves to cleats with finish nails or trim screws, set flush.
 - 2. Fasten shelves to brackets to comply with bracket manufacturer's written instructions.
 - G. Install rod flanges for rods as indicated. Fasten to shelf cleats, framing members, blocking, or metal backing, or use toggle bolts or hollow wall anchors. Install rods in rod flanges.
- 3.6 ADJUSTING
- A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- 3.7 CLEANING
- A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.
- 3.8 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
 - B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 064023
INTERIOR ARCHITECTURAL WOODWORK

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Wood cabinets.
 - 2. Shop finishing of interior woodwork.
 - 3. Cabinet hardware.
- B. Interior architectural woodwork includes wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing woodwork items unless concealed within other construction before woodwork installation.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For panel products, fire-retardant-treated materials, cabinet hardware and accessories and finishing materials and processes.
 - 1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location of each item, dimensioned plans and elevations, large-scale details, attachment devices, and other components.
 - 1. Show details in sufficient scale to determine compliance with the intent of the Quality Standard Grade specified.
 - 2. Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
 - 3. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures installed in architectural woodwork.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection:
 - 1. Shop-applied transparent finishes.
 - 2. Thermoset decorative panels.
- D. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Lumber with or for transparent finish, not less than 50 sq. in., for each species and cut, finished on 1 side and 1 edge.
 - 2. Veneer leaves representative of and selected from flitches to be used for transparent-finished woodwork.
 - 3. Veneer-faced panel products with or for transparent finish, 8 by 10 inches, for each species and cut. Include at least one face-veneer seam and finish as specified.
 - 4. Thermoset decorative-panels, 8 by 10 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish, with edge banding on 1 edge.
 - 5. Corner pieces as follows:
 - a. Cabinet-front frame joints between stiles and rails, as well as exposed end pieces, 18 inches high by 18 inches wide by 6 inches deep.
 - b. Miter joints for standing trim.
 - 6. Exposed cabinet hardware and accessories, one unit for each type and finish.
- E. Woodwork Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.
- F. Qualification Data: For Installer and fabricator.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom-fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance. Shop is a certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Certified participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program .
- C. Source Limitations: Engage a qualified woodworking firm to assume undivided responsibility for production of interior architectural woodwork with sequence-matched wood veneers.
- D. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards" for grades of interior architectural woodwork indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.

- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where fire-retardant materials or products are indicated, provide materials and products with specified fire-test-response characteristics as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by UL, ITS, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency in the form of separable paper label or, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, imprint on surfaces of materials that will be concealed from view after installation.
 - F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Do not deliver woodwork until painting and similar operations that could damage woodwork have been completed in installation areas. If woodwork must be stored in other than installation areas, store only in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Project Conditions" Article.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install woodwork until building is enclosed, wet work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - B. Field Measurements: Where woodwork is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
 - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support woodwork by field measurements before being enclosed, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 2. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating woodwork without field measurements. Provide allowance for trimming at site, and coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to ensure that interior architectural woodwork can be supported and installed as indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. General:
 - 1. Provide materials that comply with requirements of AWI's quality standard for each type of woodwork and quality grade specified, unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. Wood Species and Cut for Transparent Finish: As scheduled.
 - C. Wood Products: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Hardboard: Tempered, AHA A135.4.
 - 2. Medium-Density Fiberboard: ANSI A208.2, Grade as indicated below, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
 - a. Type A : MDF, MR10 – ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
 - b. Type B: MDF, MR30 – ANSI A208.2, Grade 155.
 - c. Type C: MDF, MR50 – ANSI A208.2, Grade 150
 - 3. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2, made with binder containing no urea formaldehyde.
 - D. Thermoset Decorative Laminate (melamine): Particleboard or medium-density fiberboard finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper complying with LMA SAT-1.
 - 1. Provide PVC or polyester edge banding complying with LMA EDG-1 on components with exposed or semi-exposed edges. Color to match face material.
 - 2. Color (Face Material): As selected from manufacturer's full line.
- 2.2 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES
- A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials as indicated in Master Schedule.
 - B. Hinges: Frameless Concealed Hinges (European Type), BHMA A156.9, B01602, 135 degrees of opening, self-closing.
 - C. Pulls: No. 102.71.959, "Modern Zinc", by Hafele.
 - D. Catches: Magnetic, BHMA A156.9, B03141.
 - E. Latches: Elbow, BHMA A156.9, B03023.
 - F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.

- G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9, B05091.
 - 1. Heavy Duty (Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200): Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel ball-bearing slides.
 - 2. File Drawer Slides: Grade 1HD-100; for drawers more than 6 inches high or 24 inches wide.
 - 3. Pencil Drawer Slides: Grade 2; for drawers not more than 3 inches high and 24 inches wide.
 - H. Door Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07121.
 - I. Drawer Locks: BHMA A156.11, E07041.
 - J. Grommets for Cable Passage through Countertops: 2-inch OD, black, molded-plastic grommets and matching plastic caps with slot for wire passage.
 - 1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "EDP series" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc.
 - K. Grommets for High Finish Areas: 2-inch OD, grommets and match caps with slot for wire passage.
 - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "MM3 series" by Doug Mockett & Company, Inc
 - L. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.
- 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.
 - B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts on inside face of exterior walls and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Provide toothed-steel or lead expansion sleeves for drilled-in-place anchors.
 - C. Adhesives, General: Do not use adhesives that contain urea formaldehyde.
 - D. VOC Limits for Installation Adhesives and Glues: Use installation adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
- 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL
- A. Wood Moisture Content: Comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for wood moisture content in relation to ambient relative humidity during fabrication and in installation areas.
 - B. Fabricate woodwork to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated. Ease edges to radius indicated for the following:
 - 1. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members 3/4 Inch Thick or Less: 1/16 inch.
 - 2. Edges of Rails and Similar Members More Than 3/4 Inch Thick: 1/8 inch.
 - 3. Corners of Cabinets and Edges of Solid-Wood (Lumber) Members and Rails: 1/16 inch.
 - C. Complete fabrication, including assembly, finishing, and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times woodwork fabrication will be complete.
 - 2. Trial fit assemblies at fabrication shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements indicated on Shop Drawings before disassembling for shipment.
 - D. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, plumbing fixtures, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.
 - 1. Seal edges of openings in countertops with a coat of varnish.
- 2.5 WOOD CABINETS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH
- A. Grade: Premium.
 - B. AWI Type of Cabinet Construction: Flush overlay.
 - C. Panel Product for Exposed Surfaces:
 - 1. Exposed casework in non-wet areas: Medium-density fiberboard, Type A
 - 2. Exposed casework in semi-wet areas (restroom and breakrooms with sinks): Medium-density fiberboard, Type B
 - 3. Exposed casework in wet areas (laboratories, locker rooms, laundry area and cafeteria): Medium-density fiberboard, Type C

- D. Wood Species, Cut and Matching for Exposed Surfaces: As scheduled.
 - 1. Veneer Matching within Room: Provide cabinet veneers in each room or other space from a single flitch with doors, drawer fronts, and other surfaces matched in a sequenced set with continuous match where veneers are interrupted perpendicular to the grain.
 - E. Semi-Exposed Surfaces: Provide surface materials indicated below:
 - 1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: Same species and cut indicated for exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
 - 3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.
 - F. Provide dust panels of 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers, unless located directly under tops.
 - G. Provide hardwood "T" banding at door and drawer edges of species, cut and finish to match face veneer.
- 2.6 SHOP FINISHING
- A. General: Shop finish transparent-finished interior architectural woodwork at fabrication shop as specified in this Section. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for finishing opaque-finished architectural woodwork.
 - B. Shop Priming: Shop apply the prime coat including backpriming, if any, for transparent-finished items specified to be field finished. Refer to Division 09 painting Sections for material and application requirements.
 - C. Preparation for Finishing: Comply with referenced quality standard for sanding, filling countersunk fasteners, sealing concealed surfaces, and similar preparations for finishing architectural woodwork, as applicable to each unit of work.
 - 1. Backpriming: Apply one coat of sealer or primer, compatible with finish coats, to concealed surfaces of woodwork. Apply two coats to back of paneling and to end-grain surfaces. Concealed surfaces of plastic-laminate-clad woodwork do not require backpriming when surfaced with plastic laminate, backing paper, or thermoset decorative panels.
 - D. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
 - 2. AWI Finish System: Catalyzed polyurethane.
 - 3. Staining: As scheduled
 - 4. Wash Coat for Stained Finish: Apply wash-coat sealer to woodwork made from closed-grain wood before staining and finishing.
 - 5. Filled Finish for Open-Grain Woods: After staining (if any), apply paste wood filler to open-grain woods and wipe off excess. Tint filler to match stained wood.
 - a. Apply wash-coat sealer after staining and before filling.
 - 6. Sheen: As scheduled

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 PREPARATION
 - A. Before installation, condition woodwork to average prevailing humidity conditions in installation areas.
 - B. Before installing architectural woodwork, examine shop-fabricated work for completion and complete work as required, including removal of packing and backpriming.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
 - A. Grade: Install woodwork to comply with requirements for the same grade specified in Part 2 for fabrication of type of woodwork involved.
 - B. Assemble woodwork and complete fabrication at Project site to comply with requirements for fabrication in Part 2, to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
 - C. Install woodwork level, plumb, true, and straight. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb (including tops) to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches.
 - D. Scribe and cut woodwork to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
 - E. Anchor woodwork to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing as required for complete installation. Use fine finishing nails or finishing screws for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork and matching final finish if transparent finish is indicated.
 - F. Cabinets: Install without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings properly and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
 - 1. Install cabinets with no more than 1/8 inch in 96-inch sag, bow, or other variation from a straight line.
 - 2. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.

3. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, at ends and not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for 1-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips or No. 10 wafer-head sheet metal screws through metal backing or metal framing behind wall finish.
 - G. Touch up finishing work specified in this Section after installation of woodwork. Fill nail holes with matching filler where exposed.
 - H. Refer to Division 09 Sections for final finishing of installed architectural woodwork not indicated to be shop finished.
- 3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Repair damaged and defective woodwork, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects; where not possible to repair, replace woodwork. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
 - B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
 - C. Clean woodwork on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch up shop-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 071900
WATER REPELLENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL**1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes penetrating water-repellent treatments for the following vertical and horizontal surfaces:
 - 1. Precast concrete.
 - 2. Cast stone.
 - 3. Concrete unit masonry.
 - 4. Natural stone.
 - 5. Cast-in-place concrete.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Water repellents shall meet performance requirements indicated without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation.
 - 1. Water Repellents: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by preconstruction testing on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies representing those indicated for this Project.
- B. Water Absorption: Minimum 90 percent reduction of water absorption after 24 hours in comparison of treated and untreated specimens.
 - 1. Precast Concrete: ASTM C 642.
 - 2. Cast Stone: ASTM C 1195.
 - 3. Concrete Masonry Units: ASTM C 140.
 - 4. Natural Stone: ASTM C 97.
- C. Water-Vapor Transmission: Comply with one or both of the following:
 - 1. Maximum 10 percent reduction in rate of vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 96.
 - 2. Minimum 80 percent water-vapor transmission in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM D 1653.
- D. Water Penetration and Leakage through Masonry: Minimum 90 percent reduction in leakage rate in comparison of treated and untreated specimens, according to ASTM E 514.
- E. Durability: Maximum 5 percent loss of water-repellent properties after 2500 hours of weathering according to ASTM G 154 in comparison to water-repellent-treated specimens before weathering.
- F. Chloride-Ion Intrusion in Concrete: NCHRP Report 244, Series II tests.
 - 1. Reduction of Water Absorption: 80 percent.
 - 2. Reduction in Chloride Content: 80 percent.

1.4 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Testing: Installed water repellents shall comply with performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed on manufacturer's standard substrate assemblies by a qualified testing agency.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated submit water-repellent manufacturer's literature including product description and written instructions for storage, handling, substrate preparation, protection of surrounding areas not to receive water-repellent, application, and final cleaning.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's printed statement of VOC content.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's recommended number of coats for each type of substrate and spreading rate for each separate coat.
- B. Environmental Submittals:
 - 1. Environmental regulations applicable to site.
 - 2. Certifications, signed by water-repellent manufacturers, that water repellents comply with environmental regulations applicable to site.
- C. Samples: For each type of water repellent and substrate indicated, 8 by 8 inches in size, with specified water-repellent treatment applied to half of each Sample.

- D. Applicator Qualifications:
1. Certification signed by water-repellent manufacturer, certifying that Applicator complies with manufacturer's requirements to install specified water repellent.
 2. Submit evidence that Applicator's existing company has minimum of 3-years continuous experience in application of specified materials. Submit list of at least five completed projects of similar scope and size, including:
 - a. Project name.
 - b. Owner's name.
 - c. Owner's Representative name, address, and telephone number.
 - d. Description of work.
 - e. Water repellents used.
 - f. Project supervisor.
 - g. Total cost of water-repellent work and total cost of project.
 - h. Completion date.
- E. Product Certificates: For each type of water repellent, from manufacturer certifying that the product to be used complies with regulations controlling use of VOC'.
- F. Preconstruction Testing Reports: For each water-repellent-treated substrate, submit third party test reports certifying the specified performance requirements.
- G. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Applicator Qualifications: Qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by water-repellent manufacturer to install water repellent. Must have installations of specified materials in local area in use for minimum of three years.
1. Employ foreman trained by water-repellent manufacturer and with minimum of 3-years experience as foreman on similar projects, to be on site at all times during Work.
- B. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Review requirements for water-repellent application, including:
 - a. Construction schedule and availability of materials, Applicator's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - b. Site use, access, staging, and set-up location limitations.
 - c. Approved mockup procedures.
 - d. Forecast weather conditions.
 - e. Surface preparation and substrate condition and pretreatment.
 - f. Application procedures.
 - g. Minimum curing period.
 - h. Testing and inspection requirements.
 - i. Site protection measures.
 - j. Governing regulations, including environmental regulations, if applicable.
 2. Contractor's site foreman, water-repellent manufacturer's technical representative, water-repellent Applicator, Owner's Representative, and Architect/Engineer shall attend.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials to Project site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with water-repellent manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, lot number, and directions for storing.
 - B. Store materials in original, undamaged containers in clean, dry, protected, cool, well-ventilated location on raised platforms with weather-protective coverings, within temperature range required by water-repellent manufacturer and away from sources of ignition. Protect stored materials from direct sunlight. Water-repellent manufacturer's standard packaging and covering is not considered adequate weather protection.
 - C. Limit stored materials on structures to safe loading of structure at time materials are stored, and to avoid permanent deck deflections.
 - D. Handle materials to avoid damage. Keep containers tightly sealed when not in use, as atmospheric moisture will react with and alter water-repellent solution.
 - E. Remove and replace materials that cannot be applied within stated shelf life, or that are damaged or otherwise unsuitable.
 - F. Conspicuously mark damaged or opened containers or containers with contaminated materials, and remove from site as soon as possible.
 - G. Dispose of unused or unsuitable materials in accordance with water-repellent manufacturer's recommendations and governing environmental regulations. Do not flush debris or water repellent down existing drains.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing dimensions and details prior to installation of materials. Notify Architect/Engineer of conditions found to be different than those indicated in Contract Documents. Architect/Engineer will review situation and inform Contractor and Applicator of changes.
- B. Limitations: Proceed with application only when the following existing and forecasted weather and substrate conditions permit water repellents to be applied according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements:
 - 1. Concrete surfaces and mortar have cured for not less than 28 days.
 - 2. Building has been closed in for not less than 30 days before treating wall assemblies.
 - 3. To substrates that are damp or wet, or that have dew, frost, snow, or ice on them.
 - 4. To substrates below 40 degrees F or less than 5 degrees F above dew point, or above 90 degrees F.
 - 5. When ambient temperature is below 40 degrees F, or is predicted to fall below 40 degrees F within 8 hours after application, or is above 90 degrees F.
 - 6. When rain, snow, fog, or mist is predicted within 24 hours.
 - 7. When wind speeds are at or above 15 miles per hour, or if windy conditions exist that may cause water repellent to be blown onto vegetation or surfaces not intended to be treated.
 - 8. On new concrete or brick masonry exterior walls for at least 30 days following building close-in.
- C. Install materials in strict accordance with safety requirements required by water-repellent manufacturer, Material Safety Data Sheets, and local, state, and federal rules and regulations.
- D. Maintain adequate ventilation during preparation and application of water-repellent materials. Notify Owner's Representative at least 1 week in advance of Work with materials with noxious vapors. Review application schedule and venting precautions with Owner's Representative prior to beginning application.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty, signed by water repellent manufacturer, that the water repellent system will be free of defects related to workmanship or material deficiency for a ten (10) year period from the date of completion of the work provided under this section of the specification. The following performance standards shall be specifically covered under the warranty.
 - 1. Loss of water repellency:
 - a. Using ASTM D 6489 procedure the treated concrete shall not absorb more than 1.0% water by weight for a period of 24 hours.
 - 2. All defective areas shall be retreated by the system manufacturer as determined by the Architect/Engineer. The required written warranty shall be provided by the system manufacturer.
 - 3. The Water Repellent Manufacturer shall be responsible for providing labor and material to reseal areas of the substrate where sealer effectiveness does not meet the specified limits.
 - 4. Provide access to warranty repair and replacement areas.
- B. Installer's Warranty: Written warranty, signed by Applicator, that the water repellent system will be free of defects related to workmanship for a five (5) year period from the date of completion of the work provided under this section of the specification.
 - 1. Provide access to warranty repair and replacement areas.
 - 2. Repair or replacement, to satisfaction of Owner, of other work or items which may have been displaced or damaged as consequence of defective work.
 - 3. Make immediate emergency repairs within 48 hours of notice of loss of water repellency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PENETRATING WATER REPELLENTS

- A. Siloxane, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, containing 10 percent or more solids of oligomeric alkylalkoxysiloxanes; with alcohol, ethanol, mineral spirits, water, or other proprietary solvent carrier; and with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.
- B. Silane/Siloxane-Blend, Penetrating Water Repellent: Clear, silane and siloxane blend with 400 g/L or less of VOCs.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. BASF Construction Chemicals, LLC; Enviroseal 7.
 - b. Degussa Corporation; Protectosil Aqua-Trete EM.
 - c. Pectora Corporation; KlereSeal 910-W.
 - d. PROSOCO, Inc.; Weather Seal GP.
 - e. BASF Construction Chemicals; Hydrozo Clear Double 7 VOC.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements and conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Ensure that Work done by other trades is complete and ready to receive water repellent.
 - 2. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry according to water-repellent manufacturer's requirements. Check moisture content in three representative locations by method recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Inspect for previously applied treatments that may inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents.
 - 4. Verify that there is no efflorescence or other removable residues that would be trapped beneath the application of water repellent.
 - 5. Verify that required repairs are complete, cured, and dry before applying water repellent.
- B. Test pH level according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions to ensure chemical bond to silica-containing or siliceous minerals.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. Notify Architect/Engineer in writing of conditions which may adversely affect water-repellent installation or performance. Do not proceed with water-repellent installation until these conditions have been corrected

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Cleaning: Before application of water repellent, clean substrate of substances that could impair penetration or performance of product according to water-repellent manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Allow wet substrates to dry for at least 24 hours. Verify that substrate is sound and is visibly dry and free of moisture.
 - 2. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate.
 - 3. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Commencing application constitutes acceptance of work surfaces and conditions.
 - 4. Precast Concrete and Concrete Unit Masonry: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857.
 - 5. Concrete: Remove oil, curing compounds, laitance, and other substances that inhibit penetration or performance of water repellents according to ASTM E 1857.
 - a. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by water-repellent manufacturer.
 - b. Remove grease, oil, asphalt solids, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete. Use concrete cleaner approved by water-repellent manufacturer where necessary. If cleaner is used, rinse thoroughly to remove cleaner residue.
 - c. Thoroughly sweep substrate and clean with oil-free compressed air.
 - 6. Natural Stone: Clean natural stone substrates in accordance with ASTM C 1515 and water repellent manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Protect adjoining work, including mortar and sealant bond surfaces, from spillage or blow-over of water repellent. Cover adjoining and nearby surfaces of aluminum and glass if there is the possibility of water repellent being deposited on surfaces. Cover live vegetation.
- C. Coordination with Mortar Joints: Do not apply water repellent until pointing mortar for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment has been installed and cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by water-repellent manufacturer.
- D. Coordination with Sealant Joints: Do not apply water repellent until sealants for joints adjacent to surfaces receiving water-repellent treatment have been installed and for minimum time period recommended by water-repellent manufacturer..
 - 1. Water-repellent work may precede sealant application only if sealant adhesion and compatibility have been tested and verified using substrate, water repellent, and sealant materials identical to those required.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Before beginning application
 - 1. Provide and maintain traffic barricades and control measures, well outside limits of wind-drifting, during application and drying of water repellent to protect vehicular and pedestrian traffic from contact with water repellent. Enclose Work area to contain wind-blown overspray.
 - 2. Provide adequate ventilation during and after application of water repellent.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect the substrate

before application of water repellent and to instruct Applicator on the product and application method to be used.

- C. Apply water repellent at coverage rate demonstrated in mock-up, in uniform manner, using low-pressure spray equipment, brushes, and rollers. Use brooms and squeegees to achieve even distribution. Do not alter or dilute material. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for using airless spraying procedure.
 - 1. Prior to use, thoroughly clean spray equipment, tanks, and hoses, and make free of water, foreign matter, and oily residues. Flush with anhydrous alcohol or small amounts of silane.
 - 2. On vertical surfaces, apply from bottom up, with controlled run-down of about 8 inches, with hand-spray unit, brushes, and rollers.
 - 3. Mask mortar and sealant bond surfaces to prevent water repellent from migrating onto joint surfaces.
 - 4. If water-repellent application is not completed at one time, clearly mark location where application is terminated.
 - 5. Allow water repellent to dry for at least 12 hours before exposing to vehicular, construction, or pedestrian traffic.
 - 6. Apply additional coats in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for limitations on drying time between coats and after rainstorm wetting of surfaces between coats. Consult manufacturer's technical representative if standard written instructions are not applicable to Project conditions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Water-repellent manufacturer's representative shall inspect and approve preparation of substrate and protection of adjacent surfaces before application of water repellent.
- B. Testing of Water-Repellent Material: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when water repellent is being applied:
 - 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample water-repellent material being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
 - 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance of water-repellent material with product requirements.
 - 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying water repellents if test results show material being used does not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove non-complying material from Project site, pay for testing, and correct deficiency of surfaces treated with rejected materials, as approved by Architect.
- C. Coverage Test: In the presence of Architect, hose down a dry, repellent-treated surface to verify complete and uniform product application. A change in surface color will indicate incomplete application. Test location to be chosen by Architect.
 - 1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when surfaces will be tested.
 - 2. Reapply water repellent until coverage test indicates complete coverage at no cost to Owner.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Immediately clean water repellent from adjoining surfaces and surfaces soiled or damaged by water-repellent application as work progresses. Correct damage to work of other trades caused by water-repellent application, as approved by Architect.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written cleaning instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072100
THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Foam-plastic board insulation.
 2. Glass-fiber blanket insulation.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:
1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site before installation time.
 3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION
- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, of type and minimum compressive strength indicated below, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. DiversiFoam Products.
 - b. Dow Chemical Company (The). Styrofoam
 - c. Owens Corning. Foamular CW
 - d. Pactiv Building Products.
 2. Type IV, 25 psi. (in masonry cavity walls) and (continuous insulation C.I.).
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.
- 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. CertainTeed Corporation.
 2. Guardian Building Products, Inc.
 3. Johns Manville.
 4. Knauf Insulation.
 5. Owens Corning.
- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 PREPARATION
- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation or that interfere with insulation attachment.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL
- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION
- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
- 3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION
- A. Coordinate installing membrane roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at the end of the workday.
- B. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Install insulation under area of roofing to achieve required thickness. Where overall insulation thickness is 2.7 inches or greater, install two or more layers with joints of each succeeding layer staggered from joints of previous layer a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
- D. Install insulation with long joints of insulation in a continuous straight line with end joints staggered between rows, abutting edges and ends between boards. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
1. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
- E. Mechanically Fastened Insulation: Install each layer of insulation and secure to deck using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to deck type.
1. Fasten insulation to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.
- 3.5 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION FOR FRAMED CONSTRUCTION
- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Seal joints between units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Glass-Fiber: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
 4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
- 3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN CEILINGS FOR SOUND ATTENUATION
- A. Where glass-fiber blankets are indicated for sound attenuation above ceilings, install blanket insulation over entire ceiling area in thicknesses indicated. Extend insulation 48 inches up either side of partitions.
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

3.8 SCHEDULE

- A. Masonry Cavity Walls (Exterior):
 - 1. Insulation Type: Foam-Plastic Board, Continuous, Insulation.
 - 2. R-Value: Minimum R-7.5, thickness as indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Installation: Fully adhered to substrate (CMU or Sheathing).
- B. Metal Framing (Exterior Walls)
 - 1. Insulation Type: Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation
 - 2. R-Value: Thickness as required to fill framing fully, minimum R-19.
 - 3. Installation: Friction.
 - 4. Insulation Type: Foam-Plastic Board, Continuous, Insulation.
 - 5. R-Value: Minimum R-5, thickness as indicated on Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072600
UNDER SLAB VAPOR BARRIER

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes:
1. Sheet materials for controlling vapor diffusion through concrete slabs-on-grade.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Written certification from the manufacturer that the materials and their application as noted in this Specification and on the Drawings is appropriate and approved for this project.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data, specifications, and installation instructions. Include vapor barrier manufacturer's requirements for placement, seaming and pipe book installation.
- C. Sample Warranties: Copies of waterproofing manufacturer's warranty, Installer's warranty, and General Contractor's warranty, all stating obligations, remedies, limitations, and exclusions. Submitted with Bid.
- D. Test Reports: Manufacturer's independent laboratory test reports showing compliance with ASTM and ACI Standards.
- E. Installer Certificates: Signed by manufacturers certifying that installers comply with requirements.
- F. Submit evidence that Installer's existing company has minimum of 5-years continuous experience in application of specified materials.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer (applicator) who is acceptable to manufacturer, who has completed applications similar in material and extent to that required for this Project, and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Vapor Barrier and components to be from one source from a single manufacturer.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and application.
- B. Store materials in a clean dry location in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions to prevent deterioration from moisture or other detrimental effects.
- C. Stack membrane on elevated wood platform to eliminate warping.
- D. Protect materials during handling and application to prevent damage or contamination.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for substrate temperature and moisture content, ambient temperature and humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting materials performance. Do not apply on frozen ground.
- B. Close areas to traffic during application and for time period after application recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- 1.7 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate placement of sheet vapor barrier with Division 03 sections.
- B. Coordinate placement of sealer and hardener with Division 03 sections and with requirements of finish flooring products, including adhesives, specified in Division 09 Sections.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Sheet Vapor Barrier:
1. Type: 15 mil polyolefin film meeting requirements of ASTM E 1745, Class A.
 2. Water Vapor Transmittance (After mandatory condition per ASTM E154 sections 8,11,12,13): Maximum perm rating of 0.01 as tested in accordance with ASTM E 1745 Section 7.

3. Strength: ASTM E 1745: Class A.
- B. Acceptable Products:
 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Stego Wrap Vapor Barrier by Stego Industries, LLC, 15 mils.
 - b. Zero-Perm Vapor Barrier by Alumiseal.
 - c. Perminator by W.R. Meadows.
 - d. Xtreme by Tex-Trude
- C. Accessories:
 1. Bonding Agent: Manufacturer's approved or recommended vapor barrier bonding agent.
 2. Sealing and Seaming Tape: High density polyethylene tape a minimum of 4 inches in width, compatible with vapor barrier membrane, and manufactured by or recommended by vapor barrier membrane manufacturer. Tape for joints shall have at least the same permeability rating as the vapor barrier specified.
 3. Vapor Proofing Mastic: Manufacturer's approved or recommended vapor proofing mastic with the same permeability rating as the vapor barrier specified.
 4. Pipe Boot: Construct pipe boots from vapor barrier material and pressure sensitive tape in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine surfaces to receive membrane. Notify Architect if surfaces are not acceptable. Do not begin surface preparation or application until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Level or tamp or roll aggregate, sand or granular base.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Vapor Barrier:
 1. Place, protect, and repair vapor barrier sheets according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Unroll vapor barrier with the longest dimension parallel with the direction of the concrete pour.
 3. Install vapor barrier without tears, voids, and holes. Lap ends and edges as recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 6 inches over adjacent sheets. Seal laps with tape.
 4. Turn up sheets at perimeter, at footings and vertical walls, and against penetrations, and seal joints with tape.
 5. Seal joints, tears, holes, perimeter, and penetrations through vapor with tape in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
 6. Point exposed edges with pointing mastic to prevent water from traveling under membrane.
 7. Adhere membrane to vertical surfaces with adhesive.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect complete membrane from damage. Prior to pouring concrete, inspect membrane for punctures or damage and repair as required to maintain vapor barrier integrity.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 072726
FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Fluid-applied membrane air barrier, vapor permeable.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 07 low-slope roofing Sections for roof air barriers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABAA: Air Barrier Association of America.
- B. Air Barrier Assembly: The collection of air barrier materials and auxiliary materials applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor-permeable air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, and transitions at perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.
- B. Material Compatibility: Provide materials that are compatible with one another under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. The building envelope shall be designed and constructed with a continuous air barrier to control air leakage into or out of the conditioned space. An air barrier shall also be provided for interior partitions between conditioned space and space designed to maintain temperature or humidity levels which differ from those in the conditioned space by more than 50% of the difference between the conditioned space and design ambient conditions. The air barrier shall have the following characteristics:
 - 1. It must be continuous, with all joints made airtight.
 - 2. It shall have an air permeability not to exceed 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water. 1.57 psf.
 - 3. It shall be capable of withstanding positive and negative combined design wind, fan and stack pressures on the envelope without damage or displacement, and shall transfer the load to the structure. It shall not displace adjacent materials under full load.
 - 4. The air barrier shall be joined in an airtight and flexible manner to the air barrier material of adjacent systems, allowing for the relative movement of systems due to thermal and moisture variations and creep. Connection shall be made between:
 - a. Foundation and walls.
 - b. Walls and windows or doors.
 - c. Different wall systems.
 - d. Wall and roof.
 - e. Wall and roof over unconditioned space.
 - f. Walls, floor and roof across construction, control and expansion joints.
 - g. Walls, floors and roof to utility, pipe and duct penetrations.
 - 5. All penetrations of the air barrier and paths of air infiltration/exfiltration shall be made airtight.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of system from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data; installation instructions; and tested physical and performance properties of air barrier.
 - 1. For fluid applied materials provide the minimum time that must pass before additional applications of fluid applied material may be installed.
 - 2. For primers provide the maximum time that may pass before primer must be reapplied.
 - 3. For systems that require different primers for different substrates, indicate if one primer must be installed before or after another type of primer on an adjacent substrate.

4. For membrane materials provide the maximum time that may pass before solvent wiping or abrasion is required before application of additional coats of membrane materials.
 5. For membrane at expansion joints, submit the manufacturer's written product and technical data, as well as, tested physical performance properties.
- C. Submit shop drawings Show locations and extent of air barrier. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strip, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction. These drawings shall be site specific. Manufacturer's standard details will not be accepted.
Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.
- D. Product Certificates: For air barriers, certifying compatibility of air barrier and accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier; signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Manufacturer Certificate: Signed by manufacturer, stating that the product manufacturer has reviewed and approved the shop drawings and certifying that air barrier system complies with specified requirements.
1. Written approval by manufacturer for use and performance of air barrier system over specified substrate, including that materials supplied for project comply with requirements of cited ASTM standards and Project Documents.
- F. Installer Certificate
1. Signed by manufacturer, certifying that Installer complies with manufacturer's requirements to install specified, warranted system.
 2. Submit evidence that Installer's existing company has minimum of 5 years continuous experience in application of specified materials. Submit list of at least five completed projects of similar scope and size.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for air barriers.
- H. Sample Warranty: Copy of manufacturer's warranty, stating obligations, remedies, limitations, and exclusions. Submitted with bid.
- I. Following completion of Work, submit manufacturer's inspection report of completed installation and completed warranty; submit Installer's completed warranty.
- J. Maintenance data for air barrier system.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. General: In general, materials to be obtained from one (1) manufacturer. The use of other materials must be acknowledged and approved by both the primary manufacturer and the supplier of incidental materials, each accepting the other.
1. Portions of these specifications may exceed the minimum requirements of material manufacturer(s). Installer to comply, first with these Specifications, and secondly, with the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions. In no event will less quality, less weight or any other lesser requirements be acceptable than at least the minimum of such required by this Section and those of the manufacturer(s).
 - a. The current published product and installation literature of these materials manufacturers will be considered part of this specification. Any revisions to the published literature, prior to the date of installation of the project will also be considered part of this specification.
 - b. Maintain one copy of contract documents and submittals on site at all times during work activities.
- B. Installer's Qualifications: Qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by manufacturer to install products and that is eligible to receive system warranty. Must have installations of specified materials in local area in use for minimum of 5 years.
1. Employ foreman with minimum of 5-years experience as foreman on similar projects, to be on site at all times during Work.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer with a minimum of ten (10) years documented experience that has UL listing and FMG approval for air barrier system identical to that used for this Project.
- D. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
1. Include installers of other construction connecting to air barrier, including roofing, waterproofing, architectural precast concrete, masonry, sealants, windows, glazed curtain walls, and door frames.
 2. Review air barrier requirements including surface preparation, substrate condition and pretreatment, minimum substrate curing period, forecasted weather conditions, special details and sheet flashings, , installation procedures, sequence of installation, testing and inspecting procedures, and protection and repairs.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials to Site in original packages with seals unbroken, labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, lot number, and directions for storing. Protect from damage from sunlight, weather, excessive temperatures and construction operations. Remove damaged material from the site and dispose of in accordance with applicable regulations.
- B. Store materials in original, undamaged containers in clean, dry, protected location on raised platforms within temperature range required by manufacturer.
- C. Store rolled materials on ends only, unless otherwise required by manufacturer's written instructions. Discard rolls that have been flattened, creased, or otherwise damaged.
- D. Handle materials to avoid damage.
- E. Conspicuously mark damaged materials and promptly remove from Site.
- F. Do not double-stack pallets of fluid applied membrane components on the job site. Provide cover on top and all sides, allowing for adequate ventilation.
- G. Protect fluid-applied membrane components from freezing and extreme heat.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing dimensions and details prior to installation of materials. Notify Architect/Engineer of conditions found to be different than those indicated in Contract Documents.
- B. Comply with Owner's limitations and restrictions for site use and accessibility.
- C. Environmental Limitations: Install system when existing and forecast weather conditions permit system to be installed according to system manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
- D. Do not proceed with installation during inclement weather except for temporary work necessary to protect building interior and installed materials. Remove temporary work and Work that becomes moisture damaged.
- E. Install materials in strict accordance with safety requirements required by manufacturer, Material Safety Data Sheets, and local, state, and federal rules and regulations.
- F. Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect performance of air barrier. Do not apply air barrier to a wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Refer to Section 017839 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements
- B. Warranty: Add Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace fluid-applied air barrier membrane materials, that fail within specified warranty period when installed and used in strict conformance with written manufacturer's instructions.
 - 1. Failure include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to maintain air permeance rating not to exceed .004 cfm/sq. ft when tested per ASTM E2178, within specified warranty period.
 - b. Failure to maintain a vapor permeance rating greater than 10 perms when tested in accordance with ATM E96, Method B.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

- A. Fluid-Applied, Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier: Elastomeric, modified bituminous membrane.
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Elastomeric, Modified Bituminous Membrane:
 - a. Tremco Incorporated, ExoAir 220R.
 - b. WR Meadows Air-Shield LMP
 - 2. Synthetic Polymer Membrane:
 - a. Grace, W.R. & Co., Perm-A-Barrier VP.
 - b. Henry Company, Air-Bloc 31.
 - 3. Physical and Performance Properties:
 - a. Membrane Air Permeance: Not to exceed 0.004 cfm/ sq. ft. of surface area at 1.57-lbf/sq. ft.0.02 L/s x sq. m of surface area at 75-Pa pressure difference; ASTM E 2178.
 - b. Membrane Vapor Permeance: Not less than 10 perms; ASTM E 96.

2.2 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by air barrier manufacturer for intended use and compatible with air barrier membrane. Liquid-type auxiliary materials shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. Wall Primer: Liquid waterborne primer recommended for substrate by manufacturer of air barrier material.
- C. Counterflashing Strip: Modified bituminous, 40-mil-- thick, self-adhering sheet consisting of 32 mils 0.8 mm of rubberized asphalt laminated to an 8-mil-- thick, cross-laminated polyethylene film with release liner backing.
- D. Butyl Strip: Vapor-retarding, 30- to 40-mil- thick, self-adhering; polyethylene-film-reinforced top surface laminated to layer of butyl adhesive with release liner backing.
- E. Modified Bituminous Strip: Vapor-retarding, 40-mil-thick, smooth-surfaced, self-adhering; consisting of 36 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil-thick polyethylene film with release liner backing.
- F. Joint Reinforcing Strip: Air barrier manufacturer's glass-fiber-mesh tape.
- G. Substrate Patching Membrane: Manufacturer's standard trowel-grade substrate filler.
- H. Adhesive and Tape: Air barrier manufacturer's standard adhesive and pressure-sensitive adhesive tape.
- I. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240, Type 304, 0.0187 inch thick, and Series 300 stainless-steel fasteners.
- J. Sprayed Polyurethane Foam Sealant: 1- or 2-component, foamed-in-place, polyurethane foam sealant, 1.5 to 2.0 lb/cu. ft density; flame spread index of 25 or less according to ASTM E 162; with primer and non-corrosive substrate cleaner recommended by foam sealant manufacturer.
- K. Modified Bituminous Transition Strip: Vapor-retarding, 40-mil-thick, smooth-surfaced, self-adhering; consisting of 36 mils of rubberized asphalt laminated to a 4-mil- thick polyethylene film with release liner backing.
- L. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920, single-component, neutral-curing silicone; Class 100/50 (low-modulus), Grade NS, Use NT related to exposure, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, use O. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
 1. Ensure that Work done by other trades is complete and ready.
 2. Verify that substrates are sound and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar, or other contaminants.
 3. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period recommended by air barrier manufacturer.
 4. Verify that concrete is visibly dry and free of moisture. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method according to ASTM D 4263.
 5. Verify that masonry joints are flush and completely filled with mortar.
 6. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 7. Notify Architect/Engineer in writing of conditions which may adversely affect system installation or performance. Do not proceed with system installation until these conditions have been corrected

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

- A. **Fluid-Applied, Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier to be installed on sheathing prior to installation of rigid insulation.**
- B. **Coordinate with through wall flashing specified in Section 076210.**
- C. Installer and system manufacturer's representative shall examine substrate to ensure that it is properly prepared and ready to receive system. Manufacturer's representative shall report in writing to Installer and Architect/Engineer conditions which will adversely affect system installation or performance. Do not proceed with installation until these conditions have been corrected
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Commencing installation constitutes acceptance of work surfaces and conditions.
- E. Refer to manufacturer's literature for requirements for preparation of substrates. Surfaces shall be sound and free of voids, spalled areas, loose aggregate and sharp protrusions. Remove contaminants such as grease, oil and wax from exposed surfaces. Remove dust, dirt, loose stone and debris. Use repair materials and methods that are acceptable to manufacturer of the fluid-applied air barrier system.
- F. Exterior sheathing panels: Ensure that the boards are sufficiently stabilized with corners and edges fastened with appropriate screws. Pre-treat all board joints with 2-3 in. wide, manufacturer's recommended self-adhesive tape. Gaps greater than 1/4 in. should be filled with mastic or caulk, allowing sufficient time to fully cure before application of the tape and fluid applied air barrier system.
- G. Masonry Substrates: Apply air and vapor barrier over concrete block and brick with smooth trowel-cut mortar joints, struck full and flush. Fill all voids and holes, particularly in the mortar joints, with a lean mortar mix, non-shrinking grout or parge coat.
- H. Clean, prepare, treat, and seal substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air barrier application.

- I. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.
- J. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.
- K. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate patching membrane.
- L. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.
- M. At changes in substrate plane, apply sealant or termination mastic beads at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.
- N. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.

3.3 JOINT TREATMENT

- A. Concrete and Masonry: Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C 1193 and air barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks complying with ASTM D 4258 before coating surfaces.
 - 1. Prime substrate and apply a single thickness of preparation coat strip extending a minimum of 3 inches along each side of joints and cracks. Apply a double thickness of air barrier membrane and embed a joint reinforcing strip in preparation coat.
- B. Gypsum Sheathing: Fill joints greater than 1/4 inch according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 TRANSITION STRIP INSTALLATION

- A. Install strips, transition strips, and auxiliary materials according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions to form a seal with adjacent construction and maintain a continuous air barrier.
 - 1. Coordinate the installation of air barrier with installation of roofing membrane and base flashing to ensure continuity of air barrier with roofing membrane.
 - 2. Install modified bituminous strip on roofing membrane or base flashing so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates.
- B. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- C. Connect and seal exterior wall air barrier membrane continuously to roofing membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials .
- D. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition strips to substrate with termination mastic.
- E. Apply joint sealants forming part of air barrier assembly within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.
- F. Wall Openings: Prime concealed perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply modified bituminous transition strip so that a minimum of 3 inches of coverage is achieved over both substrates. Maintain 3 inches of full contact over firm bearing to perimeter frames with not less than 1 inch of full contact.
 - 1. Modified Bituminous Transition Strip: Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.
- G. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air barrier membrane with foam sealant.
- H. Seal strips and transition strips around masonry reinforcing or ties and penetrations with termination mastic.
- I. Seal top of through-wall flashings to air barrier with an additional 6-inch- wide, modified bituminous strip.
- J. Seal exposed edges of strips at seams, cuts, penetrations, and terminations not concealed by metal counterflashings or ending in reglets with termination mastic.
- K. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition strips. Slit and flatten fishmouths and blisters. Patch with transition strips extending 6 inches beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.5 AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Apply air barrier membrane to form a seal with strips and transition strips and to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Apply air barrier membrane within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.
- C. Apply primer to substrates at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by air barrier sheet in same day. Reprime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.
 - 1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.
- D. Apply a continuous unbroken air barrier to substrates according to the following minimum thickness. Apply membrane in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.
 - 1. Vapor-Permeable Membrane Air Barrier: 3.0-mm. Apply to wet film thickness as recommended by manufacturer.
- E. Apply strip and transition strip a minimum of 1 inch onto cured air membrane according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by testing agency.
- G. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air barrier components.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: engage a qualified testing agency to perform inspections and prepare reports.
- B. Periodic Inspections: Air barrier materials and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:
 - 1. Continuity of air barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes.
 - 2. Continuous structural support of air barrier system has been provided.
 - 3. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings.
 - 4. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained.
 - 5. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded.
 - 6. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable.
 - 7. Laps in strips and transition strips have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fishmouths.
 - 8. Termination mastic has been applied on cut edges.
 - 9. Strips and transition strips have been firmly adhered to substrate.
 - 10. Compatible materials have been used.
 - 11. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
 - 12. Connections between assemblies (membrane and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal.
 - 13. All penetrations have been sealed.
- C. Final Inspection: Arrange for air barrier system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect installation on completion and submit report to Architect/Engineer. Notify Architect/Engineer and Owner's Representative 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.
- D. Remove and replace deficient air barrier components and retest as specified above.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect air barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. Remove and replace air barrier exposed for more than 60 calendar days, or manufacturer's recommended exposure time, whichever is less.
 - 2. Protect air barrier from contact with creosote, uncured coal-tar products, TPO, EPDM, flexible PVC membranes, and sealants not approved by air barrier manufacturer.
- B. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.
- C. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 074113
METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Standing-seam metal roof panels including flashings and accessories

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Metal Roof Panel Assembly: Metal roof panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight roofing system.
- B. See ASTM D 1079 and glossary of NRCA'S "The NRCA Roofing and Waterproofing Manual" for definition of terms related to metal roofing work in this Section.
- C. Roofing System Manufacturer: Any of the manufactures whose systems are specified under "Acceptable Roofing System Manufacturers", herein called "manufacturer".

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal roof panels shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal roof panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of roof area when tested according to ASTM E 1680 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: Negative 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
 2. Test-Pressure Difference: Positive and negative 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
 3. Positive Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Greater than or equal to 15.0 lbf/sq. ft. and the greater of 75 percent of building live load or 50 percent of building design positive wind-pressure difference.
 4. Negative Preload Test-Pressure Difference: 50 percent of design wind-uplift-pressure difference.
- D. Water Penetration: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 20 percent of positive design wind pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 2. Positive Preload Test-Pressure Difference: Greater than or equal to 15.0 lbf/sq. ft. and the greater of 75 percent of building live load or 50 percent of building design positive wind-pressure difference.
 3. Negative Preload Test-Pressure Difference: 50 percent of design wind-uplift-pressure difference.
- E. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 2140.
- F. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- G. FMG Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FMG 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FMG's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FMG markings.
1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-90.
 2. Hail Resistance: SH.
- H. Structural Performance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592-95:
1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
 2. Deflection Limits: Metal roof panel assemblies shall withstand wind and snow loads with vertical deflections no greater than L/240 of the span.

- I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
 - J. Thermal Performance: Provide insulated metal roof panel assemblies with thermal-resistance value (R-value) indicated when tested according to ASTM C 518.
 - K. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels with solar reflectance index not less than 29 when calculated according to ASTM E 1980 based on testing identical products by a qualified testing agency.
 - L. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels that are listed on the U.S. Department of Energy's ENERGY STAR Roof Products Qualified Product List for steep-slope roof products.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of roof panel and accessory.
 - B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal roof panels; details of edge conditions, side-seam and endlap joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory- and field-assembled work.
 - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
 - a. Flashing and trim.
 - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal roof panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
 - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
 - D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal roof panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - E. Manufacturer Certificates: Signed by manufacturer certifying that roof panels comply with energy performance requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 1. Submit evidence of meeting performance requirements.
 - F. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
 - G. Field quality-control reports.
 - H. Warranties: Samples of special warranties.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
 - C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal roof panels from single source from single manufacturer.
 - D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal roof panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
 - 2. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal roof panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal roof panels for protection during transportation and handling.
 - B. Unload, store, and erect metal roof panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
 - C. Stack metal roof panels on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal roof panels to ensure dryness. Do not store metal roof panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
 - D. Protect strippable protective covering on metal roof panels from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of metal roof panel installation.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit metal roof panel work to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
 - B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with metal roof panels by field measurements before fabrication.

- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.
 - B. Coordinate metal roof panels with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of decks, purlins and rafters, parapets, walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leak-proof, secure, and non-corrosive installation.
- 1.10 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal roof panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Weathertight Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PANEL MATERIALS
- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: 22 gauge (min.) G-90 (ASTM-A525) Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
 - 1. 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - B. Panel Sealants:
 - 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, non-sag, nontoxic, non-staining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane, polysulfide, or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal roof panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.
- 2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS
- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: 30 to 40 mils thick minimum, consisting of slip-resisting, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
 - 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
 - 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc., Div. of Carlisle Companies Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products; a unit of Grace, W. R. & Co.; Ultra.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
- 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING
- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653, G90 hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.

- C. Stainless Steel Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, size, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.
- 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Stainless Steel Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal roof panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.
 - B. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt mastic, SSPC-Paint 12, compounded for 15-mil dry film thickness per coat. Provide inert-type non-corrosive compound free of asbestos fibers, sulfur components, and other deleterious impurities.
- 2.5 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS
- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
 - 1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.
 - B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Non-Striated, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels and engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following
 - a. MBCI; a division of NCI Building Systems, L. P.
 - b. Architectural Building Components Houston, Texas
 - c. Petersen Aluminum Corporation.
 - 2. Clips: Floating to accommodate thermal movement.
 - a. Material: 0.025-inch min- thick, stainless-steel sheet.
 - 3. Panel Coverage: 16 inches.
 - 4. Panel Height: 1-1/2 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.6 ACCESSORIES
- A. Roof Panel Accessories: Provide components approved by roof panel manufacturer and as required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, corner units, ridge closures, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal roof panels unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal roof panels.
 - 2. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or cross-linked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or pre-molded to match metal roof panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
 - 3. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 - B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from same material as roof panels, pre-painted with coil coating, minimum 0.018 inch thick. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal roof panels.
- 2.7 FABRICATION
- A. Fabricate and finish metal roof panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes and as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
 - B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
 - C. Fabricate metal roof panel side laps with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, in a manner that will seal weathertight and minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
 - D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.

2. End Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
3. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
5. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of size and metal thickness recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or by metal roof panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.8 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal roof panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- C. Examine roof deck to verify that deck joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- D. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal roof panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal roof panels before metal roof panel installation.
- E. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- F. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of interfering with insulation attachment.
- B. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subpurlins, eave angles, furring, and other miscellaneous roof panel support members and anchorage according to metal roof panel manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Soffit Framing: Clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
 1. Install beneath entire roof surface.
- B. Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Provide metal roof panels of full length from eave to ridge unless otherwise indicated or restricted by shipping limitations.
- B. Thermal Movement. Rigidly fasten metal roof panels to structure at one and only one location for each panel. Allow remainder of panel to move freely for thermal expansion and contraction. Pre-drill panels for fasteners.
 1. Avoid attaching accessories through roof panels in a manner that will inhibit thermal movement.
- C. Install metal roof panels as follows:

1. Commence metal roof panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 2. Field cutting of metal panels by torch is not permitted.
 3. Install panels perpendicular to purlins.
 4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 5. Provide metal closures at rake edges each side of ridge and hip caps.
 6. Flash and seal metal roof panels with weather closures at eaves, rakes, and perimeter of all openings.
 7. Install ridge caps as metal roof panel work proceeds.
 8. End Splices: Locate panel end splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel end splices to avoid a four-panel splice condition.
 9. Install metal flashing to allow moisture to run over and off metal roof panels.
- D. Fasteners:
1. Steel Roof Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- E. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- F. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating, by applying rubberized-asphalt underlayment to each contact surface, or by other permanent separation as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
1. Coat back side of roof panels with bituminous coating where roof panels will contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- G. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weatherproof performance of metal roof panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
1. Seal metal roof panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- 3.5 METAL ROOF PANEL INSTALLATION
- A. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
 2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
 3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
- 3.6 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal roof panel assembly including trim, copings, ridge closures, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- 3.7 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal roof panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.9 CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal roof panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal roof panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal roof panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures per manufacturer's requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 074213**METAL WALL PANELS****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Concealed-fastener, lap-seam metal wall panels.
- 1.3 DEFINITION
- A. Metal Wall Panel Assembly: Metal wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, thermal insulation, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.
- 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Performance: Metal wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft.
- E. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft.
1. Water Leakage: As defined according to AAMA 501.1.
- F. Structural Performance: Provide metal wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
 2. Deflection Limits: Metal wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of wall panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish between factory-, shop- and field-assembled work.
1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches:
 - a. Flashing and trim.
 - b. Anchorage systems.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal wall panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

- 2. Include manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each sealant exposed to view.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- F. Maintenance Data: For metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- G. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.
- H. Provide mock-up, not less than 10 feet in length, demonstrating physical appearance of completed system.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal wall panel from single source from single manufacturer.
- D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal wall panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall panels as shown on Drawings; including, supports, attachments, and accessories. If not indicated on Drawings, build mock-up of appropriate size to show overall panel conditions.
 - 2. Conduct water spray test of mockup of metal wall panel assembly, testing for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal wall panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal wall panel for period of metal wall panel installation.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal wall panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.
- B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal wall panel fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of girts, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Restricted flatness steel sheet metallic coated by the hot-dip process and pre-painted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755.
 1. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40; structural quality.
 2. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 3. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
 - a. 2-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Panel Sealants:
 1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, non-sag, nontoxic, non-staining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653, G90s hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections, 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- D. Base or Sill Angles: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 2. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- F. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- wide flange.
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 2. Depth: 3/4 inch.
 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- G. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or non-slotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
- H. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

2.4 CONCEALED-FASTENER, LAP-SEAM METAL WALL PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal wall panels designed to be field assembled by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.
- B. Wide-Reveal-Joint, Concealed-Fastener Metal Wall Panels: Formed with vertical panel edges and stepped profile between panel edges resulting in wide reveal joint between panels.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Alcoa Architectural Products (USA).
 - b. ATAS International, Inc.

- c. CENTRIA Architectural Systems.
- d. VICWEST; Div. of Jenisys Engineered Products.
- 2. Material Aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet, 24 gage nominal thickness.
 - a. Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer.
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- 3. Panel Coverage: 16 inches.
- 4. Panel Height: 3 inches.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal wall panels, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal wall panels.
 - 2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or cross-linked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- thick, flexible closure strips; cut or pre-molded to match metal wall panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch minimum thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal wall panels.

2.6 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. Fabricate metal wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal wall panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a tight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that will minimize noise from movements within panel assembly.
- E. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to the design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, non-corrosive metal recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in finish and appearance, as determined by Architect, are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that weather-resistant sheathing paper has been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
 - 4. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal wall panels before metal wall panel installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal wall panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - 1. Soffit Framing: Clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

3.3 METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal wall panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Commence metal wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal wall panels.
 - 3. Flash and seal metal wall panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by metal wall panels are installed.
 - 4. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
 - 5. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
 - 6. Install flashing and trim as metal wall panel work proceeds.
 - 7. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
 - 8. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
 - 9. Align bottom of metal wall panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
 - 10. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Steel Wall Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 1. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Lap-Seam Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.

1. Lap ribbed or fluted sheets one full rib corrugation. Apply panels and associated items for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
 2. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal wall panels.
 3. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
 4. Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.
 5. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
 6. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to weather-side surface of fastenings on end laps; on side laps of nesting-type panels; on side laps of corrugated nesting-type, ribbed, or fluted panels; and elsewhere as needed to make panels weathertight.
 7. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with butyl-rubber sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Zee Clips: Provide Zee clips of size indicated or, if not indicated, as required to act as standoff from subgirts for thickness of insulation indicated. Attach to subgirts with fasteners.
- G. Fire-Rated Metal Wall Panel Assemblies: Install metal liner panels on exterior side of girts, fastening through faces of panels, with girts exposed to the interior. Install subgirts horizontally, fastened to legs of metal liner panels. Install substrate board as indicated in Division 06 Section "Sheathing," in number of layers required for fire rating, over subgirts, attached with board fasteners. Install second set of subgirts horizontally, fastened through substrate board into first set of subgirts. Install exterior metal wall panels, fastened to second set of subgirts.
1. Comply with UL requirements for fire-rated construction.
- 3.4 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot- by-2-story minimum area of metal wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by Architect.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect and test completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.
- D. Remove and replace metal wall panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal wall panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

- B. After metal wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 074243
ALUMINUM COMPOSITE PANEL SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal-faced composite wall panels, route and return "dry" joints.

1.3 DEFINITION

- A. Metal-Faced Composite Wall Panel Assembly: Metal-faced composite wall panels, attachment system components, miscellaneous metal framing, and accessories necessary for a complete weathertight wall system.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies shall comply with performance requirements without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design metal-faced composite wall panel assembly, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Air Infiltration: Air leakage through assembly of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Water Penetration Under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
 - 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft.
- E. Water Penetration Under Dynamic Pressure: No evidence of water leakage when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of inward-acting, wind-load design pressure of not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. and not more than 12 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 1. Water Leakage: Uncontrolled water infiltrating the system or appearing on system's normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained back to the exterior and cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes is not water leakage.
- F. Structural Performance: Provide metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 330:
 - 1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies shall withstand wind loads with horizontal deflections no greater than 1/240 of the span.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.
- H. Refer to Section 011900 for additional requirements.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of metal-faced composite wall panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of metal-faced composite wall panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details. Distinguish among factory-, shop-, and field-assembled work.
 - 1. Accessories: Include details of the following items, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12

inches:

- a. Flashing and trim.
 - b. Anchorage systems.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal-faced composite wall panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
- 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
 - 2. Include manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each sealant exposed to view.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For metal-faced composite wall panel assembly indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- E. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- F. Maintenance Data: For metal wall panels to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
 - B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.
 - C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of metal-faced composite wall panel from single source from single manufacturer.
 - D. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Where indicated, provide metal-faced composite wall panels identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver components, sheets, metal-faced composite wall panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal-faced composite wall panels for protection during transportation and handling.
 - B. Unload, store, and erect metal-faced composite wall panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
 - C. Store metal-faced composite wall panels vertically, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal-faced composite wall panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal-faced composite wall panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Do not allow storage space to exceed 120 deg F.
 - D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal-faced composite wall panel for period of panel installation.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal-faced composite wall panels to be performed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.
 - B. Field Measurements: Verify locations of structural members and wall opening dimensions by field measurements before metal-faced composite wall panel fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- 1.9 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, and construction of studs, soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- 1.10 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
 - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal-faced composite wall panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANEL MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.
 1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes:
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 620. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Panel Sealants:
 1. Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal-faced composite wall panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by panel manufacturer.

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS METAL FRAMING

- A. Miscellaneous Metal Framing, General: ASTM C 645, cold-formed metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653, G40 hot-dip galvanized or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Subgirts: Manufacturer's standard C- or Z-shaped sections 0.064-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Zee Clips: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- D. Base or Sill Angles: 0.079-inch nominal thickness.
- E. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels:
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 2. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- F. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: Minimum 1/2-inch- wide flange.
 1. Nominal Thickness: As required to meet performance requirements.
 2. Depth: 3/4 inch.
 3. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with nominal thickness of 0.040 inch.
 4. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- G. Fasteners for Miscellaneous Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten miscellaneous metal framing members to substrates.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, bolts, nuts, self-locking rivets and bolts, end-welded studs, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal-faced composite wall panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM, PVC, or neoprene sealing washers.

2.4 METAL-FACED COMPOSITE WALL PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled, metal-faced composite wall panels fabricated from two metal facings bonded, using no glues or adhesives, to solid, extruded thermoplastic core; formed into profile for installation method indicated. Include attachment system components and accessories required for weathertight system.
 1. Fire-Retardant Core (required above 40 feet above grade): Noncombustible, with the following surface-burning characteristics as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Flame-Spread Index: 15 or less.
 - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 105 or less.
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Alcan Composites USA Inc.; Alucobond.
 - b. Alcoa Inc.; Reynobond PE.
 - c. ALPOLIC, Division of Mitsubishi Chemical America, Inc.; ALPOLIC.

- d. CENTRIA Architectural Systems; Formabond Wall System.
 - B. Aluminum-Faced Composite Wall Panels: Formed with 0.020-inch- thick, coil-coated aluminum sheet facings.
 - 1. Panel Thickness: 0.157 inch.
 - 2. Core: Fire retardant.
 - 3. Exterior Finish: 2-coat fluoropolymer.
 - a. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
 - C. Attachment System Components: Formed from material compatible with panel facing.
 - 1. Include manufacturer's standard perimeter extrusions with integral weather stripping.
- 2.5 ACCESSORIES
- A. Wall Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete metal-faced composite wall panel assembly including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal-faced composite wall panels unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. Flashing and Trim: Formed from 0.018-inch- minimum thickness, aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet prepainted with coil coating. Provide flashing and trim as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal-faced composite wall panels.
- 2.6 FABRICATION
- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal-faced composite wall panels and accessories at the factory to greatest extent possible, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
 - B. Fabricate metal-faced composite wall panels in a manner that eliminates condensation on interior side of panel and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals.
 - C. Metal-Faced Composite Wall Panels: Factory form panels in a continuous process with no glues or adhesives or batch process by laminating each sheet using glues or adhesives between dissimilar materials. Trim and square edges of sheets with no displacement of face sheets or protrusion of core material.
 - 1. Form panel lines, breaks, and angles to be sharp and true, with surfaces free from warp and buckle.
 - 2. Fabricate panels with sharply cut edges, with no displacement of face sheets or protrusion of core material.
 - 3. Fabricate panels with panel stiffeners, as required to comply with deflection limits, attached to back of panels with structural silicone sealant or bond tape.
 - 4. Dimensional Tolerances:
 - a. Length: Plus 0.375 inch.
 - b. Width: Plus 0.188 inch.
 - c. Thickness: Plus or minus 0.008 inch.
 - d. Panel Bow: 0.8 percent maximum of panel length or width.
 - e. Squareness: 0.2 inch maximum.
 - D. Sheet Metal Accessories: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
 - 1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 - 2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
 - 3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - 4. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant to comply with SMACNA standards.
 - 5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
 - 6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
 - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in panels as determined by Architect are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal-faced composite wall panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
 - 2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
 - 3. Verify that weather-resistant membrane has been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal-faced composite wall panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of panels before panel installation.
- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work, and issue to Architect as formal submittal.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Framing: Install subgirts, base angles, sills, furring, and other miscellaneous wall panel support members and anchorage according to ASTM C 754 and metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 METAL-FACED COMPOSITE WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal-faced composite wall panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated on Drawings. Install panels perpendicular to girts and subgirts unless otherwise indicated. Anchor panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
 - 1. Commence metal-faced composite wall panel installation and install minimum of 300 sq. ft. in presence of factory-authorized representative.
 - 2. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal-faced composite wall panels.
 - 3. Flash and seal metal-faced composite wall panels at perimeter of all openings. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by panels are installed.
 - 4. Install flashing and trim as metal-faced composite wall panel work proceeds.
 - 5. Apply elastomeric sealant continuously between metal base channel (sill angle) and concrete, and elsewhere as indicated or, if not indicated, as necessary for waterproofing.
 - 6. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe and conduit penetrating exterior walls.
- B. Fasteners:
 - 1. Aluminum Wall Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior and aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
- C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended by metal-faced composite wall panel manufacturer.
- D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal-faced composite wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated or, if not indicated, types recommended by panel manufacturer.
 - 1. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Attachment System Installation, General: Install attachment system required to support metal-faced composite wall panels and to provide a complete weathertight wall system, including subgirts, perimeter extrusions, tracks, drainage channels, panel clips, and anchor channels.
 - 1. Include attachment to supports, panel-to-panel joinery, panel-to-dissimilar-material joinery, and panel-system joint seals.
 - 2. Do not begin installation until weather barrier and flashings that will be concealed by composite

- panels are installed.
- F. Clip Installation: Attach panel clips to supports at each metal-faced composite wall panel joint at locations, spacings, and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Attach routed-and-returned flanges of wall panels to panel clips with manufacturer's standard fasteners.
1. Seal horizontal and vertical joints between adjacent panels with sealant backing and sealant. Install sealant backing and sealant according to requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- 3.4 ACCESSORY INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal-faced composite wall panel assembly including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items.
- B. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
 2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- 3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES
- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal-faced composite wall panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet, non-accumulative, on level, plumb, and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Water-Spray Test: After completing the installation of 75-foot- by-2-story minimum area of metal-faced composite wall panel assembly, test assembly for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2 in a 2-bay area directed by Architect.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust completed metal-faced composite wall panel installation, including accessories.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.7 CLEANING
- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal-faced composite wall panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal-faced composite wall panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal-faced composite wall panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal-faced composite wall panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 074646
FIBER CEMENT SIDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Wood-fiber cement soffits.
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
 - B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Manufacturer's requirements for related materials to be installed by others.
 - 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
 - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
 - 4. Installation methods, including nail patterns.
 - C. Warranty: Submit copy of manufacturer's warranty, made out in Owner's name, showing that it has been registered with manufacturer.
- 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of the type specified in this section with minimum 3 years of experience.
- 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store products under waterproof cover and elevated above grade, on a flat surface.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SOFFITS
- A. Soffit Panels: Panels made of cement and cellulose fiber formed under high pressure with integral surface texture, complying with ASTM C 1186 Type A Grade II; with machined edges, for nail attachment.
 - 1. Texture: Simulated cedar grain.
 - 2. Length: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 3. Width: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Thickness: 5/16 inch, nominal.
 - 5. Finish: Factory applied primer.
 - 6. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation: www.certainteed.com.
 - b. James Hardie Building Products, Inc: www.jameshardie.com.
 - c. Nichiha USA, Inc: www.nichiha.com.
- 2.2 ACCESSORIES
- A. Trim: Same material and texture as siding and soffit, 3/4 inch thickness
 - 1. Acceptable Product: Hardietrim by James Hardie Building Products.
 - B. Fasteners: Galvanized or corrosion resistant; length as required to penetrate minimum 1-1/4 inch.
 - C. Joint Sealer: As specified in Section 079005.
 - D. Finish Paint: Latex house paint acceptable to siding manufacturer; primer recommended by paint manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 PREPARATION
- A. Examine substrate and clean and repair as required to eliminate conditions that would be detrimental to proper installation.
 - B. Verify that water-resistive barrier has been installed over substrate completely and correctly.
 - C. Do not begin until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
 - D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
 - 1. Read warranty and comply with all terms necessary to maintain warranty coverage.
 - 2. Install in accordance with conditions stated in model code evaluation report applicable to location of project.
 - 3. Use trim details indicated on drawings.
 - 4. Touch up all field cut edges before installing.
 - 5. Pre-drill nail holes if necessary to prevent breakage.
- B. Over Wood and Gypsum or Wood-Composite Sheathing: Fasten siding through sheathing into studs.
- C. Allow space between both ends of siding panels that butt against trim for thermal movement; seal joint between panel and trim with exterior grade sealant.
- D. Joints in Horizontal Siding: Avoid joints in lap siding except at corners; where joints are inevitable stagger joints between successive courses.
- E. Do not install siding less than 6 inches from surface of ground nor closer than 1 inch to roofs, patios, porches, and other surfaces where water may collect.
- F. After installation, seal all joints except lap joints of lap siding. Seal around all penetrations. Paint all exposed cut edges.
- G. Finish Painting: Specified in Section 099000.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 076200
SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM (FORMED METAL)

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Formed Products:
 - a. Formed roof drainage sheet metal fabrications.
 - b. Formed steep slope roof sheet metal fabrications.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight. .
 - 1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
 - 1. Certification Letter: ANSI SPRI ES1 for all roof termination metal.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
 - 1. Identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
 - 2. Details for forming sheet metal flashing and trim, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
 - 3. Details for joining, supporting, and securing sheet metal flashing and trim, including layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
 - 4. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 - 5. Details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction.
 - 6. Details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
 - 7. Details of special conditions.
 - 8. Details of connections to adjoining work.
 - 9. Detail formed flashing and trim at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal flashing, trim, and accessory indicated with factory-applied color finishes involving color selection.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified fabricator.
- E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Shop that employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim Standard: Comply with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" unless more stringent requirements are specified or shown on Drawings.
- C. Skilled Workmen - All sheet metal work shall be fabricated and installed by fully trained, qualified sheet

metal mechanics properly skilled to perform the Work in accordance with the standards set forth in these specifications. Substandard Work will be rejected.

- D. Accepted Flashing Details - In the event field conditions make installation of a flashing detail in accordance with SMACNA or NRCA Details impractical, the Contractor shall submit a shop drawing design to the Owner for approval to fit the particular conditions present.
- E. Reference Standards: Except as modified by the Drawings and Specifications, the following documents, or applicable portions thereof, govern the work:
 1. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors National Association, Inc. (SMACNA) "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual -Sixth Edition."
 2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
 3. National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA), "Roofing and Waterproofing Manual", 5th edition,
 4. Sheet Metal Welding Code.
 5. ANSI SPRI ES1

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Prefinished Aluminum Sheet Metal - Conforming to ASTM B209 (UNS Alloy Designation A93003-H14 or A933004-H34), .050" minimum thickness. Exposed aluminum sheet metal shall have a high-performance organic finish, thermo-cured and containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, complying with AAMA 2604. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- C. Stainless Steel Sheet Metal: ASTM A 240, Type 304; No. 2B finish; 24 gage.

2.2 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
 - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating.
 - b. Blind Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
 - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
 2. Fasteners for prefinished Aluminum Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
 3. Fasteners for stainless steel sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
 - C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, non-sag, non-toxic, non-staining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
 - D. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
 - E. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
 - F. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, non-corrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.
 - G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
 - H. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D 4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.
- 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL
- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item indicated. Fabricate items at the shop to greatest extent possible.
 1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
 2. Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
 3. Form sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
 4. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces exposed to view.
 - B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
 - C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
 - D. Sealed Joints: Form non-expansion but movable joints in metal to accommodate elastomeric sealant.
 - E. Expansion Provisions: Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
 - F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, non-corrosive metal.
 - G. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and by FMG Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-49 for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.
 - H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
 - I. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
 - J. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
 - K. No Dissimilar Metals - In no case, shall dissimilar metals come into contact with each other, nor shall a flashing be constructed in such a way as to permit water from running off one type metal onto another where chemical reaction or corrosion may occur.
 - L. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.5 ROOF DRAINAGE SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Hanging Gutters: Fabricate to cross section indicated, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other accessories as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- long sections. Furnish flat-stock gutter spacers and gutter brackets fabricated from same metal as gutters, of size recommended by SMACNA but not less than twice the gutter thickness. Fabricate expansion joints, expansion-joint covers, and gutter accessories from same metal as gutters.
 - 1. Gutter Style: Profile as indicated.
 - 2. Expansion Joints: Butt type with cover plate.
 - 3. Gutters with Girth up to 15 Inches: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Prefinished Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
- B. Downspouts: Fabricate rectangular downspouts complete with mitered elbows. Furnish with metal hangers, from same material as downspouts, and anchors.
 - 1. Hanger Style: Strap hanger as indicated.
 - 2. Fabricate from the following materials:
 - a. Prefinished Aluminum

2.6 STEEP-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Counterflashing: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Prefinished Aluminum
- B. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:
 - 1. Prefinished Aluminum

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 - 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install underlayment as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
 - 1. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line and levels indicated. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
 - 2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
 - 3. Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Anchor each cleat with two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
 - 4. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks.
 - 5. Install sealant tape where indicated.
 - 6. Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
 - 7. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals will contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by SMACNA.
 - 1. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install

- a course of felt underlayment and cover with a slip sheet or install a course of polyethylene sheet.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently watertight, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
 - D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
 - E. Seal joints as shown and as required for watertight construction.
 1. Where sealant-filled joints are used, embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is moderate, between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

3.4 ROOF DRAINAGE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal roof drainage items to produce complete roof drainage system according to SMACNA recommendations and as indicated. Coordinate installation of roof perimeter flashing with installation of roof drainage system.
- B. Hanging Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered joints or with lapped joints sealed with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion. Attach gutters at eave or fascia to firmly anchored gutter brackets spaced not more than 36 inches apart. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Slope to downspouts.
 1. Fasten gutter spacers to front and back of gutter.
 2. Loosely lock straps to front gutter bead and anchor to roof deck.
 3. Anchor and loosely lock back edge of gutter to continuous cleat.
 4. Anchor gutter with spikes and ferrules spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
 5. Install gutter with expansion joints at locations indicated, but not exceeding, 50 feet apart. Install expansion-joint caps.
- C. Downspouts: Join sections with 1-1/2-inch telescoping joints.
 1. Provide hangers with fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely to walls. Locate hangers at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.
 2. Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.
- D. Expansion-Joint Covers: Install expansion-joint covers at locations and of configuration indicated. Lap joints a minimum of 4 inches in direction of water flow.
- E. Counterflashings
 1. Walls and Elevation Changes - Fabricate counterflashings, using sheet metal of the approximate dimensions and configurations shown on the detail drawings, or as necessary to overlap base flashings a minimum of 4". Materials shall be compatible and shall match the material already present on the building in similar details.
 2. Equipment Cannot Be Its Own Counterflashing - Equipment flanges cannot be a substitute for separate two-piece counterflashing. All equipment must have a separate receiver and counterflashing beneath the equipment flange.

3.5 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, set units true to line, and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to code requirements and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
- C. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending a minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.
- D. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with sealant. Secure in a waterproof manner.

3.6 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
 - B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
- 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
 - B. Clean off excess sealants.
 - C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
 - D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 076210
FLEXIBLE FLASHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Formed Products: Concealed flashing within wall assemblies to protect and shed incidental water to the exterior.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Flashing and trim assemblies as indicated shall withstand structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Thermal Movements: Provide sheet metal flashing and trim that allows for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation layouts of sheet metal flashing and trim, including plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store flashing materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store flashing materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to the extent necessary for the period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLEXIBLE FLASHING

- A. Self-Adhesive flexible flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 40 mils.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Strip-N-Flash.
 - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705 Air & Vapor Barrier Strips.
 - c. Grace Construction Products; Perm-A-Barrier Detail Membrane.
 - d. Henry; Blueskin SA

2.2 THRU-WALL FLASHING

- A. Self-Adhesive thru-wall flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than 40 mils.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Advanced Building Products Inc.; Strip-N-Flash.
 - b. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW-705-TWF Thru-Wall Flashing.
 - c. Grace Construction Products; Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing.
 - d. Henry; Blueskin TWF Thru-Wall Flashing

2.3 HIGH TEMPERATURE FLASHING

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by manufacturer.
1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing Inc.; CCW WIP 300HT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.
 - d. Owens Corning; WeatherLock Metal High Temperature Underlayment.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete metal flashing installation and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
 2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- B. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install as indicated on Drawings and per Manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Self-Adhering Sheet Flashing: Install self-adhering sheet flashing, wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by flashing manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of flashing manufacturer for installation. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover flashing with subsequent construction within 14 days.
- C. Location:
 1. Flexible Flashing: As indicated on drawings, or at all exterior windows, doors or other penetrations where high temperature flashing is not required.
 2. Thru-Wall Flashing: As indicated on drawings, or at all masonry cavity wall conditions requiring flashing (head of windows, doors, openings, shelf angles, base of wall).
 3. High Temperature Flashing: As indicated on drawings, or at all locations where flashing will be in contact with metal coping or metal panels where high temperatures exist.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 077100
ROOF SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Copings.
 2. Roof-edge flashings.
 3. Reglets and counterflashings.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Performance: Roof specialties shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings roof-edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting pressure as required by code:
- C. Indicate wind design pressure on Drawings or in subparagraph below. Design pressure is determined by formulas in the IBC or SPRI ES-1, as applicable, that account for basic wind speed, exposure factor, building height, building importance factor, and pressure coefficient that combines a gust factor.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, hole elongation, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Provide clips that resist rotation and avoid shear stress as a result of thermal movements. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Retain first paragraph below for Work that involves custom fabrication or if manufacturer's product data are inadequate.
- C. Shop Drawings: For roof specialties. Include plans, elevations, expansion-joint locations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work. Include the following:
1. Details for expansion and contraction; locations of expansion joints, including direction of expansion and contraction.
 2. Pattern of seams and layout of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments.
 3. Details of termination points and assemblies, including fixed points.
 4. Details of special conditions.
- D. Remaining paragraphs are defined in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" as "Informational Submittals."
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for copings.
- F. Maintenance Data: For roofing specialties to include in maintenance manuals.
- G. Installer Qualifications: Submit evidence that Installer's existing company has minimum of 5-years continuous experience in application of specified materials.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Do not store roof specialties in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store roof specialties away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on roof specialties from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for the period of roof specialties installation.

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
 - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
 - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
 - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
 2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXPOSED METALS

- A. Aluminum .050" thickness, Z275.
1. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finishes: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

2.2 CONCEALED METALS

- A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G90 Z275 coating designation.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
1. Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F.
 2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F.
 3. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Carlisle Coatings & Waterproofing; CCW WIP 300HT.
 - b. Grace Construction Products, a unit of W. R. Grace & Co.; Ultra.
 - c. Henry Company; Blueskin PE200 HT.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.
- B. Fasteners: Manufacturer's recommended fasteners, suitable for application and designed to meet performance requirements. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:
1. Exposed Penetrating Fasteners: Gasketed screws with hex washer heads matching color of sheet metal.
- C. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric silicone polymer sealant of type, grade, class, and use classifications required by roofing-specialty manufacturer for each application.
- D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.5 COPINGS

- A. Copings: Manufactured coping system consisting of formed-metal coping cap in section lengths a minimum of 8 feet and not exceeding 12 feet, concealed anchorage; corner units, end cap units, and concealed splice plates with same finish as coping caps.
1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hickman Company, W. P.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Metal-Era, Inc.
 2. Coping-Cap Material: Aluminum: Conforming to ASTM B202-92a (UNS Alloy Designation A93003-H14 or A933004-H34), .050" minimum thickness. Exposed aluminum sheet metal shall have a high-performance organic finish, thermocured and containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, complying with AAMA 2604.
 3. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
 4. Manufacturers offer a variety of special fabrications and face-leg profiles.
 5. Special Fabrications: As indicated.
 6. Coping-Cap Attachment Method: Snap-on, fabricated from coping-cap material.

7. Snap-on-Coping Anchor Plates: Concealed, stainless steel sheet, 12 inches wide, with integral cleats.

2.6 ROOF-EDGE FLASHINGS

- A. Roof-Edge Fascia: Manufactured, two-piece, roof-edge fascia consisting of snap-on metal fascia cover in section lengths not exceeding 12 feet and a continuous formed- or extruded-aluminum anchor bar with integral drip-edge cleat to engage fascia cover. Provide matching corner units.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hickman Company, W. P.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Metal-Fab Manufacturing, LLC.
 2. Fascia Cover: Fabricated from the following exposed metal:
 - a. Aluminum: Conforming to ASTM B202-92a (UNS Alloy Designation A93003-H14 or A933004-H34), .050" minimum thickness. Exposed aluminum sheet metal shall have a high-performance organic finish, thermo-cured and containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, complying with AAMA 2604. .
 2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
 3. Splice Plates: Concealed, of same material, finish, and shape as fascia cover.
 4. Special Fabrications: As indicated.
 5. Fascia Accessories: Integral drip edge.
 - a. Finish: High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2604 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
 - 1) Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from Manufacturers full range.

2.7 REGLETS AND COUNTERFLASHINGS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
1. Cheney Flashing Company.
 2. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 3. Heckmann Building Products Inc.
 4. Hickman Company, W. P.
 5. Metal-Era, Inc.
 6. MM Systems Corporation.
- B. Reglets: Manufactured units formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, from the following exposed metal:
1. Aluminum .050" thickness
 2. Corners: Factory mitered and mechanically clinched and sealed watertight.
 3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide reglets with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
- C. Counterflashings: Manufactured units of heights to overlap top edges of base flashings by 4 inches and in lengths not exceeding 12 feet designed to snap into reglets and compress against base flashings with joints lapped, from the following exposed metal:
1. Aluminum: Conforming to ASTM B202-92a (UNS Alloy Designation A93003-H14 or A933004-H34), .050" minimum thickness. Exposed aluminum sheet metal shall have a high-performance organic finish, thermocured and containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride resin by weight, complying with AAMA 2604.
 2. Wind Clips: 24 gauge stainless steel, spaced 24 inches on center.
- D. Miscellaneous Materials
1. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, welding rods, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required for installation.
 2. Fasteners: Self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads. Size fasteners to provide penetration into substrate of at least 3/4 inches for wood screws.
 - a. Use stainless-steel fasteners, except that aluminum fasteners may be used with aluminum sheet metal.
 - b. Exposed Fasteners: Heads match color of sheet metal by means of factory-applied coating.
 - c. Fasteners for Flashing and Trim: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex washer head.
 - 1) Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets.

3. Metal to Concrete or Masonry: All fasteners to have a 1" minimum and 1¼" maximum embedment in the concrete substrate and 1-1/4" minimum embedment into masonry substrate.
 - a. Concrete/masonry screw fasteners 1/4" by 3/4" long with integral neoprene head washers for predrilled holes.
 - 1) Approved manufacturers:
 - a) ITW Buildex, Itasca, IL
 - b) Elco Industries, Inc., Rockford, IL
 - c) Approved equal meeting the requirements noted above and as recommended or approved by the component manufacturer.
 - b. Masonry anchors type fasteners 1/4" by 1-1/2" (minimum) long stainless steel (passive) pin and zinc alloy insert with integral neoprene head washers.
 - 1) Approved manufacturers:
 - a) "Zamac Nailin" with stainless steel nails by the Rawlplug Co., Inc. New York, NY.
 - b) Approved equal meeting the requirements noted above and as recommended or approved by the component manufacturer
4. Metal-to-Metal Joint Sealant
 - a. One-component silicone elastomeric sealant, FS TT-S-00230C Class A, TT-S-001543A Class A:
 - 1) "Silpruf Silicone Weatherproofing Sealant," manufactured by General Electric Company, Silicone Products Department, Waterford, NY
 - 2) "Dow-Corning 795 Silicone Building Sealant," manufactured by Dow Corning Corporation, Midland, MI
 - 3) "Spectrum 1", manufactured by Tremco, Beachwood, O
5. Concrete-to-Metal Joint Sealant
 - a. One-component silicone elastomeric sealant, FS TT-S-00230C Class A, TT-S-001543A Class A:
 - 1) "Silpruf Silicone Weatherproofing Sealant," manufactured by General Electric Company, Silicone Products Department, Waterford, NY
 - 2) "Dow-Corning 795 Silicone Building Sealant," manufactured by Dow Corning Corporation, Midland, MI
 - 3) "Spectrum 1", manufactured by Tremco, Beachwood
 - b. Color of exposed sealant shall be as approved by ARCHITECT from manufacturer's full colors similar to finishes of the adjacent substrate.
6. Joint Filler
 - a. Closed-cell expanded polyethylene (rod), non-gassing:
 - 1) "Expand-O-Foam", manufactured by (Williams Products, Inc.
 - 2) "Sof Rod", manufactured by Nomanco, Inc.
 - 3) "Sonofoam Backer-Rod", manufactured by Sonneborn-Contech
7. Joint Cleaner: Type recommended by the manufacturer of the sealing compound for the specific joint surface and conditions.
8. Joint Primer and Sealer: Type recommended by the manufacturer of the sealing compound for the specific joint surface and conditions.
9. Bond Breaker: Polyethylene tape compatible with sealants used.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls, roof edges, and parapets for suitable conditions for roof specialties.
- C. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install wrinkle free. Apply primer if required by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer rather than nails for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water. Overlap edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- B. Slip Sheet: Install with tape or adhesive for temporary anchorage to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under copper sheet metals roof specialties. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Install roof specialties according to manufacturer's written instructions. Anchor roof specialties securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete roof-specialty systems.
 - 1. Install roof specialties level, plumb, true to line and elevation; with limited oil-canning and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
 - 2. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder and sealant.
 - 3. Install roof specialties to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before manufacture.
 - 4. Torch cutting of roof specialties is not permitted.
 - 5. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 1. Coat concealed side of roof specialties with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
 - 2. Underlayment: Where installing metal flashing directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of self-adhering, high-temperature sheet underlayment.
- C. Expansion Provisions: Allow for thermal expansion of exposed roof specialties.
 - 1. Space movement joints at a maximum of 12 feet with no joints within 18 inches of corners or intersections unless otherwise shown on Drawings.
 - 2. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.
- D. Fastener Sizes: Use fasteners of sizes that will penetrate wood blocking or sheathing not less than 1-1/4 inches for nails and not less than 3/4 inch for wood screws.
- E. Seal joints with elastomeric sealant as required by roofing-specialty manufacturer.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction. Place sealant to be completely concealed in joint. Do not install sealants at temperatures below 40 deg F.

3.4 COPING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, anchor plates, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor copings to meet performance requirements.
 - 1. Interlock face and back leg drip edges of snap-on coping cap into cleated anchor plates anchored to substrate at 30-inch centers.

3.5 ROOF-EDGE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleats, cants, and other anchoring and attachment accessories and devices with concealed fasteners.
- B. Anchor roof edgings with manufacturer's required devices, fasteners, and fastener spacing to meet performance requirements.

3.6 REGLET AND COUNTERFLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Coordinate installation of reglets and counterflashings with installation of base flashings.
- B. Surface-Mounted Reglets: Install reglets to receive flashings where flashing without embedded reglets is indicated on Drawings. Install at height so that inserted counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings.

- C. Counterflashings: Insert counterflashings into reglets or other indicated receivers; ensure that counterflashings overlap 4 inches over top edge of base flashings. Lap counterflashing joints a minimum of 4 inches and bed with elastomeric sealant. Fit counterflashings tightly to base flashings.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. All surfaces to receive the joint sealants shall be examined by the contractor. Any surfaces, which are found to be unsuitable for installation of the joint sealants, shall be brought to the attention of the Architect for resolution. Application or installation of the material constitutes acceptance of the surface of the substrate.
- B. All surfaces to receive sealants shall be clean, dry, and free of any loose materials, dirt, dust, laitance, rust, oil, frost, and other contaminants.
 - 1. The surfaces shall be blast cleaned with oil free compressed air to remove the dust of cleaning.
 - 2. The surfaces shall be cleaned with sealant manufacturer's approved solvents.
- C. Use appropriate primers on concrete, masonry and metal surfaces to receive joint sealants in accordance with the recommendations of the sealant manufacturer.
- D. The contractor shall make test applications at the beginning of the sealant work, in all types of prepared joints or surface applications, to determine if preparation steps have been adequate for optimum sealant adhesion. These test applications will be reviewed by the Architect prior to the start of the work.
- E. Install all materials in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions, as well as the following:
 - 1. Install bond breakers and backer rods in locations and of the type recommended by the sealant manufacturer to prevent bond of sealant to surfaces where such bond might impair the performance of the sealant. Backer rods shall typically be installed under 25% compression of rod material unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer.
 - 2. Application of joint sealant materials shall be made by cartridge-type caulking guns.
 - 3. Compounds shall not be installed when surface and ambient temperatures are below 40°F unless specifically approved by the Architect. Compounds also shall not be installed when surface and ambient temperatures are above 100° F.
 - 4. Run sealant beads sufficiently slow enough to be certain that the entire cavity is filled from bottom up. Air pockets or voids along the edges are not acceptable.
 - 5. Tool sealant surfaces to the shapes shown, or if none is shown, to flush or slightly concave surface. Tooling of sealants with soap, detergent or other lubricant is not allowed.
- F. All surfaces adjacent to sealants shall be protected, unless otherwise approved by the Architect. Use pressure sensitive tape to prevent staining of adjacent surfaces, or spillage and migration of sealant out of the joints.
- G. Do not place dissimilar sealant materials in contact with each other. Follow sealant manufacturer's recommendations for separation of dissimilar materials.
- H. All sealant material to be covered shall be allowed to fully cure in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder and sealants.
- C. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as roof specialties are installed. On completion of installation, clean finished surfaces including removing unused fasteners, metal filings, pop rivet stems, and pieces of flashing. Maintain roof specialties in a clean condition during construction.
- D. Replace roof specialties that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 078413
PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
 - 2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
 - 3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- C. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating penetration firestopping has been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for penetration firestopping.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing penetration firestopping similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its penetration firestopping products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Penetration firestopping shall comply with the following requirements:
 - 1. Penetration firestopping tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. Penetration firestopping is identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Penetration Firestopping" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Penetration firestopping products bear classification marking of qualified testing and inspecting agency.
 - b. Classification markings on penetration firestopping correspond to designations listed by the following:
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) Intertek ETL SEMKO in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."
- C. Preinstallation Conference (where determined to be required by Owner): Conduct conference at Project site.
- D. Products shall be provided by one manufacturer only.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure penetration firestopping per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping is installed according to specified requirements.

- B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Grace Construction Products.
 2. Hilti, Inc.
 3. Nelson Firestop Products.
 4. RectorSeal Corporation.
 5. Specified Technologies Inc.
 6. 3M Fire Protection Products.

2.2 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

- A. Provide penetration firestopping that is produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems shall be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.
- B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
1. Fire-resistance-rated walls include fire walls smoke-barrier walls and fire partitions.
 2. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
- C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per ASTM E 814 or UL 1479, based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg.
1. Horizontal assemblies include floors floor/ceiling assemblies and ceiling membranes of roof/ceiling assemblies.
 2. F-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated.
 3. T-Rating: At least 1 hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of constructions penetrated except for floor penetrations within the cavity of a wall.
- D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Provide penetration firestopping with ratings determined per UL 1479.
1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening at 0.30-inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
- E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping: Provide products with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, as determined per ASTM E 84.
- F. VOC Content: Provide penetration firestopping that complies with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- G. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for firestopping indicated.
1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials, including the following:
 - a. Slag-wool-fiber or rock-wool-fiber insulation.
 - b. Sealants used in combination with other forming/damming/backing materials to prevent leakage of fill materials in liquid state.
 - c. Fillers for sealants.
 2. Temporary forming materials.
 3. Substrate primers.
 4. Collars.
 5. Steel sleeves.

2.3 MIXING

- A. For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean out openings immediately before installing penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping.
 - 2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent penetration firestopping from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing firestopping seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install penetration firestopping to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 - 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of firestopping.
- C. Install fill materials for firestopping by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 - 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories, and penetrating items as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 - 2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
 - 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

3.5 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHEZ.
- B. Where Intertek ETL SEMKO-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek ETL SEMKO's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems."
- C. Where FM Global-approved systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers listed in FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fire Stops."
- D. Firestop Systems with No Penetrating Items (FS-1): Comply with the following:
 - 1. Pipes, plastic or metal, conduit in vertical runs, installed through cast-in-place firestop devices.
 - a. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with FA 1000 Series Systems equivalent to, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1) FA1016, FA1017, FA2053, FA2054 by Hilti.
 - 2) CP 680 Cast-in Firestop Device by Hilti.

- 3) CP653 Speed Sleeve by Hilti.
- E. Firestop Systems with No Penetrating Items (FS-2): Comply with the following:
1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ 0000 Series Systems equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ0055, CAJ0070 by Hilti or CAJ0012, CAJ0102 by Grace.
 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Latex sealant.
 - b. Silicone sealant.
 - c. Acrylic sealant.
 - d. Intumescent putty.
 - e. Mortar.
 - f. Preformed intumescent blocks.
 - g. Pillows/Bags
- F. Firestop Systems for Metallic Pipes, Conduit, or Tubing (FS-3): Comply with the following:
1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ, WL, or FC 1000 Series Systems, equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ1184, CAJ1291, CAJ1277, CAJ1382, CAJ1388, WL1054, WL1249, FC1009 by Hilti or CAJ1403, CAJ1235, CAJ1406, WL1152, WL1207, FC1020 by Grace.
 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Latex sealant.
 - b. Silicone sealant.
 - c. Acrylic sealant.
 - d. Intumescent putty.
 - e. Mortar.
 - f. Polyurethane firestop foam.
- G. Firestop Systems for Nonmetallic Pipe, Conduit, or Tubing (FS-4): Comply with the following:
1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ, FA, or WL 2000 Series Systems, equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ2109, FA2053, WL2078, WL2128 by Hilti or CAJ2212, CAJ2171, CAJ2210, WL2167, WL2185, WL2170, WL2259 by Grace.
 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Intumescent sealant.
 - b. Intumescent putty.
 - c. Intumescent wrap strips.
 - d. Firestop device.
 - e. Firestop sleeve device.
 - f. Latex sealant.
- H. Firestop Systems for Electrical Cables (FS-5): Comply with the following:
1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ, FC, or WL 3000 Series Systems, equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ3095, FC3012, WL3065, WL3112 by Hilti or CAJ3185, CAJ3199, CAJ3234, FC3018, FC3060, WL3179 by Grace.
 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Intumescent sealant.
 - b. Latex Sealant
 - c. Pillows/bags
 - d. Intumescent putty.
 - e. Silicone foam.
- I. Firestop Systems for Cable Trays (FS-6): Comply with the following:
1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ or WL 4000 Series Systems equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ4035, CAJ4054, WL4011, WL4034 by Hilti or CAJ4035, CBJ4023, WL4025, WL4030 by Grace.
 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Intumescent sealant.
 - b. Intumescent putty.
 - c. Silicone foam.
 - d. Pillows/bags.
 - e. Foam blocks.
 - f. Firestop mortar.
 - g. Polyurethane firestop foam.
- J. Firestop Systems for Insulated Pipes (FS-7): Comply with the following:
1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ or WL 5000 Series Systems, equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ5091, WL5029 by Hilti or CAJ5222, WL5171 by Grace.
 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Intumescent sealant.
 - b. Silicone foam.
 - c. Intumescent wrap strips.

- d. Pre-formed intumescent blocks.
 - e. Latex sealant.
- K. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Electrical Penetrants (FS-8): Comply with the following:
- 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ 6000 Series Systems equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ6006, CAJ 6017 by Hilti or CAJ6012, CAJ6013, CAJ6027 by Grace.
 - 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Intumescent sealant.
 - b. Latex sealant
 - c. Intumescent putty.
 - d. Mortar.
- L. Firestop Systems for Miscellaneous Mechanical Penetrations (FS-9): Comply with the following:
- 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ 7000 Series Systems equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ7046, CAJ7051, CAJ7040, CAJ7021 by Hilti or CAJ7067, CAJ7075, CAJ7082 by Grace.
 - 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or both of the following:
 - a. Intumescent sealant.
 - b. Latex sealant.
 - c. Mortar.
 - d. Acrylic sealant.
 - e. Silicone sealant.
- M. Firestop Systems for Groupings of Penetrations (FS-10): Comply with the following:
- 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Systems with CAJ or WL 8000 Series Systems, equivalent to, but not limited to, the following: CAJ8056, CAJ8096, WJ8007, WL8014, WL8019 by Hilti or CAJ8042, CAJ8101, CAJ8133, WL8007 by Grace.
 - 2. Type of Fill Materials: One or more of the following:
 - a. Latex sealant.
 - b. Mortar.
 - c. Intumescent wrap strips.
 - d. Firestop device.
 - e. Intumescent composite sheet.
 - f. Pre-formed intumescent blocks.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 078446
FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
1. Joints in or between fire-resistance-rated constructions.
 2. Joints at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections.
 3. Joints in smoke barriers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Product Schedule: For each fire-resistive joint system. Include location and design designation of qualified testing agency.
1. Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing agency's illustration for a particular fire-resistive joint system condition, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- C. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating fire-resistive joint systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for fire-resistive joint systems.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Global according to FM Global 4991, "Approval of Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with UL's "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."
- B. Installer Qualifications: A firm experienced in installing fire-resistive joint systems similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful performance. Qualifications include having the necessary experience, staff, and training to install manufacturer's products per specified requirements. Manufacturer's willingness to sell its fire-resistive joint system products to Contractor or to Installer engaged by Contractor does not in itself confer qualification on buyer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Fire-resistive joint systems shall comply with the following requirements:
1. Fire-resistive joint system tests are performed by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 2. Fire-resistive joint systems are identical to those tested per testing standard referenced in "Fire-Resistive Joint Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:
 - a. Fire-resistive joint system products bear classification marking of qualified testing agency.
 - b. Fire-resistive joint systems correspond to those indicated by reference to designations listed by the following:
 - 1) UL in its "Fire Resistance Directory."
 - 2) Intertek ETL SEMKO in its "Directory of Listed Building Products."

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install fire-resistive joint systems when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers or when substrates are wet due to rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
- B. Install and cure fire-resistive joint systems per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilation or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate construction of joints to ensure that fire-resistive joint systems are installed according to specified requirements.
- B. Coordinate sizing of joints to accommodate fire-resistive joint systems.
- C. Notify Owner's testing agency at least seven days in advance of fire-resistive joint system installations; confirm dates and times on day preceding each series of installations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Where required, provide fire-resistive joint systems that are produced and installed to resist spread of fire according to requirements indicated, resist passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of assemblies in or between which fire-resistive joint systems are installed. Fire-resistive joint systems shall accommodate building movements without impairing their ability to resist the passage of fire and hot gases.
- B. Joints in or between Fire-Resistance-Rated Construction: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079:
 - 1. Joints include those installed in or between fire-resistance-rated walls floor or floor/ceiling assemblies and roofs or roof/ceiling assemblies.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of construction they will join.
 - 3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
 - b. Hilti, Inc.
 - c. Nelson Firestop Products.
 - d. RectorSeal Corporation.
 - e. Specified Technologies Inc.
 - f. 3M Fire Protection Products.
- C. Joints at Exterior Curtain-Wall/Floor Intersections: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with rating determined by ASTM E 119 based on testing at a positive pressure differential of 0.01-inch wg or ASTM E 2307.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Equal to or exceeding the fire-resistance rating of the floor assembly.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hilti, Inc.
 - b. Nelson Firestop Products.
 - c. RectorSeal Corporation.
 - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
 - e. 3M Fire Protection Products.
- D. Joints in Smoke Barriers: Provide fire-resistive joint systems with ratings determined per UL 2079.
 - 1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/ft of joint at 0.30 inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hilti, Inc.
 - b. Nelson Firestop Products.
 - c. RectorSeal Corporation.
 - d. Specified Technologies Inc.
 - e. 3M Fire Protection Products.
- E. VOC Content: Provide fire-resistive joint systems that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- F. Accessories: Provide components of fire-resistive joint systems, including primers and forming materials, that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only components specified by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer and approved by the qualified testing agency for systems indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configurations, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning: Clean joints immediately before installing fire-resistive joint systems to comply with fire-resistive joint system manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 1. Remove from surfaces of joint substrates foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of fill materials.
 2. Clean joint substrates to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with fill materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- B. Priming: Prime substrates where recommended in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape to prevent fill materials of fire-resistive joint system from contacting adjoining surfaces that will remain exposed on completion of the Work and that would otherwise be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods used to remove stains. Remove tape as soon as possible without disturbing fire-resistive joint system's seal with substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-resistive joint systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications indicated.
- B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings indicated.
 1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not indicated as permanent components of fire-resistive joint system.
- C. Install fill materials for fire-resistive joint systems by proven techniques to produce the following results:
 1. Fill voids and cavities formed by joints and forming materials as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.
 2. Apply fill materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by joints.
 3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspecting Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Where deficiencies are found or fire-resistive joint systems are damaged or removed due to testing, repair or replace fire-resistive joint systems so they comply with requirements.
- C. Proceed with enclosing fire-resistive joint systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by fire-resistive joint system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which joints occur.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure fire-resistive joint systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If damage or deterioration occurs despite such protection, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated fire-resistive joint systems immediately and install new materials to produce fire-resistive joint systems complying with specified requirements.

3.6 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEM SCHEDULE

- A. Where UL-classified systems are indicated, they refer to system numbers in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHBN or Category XHDG.
- B. Where Intertek ETL SEMKO-listed systems are indicated, they refer to design numbers in Intertek ETL SEMKO's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under product category Firestop Systems.

3.7 FIRE-RESISTIVE JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Where UL-classified fire-resistive joint systems are indicated, they refer to alphanumeric designations listed in UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product Category XHBN.
- B. Floor-to-Floor, Fire-Resistive Joint System (FRJS-1):
 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Products:
 - a. FFD1011, FFD1012, FFD1013, FFD1026 by Hilti.
 - b. FFD1024 & FFD1027 – Grace Flamesafe.
 2. Assembly Rating: Refer to Drawings.

3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II; refer to Drawings.
 - C. Floor-to-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint System (FRJS-2):
 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Products:
 - a. FWD1011, FWD1012, FWD1013, FWD1021 by Hilti.
 - b. FWD1020 & FWD1024 – Grace Flamesafe.
 2. Assembly Rating: Refer to Drawings.
 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II; refer to Drawings.
 - D. Head-of-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint System (FRJS-3):
 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Products:
 - a. HWD0042, HWD0045, HWD0046, HWD0097, HWD0098 by Hilti.
 - b. HWD0107, HWD0146, HWD0144, HWD1047, HWD1021, HWD1024, HWD0148, HWD0149, HWD0150, HWD-0267, HWD-0299, HWD-257 & HWD-0300– Grace Flamesafe.
 2. Assembly Rating: Refer to Drawings.
 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II; refer to Drawings.
 - E. Wall-to-Wall, Fire-Resistive Joint System (FRJS-4):
 1. Acceptable UL-Classified Products:
 - a. WWD1011, WWD1012, WWD0017 by Hilti.
 - b. WWD1028 & WWD1029 – Grace Flamesafe.
 2. Assembly Rating: Refer to Drawings.
 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II; refer to Drawings.
- 3.8 PERIMETER FIRE-CONTAINMENT SYSTEMS
- A. Where fire-rated floor assemblies are required, seal voids at intersection of exterior wall and floor assembly with an approved material per building code requirements.
 - B. Perimeter Fire Containment Systems are only valid if the certain wall construction details exactly match those called for in a selected UL/Omega Point-classified system. If the details do not match, submit an engineer judgement drawing from the firestop material manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Part 1 of this Section.
 - C. Perimeter Fire-Containment System:
 1. Acceptable Omega Point-Classified Products:
 - a. CEJ216P, CEJ244P, CEJ245P, CEJ246P, CEJ259P, CEJ260P, CEJ261P, CEJ262P, CEJ263P by Hilti.
 - b. CEJ150P, CEJ151P, CEJ152P, CEJ153P, CEJ154P, CEJ-273P, CEJ-274P, CEJ-275P, CEJ-276P, CEJ-296P & CEJ-297P – Grace Flamesafe.
 2. Assembly Rating: Refer to Drawings.
 3. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated.
 4. Movement Capabilities: Class II; refer to Drawings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 079200
JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Silicone joint sealants.
 - 2. Urethane joint sealants.
 - 3. Latex joint sealants.
 - 4. Acoustical joint sealants.

1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - 2. Submit not fewer than eight pieces of each kind of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
 - 5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:
 - 1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
 - 2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
 - 3. Joint-sealant formulation.
 - 4. Joint-sealant color.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- E. Field-Adhesion Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each kind of joint sealant from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
 - 1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 - 2. When joint substrates are wet.
 - 3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
 - 4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which joint-sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion for silicone sealants.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
 - 1. Movement of the structure caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
 - 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 - 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 - 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide sealants and sealant primers for use inside the weatherproofing system that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Part 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 - 2. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - 3. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
- C. Liquid-Applied Joint Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied joint sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
 - 1. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where sealants are specified to be non-staining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- E. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- F. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Single-Component, Non-Sag, Neutral-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant (S-GP): ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Omniseal 50.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 795.
 - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilGlaze II SCS2800.
 - d. Pecora Corporation; 864.
- B. Mildew-Resistant, Single-Component, Acid-Curing Silicone Joint Sealant (S-S:) ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, for Use NT.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Omniplus.
 - b. Dow Corning Corporation; 786 Mildew Resistant.
 - c. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; Sanitary SCS1700.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated; Tremsil 200 Sanitary.

- 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS
- A. Multi-component, Non-sag, Urethane Joint Sealant (U-MC): ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, for Use NT.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; Dynatrol II.
 - b. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270.
 - c. Tremco Incorporated.
- B. Multi-component, Self-Leveling, Traffic-Grade, Urethane Joint Sealant (U-TB): ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade SL, Class 50, for Use T.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Polymeric Systems, Inc.; PSI-270.
 - b. Tremco Incorporated; Dymeric 240 FC.
 - c. Pecora; Dynatread.
- 2.4 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS
- A. Latex Joint Sealant (AL): Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Building Systems; Sonolac.
 - b. Bostik, Inc.; Chem-Calk 600.
 - c. May National Associates, Inc.
 - d. Pecora Corporation; AC-20+.
 - e. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.
- 2.5 ACOUSTICAL JOINT SEALANTS (AC)
- A. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR.
 - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
- 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Non-staining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.
- D. Backer Rod:
1. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are non-staining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing
 2. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D 1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to minus 26 deg F. Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance
 3. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.
 - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
 - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- E. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 3. Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Provide flush joint profile where indicated per Figure 8B in ASTM C 1193.
 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 8C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

- F. Installation of Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Comply with the following requirements:
 1. Apply masking tape to each side of joint, outside of area to be covered by sealant system.
 2. Apply silicone sealant to each side of joint to produce a bead of size complying with preformed silicone-sealant system manufacturer's written instructions and covering a bonding area of not less than 3/8 inch. Hold edge of sealant bead 1/4 inch inside masking tape.
 3. Within 10 minutes of sealant application, press silicone extrusion into sealant to wet extrusion and substrate. Use a roller to apply consistent pressure and ensure uniform contact between sealant and both extrusion and substrate.
 4. Complete installation of sealant system in horizontal joints before installing in vertical joints. Lap vertical joints over horizontal joints. At ends of joints, cut silicone extrusion with a razor knife.
- G. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping. Do not pull or stretch material. Produce seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Acoustical Sealant Installation: At sound-rated assemblies and elsewhere as indicated, seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
 1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
 - b. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.
 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 4. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 5. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

A. Sealant Schedule:

1. Exterior locations:
 - a. Wall joints:
 - 1) Bordered on both sides by porous building material (concrete, stone, masonry, exterior insulation and finish systems): Designation S-GP
 - 2) Bordered on both sides by non-porous building material (coated and uncoated metals, anodized aluminum, porcelain tile, and glass): Designation S-GP
 - 3) Bordered on one side by porous building material (concrete, stone, masonry) and other side by non-porous building material (coated and uncoated metals, anodized aluminum, porcelain tile, and glass): Designation S-GP.
 - b. Perimeter of penetrations through walls: Designation S-GP
 - c. Control joints (filling of V-grooves) and perimeter of penetrations in Portland cement plaster walls: Designation S-GP.
 - d. Expansion joints in ceilings, soffits, and overhead surfaces: Designation S-GP
 - e. Control joints and perimeter of penetrations in ceilings, soffits, and overhead surfaces: Designation S-GP
 - f. Wall and ceiling joints between frames and their rough opening: Designation S-GP.
 - g. Wall and ceiling joints between frames and adjoining surfaces: Designation S-GP.
 - h. Joints and perimeter of penetrations in horizontal pedestrian and vehicle traffic surfaces: Designation U-TB.
 - i. Joints in Division 07 Section 07 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim:" Designation S-GP.
2. Interior Joints:
 - a. Wall and ceiling joints subject to movement: Designation U-MC.
 - b. Wall and ceiling joints not subject to movement: Designation AL.
 - c. Interior side of exterior openings: U-MC.
 - d. Floor joints: Designation U-TB.
 - e. Wall and ceiling joints between frames and their rough opening: Designation AL.
 - f. Wall and ceiling joints between frames and adjoining surfaces: Designation AL.
 - g. Interior Sanitary Joints; Joints Between Plumbing Fixtures and Adjoining Floor, Wall, and Ceiling Surfaces; Joints Between Shower Door Enclosure Components and Adjacent Finish Surfaces; Joints in Dietary and Food Preparation Areas, Kitchens, Food Storage Areas, and Areas Subject to Frequent Wet Cleaning, including joints between walls and floors, Joints Between Back Splashes and Wall Substrates: Designation S-S.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 079500**EXPANSION CONTROL****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Architectural joint systems for building interiors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Maximum Joint Width: Widest linear gap a joint system tolerates and in which it performs its designed function without damaging its functional capabilities.
- B. Minimum Joint Width: Narrowest linear gap a joint system tolerates and in which it performs its designed function without damaging its functional capabilities.
- C. Movement Capability: Value obtained from the difference between widest and narrowest widths of a joint opening typically expressed in numerical values (mm or inches) or a percentage (plus or minus) of nominal value of joint width.
- D. Nominal Joint Width: The width of the linear opening specified in practice and in which the joint system is installed.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Provide the following for each joint system specified:
 - 1. Placement Drawings: Include line diagrams showing plans, elevations, sections, details, splices, block-out requirement, entire route of each joint system, and attachments to other work. Where joint systems change planes, provide isometric or clearly detailed drawing depicting how components interconnect.
 - 2. Architectural Joint System Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of the supplier. Include the following information in tabular form:
 - a. Manufacturer and model number for each joint system.
 - b. Joint system location cross-referenced to Drawings.
 - c. Nominal joint width.
 - d. Movement capability.
 - e. Classification as thermal or seismic.
 - f. Materials, colors, and finishes.
 - g. Product options.
 - h. Fire-resistance ratings.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain interior architectural joint systems through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of architectural joint systems and are based on the specific systems indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements."
 - 1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- D. Accessibility Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines (ADAAG)" and TAS.
- E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: At fire rated assemblies, provide architectural joint system and fire-barrier assemblies identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per UL 2079 or ASTM E 1966 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of exterior wall and soffit joint systems with roof expansion assemblies to ensure that wall transitions are watertight. Roof expansion assemblies are specified in Division 07.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MATERIALS**

- A. Aluminum: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5 for extrusions; ASTM B 209, Alloy 6061-T6 for sheet and plate.
 - 1. Apply manufacturer's standard protective coating on aluminum surfaces to be placed in contact with cementitious materials.
 - 2. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: non-specular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
- B. Accessories: Manufacturer's standard anchors, clips, fasteners, set screws, spacers, and other accessories compatible with material in contact, as indicated or required for complete installations.

2.2 ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. General: Provide architectural joint systems of design, basic profile, materials, and operation indicated. Provide units with capability to accommodate variations in adjacent surfaces.
 - 1. Furnish units in longest practicable lengths to minimize field splicing. Install with hairline mitered corners where joint changes direction or abuts other materials.
 - 2. Include factory-fabricated closure materials and transition pieces, tee-joints, corners, curbs, cross-connections, and other accessories as required to provide continuous joint systems.
- B. Design architectural joint systems for the following size and movement characteristics:
 - 1. Nominal Joint Width: As indicated or scheduled on Drawings.
 - 2. Movement Capability: Plus or minus 100 percent.
 - 3. Type of Movement: Seismic.

2.3 ARCHITECTURAL JOINT SYSTEMS

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the products specified in individual subparagraphs below as basis-of-design products or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Emseal
 - 2. Watson Bowman Acme
 - 3. Architectural Art Mfg., Inc.
 - 4. Balco, Inc.
 - 5. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - 6. MM Systems Corporation.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product:
 - 1. Wall-to-Wall Expansion Joint: 6GW-1 as manufactured by Balco, Inc.
 - a. Flush mounted wall system; Aluminum Cover, clear anodized finish.
 - 2. Wall-to-Corner Expansion Joint: 6GWC-1 as manufactured by Balco, Inc.
 - a. Flush mounted wall system; Aluminum Cover, clear anodized finish.

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine surfaces and blockouts where architectural joint systems will be installed for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to architectural joint system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Repair concrete slabs and blockouts using manufacturer's recommended repair grout of compressive strength adequate for anticipated structural loadings.
- C. Coordinate and furnish anchorages, setting drawings, and instructions for installing joint systems. Provide fasteners of metal, type, and size to suit type of construction indicated and to provide for secure attachment of joint systems.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for storing, handling, and installing architectural joint assemblies and materials unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- B. Metal Frames: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required to install joint systems.
 - 1. Install in true alignment and proper relationship to joints and adjoining finished surfaces measured from established lines and levels.
 - 2. Adjust for differences between actual structural gap and nominal design gap due to ambient temperature at time of installation. Notify Architect where discrepancies occur that will affect proper joint installation and performance.
 - 3. Cut and fit ends to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction of metal without buckling of frames.
 - 4. Locate in continuous contact with adjacent surfaces.
 - 5. Standard-Duty Systems: Shim to level where required. Support underside of frames continuously to prevent vertical deflection when in service.
 - 6. Heavy-Duty Systems: Repair or grout blockout as required for continuous frame support and to bring frame to proper level. Shimming is not allowed.
 - 7. Locate anchors at interval recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 3 inches from each end and not more than 24 inches o.c.
- C. Seals in Metal Frames: Install elastomeric seals and membranes in frames to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install with minimum number of end joints.
 - 1. Provide in continuous lengths for straight sections.
 - 2. Seal transitions according to manufacturer's written instructions. Vulcanize or heat-weld field-spliced joints as recommended by manufacturer.
 - 3. Installation: Mechanically lock seals into frames or adhere to frames with adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Terminate exposed ends of joint assemblies with field- or factory-fabricated termination devices.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Do not remove protective covering until finish work in adjacent areas is complete. When protective covering is removed, clean exposed metal surfaces to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Protect the installation from damage by work of other Sections. Where necessary due to heavy construction traffic, remove and properly store cover plates or seals and install temporary protection over joints. Reinstall cover plates or seals prior to Substantial Completion of the Work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081113
HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Building Envelope Requirements

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Standard hollow metal doors frames.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for embedding anchors for hollow metal work into masonry construction.
 - 2. Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors" for wood doors in hollow metal frames.
 - 3. Division 08 Section for door hardware for hollow metal doors.
 - 4. Division 09 Section "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting" for field painting hollow metal doors and frames.
 - 5. Division 26 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings.
- B. Standard Hollow Metal Work to comply with the following Steel Door Institute Performance Standards:
 - 1. Hollow metal work fabricated according to ANSI/SDI A250.8 (R2008).
 - 2. ANSI/SDI A250.4 (2001) - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames, Frames Anchors and Hardware Reinforcing.
 - 3. ANSI/SDI A250.6 (R2009) - Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 4. ANSI/SDI A250.10 (R2004) - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 5. ANSI/SDI A250.11 (2001) - Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames.
 - 6. ANSI/SDI A250.13 (2008) – Testing and Rating of Severe windstorm Resistant Components for Swinging Door Assemblies.
 - 7. SDI 111 (2008 – Recommendations for Selection and Usage Guide for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 8. SDI 117 (2009) – Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 9. SDI 122 (2007) - Installation and Troubleshooting Guide for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 10. SDI 124 (1998) - Maintenance of Standard Steel Doors and Frames.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
 - 1. Elevations of each door design.
 - 2. Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
 - 3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
 - 4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
 - 5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
 - 6. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
 - 7. Details of accessories.
 - 8. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
 - 9. Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- C. Other Action Submittals:
 - 1. Schedule: Provide a schedule of hollow metal work prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule.

2. Supplier to submit shop drawing schedules with in two weeks of written notification from Contractor in the event to expedite the process of frames to jobsite.
 3. Certificate: current certificate stating the manufacture is a member of SDI.
- D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each type of hollow metal door and frame assembly.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal doors and frames from single source manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 and UL10C, embossed labels are acceptable on standard 3 sided door frames.
 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
 2. Temperature-Rise Limit, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- C. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257 or UL 9. Label each individual glazed lite.
- D. Smoke-Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105.
- E. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to review anchor methods, electrical conduit connections and custom installation of unusual openings such as pocket frames, single rabbit double egress frames and recessed doors flush with walls.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
 1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to finish of factory-finished units.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jams and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.
 2. Any scratches or disfigurements caused in shipping or handling are promptly cleaned and touched up with a rust-inhibitive primer to new conditions

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Amweld Building Products, LLC.
 2. Benchmark; a division of Therma-Tru Corporation.
 3. Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 4. Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 5. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand company.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 Z180 or A60ZF180 metallic coating.
 - D. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 591, Commercial Steel (CS), 40Z 12G coating designation; mill phosphatized.
 - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008 or ASTM A 1011, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153, Class B.
 - E. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153.
 - F. Powder-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow metal frames of type indicated.
 - G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- 2.3 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL DOORS
- A. General: Provide doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 - 1. Design: Flush panel.
 - 2. Core Construction: Manufacturer's standard kraft-paper honeycomb, polystyrene, polyurethane, polyisocyanurate, mineral-board, or vertical steel-stiffener core.
 - a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.
 - b. Steel-stiffened door at interior and exterior shipping and receiving locations.
 - c. Thermal-Rated (Insulated) Doors: Where indicated, provide doors fabricated with thermal-resistance value (R-value) of not less than 11 when tested to ASTM C518 calculated and 3.0 when tested to ASTM C1363 operable.
 - 1) Locations: All exterior doors, and as indicated on Door Schedule.
 - 3. Vertical Edges for Single-Acting Doors:
 - a. Beveled Edges: 1/8 inch in 2 inches.
 - 1) At meeting edges of pairs of doors bevel edge at active leaf, square edge at inactive leaf.
 - 2) Universal hinge preps for reverse swinging of doors are not acceptable.
 - 4. Vertical Edges for Double-Acting Doors: Round vertical edges with 2-1/8-inch radius.
 - 5. Top and Bottom Edges: Closed with flush or inverted 0.042-inch-thick, end closures or channels of same material as face sheets.
 - 6. Tolerances: Comply with SDI 117, "Manufacturing Tolerances for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - 7. Provide hollow metal doors with at least 30 percent total recycled; 10 percent post-consumer content.
 - B. Exterior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
 - 1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Model 1 (Full Flush).
 - C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:
 - 1. Level 3 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Model 2 (Full Flush).
 - D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.
 - E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- 2.4 STANDARD HOLLOW METAL FRAMES
- A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.
 - B. Exterior Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet.
 - 1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
 - 2. Fabricate frames as face welded joints and back weld joints continuously, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: (14 gage) thick steel sheet.
 - C. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet unless metallic-coated sheet is indicated.
 - 1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners.
 - 2. Fabricate frames as full profile and face welded unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Frames for Level 3 Steel Doors: (16 gage) - thick steel sheet.
 - 4. Frames 48-inches and wider in opening width are required to be min. 14 gage thick steel sheet.
 - 5. Frames for Wood Doors: (16 gage) thick steel sheet.

- 6. Frames for Borrowed Lights: (16 gage) thick steel sheet.
- D. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.
- E. Knock down frames are not acceptable.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
 - 1. Masonry Anchors: Frames for installation in masonry walls shall be provided with adjustable jamb anchors of the (T-strap). Anchors shall be not less than 16 gage steel. T-straps shall be not less than 2" X 10" in size, corrugated and/or perforated. The number of anchors provided on each jamb shall be as follows:
 - a. Frames up to 60" height: 2 anchors.
 - b. Frames greater than 60" up to 90" 3 anchors.
 - c. Frames greater than 90" up to 96" 4 anchors.
 - d. Frames greater than 96" 4 anchors plus one for each 24" or fraction thereof over 96", spaced at 24" maximum between anchors.
 - 2. Stud Anchors: Welded frames for installation in stud partitions shall be provided with welded in steel anchors of suitable design, not less than 18 gage thickness, secured inside each jamb as follows:
 - a. Frames up to 60" height: 2 anchors.
 - b. Frames greater than 60" up to 90" 4 anchors.
 - c. Frames greater than 90" up to 96" 5 anchors.
 - d. Frames greater than 96": 5 anchors plus one for each 24" or fraction thereof over 96" spaced at 24" maximum between anchors.
 - 3. Post-installed Expansion Type for In-Place Concrete or Masonry: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts. Provide pipe spacer from frame to wall, with throat reinforcement plate, welded to frame at each anchor location. 3" minimum, embedment.
 - 4. Hot-dip galvanize all anchors in exterior walls.
- B. Floor Anchors: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.067 inch thick, and as follows:
 - 1. Monolithic Concrete Slabs: Floor anchors shall be provided with two holes for fasteners and shall be fastened inside jambs with at least four (4) spot welds per anchor

2.6 HOLLOW METAL PANELS

- A. Provide hollow metal panels of same materials, construction, and finish as specified for adjoining hollow metal work.

2.7 STOPS AND MOLDINGS

- A. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.
- B. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch high unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 0.032 inch thick, fabricated from same material as frames in which they are installed. Field cuts are not acceptable.

2.8 LOUVERS

- A. Provide louvers for interior doors, where indicated, that comply with SDI 111C, with blades or baffles formed of 0.020-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet set into 0.032-inch- thick steel frame.
 - 1. Sight-Proof Louver: Stationary louvers constructed with inverted V-shaped or Y-shaped blades.
 - 2. Fire-Rated Automatic Louvers: Louvers constructed with movable blades closed by actuating fusible link, and listed and labeled for use in fire-rated door assemblies of type and fire-resistance rating indicated by same testing and inspecting agency that established fire-resistance rating of door assembly.

2.9 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.
- B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inch thick.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. To ensure proper assembly at Project site, clearly identify work that cannot be permanently factory assembled before shipment.

- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in SDI 117.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors:
1. Exterior Doors: Provide weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape. Seal joints in top edges of doors against water penetration.
 2. Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors.
 3. Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
 4. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide continuous 12 gage strap tack welded to door edge for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Div. 8 Door hardware, unless door has continuous steel channel for hinge reinforcement.
 5. Electrical Raceways: Provide raceways to accommodate up to twelve (12) wires as required for electrified door hardware specified in hardware sets in Div. 8 Door Hardware.
 6. Seamless Edge (Model 2): Provide seamless edge on hollow metal doors by intermittently tack welding seam, grinding smooth and finishing edge free from defects and blemishes.
- D. Hollow Metal Frames: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
1. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
 2. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
 3. Equal Rabbet Frames: Provide frames with equal rabbet dimensions unless glazing and removable stops require wider dimension on glass side of frame.
 4. Hinge Reinforcement: Provide high frequency hinge reinforcements at door openings 42-inch and wider with mortise/butt type hinges at top hinge location to deter against hinge reinforcement sag; required at all openings with automatic openers.
 5. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide continuous 12 gage strap tack welded to frame stop for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Div. 8 Door hardware.
 6. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 7. Provide A60 Galvannealed coating at frames in restrooms with showers/Jacuzzi, clean areas such as surgery rooms and surgical suites, clean rooms, and soil rooms.
 8. Electrical Knock Out Boxes: Factory weld 18 gage electrical knock out boxes to frame for electrical hardware preps; included to electrical thru wire hinges, electrical raceways, door position switches, electric strikes, jamb mount card readers, and magnet locks as noted in door hardware sets in Division 8 Door Hardware and security prints.
 - a. Electrical knock out boxes are required at door position switches, electric strikes, card readers, and middle hinge locations for all exterior locations regardless of electrical hardware specified in Division 8 Door Hardware and security prints.
 - b. Provide electrical knock out boxes with a dual 1/2-inch and 3/4-inch knockouts.
 - c. Conduit to be factory installed for electric hardware preps. Frames with factory installed conduit to have weld in place anchors.
 - d. Electrical knock out boxes to comply with NFPA requirements and fit electrical door hardware as specified in hardware sets in Division 8 Door Hardware and security prints.
 - e. Electrical knock out boxes for continuous hinges should be located in the center of the vertical dimension on the hinge jamb, coordinate with hardware supplier
 - f. Provide conduit for standardized plug connectors to accommodate up to (12) wires for electrified door hardware specified in hardware sets in Division 8 Door Hardware and security prints.
 9. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped or gasketed doors, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction. Silencers to be supplied by frame manufacturer regardless if specified in Div. 8 Door Hardware.
 - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
 - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- E. Fabricate concealed stiffeners, edge channels, and hardware reinforcement from either cold- or hot-rolled steel sheet.
- F. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive templated mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
1. Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
 2. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-templated, mortised and surface-mounted door hardware.

3. Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
 4. Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.
- G. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
1. Single Glazed Lites: Provide fixed stops and moldings welded on secure side of hollow metal work.
 2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
 3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.
 4. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow metal work.
 5. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with type of glazing and type of installation indicated.
 6. Gap for butted or mitered joints in glass stop should not exceed .0625-inch.

2.11 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Apply manufacturer's standard primer immediately after cleaning and pretreating.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations before frame installation.
- C. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory after installation of frame in wall. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumbness to the following tolerances:
 1. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 2. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 3. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 4. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a perpendicular line from head to floor.
- C. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11.
 1. Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged.
 - a. At fire-protection-rated openings, install frames according to NFPA 80.
 - b. Where frames are fabricated in sections because of shipping or handling limitations, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 - c. Install frames with removable glazing stops located on secure side of opening.

- d. Remove temporary braces necessary for installation only after frames have been properly set and secured.
 - e. Check plumbness, squareness, and twist of frames as walls are constructed. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
 2. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
 - a. Floor anchors may be set with powder-actuated fasteners instead of post-installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
 3. Metal-Stud Partitions: Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation behind frames.
 4. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout.
 5. Field Supplied Ceiling Struts: Extend struts vertically from top of frame at each jamb to overhead structural supports or substrates above frame unless frame is anchored to masonry or to other structural support at each jamb. Bend top of struts to provide flush contact for securing to supporting construction. Provide adjustable wedged or bolted anchorage to frame jamb members. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 6. In-Place Gypsum Board Partitions: Secure frames in place with post-installed expansion anchors through floor anchors at each jamb. Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow metal door frames for squareness, alignment, twist, and plumb to the following tolerances:
 - a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
 - b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
 - c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
 - d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
 - C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
 1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
 - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
 - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch (plus or minus 1/16 inch).
 - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
 - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
 3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.
 - D. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.
 1. Secure stops with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than 9 inches o.c. and not more than 2 inches o.c. from each corner.
 2. Secure exterior removable stops with security head stainless steel screws.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING
- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
 - B. Adjust frames and doors per SDI 122 Installation for trouble shooting openings.
 - C. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
 - D. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
 - E. Metallic-Coated Surfaces: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 081416
FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Solid-core doors with stained wood-veneer.
 - 2. Factory finishing flush wood doors.
 - 3. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data:
 - 1. For each type of door indicated. Include details of core and edge construction, louvers, and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; location and extent of hardware blocking; and other pertinent data.
 - 1. Indicate dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
 - 2. Indicate dimensions and locations of cutouts.
 - 3. Indicate requirements for veneer matching.
 - 4. Indicate doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
 - 5. Indicate fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.
- C. Samples: For factory finished door faces.
 - 1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face veneer materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in the finished work.
- D. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is certified for chain of custody by an FSC-accredited certification body.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors from single manufacturer.
- C. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with AWI's "Architectural Woodwork Quality Standards Illustrated" for veneers faces and WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors" for performance of the door.
 - 1. Provide AWI Quality Certification Labels or an AWI letter of licensing for Project indicating that doors comply with requirements of grades specified.
- D. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
 - 1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
 - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
 - 3. Indicate rating and listing agent with permanently attached label on edge of door, if continuous hinge is used adhere label on top of door.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in plastic bags or cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheathing.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
 - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
 - c. Telegraphing of core construction and delamination of face in decorative laminated faced doors.
 2. Warranty shall also include installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.
 3. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Algoma Hardwoods, Inc.
 2. Eggers Industries.
 3. Graham; an Assa Abloy Group company.
 4. Marshfield Door Systems, Inc.
 5. VT Industries Inc.

2.2 DOOR CONSTRUCTION, GENERAL

- A. Low-Emitting Materials: Provide doors made with adhesives and composite wood products that do not contain urea formaldehyde.
- B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.
- C. Particleboard-Core Doors:
1. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade LD-1.
 2. Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 - a. 8-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
 - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
 3. Provide doors with structural-composite-lumber (SCL) cores instead of particleboard cores for the following door types:
 - a. Indicated to receive exit devices.
 - b. Doors with more than 40 percent of core removed.
 - c. Lock and Light cutout stiles less than 5 1/2 inches between cutouts.
 - d. Shipping and receiving doors.
- D. Fire-Protection-Rated Doors: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
1. Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
 2. Pairs: Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
- E. Mineral-Core Doors:
1. Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
 2. Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
 - a. 8-inch top-rail blocking.
 - b. 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
 - c. 5-inch midrail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
 - d. 4-1/2-by-10-inch lock blocks, in doors indicated to have exit devices.

3. Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges exceeding WDMA

2.3 VENEERED-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Custom (Grade A faces).
2. Species: As scheduled.
3. Cut: As scheduled.
4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Slip match.
5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Balance match.
6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening or separated only by mullions.
7. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
8. Exposed Vertical Edges: Same species as faces
9. Core: Particleboard and comply with section 2.2.
10. Construction: Five plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
11. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade: Extra Heavy Duty.

2.4 LOUVERS AND LIGHT FRAMES

A. Metal Louvers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Air Louvers Inc.
 - b. Anemostat; a Mestek company.
 - c. Hiawatha Incorporated.
 - d. McGill Architectural Products.
 - e. Pemko Manufacturing Company, Inc.
2. Blade Type: Vision-proof, inverted V or inverted Y.
3. Metal and Finish: Galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, with factory baked-enamel finish.

- #### B. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors over 20-minute rating: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; with factory baked-enamel finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated.

2.5 FABRICATION

- #### A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.

- #### B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, DHI A115-W series standards, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
2. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
3. Pre-drill hinge screw holes at factory for templated hinges.
4. Factory drill raceways for power cords to electrified hardware as scheduled in Door Hardware Sets.
5. Where armor plates are specified in Door Hardware Sets, ensure blocking and labeling is sufficient in door and fire label approves the attachment of the listed armor plate.

- #### C. Openings: Cut and trim openings through doors in factory.

1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.

2.6 FACTORY FINISHING

- #### A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.

1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

- #### B. Finish doors at factory that are indicated to receive transparent finish. Field finish doors indicated to receive opaque finish.

- C. Opaque Finish: Prime for painting in the field.
- D. Transparent Finish:
 - 1. Grade: Premium.
 - 2. Finish: Meets or exceeds TR6 finish performance requirements as per WDMA I.S. 1A
 - 3. Staining: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of custom colors.
 - 4. Effect: Semi-filled finish, produced by applying an additional finish coat to partially fill the wood pores.
 - 5. Sheen: Satin.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and installed door frames before hanging doors.
 - 1. Verify that frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
 - 2. Reject doors with defects.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
- B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and the referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
 - 1. Install fire-rated doors in corresponding fire-rated frames according to NFPA 80.
- C. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.
- D. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 083113
ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, fire ratings, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of access door(s) and frame(s) through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Units complying with NFPA 80 that are identical to access door and frame assemblies tested for fire-test-response characteristics per the following test method and that are listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
1. NFPA 252 or UL 10B for vertical access doors and frames.
 2. ASTM E 119 for horizontal access doors and frames.
- C. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
- A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 STEEL MATERIALS
- A. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, Commercial Steel (CS) with A60 zinc-iron-alloy (galvannealed) coating or G60 mill-phosphatized zinc coating; stretcher-leveled standard of flatness; with minimum thickness indicated representing specified thickness according to ASTM A 924.
- B. Steel Finishes: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
1. Surface Preparation for Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Clean surfaces with non-petroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing repair paint specified below to comply with ASTM A 780.
 - a. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalvanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
 2. Baked-Enamel Finish: Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-enamel finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat. Comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions for applying and baking to achieve a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
- C. Drywall Beads: Edge trim formed from 0.0299-inch zinc-coated steel sheet formed to receive joint compound and in size to suit thickness of gypsum board.
- D. Plaster Beads: Casing bead formed from 0.0299-inch zinc-coated steel sheet with flange formed out of expanded metal lath and in size to suit thickness of plaster.

2.2 STAINLESS-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
1. Finish: Directional Satin Finish, No. 4.

2.3 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Acudor Products, Inc.
 2. Babcock-Davis; A Cierra Products Co.
 3. Jensen Industries.
 4. J. L. Industries, Inc.
 5. Karp Associates, Inc.
 6. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
 7. Milcor Inc.
 8. Nystrom, Inc.
- B. Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet or stainless-steel sheet (wet areas).
1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal, set flush with exposed face flange of frame.
 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal with 1-inch- wide, surface-mounted trim.
 4. Hinges: Continuous piano.
 5. Latch: Cam latch operated by screwdriver with interior release.
- C. Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet or stainless-steel sheet (wet areas).
1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal, set flush with surrounding finish surfaces.
 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal with drywall bead flange.
 4. Hinges: Continuous piano.
 5. Latch: Cam latch operated by screwdriver with interior release.
- D. Recessed Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet or stainless-steel sheet (wet areas).
1. Locations: Ceiling surfaces.
 2. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal in the form of a pan recessed 5/8 inch for gypsum board infill.
 3. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal with drywall bead for gypsum board surfaces.
 4. Hinges: Concealed pivoting rod hinge.
 5. Latch: Cam latch operated by screwdriver with interior release.
- E. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet or stainless-steel sheet (wet areas).
1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
 3. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F at the end of 30 minutes.
 4. Door: Flush panel with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.036 inch.
 5. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal with 1-inch- wide, surface-mounted trim.
 6. Hinges: Continuous piano.
 7. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
 8. Latch: Self-latching device operated by flush key with interior release.
- F. Fire-Rated, Insulated, Flush Access Doors and Trimless Frames: Fabricated from metallic-coated steel sheet or stainless-steel sheet (wet areas).
1. Locations: Wall surfaces.
 2. Fire-Resistance Rating: Not less than that of adjacent construction.
 3. Temperature Rise Rating: 250 deg F at the end of 30 minutes.
 4. Door: Flush panel with a core of mineral-fiber insulation enclosed in sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 0.036 inch.
 5. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick sheet metal with drywall bead.
 6. Hinges: Continuous piano.
 7. Automatic Closer: Spring type.
 8. Latch: Self-latching device operated by flush key with interior release.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.

- B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
- C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.
 - 1. Exposed Flanges: Nominal 1 to 1-1/2 inches wide around perimeter of frame.
 - 2. For trimless frames with drywall bead, provide edge trim for gypsum board securely attached to perimeter of frames.
 - 3. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal framing.
- D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.
- B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.
- C. Install doors flush with adjacent finish surfaces or recessed to receive finish material.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.
- B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 083613
SECTIONAL DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes electrically operated sectional doors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Sectional doors shall meet performance requirements specified without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction and without requiring temporary installation of reinforcing components.
- B. Structural Performance: Exterior sectional doors shall withstand the effects of gravity loads, and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
 - 2. Deflection Limits: Design sectional doors to withstand design wind loads without evidencing permanent deformation or disengagement of door components. Deflection of door in horizontal position (open) shall not exceed 1/120 of the door width.
- C. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to ASTM E 283.
 - 1. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate of 0.08 cfm/sq. ft. at 15 and 25 mph.
- D. Operation Cycles: Provide sectional door components and operators capable of operating for not less than number of cycles indicated for each door. One operation cycle is complete when a door is opened from the closed position to the fully open position and returned to the closed position.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of sectional door and accessory. Include the following:
 - 1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components, profile door sections, and finishes.
 - 2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each installation and for special components not dimensioned or detailed in manufacturer's product data. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Maintenance Data: For sectional doors to include in maintenance manuals.
- D. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for both installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain sectional doors from single source from single manufacturer.
 - 1. Obtain operators and controls from sectional door manufacturer.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Standard for Sectional Doors: Fabricate sectional doors to comply with DASMA 102 unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities".

1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of sectional doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Faulty operation of hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use; rust through.
 - d. Delamination of exterior or interior facing materials.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL DOOR SECTIONS

- A. Exterior Section Faces and Frames: Fabricate from zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled, commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A 653, with indicated zinc coating and thickness.
 - 1. For insulated doors, provide sections with continuous thermal-break construction, separating the exterior and interior faces of door.
- B. Section Ends and Intermediate Stiles: Enclose open ends of sections with channel end stiles formed from galvanized-steel sheet not less than 0.064-inch- nominal coated thickness and welded to door section. Provide intermediate stiles formed from not less than 0.064-inch- thick galvanized-steel sheet, cut to door section profile, and welded in place. Space stiles not more than 48 inches apart.
- C. Reinforce bottom section with a continuous channel or angle conforming to bottom-section profile.
- D. Reinforce sections with continuous horizontal and diagonal reinforcement, as required to stiffen door and for wind loading. Provide galvanized-steel bars, struts, trusses, or strip steel, formed to depth and bolted or welded in place. Ensure that reinforcement does not obstruct vision lites.
- E. Provide reinforcement for hardware attachment.
- F. Foamed-in-Place Thermal Insulation: Insulate interior of steel sections with door manufacturer's standard CFC-free polyurethane insulation, foamed in place to completely fill interior of section and pressure bonded to face sheets to prevent delamination under wind load, and with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, according to ASTM E 84. Enclose insulation completely within steel sections that incorporate the following interior facing material, with no exposed insulation:
 - 1. Interior Facing Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized), cold-rolled, commercial steel (CS) sheet, complying with ASTM A 653, with indicated thickness.
- G. Fabricate sections so finished door assembly is rigid and aligned, with tight hairline joints and free of warp, twist, and deformation.

2.2 TRACKS, SUPPORTS, AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Tracks: Manufacturer's standard, galvanized-steel track system of configuration indicated, sized for door size and weight, designed for lift type indicated and clearances shown on Drawings, and complying with ASTM A 653 for minimum G60 zinc coating. Provide complete track assembly including brackets, bracing, and reinforcement for rigid support of ball-bearing roller guides for required door type and size. Slot vertical sections of track spaced 2 inches apart for door-drop safety device. Slope tracks at proper angle from vertical or design tracks to ensure tight closure at jambs when door unit is closed.
- B. Track Reinforcement and Supports: Galvanized-steel track reinforcement and support members, complying with ASTM A 36 and ASTM A 123. Secure, reinforce, and support tracks as required for door size and weight to provide strength and rigidity without sag, sway, and vibration during opening and closing of doors.
 - 1. Horizontal Track Assembly: Track with continuous reinforcing angle attached to track and supported at points from curve in track to end of track by laterally braced attachments to overhead structural members.
- C. Weatherseals: Replaceable, adjustable, continuous, compressible weather-stripping gaskets of flexible vinyl, rubber, or neoprene fitted to bottom and top of sectional door unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Windows: Manufacturer's standard window units of type and size indicated and in arrangement shown. Set glazing in vinyl, rubber, or neoprene glazing channel for metal-framed doors and elastic glazing compound for wood doors, as required. Provide removable stops of same material as door-section frames.

2.3 HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide heavy-duty, corrosion-resistant hardware, with hot-dip galvanized, stainless-steel, or other corrosion-resistant fasteners, to suit door type.
- B. Hinges: Heavy-duty, galvanized-steel hinges of not less than 0.079-inch- nominal coated thickness at each end stile and at each intermediate stile, according to manufacturer's written recommendations for door size. Attach hinges to door sections through stiles and rails with bolts and lock nuts or lock washers and nuts. Use rivets or self-tapping fasteners where access to nuts is not possible. Provide double-end

- C. hinges where required, for doors over 16 feet wide unless otherwise recommended by door manufacturer.
 - C. Rollers: Heavy-duty rollers with steel ball-bearings in case-hardened steel races, mounted with varying projections to suit slope of track. Extend roller shaft through both hinges where double hinges are required. Provide 3-inch- diameter roller tires for 3-inch- wide track and 2-inch- diameter roller tires for 2-inch- wide track.
 - D. Push/Pull Handles: For push-up or emergency-operated doors, provide galvanized-steel lifting handles on each side of door.
- 2.4 LOCKING DEVICES
- A. Slide Bolt: Fabricate with side-locking bolts to engage through slots in tracks for locking by padlock, located on single-jamb side, operable from inside only.
 - B. Safety Interlock Switch: Equip power-operated doors with safety interlock switch to disengage power supply when door is locked.
- 2.5 COUNTERBALANCE MECHANISM
- A. Torsion Spring: Counterbalance mechanism consisting of adjustable-tension torsion springs fabricated from steel-spring wire complying with ASTM A 229, mounted on torsion shaft made of steel tube or solid steel. Provide springs designed for number of operation cycles indicated.
 - B. Cable Drums and Shaft for Doors: Cast-aluminum or gray-iron casting cable drums mounted on torsion shaft and grooved to receive door-lifting cables as door is raised. Mount counterbalance mechanism with manufacturer's standard ball-bearing brackets at each end of torsion shaft. Provide one additional midpoint bracket for shafts up to 16 feet long and two additional brackets at one-third points to support shafts more than 16 feet long unless closer spacing is recommended by door manufacturer.
 - C. Cables: Galvanized-steel lifting cables with cable safety factor of at least [5] [7] to 1.
 - D. Cable Safety Device: Include a spring-loaded steel or spring-loaded bronze cam mounted to bottom door roller assembly on each side and designed to automatically stop door if either lifting cable breaks.
 - E. Bracket: Provide anchor support bracket as required to connect stationary end of spring to the wall and to level the shaft and prevent sag.
 - F. Provide a spring bumper at each horizontal track to cushion door at end of opening operation.
- 2.6 ELECTRIC DOOR OPERATORS
- A. General: Electric door operator assembly of size and capacity recommended and provided by door manufacturer for door and "operation cycles" requirement specified, with electric motor and factory-pre-wired motor controls, starter, gear-reduction unit, solenoid-operated brake, clutch, remote-control stations, control devices, integral gearing for locking door, and accessories required for proper operation.
 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
 2. Provide control equipment complying with NEMA ICS 1, NEMA ICS 2, and NEMA ICS 6; with NFPA 70, Class 2 control circuit, maximum 24-V ac or dc.
 - B. Usage Classification: Electric operator and components capable of operating for not less than number of cycles per hour indicated for each door.
 - C. Door-Operator Type: Unit consisting of electric motor, gears, pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls needed to operate door and meet required usage classification.
 1. Jackshaft, Center Mounted: Jackshaft operator mounted on the inside front wall above door and connected to torsion shaft with an adjustable coupling or drive chain.
 - D. Electric Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Division 11 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Equipment" unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Motor Type and Controller: Reversible motor and controller (disconnect switch) for motor exposure indicated.
 2. Motor Size: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough to start, accelerate, and operate door in either direction from any position, at a speed not less than 8 in./sec. and not more than 12 in./sec., without exceeding nameplate ratings or service factor.
 3. Operating Controls, Controllers (Disconnect Switches), Wiring Devices, and Wiring: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Coordinate wiring requirements and electrical characteristics of motors and other electrical devices with building electrical system and each location where installed.
 5. Use adjustable motor-mounting bases for belt-driven operators.
 - E. Limit Switches: Equip each motorized door with adjustable switches interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop door at fully opened and fully closed positions.
 - F. Obstruction Detection Device: Equip motorized door with indicated external automatic safety sensor capable of protecting full width of door opening. Activation of device immediately stops and reverses downward door travel.

1. Photoelectric Sensor: Manufacturer's standard system designed to detect an obstruction in door opening without contact between door and obstruction.
 - a. Self-Monitoring Type: Designed to interface with door operator control circuit to detect damage to or disconnection of sensor device. When self-monitoring feature is activated, door closes only with sustained pressure on close button.
 - G. Remote-Control Station: Momentary-contact, three-button control station with push-button controls labeled "Open," "Close," and "Stop."
 1. Interior units, full-guarded, surface-mounted, heavy-duty type, with general-purpose NEMA ICS 6, Type 1 enclosure.
 2. Exterior units, full-guarded, standard-duty, surface-mounted, weatherproof type, NEMA ICS 6, Type 4 enclosure, key operated.
 - H. Emergency Operation Disconnect Device: Equip operator with hand-operated disconnect mechanism for automatically engaging manual operator and releasing brake for emergency manual operation while disconnecting motor without affecting timing of limit switch. Mount mechanism so it is accessible from floor level. Include interlock device to automatically prevent motor from operating when emergency operator is engaged.
 - I. Motor Removal: Design operator so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting emergency manual operation.
 - J. Radio-Control System: Consisting of the following:
 1. Three-channel universal coaxial receiver to open, close, and stop door; two per operator.
 2. Multifunction remote control.
 3. Remote antenna and mounting kit.
- 2.7 DOOR ASSEMBLY
- A. Steel Full-Vision Sectional Door: Sectional door formed with hinged sections.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Clopay Building Products; a Griffon company.
 - b. Overhead Door Corporation.
 - c. Raynor.
 - d. Wayne-Dalton Corp.
 - e. Windsor Republic Doors.
 - B. Operation Cycles: Not less than 20,000.
 - C. Installed R-Value: 12.0 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu.
 - D. Steel Sections: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet with G90 zinc coating.
 1. Section Thickness: 2 inches.
 2. Exterior-Face, Steel Sheet Thickness: 0.064-inch- nominal coated thickness.
 - a. Surface: Flat.
 - b. Surface: Manufacturer's standard, as indicated on Drawings.
 3. Insulation: Foamed in place.
 4. Interior Facing Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet of 0.022-inch- nominal coated thickness.
 - E. Track Configuration: Standard-lift High-lift track.
 - F. Weatherseals: Fitted to bottom and top and around entire perimeter of door.
 - G. Windows: Approximately 24 by 11 inches, with square corners, and spaced apart the approximate distance as indicated on Drawings; in five rows at height indicated on Drawings; installed with insulated glazing of the following type:
 1. Clear Float Glass: 3 mm thick and complying with ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Quality Q3.
 2. Insulating Glass: Refer to Section "088000 – Glazing" for insulated glass.
 - H. Roller-Tire Material: Manufacturer's standard.
 - I. Locking Devices: Equip door with slide bolt for padlock .
 1. Locking Device Assembly: Single-jamb side locking bars, operable from inside with thumbturn.
 - J. Counterbalance Type: Torsion spring.
 - K. Manual Door Operator: Push-up operation.
 - L. Electric Door Operator:
 1. Usage Classification: Light duty, up to 10 cycles per hour.
 2. Operator Type: Jackshaft, center mounted .
 3. Motor Exposure: Interior, clean, and dry.
 4. Emergency Manual Operation: Chain type.
 5. Obstruction-Detection Device: Automatic photoelectric sensor ; self-monitoring type.
 6. Remote-Control Station: Interior.
 7. Other Equipment: Radio-control system.
 - M. Door Finish:

1. Factory Prime Finish: As indicated on Drawings. Refer to Finish Schedule.
2. Finish of Interior Facing Material: As indicated on Drawings. Refer to Interiors Schedule.

2.8 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.9 STEEL AND GALVANIZED-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Factory Prime Finish: Manufacturer's standard primer, compatible with field-applied finish. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, pretreatment, application, and minimum dry film thickness.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate construction and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine locations of electrical connections.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sectional doors and operating equipment complete with necessary hardware, anchors, inserts, hangers, and equipment supports; according to manufacturer's written instructions and as specified.
- B. Tracks:
 1. Fasten vertical track assembly to opening jambs and framing, spaced not more than 24 inches apart.
 2. Hang horizontal track assembly from structural overhead framing with angles or channel hangers attached to framing by welding or bolting, or both. Provide sway bracing, diagonal bracing, and reinforcement as required for rigid installation of track and door-operating equipment.
 3. Repair galvanized coating on tracks according to ASTM A 780.
- C. Accessibility: Install sectional doors, switches, and controls along accessible routes in compliance with regulatory requirements for accessibility.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICES

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust hardware and moving parts to function smoothly so that doors operate easily, free of warp, twist, or distortion.
- B. Lubricate bearings and sliding parts as recommended by manufacturer.
- C. Adjust doors and seals to provide weathertight fit around entire perimeter.
- D. Align and adjust motors, pulleys, belts, sprockets, chains, and controls according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Touch-up Painting: Immediately after welding galvanized materials, clean welds and abraded galvanized surfaces and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain sectional doors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 083906
TORNADO RESISTANT DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Tornado Shelter Steel Doors.
- B. Tornado Shelter Steel Shutters.
- C. Tornado Shelter Steel Frames.
- D. Tornado Shelter Storm Door Hardware.

1.2 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. The Contract Documents, as defined in Document 007000 - General Conditions and modifications thereto, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other documents.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 034100 - Precast Structural Concrete
 - 2. Section 042000 - Unit Masonry
 - 3. Section 087100 - Door Hardware
 - 4. Section 099100 - Paints and Coatings

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute (ANSI):
 - 1. ANSI A250.8 - SDI-100 Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
 - 2. ANSI A250.10 - Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames.
- B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
 - 1. ASTM A 336 - Standard Specification for Commercial Steel (CS) Sheet, Carbon (0.15 Maximum Percent) Cold-Rolled.
 - 2. ASTM A 653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
- C. ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters:
 - 1. ICC 500-2014 American National Standard
- D. Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA):
 - 1. FEMA 361 - Design and Construction Guidance for Community Shelters.
- E. National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers (NAAMM):
 - 1. NAAMM HMMA 840 - Installation and Storage of Hollow Metal Doors and Frames; The National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Tornado shelter storm doors, frames and hardware shall be provided as an integral FEMA 361/ICC 500 Tested and Certified assembly from a single supplier and installed by a single installer.
- B. Design Requirements:
 - 1. Shelter entry doors and frames shall resist design wind pressures for components and cladding as described in Section 1 and Missile Impact Loads of Section 2 of "National Performance Criteria for Tornado Shelters Federal Emergency Management Agency Mitigation Directorate", latest edition. Only single opening and paired opening doors, and frames that can resist calculated design wind pressures and laboratory tested missile impacts are acceptable.
 - 2. All doors shall have sufficient points of connection to frame to resist design wind pressure and impact loads. All doors will be attached to the frame per the door hardware that the door and frame were tested with.
 - 3. Protective missile resistant barrier is permitted to protect door opening. Design door to resist wind pressures. Size and number of shelter doors shall be determined in accordance with applicable fire safety and building codes.
 - 4. Door systems, both single doors and paired openings, shall be tested and must comply with FEMA 361/ICC 500, and have verifiable third-party conformance test results and be certified by a Nationally Recognized Independent Testing Laboratory such as Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) or Warnock Hersey (ITS).

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Section 013300 - Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.

1. Product Data:
 - a. Doors and Frames: Materials and details of design and construction, hardware locations, reinforcement type and locations, anchorage and fastening methods, and finishes.
 - b. Hardware: Manufacturer's technical product data for each item of hardware. Include information necessary to show compliance with requirements, and include instructions for installation and maintenance of operating parts and finishes.
 2. Hardware Schedule: Submit hardware schedule for tornado shelter storm door hardware groups indicated in this Section.
 3. Shop Drawings: Details of each opening, showing elevations and frame openings. Show provisions for hardware conforming to FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements.
 4. Assurance/Control Submittals:
 - a. Independent Tests: Complete door, frame and hardware assembly shall have been tested and certified by Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) for compliance with FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements.
 - b. Test Reports: Report for design wind pressure and missile impact tests in accordance with National Performance Criteria for Tornado Shelters Federal Emergency Management Agency Mitigation Directorate, latest edition.
 - c. Certificates: Manufacturer's certificate that Products meet or exceed specified requirements.
 - 1) FEMA 361 requirements.
 - 2) ICC 500-2014 requirements.
 - d. Qualification Documentation: Upon request, submit documentation of experience indicating compliance with specified qualification requirements.
- B. Section 01 7800 - Closeout Submittals: Procedures for closeout submittals.
1. Warranty: Submit written warranty with forms complete in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer as specified in this Section.
 2. Door Hardware Inspection Report: Upon request, submit inspection report by AHC certifying that door hardware has been installed in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, has been adjusted and is functioning properly
 3. Installation Certification: Submit written certification of installation on form provided.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Qualifications:
 1. Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing the products FEMA 361/ICC 500 storm doors and hardware as specified in this section with minimum five years documented experience.
 - B. Regulatory Requirements:
 1. Tornado Shelter Door and Frame Construction: Conform to FEMA 361/ICC 500.
 2. Fire Door and Frame Construction: Conform to NFPA 252.
 - a. Listed and labeled by UL as suitable to for the purpose specified and indicated.
 - b. Listed and labeled as conforming to UL 10C.
 - c. Hardware installed on fire-rated doors shall be listed and labeled as conforming to UL 10C.
 - C. Installed Fire Rated Door Assembly: Conform to NFPA 80 for fire rated class as indicated.
 - D. Manufacturer Installation Instructions: Contractor shall maintain current copy of tornado shelter storm door, frame and hardware manufacturer published installation instructions and FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements in Project Field Office and refer to installation instructions at all times during installation.
 - E. Severe Storm Shelter Openings: Provide complete door systems for hurricane or tornado resistant storm shelters and other areas of refuge complying and tested according to FEMA 361, Second Edition (2008), Design and Construction Guidance for Community Safe Rooms; and ICC 500 (2014), ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters.
 - F. Each door and frame will have its own permanent label showing what criteria the door and frame was tested in accordance with. The label will show what independent laboratory tested this assembly. The label will show test pressures both positive and negative in pounds per square foot and the design pressure both positive and negative.
 - G. Single Source for all door hardware is required. Door Hardware that is supplied under sections 08 3906, 087100, and 281300 can be supplied under separate contracts but must all originate from the same manufacturer. No exceptions
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION
- A. Section 01 6000 - Product Requirements: Transport, handle, store, and protect Products.
 - B. Deliver doors in manufacturer's standard labeled protective packaging.
 - C. Accept Products on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage. Return damaged Products and replace with undamaged Products.

- D. Project Field Superintendent shall inspect Products immediately upon delivery to Project Site, determine Product conformance with specified requirements and reject Products not complying with specifications. Project Field Superintendent shall direct that non-complying Products be removed from Project Site immediately.
 - E. Store in accordance with NAAMM HMMA 840.
 - F. Protect with resilient packaging; avoid humidity build-up under coverings; prevent corrosion.
- 1.8 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate the work with door opening construction, door frames and door hardware installation.
- 1.9 WARRANTY
- A. Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals: Procedures for closeout submittals.
 - B. Manufacturer Warranty: Provide one (1) year manufacturer warranty for defects in material and workmanship.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Single Source for Furnishing and Installation: Tornado shelter doors, frames and hardware shall be furnished and installed by tornado shelter door, frame and hardware supplier. Installation by any other entity not permitted.
 - B. Doors and Frames:
 1. Steelcraft Paladin; www.steelcraft.com
- 2.2 TORNADO SHELTER DOORS AND FRAMES
- A. Model:
 1. Steelcraft: Paladin PW14
 - B. Interior Door and Frame Material: ASTM A 366 cold-rolled carbon steel sheet, 14 gage, primed, ready for field painting.
 - C. Pairs of Doors: Provide pairs of doors certified without use of center mullion. Removable center mullion permitted, no center mullion preferred.
 - D. Exterior Door and Frame Material: ASTM A 653 steel sheet, zinc-coated galvanized, 14 gage per manufacturers tested and approved assemblies, ready for field painting.
 - E. Door Core: As required by FEMA 361/ICC 500.
 - F. Door Opening Size: As indicated on Door Schedule. Field measure and verify dimensions of doorframe openings.
 - G. Interior Fire Rated Doors: Provide units listed and labeled by UL.
 1. Fire Rating: Indicated in Door Schedule.
 2. Fire Testing: UL 10C for positive pressure, smoke and draft requirements.
 3. Temperature Rise: Maximum 450 degrees F.
- 2.3 TORNADO SHELTER SHUTTERS AND FRAMES
- A. Model: Four Sided Frames
 1. Steelcraft: Paladin PW Series
 - B. Severe Storm Shelter Openings: Provide complete door systems for hurricane or tornado resistant storm shelters and other areas of refuge complying and tested according to FEMA 361, Second Edition (2008), Design and Construction Guidance for Community Safe Rooms; and ICC 500 (2014), ICC/NSSA Standard for the Design and Construction of Storm Shelters
 - C. Door Core: Manufacturers core that was tested and approved through the testing per ICC 500.
 - D. Door Opening Size: As indicated on Door Schedule. Field measure and verify dimensions of doorframe openings.
- 2.4 DOOR FINISH
- A. Galvanizing: All components hot-dipped zinc-iron alloy coated (galvannealed) in accordance with ASTM A 653, with manufacturer's standard coating thickness.
 - B. Primer: Rust-inhibiting, complying with ANSI A250.10, door manufacturer's standard.
 - C. Field paint as specified in Section 09 9000 - Painting and Coating, color selected by Architect. More than one color may be selected.
- 2.5 DOOR HARDWARE
- A. Hardware:

1. Ives: www.iveshinges.com
 2. Schlage: www.schlage.com
 3. LCN: www.lcncloser.com
 4. Von Duprin: www.vonduprin.com
 5. Zero International: www.zerointernational.com
- B. Tornado Resistance Compliance: Conventional exit devices and tube steel removable mullions to be U.L. listed for windstorm components where applicable. Provide the appropriate hurricane or tornado resistant products that have been independent third party tested, certified, and labeled to meet state and local windstorm building codes applicable to project.
- C. Multi-Point Exit Devices for Severe Storm Shelters Openings: Multi-point exit devices specifically engineered for out-swinging door applications on tornado or hurricane resistant safe shelter rooms. Extra heavy duty steel component construction with each of the latching points automatically activated when the device is locked. The multi-point exit device is approved for usage as part of a complete ICC 500 (2014) and FEMA 361 door, frame and hardware assembly.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Von Duprin WS9827 Series
- D. Multi-Point Locksets, Security: Three-point locking system device engineered for in-swinging and outswing door applications on windstorm safe shelter rooms. Extra heavy duty steel component construction securing the door to the frame at top, bottom and center latch positions. All three latching points are automatically activated when the device is locked.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Schlage LM9000 Series
- E. Hinges, Template Hinges: Provide only template hinges which conform to ANSI A156.7.
1. Hinges approved for usage as part of a complete ICC 500 (2014) and FEMA 361 door, frame and hardware assembly.
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives 5BB1HW Steel
 - b. Ives 5BB1HW Stainless Steel
 - c. Ives 224HD Continuous Geared Hinge
- F. Door Closers; Approved for usage as part of a complete ICC 500 (2014) and FEMA 361 door, frame and hardware assembly.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. LCN 4000 Series
- G. Cylinders and Keying: Keyed cylinders are provided by Section 087100
- H. Perimeter seals, threshold and astragal.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Zero International
- I. Tornado shelter storm door hardware shall be furnished and installed by tornado shelter storm door supplier.
- 2.6 HARDWARE LOCATIONS AND REINFORCEMENTS
- A. Locate hardware on doors and frames in accordance with the system manufacturer's specific location.
 - B. Hardware reinforcements are to be in accordance with the minimum standard gages as listed in SDI-100 and FEMA 361 requirements.
 - C. Doors shall be mortised, reinforced and function holes provided at the factory in accordance with the hardware schedule and templates provided by the hardware supplier.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Section 01 7000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements: verification of existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verification of Conditions: Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive Work.
 1. Verify existing conditions and door frame opening dimensions before starting work.
 2. Verify that door opening sizes and tolerances are acceptable.
 3. Do not install doors in frame openings that are not plumb or are out-of-tolerance for size or alignment.
- C. Report in writing to Architect prevailing conditions that will adversely affect satisfactory execution of the Work of this Section. Do not proceed with Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install doors in metal door frames in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and requirements of FEMA 361 and ICC 500.
- B. Install fire-rated doors in conformance with code requirements for compliance with NFPA 80 and UL 10C.
- C. Coordinate installation of doors with installation of frames and hardware.
- D. Install hardware in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and requirements of FEMA 361 and ICC 500.
- E. Use templates provided by hardware item manufacturer.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Section 014000 - Quality Control: Contractor Quality Control Representative shall perform contractor quality control inspections.
 - 1. Inspect door installation, fit and clearance. Verify required FEMA 361/ICC 500 label.
 - 2. Inspect fire door label for specified fire test ratings and requirements.
 - 3. Inspect door hardware installation and operation for conformance with FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements.
 - 4. Document preparatory, initial and follow-up inspection in Contractor's Test and Inspection Reports.
 - 5. Test and Inspection Reports shall be available to Architect upon request.
- B. Hardware Supplier Field Services: At completion of hardware installation provide an Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) to inspect tornado shelter storm door hardware installation and certify that hardware and installation has been furnished and installed in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions and FEMA 361 requirements.
- C. Correct deficiencies in products and installation found not to be in compliance with Contract Documents.

3.4 ADJUSTING CLEANING

- A. Adjust for smooth and balanced door movement.
- B. Adjust closers for full closure.
- C. Clean doors, frames and hardware immediately after installation.
- D. Clean doors and frames and polish door hardware just before Substantial Completion Inspection.

3.5 HARDWARE SCHEDULES

HARDWARE GROUP

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	MULT PT OFFICE/ENTRY	LM9350BD 17L	626	SCH
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	MATCH EXISTING CORE TYPE X CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	MATCH EXISTING KEY SYSTEM	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP OR P4040XP X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ X ST3596	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	SET	SEALS	188S H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BLK	ZER

Operational Description:

Multipoint Lock. Latchbolt Retracted By Knob/Lever From Either Side Unless Outside Is Made Inoperative By Key Outside Or By Turning Inside Thumbturn. When Outside Is Locked, Latchbolt Is Retracted By Key And Knob/Lever Outside Or By Knob/Lever Inside. Outside Knob/Lever Remains Locked Until Thumbturn Is Returned To Vertical Or Unlocked By Key. Inside Knob/Lever Is Always Free For Immediate Egress. Auxiliary Latch Deadlocks Latchbolt When Door Is Closed.
Self-Closing.

TORNADO SHELTER DOORS, FRAMES & HARDWARE INSTALLATION CERTIFICATION

PROJECT:

LOCATION:

ARCHITECT'S PROJECT NUMBER:

OWNER:

CONTRACTOR: _____

DOOR, FRAME & HARDWARE INSTALLER:

Name: _____

Address: _____

Telephone Number: _____

UPON COMPLETION OF INSTALLATION INSTALLER CERTIFIES THAT:

- A. Installer obtained a current copy of the manufacturer's published installation instructions and FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements for the specific doors, frames and hardware being installed.
- B. Installer reviewed and discussed manufacturer's published installation instructions and FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements with Project Field Superintendent before start of installation.
- C. Installer furnished and installed specified tornado shelter doors, frames and hardware in accordance with the Contract Documents.
- D. Installer installed tornado shelter doors, frames and hardware in conformance with door, frame and hardware manufacturer's published installation instructions and FEMA 361/ICC 500 requirements.
- E. Installer provided door hardware inspection by an AHC and submitted Door Hardware Inspection Report as required by the Contract Documents.

EXECUTED AND DELIVERED this _____ day of _____, 20__.

(Company name)

BY: _____

(Authorized signature)

Subscribed and sworn to before me this _____ day of _____, 20__.

Notary Public

My Commission expires:

Affix Seal

END OF SECTION

SECTION 084113
ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Exterior storefront framing.
 2. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
- 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:
1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
 2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
 3. Failure includes the following:
 - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
 - c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
 - d. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
 - e. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - f. Sealant failure.
 - g. Failure of operating units.
- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Structural Loads:
1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed L/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to L/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch, whichever is smaller.
- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.
- F. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft. .
- G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum

static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.

- H. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating aluminum-framed systems or water appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and water that cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes.
- I. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
 - 2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
 - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
 - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F.
 - 3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
- J. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 53 when tested according to AAMA 1503.
- K. Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having an average U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F when tested according to AAMA 1503.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
 - 2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Other Action Submittals:
 - 1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
 - 2. Include design calculations.
- F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems, indicating compliance with performance requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.
- B. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.
- C. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
 - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for

- review.
 - D. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
 - E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Field testing shall be performed on mockups according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - e. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. EFCO Corporation.
 - 2. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa company.
 - 3. United States Aluminum.
 - 4. Vistawall Architectural Products; The Vistawall Group; a Bluescope Steel company.
 - 5. YKK AP America Inc.
 - 6. Provide aluminum materials with at least 30 percent recycled content.
- 2.2 MATERIALS
- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 - 1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
 - 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
 - 3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
 - 4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308.
- 2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS
- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
 - 1. Construction: Screw spline.
 - 2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
 - 3. Glazing Plane: Center.
 - B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with non-staining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
 - C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
 - 1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
 - 2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.
 - 3. Use exposed fasteners with countersunk Phillips screw heads, fabricated from stainless steel.
 - D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts, complying with ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153.
 - E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
 - F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.
 - 1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L

or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- A. Glazing: As specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
- C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
 - 1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch- thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 - 2. Door Design: Medium stile; 3-1/2-inch nominal width .
 - 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
- B. Entrance Door Hardware: As specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."

2.6 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
 - 3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
 - 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 - 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 - 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
 - 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- C. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- D. Storefront Framing: Fabricate components for assembly using screw-spline system.
- E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
 - 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
 - 1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 - 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- G. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A21, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation

tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure non-movement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.

D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.

F. Install glazing as specified in Division 08 Section "Glazing."

G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

H. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:

1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/4 inch over total length.
2. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
 - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to 1/32 inch.

B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to 1/8 inch.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections.

B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed systems with specified requirements shall take place as follows and in successive phases as indicated on Drawings. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.

1. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft., of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..
2. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure difference of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure difference specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 4.18 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.
3. Water Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, a minimum area of 75 feet by 1 story of aluminum-framed systems designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.

C. Repair or remove work if test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 - E. Aluminum-framed assemblies will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - F. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 085113
ALUMINUM WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes single-hung, aluminum-framed windows for exterior locations.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Performance class designations according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS:
 - 1. HC: Heavy Commercial.
- B. Performance grade number according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS:
 - 1. Design pressure number in pounds force per square foot used to determine the structural test pressure and water test pressure.
- C. Structural Test Pressure: For uniform load structural test, is equivalent to 150 percent of the design pressure.
- D. Minimum Test Size: Smallest size permitted for performance class (gateway test size). Products must be tested at minimum test size or at a size larger than minimum test size to comply with requirements for performance class.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Provide aluminum windows capable of complying with performance requirements indicated, based on testing manufacturer's windows that are representative of those specified, and that are of minimum test size indicated below:
 - 1. Size indicated on Drawings.
- B. Structural Performance: Provide aluminum windows capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing units representative of those indicated for Project that pass AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Uniform Load Structural Test:
 - 1. Design Wind Loads: As indicated on structural drawings or as otherwise determined using design wind loads applicable to Project from basic wind speed indicated in miles per hour, according to ASCE 7, Section 6.5, "Method 2-Analytical Procedure."
 - a. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated on the Structural Drawings.
 - 2. Deflection: Design glass framing system to limit lateral deflections of glass edges to less than 1/175 of glass-edge length or 3/4 inch, whichever is less, at design pressure based on testing performed according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Uniform Load Deflection Test or structural computations.
- C. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, finishes, and operating instructions for each type of aluminum window indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware, attachments to other work, operational clearances, installation details, and the following:
 - 1. Joinery details.
 - 2. Expansion provisions.
 - 3. Flashing and drainage details.
 - 4. Thermal-break details.
 - 5. Glazing details.
 - 6. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer detailing fabrication and

assembly of aluminum windows and used to determine the following:

- a. Structural test pressures and design pressures from wind loads indicated.
 - b. Deflection limitations of glass framing systems.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
1. Include similar Samples of hardware and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Product Schedule: For aluminum windows. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed within the last four years by a qualified testing agency for each type, class, grade, and size of aluminum window. Test results based on use of downsized test units will not be accepted.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.
1. Installer's responsibilities include providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility.
 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for aluminum windows, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating aluminum windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by inclusion in lists and by labels, test reports, and calculations.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum windows through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aluminum windows' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
- E. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of aluminum windows and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 01 Section "Product Requirements." Do not modify size and dimensional requirements.
1. Do not modify intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If modifications are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- F. Fenestration Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, "North American Fenestration Standard Voluntary Performance Specification for Windows, Skylights and Glass Doors," for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.
1. Provide AAMA -certified aluminum windows with an attached label.
- G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass manufacturers and with GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- H. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
1. Build mockup for type(s) of window(s) indicated, in location(s) shown on Drawings.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Verify aluminum window openings by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish opening dimensions and proceed with fabricating aluminum windows without field measurements. Coordinate wall construction to ensure that actual opening dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- 1.8 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
 - b. Structural failures including excessive deflection, water leakage, air infiltration, or condensation.
 - c. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
 - d. Deterioration of metals, other materials, and metal finishes beyond normal weathering.

- e. Failure of insulating glass.
- 2. Warranty Period:
 - a. Window: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Glazing: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Metal Finish: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Boyd Aluminum Manufacturing.
 - 2. Custom Window Company.
 - 3. EFCO Corporation.
 - 4. Kawneer; an Alcoa Company.
 - 5. TRACO.
 - 6. Wausau Window and Wall Systems.
 - 7. YKK AP America Inc.

2.2 WINDOW

- A. Window Operating Type: Single hung and Fixed as indicated on the Drawings.
 - 1. Performance Class and Grade: HC 40.
- B. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 45.
- C. Thermal Transmittance: Provide aluminum windows with a whole-window, U-factor maximum indicated at 15-mph exterior wind velocity and winter condition temperatures when tested according to AAMA 1503.
 - 1. U-Factor: 0.40 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F or less.
- D. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Provide aluminum windows with a whole-window SHGC maximum of 0.40, determined according to NFRC 200 procedures.
- E. Air Infiltration: Maximum rate not more than indicated when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Air Infiltration Test.
 - 1. Maximum Rate: 0.1 cfm/sq. ft. of area at an inward test pressure of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..
- F. Water Resistance: No water leakage as defined in AAMA/WDMA referenced test methods at a water test pressure equaling that indicated, when tested according to AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS, Water Resistance Test.
 - 1. Test Pressure: 15 percent of positive design pressure, but not less than 2.86 lbf/sq. ft. or more than 15 lbf/sq. ft.
 - 2. Test Pressure: 20 percent of positive design pressure, but not more than 15 lbf/sq. ft..

2.3 GLAZING

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E 2190.
 - 1. Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
 - a. Tint: Clear.
 - b. Kind: Fully tempered where indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second or third surface.
- B. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal.
- C. Hardware, General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with adjacent materials; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock windows, and sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
 - 1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- D. Hung Window Hardware:
 - 1. Counterbalancing Mechanism: Complying with AAMA 902, concealed, of size and capacity to hold sash stationary at any open position.
 - 2. Locks and Latches: Allow unobstructed movement of the sash across adjacent sash in direction indicated and operated from the inside only.
 - 3. Tilt Latch: Releasing latch allows sash to pivot about horizontal axis to facilitate cleaning exterior surfaces from the interior.
- E. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Insect Screens:
 - 1. Compliance: ASTM D 3656 and SMA 1201.
 - 2. Screen Cloth: Vinyl-coated fiberglass, 18/16 mesh.

3. Set in aluminum frame fitted to inside of window.
 4. Complete with necessary hardware.
 5. Screen Frame Finish: Baked enamel.
 - a. Color: Match window.
- G. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to the greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Fabricate aluminum windows that are reglazable without dismantling sash or ventilator framing.
- C. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate aluminum windows with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier; located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side; in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.
 1. Provide thermal-break construction that has been in use for not less than three years and has been tested to demonstrate resistance to thermal conductance and condensation and to show adequate strength and security of glass retention.
 2. Provide thermal barriers tested according to AAMA 505; determine the allowable design shear flow per the appendix in AAMA 505.
 3. Provide hardware with low conductivity or nonmetallic material for hardware bridging thermal breaks at frame or vent sash.
- D. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Provide water-shed members above side-hinged ventilators and similar lines of natural water penetration.
- F. Subframes: Provide subframes with anchors for window units as shown, of profile and dimensions indicated but not less than 0.062-inch- thick extruded aluminum. Miter or cope corners, and weld and dress smooth with concealed mechanical joint fasteners. Finish to match window units. Provide subframes capable of withstanding design loads of window units.
- G. Glazing Stops: Provide snap-on glazing stops coordinated with Division 08 Section "Glazing" and glazing system indicated. Provide glazing stops to match sash and ventilator frames.

2.5 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure a coordinated, weathertight window installation.
 1. Masonry Surfaces: Visibly dry and free of excess mortar, sand, and other construction debris.
 2. Metal Surfaces: Dry; clean; free of grease, oil, dirt, rust, corrosion, and welding slag; without sharp edges or offsets at joints.
 3. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with Drawings, Shop Drawings, and manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows,

- hardware, accessories, and other components.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction.
- C. Set sill members in bed of sealant or with gaskets, as indicated, for weathertight construction.
- D. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- E. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
 - 1. Testing and inspecting agency will interpret tests and state in each report whether tested work complies with or deviates from requirements.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of installed windows shall take place as follows:
 - 1. Testing Methodology: Testing of windows for air infiltration and water resistance shall be performed according to AAMA 502, Test Method A, by applying same test pressures required to determine compliance with AAMA/WDMA 101/I.S.2/NAFS in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - 2. Testing Extent: Three windows as selected by Architect and a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency. Windows shall be tested immediately after installation.
 - 3. Test Reports: Shall be prepared according to AAMA 502.
- C. Remove and replace noncomplying aluminum window and retest as specified above.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.4 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust operating sashes, screens, hardware and accessories for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure. Lubricate hardware and moving parts.
- B. Clean aluminum surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- C. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. In addition, monitor window surfaces adjacent to and below exterior concrete and masonry surfaces during construction for presence of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, stains, or other contaminants. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain window operating system. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 085653
SECURITY WINDOWS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Fixed, transaction security windows.
- 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS
- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For security windows.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Product test reports.
- C. Anchor inspection reports.
- D. Field quality-control reports.
- E. Sample warranty.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
 2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
 3. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."
- 1.6 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace security windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 FIXED, TRANSACTION SECURITY WINDOWS
- A. Provide fixed, transaction security windows with operable sash or ventilator capable of allowing transfer of currency and documents.
1. Basis-Of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Fixed Transaction Window with Deal Trey and Transaction Counter as manufactured by Transparent Ballistic Solutions Inc. of Michigan, or provide comparable products by one of the following:
 - a. C.R. Laurence Co., Inc.
 - b. Krieger Specialty Products Company.
 - c. Ross Technology Corporation.
 2. For substitution requests, refer to Section "012500 - Substitution Procedures".
- B. Configuration: One fixed-glazed panel.
- C. Framing: Fabricate perimeter framing, mullions, and glazing stops from stainless steel as follows:
1. Profile: Manufacturer's standard, with minimum face dimension indicated.
 - a. Minimum Face Dimension: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Depth: Manufacturer's standard.
- D. Head and Jamb Framing: Designed for sealant glazing.
- E. Channel-Frame Sill: Formed from stainless steel and designed for sealant glazing.
1. Transaction Counter: Stainless steel, 18 inches (457 mm) deep by width of security window, with integral deal tray centered in opening.
- F. Glazing and Glazing Materials: Refer to Section "088000 - Glazing".
- G. Glazing Meeting Edges: Polished glazing.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate security windows to provide a complete system for assembly of components and anchorage of window units.
 - 1. Provide units that are reglazable from the secure side without dismantling the attack side of framing.
 - 2. Prepare security windows for field glazing unless preglazing at the factory is indicated.
- B. Framing: Miter or cope corners the full depth of framing; weld and dress smooth.
 - 1. Fabricate framing with manufacturer's standard, internal opaque armoring in thicknesses required for security windows to comply with ballistics-resistance performance indicated.
- C. Glazing Stops: Finish glazing stops to match security window framing.
 - 1. Attack-Side (Exterior) Glazing Stops: Welded or integral to framing.
 - 2. Secure-Side (Interior) Glazing Stops: Removable, coordinated with glazing indicated.
- D. Welding: Weld components to comply with referenced AWS standard. To greatest extent possible, weld before finishing and in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- E. Factory-cut openings in glazing for speaking apertures.
- F. Preglazed Fabrication: Preglaze window units at factory, where required for applications indicated. Installation orientation of glazing to meet performance requirements. Comply with requirements in Section "088000 – Glazing".
- G. Weather Stripping: Factory applied.

2.3 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 - 1. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Recessed Deal Trays: Formed from stainless steel; fabricated in curved shape with exposed flanges for recessed installation into horizontal surface.
- B. Concealed Bolts: ASTM A307, Grade A unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
- D. Glazing Strips and Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
 - 1. Compression Type: Molded EPDM or neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM D2000, Designations 2BC415 to 3BC620; molded PVC gaskets complying with ASTM D2287; or molded, expanded EPDM or neoprene gaskets complying with ASTM C509, Grade 4.
- E. Miscellaneous Glazing Materials: Provide material, size, and shape complying with requirements of glass manufacturers and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- F. Anchors, Clips, and Window Accessories: Stainless steel; hot-dip, zinc-coated steel or iron, complying with ASTM B633; provide sufficient strength to withstand design pressures indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine roughing-in for embedded and built-in anchors to verify actual locations of security window connections before security window installation.
- B. Inspect built-in and cast-in anchor installations, before installing security windows, to verify that anchor installations comply with requirements. Prepare inspection reports.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing security windows to in-place construction. Include threaded fasteners for inserts, security fasteners, and other connectors.
- B. Glazed Framing: Provide sealant-glazed framing. Comply with installation requirements in Section 088853 "Security Glazing."
- C. Removable Glazing Stops and Trim: Fasten components with security fasteners.
- D. Fasteners: Install security windows using fasteners recommended by manufacturer with head style appropriate for installation requirements, strength, and finish of adjacent materials. Provide stainless-steel fasteners in stainless-steel materials.
- E. Sealants: Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for installing sealants, fillers, and gaskets.
 - 1. Set continuous sill members and flashing in a full sealant bed to provide weathertight construction unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Seal frame perimeter with sealant to provide weathertight construction unless otherwise indicated.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect installed products to verify compliance with requirements. Prepare inspection reports and indicate compliance with and deviations from the Contract Documents.
- B. Prepare field quality-control certification that states installed products and their installation comply with requirements in the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 087100 - FINISH HARDWARE**PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Section Includes: Provide all items of finish hardware required to adequately trim, hang, and operate all doors, as is hereinafter specified and listed in the Hardware Schedule.
1. Provide hardware for doors and frames of unusual profile or shape or other special conditions.
 2. Provide all necessary standard and special fasteners, screws, bolts, expansion shields or anchors to properly secure hardware to its intended door, frame, or other surface.

1.2 REFERENCES

- A. The following reference standards and model code documents shall be used in estimating and detailing door hardware, and shall be considered as a standard of quality, function, and performance, as applicable:
1. I.B.C. International Building Code (current year adopted).
 2. NFPA-80 Fire Doors & Windows (current year adopted).
 3. NFPA-101 Life Safety Code (current year adopted).
 4. NFPA-105 Smoke Control Door Assembly. (current year adopted)
 5. ANSI-117.1 1992 Edition Providing Accessibility and Usability for Physically Handicapped People.
 6. A.D.A.A.G Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines.
 7. T.A.S. Texas Accessibility Standards.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Section 01 33 00.
- B. Product Data: Provide a catalog cut sheet, clearly marked and identified, illustrating and describing each product included in the Hardware Schedule.
1. Include construction and installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
 2. Formulate catalog cut sheets into sets and include a set with each copy of the Hardware Schedule submitted.
- C. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of Architectural Hardware Consultant, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final Door Hardware Schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.
1. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule."
 2. Organization: Organize the Door Hardware Schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening.
 3. Content: Include the following information:
 - a. Type, style, function, size, label, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
 - b. Complete designations of every item required for each door or opening including name and manufacturer.
 - c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
 - d. Location of each door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule. Use same scheduling sequence and format and use same door numbers and hardware set numbers as in the Contract Documents.
 - e. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
 - f. Mounting locations for door hardware.

- g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
 - h. Description of each electrified door hardware function, including location, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems.
4. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final Door Hardware Schedule at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the Door Hardware Schedule must precede fabrication of other Work that is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the Door Hardware Schedule.
- D. Samples for Verification: If so requested by the Architect, provide a sample of any product or item requested, properly marked and tagged, for the opening for which it is intended.
- E. Keying: Provide a keying schedule, listing the levels of keying, (GGMK, GKD, MKD or KA) as well as an explanation of the key system's function, the key symbols used and the numbers of the doors controlled. Provide in conjunction with the Door Index/Keying Schedule (which lists the door number, schedule heading, lock type and individual key symbol and remarks or special instructions) mentioned in above. Project shall be Masterkeyed and/or Grand Masterkeyed and provide two (2) keys per lockset or cylinder.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of door hardware to include in maintenance manuals. Provide latest, revised and updated schedule of finish hardware, complete with catalog cuts and keying schedule. In addition, furnish one (1) copy of maintenance and parts manuals for those items for which they are readily available and normally provided.
1. Submit in accordance with provisions of Section 01 78 23.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Substitutions: Request for substitutions for alternative hardware items will not be accepted on this Project unless specifically indicated. Specification indicates one (1) specified product, listed hereinafter in the Hardware Schedule, and two (2) acceptable alternative manufacturers for that product. If any specified product is listed as a "No Substitution" product, only that specified product shall be provided as indicated.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has completed door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- C. Supplier Qualifications: Door hardware supplier with warehousing facilities in Project's vicinity and who is or employs a qualified Architectural Hardware Consultant, available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
1. The hardware supplier shall be engaged regularly in the furnishing, delivery and servicing of contract builder's hardware and must be experienced and knowledgeable in all phases of estimating, detailing, scheduling, masterkeying, shipping and installation practices.
 2. When electro-mechanical or electronic hardware is supplied, a qualified individual with a minimum five- (5) year's experience shall be available for assistance.
- D. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: A person who is currently certified by the Door and Hardware Institute as an Architectural Hardware Consultant and who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware from a single manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with provisions of the following:
1. Provide hardware that complies with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," and ANSI A117.1.

- G. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door hardware for assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 252.
- H. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- I. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination." Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
 - 2. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
 - 3. Requirements for key control system.
 - 4. Address for delivery of keys.
 - 5. Location of Key Cabinet.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Marking and Packaging: All items of hardware shall be delivered to the site in manufacturer's original cartons or boxes. Each item of hardware shall be marked with the abbreviation set forth on the Shop Drawings to ensure that the product reaches its installation destination without needing specific hardware product number knowledge.
- B. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project site.
- C. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Door Hardware Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing door hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

1.8 MAINTENANCE

- A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.
- B. Maintenance Service: If there are any products listed hereinafter that normally require a maintenance or service contract, provide the Owner and Architect with details and costs of standard maintenance or service contract.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in Part 3 "Hardware Schedule" Article. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:
 - 1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in Part 3 "Hardware Schedule" Article.

- B. Product manufacturers listed with an asterisk (*) denote the specified manufacturers listed in the Hardware Schedule. The remaining two (2) listed manufacturers will be acceptable substitutions. If only one manufacturer is listed this shall be considered a "No Substitution" specification as set forth in "Quality Assurance" Article, for that particular item.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Screws and Fasteners: Provide all screws and fasteners of the proper size and type to properly anchor or attach the item of hardware scheduled. Provide all fasteners with Phillips heads, unless security type screws (spanner-head or torx-head) are hereinafter specified.
- B. Hinges: Provide as follows:
1. On doors to exterior openings and main corridor doors, and other doors of high frequency use, provide a continuous, gear type hinge of appropriate weight.
 2. Where regular ball bearing hinges are listed for other doors, provide one hinge for each 30-inch of door height.
 3. The width of the hinges shall be sufficient to clear all trim that is mounted to the doorframe.
 4. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Stanley.
 - c. Hager.
- C. Continuous Hinges: Continuous hinges shall consist of three (3)-interlocking extrusions in a pinless assembly applied to the full height of the door. All continuous geared hinges shall be manufactured to template screw locations and be non-handed. All mortise hinges and half mortise hinges shall cover and wrap the door edge completely. Doorframe heads shall be extended for clearance on full or half mortise hinges versus downsizing doors for ease of repair and replacement. All frames shall be properly reinforced per manufacturer's standards.
1. Standard warranty shall be for the life of opening.
 2. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Select.
 - c. Pemko.
- D. Locks: All locks shall incorporate a six pin tumbler system and be keyed to a existing GRANDMASTER SYSTEM as not to breach security of system in place. Keying system must be guaranteed of no duplication of existing change keys, master keys or grandmaster keys located in this Project. All keying shall be coordinated with Owner. Locks shall be Grade 1 mortise and/or cylindrical as hereinafter listed in the Hardware Schedule.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Best*
 - b. Schlage.
- E. Lock Trim: Cylindrical/mortise locks are to be furnished with lever handle trim, as is hereinafter listed in the Hardware Schedule.
- F. Flush Bolts: Manual flush bolts to have 12-inch rods for doors 7'-6". Doors over 7'-6" high shall have bolts with top rods of 18 inch or 24 inch to allow ease of access to bolt lever. Furnish dust proof strikes for all bottom bolts.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco.
 - c. Rockwood.
- G. Exit Devices: Exit Devices shall be rim, mortise or vertical rod type as called for in the Hardware Schedule. Devices shall be of the touch-pad type as is hereinafter specified in the Hardware Schedule. Exit devices shall be constructed to allow cylinder to be removed and rekeyed without removing the device from the door either by removable core cylinders or construction of exit device. Exit devices shall be constructed to allow the conversion from one function to another simply within

lock stile case and selecting proper outside trim as specified hereinafter in the Hardware Schedule. Devices shall be furnished with outside trim lever handles matching locks.

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Von Duprin* (No Substitution)
- H. Door Closers: Door closers shall be of cast iron and rectangular design, furnished with a full cover. Provide complete with backcheck, delayed action and hold-open as indicated. Closers shall be mounted out of the line of sight wherever possible (i.e., room side of corridor doors, etc.) with parallel arm mounting on out-swinging doors. Mount closers to jamb or on brackets and/or drop plates, where special conditions require.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. LCN*
- I. Push Plates: Push plates are to be .050 brass, bronze or stainless steel with four (4) beveled edges, drilled and countersunk for screws, as is hereinafter specified in the Hardware Schedule.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco.
 - c. Hager.
- J. Door Pulls: Door pulls shall be ADA compliant with a 2 1/2 inch projection from back of pull to face of door. All door pulls shall be thru-bolted or back-to-back mounted.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Rockwood*.
 - c. Frascio.
- K. Protective Plates: Protective plates shall be mop (6"), kick (10") or armor (34") and shall be minimum .050 thick brass, bronze, or stainless steel, with three (3) beveled edges, drilled and countersunk for screws. Plates shall be mounted to avoid louvers and/or glass kits.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Trimco.
 - c. Hager.
- L. Door Stops and Holders: Where a door strikes a wall at approximately 90 degrees, a suitable door stop shall be provided, either a wall bumper or floor stop. Where doors are undercut, provide floor stops with adequate height to properly stop the door. If door would not otherwise strike a wall, an overhead stop shall be provided. In-wall blocking for wall bumpers at stud walls shall be provided in accordance with Section 06 10 53. Provide reinforcing in frame and door for overhead stops.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Ives*
 - b. Hager.
 - c. Glynn-Johnson.
- M. Thresholds and Weatherstrip: Weatherstripping to have aluminum housing, specified insert, and elongated mounting holes. Door sweeps shall be surface mounted, of aluminum/stainless steel housing with specified insert. Overhead drip caps to be of aluminum, have a 2 1/2-inch projection and be 4 inches wider than the door opening. Thresholds shall be of saddle type with no more than 1/2 inch rise. Weatherstripping and smoke seals shall be surface-mounted on doorstop and have 1/4" adjustment slots.
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Zero*
 - b. Hager.
 - c. NGP.
- N. Smoke Gasket: Smoke gasket shall comply with door and frame manufacturers for positive pressure tests for fire and smoke. (UBC 7-2, Parts 1 & 2/UL10C).
1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Zero*
 - b. Reese.

- c. Pemko.

2.3 FINISHES

- A. Hardware finishes shall match and be maintained to BHMA symbols, as indicated in the Hardware Schedule. Strict adherence to base metals and finish is required.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

2.4 KEYING

- A. Keying of locks and cylinders throughout project shall be scheduled through a key meeting with Architect, Owner, and hardware supplier. Key schedule shall be prepared and submitted to the Owner for approval. Copies of final key schedule with the bitting instructions shall be submitted as part of the Project Record Documents.

2.5 KEY CONTROL

- A. Provide key cabinet(s) manufactured by of sufficient capacity to handle all keys, plus 50 percent expansion. Provide key control cross-reference chart and accountability (sign-out) tags.
 - 1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - a. Telkee*
 - b. Lund.
 - c. Key Control Systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Steel Doors and Frames: Comply with DHI A115 series.
 - 1. Surface-Applied Door Hardware: Drill and tap doors and frames according to SDI 107 or ANSI A250.6, whichever is more stringent.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with DHI A115-W series.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall be by a qualified installer with a minimum five (5) year's experience in the installation of commercial grade hardware. Manufacturer's instructions shall dictate templating and installation.
- B. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:
 - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - 2. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."

- C. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 09 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
 - 1. Set units level, plumb, and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrates as necessary for proper installation and operation.
 - 2. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.
 - D. Key Control System: Place keys on markers and hooks in key control system cabinet, as determined by final keying schedule.
 - E. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings. Verify location with Architect prior to installation.
 - F. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Perform final inspection with hardware installer and hardware supplier present to ensure correct installation and operation, and check for any damaged or defective items. Observe and inspect that all hardware has been installed to its correct destination in proper working order.
 - B. Independent Architectural Hardware Consultant: Owner reserves the right to engage a qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform a separate independent inspection and to prepare an inspection report.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.
 - 1. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.
 - 2. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
 - 3. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period so that, from an open position of 70 degrees, the door will take at least 3 seconds to move to a point 3 inches (75 mm) from the latch, measured to the leading edge of the door.
 - B. At completion of the installation and prior to Substantial Completion, make final adjustments to door closures and other items of hardware. Leave all hardware clean and fully operable. Should any item be found to be defective, it shall be repaired or replaced as directed.
 - C. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant shall examine and readjust, including adjusting operating forces, each item of door hardware as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.
- 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION
- A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
 - B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.
 - C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain door hardware and door hardware finishes. Refer to Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training."

3.8 HARDWARE SCHEDULE

- A. Provide hardware for each door to comply with requirements of this section. Include the cost for hardware set C715 for any doors that have not been assigned hardware sets.

OPT0122352

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 001

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	MORTISE CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	NOTE	REMAINDER OF HARDWARE BY DOOR MANUFACTURER		

-COORDINATE HARDWARE WITH DOOR MFR.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 002

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
		NOTE	CASED OPENING, NO HARDWARE		

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 103

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ENTRY LOCK	9K-AB-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 201

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	9K-D-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 210C

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	SET	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P/FB61P AS REQ	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	9K-D-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	OH STOP	900S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER
1	EA	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET) HEIGHT AS REQUIRED (OMIT @ NON-RATED DOORS)	AA	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 301

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	9K-L-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 303G

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	9K-L-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
2	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (PROVIDE DOUBLE ROW)	BK	ZER
1	EA	DOOR BOTTOM	360AA-Z49 LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	164A LENGTH AS REQ (OMIT @ NON-CARPETED LOCATIONS)	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 391

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	9K-L-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X SRI X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 391C

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	9K-L-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X SRI X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 397

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	9K-L-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	OH STOP	900S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X SRI X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 503

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	9K-R-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 584

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	SET	AUTO FLUSH BOLT	FB31P/FB41P AS REQ	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	626	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	9K-R-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL X MB X HW PREPS X LENGTH AS REQUIRED	628	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET) HEIGHT AS REQUIRED	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 585

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	9K-R-15D (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 715A

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY HEIGHT AS REQ	628	IVE
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	33A-NL-OP LENGTH AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190-O 10"	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 731G

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	99-L-BE LENGTH AS REQ (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	VON
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
2	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (PROVIDE DOUBLE ROW)	BK	ZER
1	EA	DOOR BOTTOM	360AA-Z49 LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	164A LENGTH AS REQ (OMIT @ NON-CARPETED LOCATIONS)	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 785

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	99-L LENGTH AS REQ (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 801

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PUSH PLATE	8200 4" X 16"	630	IVE
1	EA	PULL PLATE	8303 10" 4"X16"	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
3	EA	SILENCER	SR64	GRY	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C201

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	652	IVE
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	9K-DEU-15D-RQE (FAIL SECURE) (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C201C

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	652	IVE
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	9K-DEU-15D-RQE (FAIL SECURE) (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C284IS

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
5	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	652	IVE
1	SET	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P/FB61P AS REQ	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP2	626	IVE
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	9K-DEU-15D-RQE (FAIL SECURE) (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
2	EA	OH STOP	900S SERIES X SIZE & MOUNTING AS REQ	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	MEETING STILE	8193AA (2 PCS - 1 SET) HEIGHT AS REQUIRED	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C285

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	630	IVE
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	9K-DEU-15D-RQE (FAIL SECURE) (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	BES
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE LEVER.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C701G

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	652	IVE
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-99-L-E996-FSE-CON (FAIL SECURE) LENGTH AS REQ (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
2	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (PROVIDE DOUBLE ROW)	BK	ZER
1	EA	DOOR BOTTOM	360AA-Z49 LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	164A LENGTH AS REQ (OMIT @ NON- CARPETED LOCATIONS)	A	ZER
1	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W (CONNECTION LEADS)		SCH
1	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PAD.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C715

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-99-NL-CON LENGTH AS REQ.	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142A DW + 4"	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER
1	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W (CONNECTION LEADS)		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PAD.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C715A

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	112XY EPT HEIGHT AS REQ	628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-QEL-33A-NL-OP-CON LENGTH AS REQ	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190-O 10"	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	SET	SEAL	PERIMETER SEAL BY FRAME MANUFACTURER		
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8198AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	65A LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER
1	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W (CONNECTION LEADS)		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PAD.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C785

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	630	IVE
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-99-L-E996-FSE-CON (FAIL SECURE) LENGTH AS REQ (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER
1	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W (CONNECTION LEADS)		SCH
1	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PAD.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. C785I

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 CON TW8	652	IVE
1	EA	RIM CYLINDER	TYPE AS REQ W/ KEYED CONST. CORE	626	BES
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	RX-99-L-E996-FSE-CON (FAIL SECURE) LENGTH AS REQ (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	VON
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	8193AA LENGTH AS REQ	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	328AA H & J	AA	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A WIDTH X LENGTH AS REQ	A	ZER
1	EA	HARNESS (IN DOOR)	ALLEGION CONNECT TYPE & LENGTH AS REQ		SCH
1	EA	HARNESS (TO POWER SUPPLY)	CON-6W (CONNECTION LEADS)		SCH
1	EA	CREDENTIAL READER	CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05 TYPE AS REQ	WHT	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	POWER SUPPLY FOR CREDENTIAL READER BY ANOTHER SECTION		
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 (COORDINATE POWER SUPPLIES WITH SECURITY PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL. OMIT WHERE PROVIDED BY SECURITY)	LGR	SCE

-INGRESS BY THE CARD READER OR KEY OVERRIDE.

-EGRESS BY THE PUSH PAD.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. W391

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	MULT PT OFFICE/ENTRY	LM9350HD 06A L583-363 L283-721 (VERIFY LEVER WITH OWNER PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL)	626	SCH
1	EA	PERMANENT CORE	PROVIDED BY OWNER	626	BES
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP RW/PA X SRI X MTG BRKT, SPCR & PLATE AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	PROTECTION PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CCV	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188S PSA H & J (USE SILENCERS @ NON-RATED DOORS)	BK	ZER

-PROVIDE DOOR (STEELCRAFT PALADIN SERIES), FRAME AND HARDWARE AS REQUIRED TO MEET COMPLETE FEMA 361/ICC 500 TESTED ASSEMBLY.

-COORDINATE DOOR, FRAME AND HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS PRIOR TO SUBMITTAL.

END OF SECTION

Door/Hardware Index

Door Numbers	HwSet#
01	715A
02	C715A
03	C715A
04	C715
05	001
06	001
07	001
08	001
09	C715
10	C715
11	001
12	001
13	001
14	001
15	001
16	C785I
17	503
18	503
19	731G
20	210C
21	301
22	C701G
23	303G
24	103
25	391C
26	801
27	W391
28	801
29	391
30	201
31	C201
32	C201
33	C201C
34	002
35	801
36	503
37	303G
38	303G
39	397
40	801
41	801
42	303G
43	303G
44	303G
45	303G
46	303G
47	303G

Door/Hardware Index

Door Numbers	HwSet#
48	731G
49	C785
50	785
51	301
52	584
53	584
54	584
55	C785
56	585
57	C285
58	C285
59	C284IS

SECTION 088000**GLAZING****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes glazing for the following products and applications, including those specified in other Sections where glazing requirements are specified by reference to this Section:
 1. Windows.
 2. Doors.
 3. Storefront framing.
 4. Interior borrowed lites.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Delegated Design: Design glass, including comprehensive engineering analysis according to ASTM E 1300 by a qualified professional engineer, using the following design criteria:
 1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph.
 3. Vertical Glazing: For glass surfaces sloped 15 degrees or less from vertical, design glass to resist design wind pressure based on glass type factors for short-duration load.
 4. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
 5. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each glass product and glazing material indicated.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.
 1. Tinted glass.
 2. Insulating glass.
- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For gaskets, sealants, and colored spacers, in 12-inch lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- F. Product Certificates: For glass and glazing products, from manufacturer.
- G. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved and certified by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- E. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain insulating glass from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
- F. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.
- G. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below, unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 1. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."
- H. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing labeling is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.
- I. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.
- J. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Install glazing in mockups specified in Division 08 Section "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts and Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- K. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
 - 1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
 - 2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written recommendations for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
 - 1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or below 40 deg F.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer's standard form in which coated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Laminated Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which laminated-glass manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Insulating Glass: Manufacturer's standard form in which insulating-glass manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.
 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass lites in thicknesses as needed to comply with requirements indicated.
 1. Minimum Glass Thickness for Exterior Lites: Not less than 6.0 mm.
- B. Strength: Where float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, Kind HS heat-treated float glass, or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened glass is indicated, provide Kind HS heat-treated float glass or Kind FT heat-treated float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered glass is indicated, provide Kind FT heat-treated float glass.
- C. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
 1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6.0 mm thick.
 2. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
 3. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
 4. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
 5. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS

- A. Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Quality-Q3, Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Heat-Treated Float Glass: ASTM C 1048; Kind: Fully tempered; Type I; Quality-Q3; Class I (clear) unless otherwise indicated; of kind and condition indicated.
 1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For uncoated glass, comply with requirements for Condition A.
 3. For coated vision glass, comply with requirements for Condition C (other coated glass).

2.3 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Basis-Of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Solar Grey Low-E glass as manufactured by Vitro Architectural Glass, or provide comparable products by one of the following:
 1. Oldcastle.
 2. Viracon.
- B. For substitution requests, refer to Section 012500 – Substitution Procedures".
- C. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190, and complying with other requirements specified.
 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary.
 2. Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or blend of both.
- D. Glass: Comply with applicable requirements in "Glass Products" Article as indicated by designations in "Insulating-Glass Types" Article.

2.4 GLAZING GASKETS

- A. Dense Compression Gaskets: Molded or extruded gaskets of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal, made from one of the following:
 1. Neoprene complying with ASTM C 864.
 2. EPDM complying with ASTM C 864.
 3. Silicone complying with ASTM C 1115.
 4. Thermoplastic polyolefin rubber complying with ASTM C 1115.

2.5 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
1. Compatibility: Provide glazing sealants that are compatible with one another and with other materials they will contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
 2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
 3. VOC Content: For sealants used inside of the weatherproofing system, not more than 250 g/L when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D.
 4. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Use NT.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 790.
 - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilPruf LM SCS2700.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 890.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 1.
- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Dow Corning Corporation; 795.
 - b. GE Advanced Materials - Silicones; SilGlaze II SCS2800.
 - c. Pecora Corporation; 864.
 - d. Tremco Incorporated; Spectrem 2.

2.6 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; non-staining and non-migrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).
- F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C 1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.8 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.
- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

2.9 MONOLITHIC-GLASS TYPES

- A. Glass Type G1: Clear, fully tempered float glass.
1. Thickness: 6.0 mm.
 2. Provide safety glazing labeling.

2.10 INSULATING-GLASS TYPES

- A. Glass Type G2: Low-e-coated, clear insulating glass.

1. Basis-Of-Design: subject to compliance with requirements, provide SolarBan 90 Clear Low-E Glass by Avitru Architectural Glass.
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
3. Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 6.0 mm.
4. Outdoor Lite: Clear, Tempered glass.
5. Interspace Content: Air.
6. Indoor Lite: Heat-strengthened float glass or Fully tempered float glass, as required by code.
7. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface.
8. Visible Light Transmittance: 51 percent minimum.
9. Exterior Reflectance: 12 percent.
10. Interior Reflectance: 19 percent.
11. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: 0.29 maximum.
12. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: 0.23 maximum.
13. Provide safety glazing labeling.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
 1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
 2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
 3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
 4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that will leave visible marks in the completed work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Adjust glazing channel dimensions as required by Project conditions during installation to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.
- C. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass is glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass and impair performance and appearance.
- D. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- E. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- F. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- G. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
 1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
 2. Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.
- H. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- I. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- J. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- K. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on

opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.

- L. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first and then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs and then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect exterior glass from damage immediately after installation by attaching crossed streamers to framing held away from glass. Do not apply markers to glass surface. Remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- C. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains; remove as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.
- D. Remove and replace glass that is broken, chipped, cracked, or abraded or that is damaged from natural causes, accidents, and vandalism, during construction period.
- E. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces in each area of Project not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 088300**MIRRORS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of silvered flat glass mirrors:
 - 1. Annealed monolithic glass mirrors.
 - 2. Film-backed Tempered glass mirrors qualifying as safety glazing.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. Mirrors. Include description of materials and process used to produce each type of silvered flat glass mirror specified that indicates sources of glass, glass coating components, edge sealer, and quality-control provisions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include mirror elevations, edge details, mirror hardware, and attachments to other work.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of mirror and mirror mastic, from manufacturer.
- D. Maintenance Data: For mirrors to include in maintenance manuals.
- E. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- B. Source Limitations for Mirrors: Obtain mirrors from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Mirror Accessories: Obtain mirror glazing accessories from single source.
- D. Glazing Publications: Comply with the following published recommendations:
 - 1. GANA's "Glazing Manual" unless more stringent requirements are indicated. Refer to this publication for definitions of glass and glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
 - 2. GANA Mirror Division's "Mirrors, Handle with Extreme Care: Tips for the Professional on the Care and Handling of Mirrors."
- E. Safety Glazing Products: For film-backed tempered mirrors, provide products complying with testing requirements in 16 CFR 1201 for Category II materials.
- F. Preconstruction Mirror Mastic Compatibility Test: Submit mirror mastic products to mirror manufacturer for testing to determine compatibility of mastic with mirror backing film and substrates on which mirrors are installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect mirrors according to mirror manufacturer's written instructions and as needed to prevent damage to mirrors from moisture, condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions for shipping, storing, and handling mirrors as needed to prevent deterioration of silvering, damage to edges, and abrasion of glass surfaces and applied coatings. Store indoors.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install mirrors until ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels indicated for final occupancy.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which mirror manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of mirrors is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to mirror breakage or to maintaining and cleaning mirrors contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include discoloration, black spots, and clouding of the silver film.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SILVERED FLAT GLASS MIRRORS
- A. Glass Mirrors, General: ASTM C 1503; manufactured using copper-free, low-lead mirror coating process.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arch Aluminum & Glass Co., Inc.
 - b. Avalon Glass and Mirror Company.
 - c. Binswanger Mirror; a division of Vitro America, Inc.
 - d. Guardian Industries.
 - e. Virginia Mirror Company, Inc.
 - B. Clear Glass: Mirror Select Quality.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.
 - C. Tempered Clear Glass: Mirror Glazing Quality, for blemish requirements; and comply with ASTM C 1048 for Kind FT, Condition A, tempered float glass before silver coating is applied.
 - 1. Nominal Thickness: 6.0 mm.
- 2.2 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
 - B. Mirror Mastic: An adhesive setting compound, asbestos-free, produced specifically for setting mirrors and certified by both mirror manufacturer and mastic manufacturer as compatible with glass coating and substrates on which mirrors will be installed.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. OSI Sealants, Inc.
 - b. Palmer Products Corporation.
 - c. Pecora Corporation.
 - C. Film Backing for Safety Mirrors: Film backing and pressure-sensitive adhesive; both compatible with mirror backing paint as certified by mirror manufacturer.
- 2.3 FABRICATION
- A. Mirror Sizes: To suit Project conditions, and before tempering, cut mirrors to final sizes and shapes.
 - B. Cutouts: Fabricate cutouts before tempering for notches and holes in mirrors without marring visible surfaces. Locate and size cutouts so they fit closely around penetrations in mirrors.
 - C. Mirror Edge Treatment: Flat polished.
 - 1. Seal edges of mirrors with edge sealer after edge treatment to prevent chemical or atmospheric penetration of glass coating.
 - 2. Require mirror manufacturer to perform edge treatment and sealing in factory immediately after cutting to final sizes.
 - D. Film-Backed Safety Mirrors: Apply film backing with adhesive coating over mirror backing paint as recommended in writing by film-backing manufacturer to produce a surface free of bubbles, blisters, and other imperfections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, over which mirrors are to be mounted, with Installer present, for compliance with installation tolerances, substrate preparation, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - B. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility of mirror mastic with existing finishes or primers.
 - C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
- A. Comply with mastic manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparation of substrates, including coating substrates with mastic manufacturer's special bond coating where applicable.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION
- A. General: Install mirrors to comply with mirror manufacturer's written instructions and with referenced GANA publications. Mount mirrors accurately in place in a manner that avoids distorting reflected images.
 - B. Provide a minimum air space of 1/8 inch between back of mirrors and mounting surface for air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
 - 1. Wall-Mounted Mirrors: Install mirrors with mastic.
 - 2. Install mastic as follows:

- a. Apply barrier coat to mirror backing where approved in writing by manufacturers of mirrors and backing material.
- b. Apply mastic to comply with mastic manufacturer's written instructions for coverage and to allow air circulation between back of mirrors and face of mounting surface.
- c. After mastic is applied, align mirrors and press into place while maintaining a minimum air space of 1/8 inch between back of mirrors and mounting surface.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect mirrors from breakage and contaminating substances resulting from construction operations.
- B. Do not permit edges of mirrors to be exposed to standing water.
- C. Maintain environmental conditions that will prevent mirrors from being exposed to moisture from condensation or other sources for continuous periods of time.
- D. Wash exposed surface of mirrors not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash mirrors as recommended in writing by mirror manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 089000
LOUVERS AND VENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fixed, extruded-aluminum louvers associated with mechanical systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.
- B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades; i.e., the axes of the blades are horizontal.
- C. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Louvers shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures shall be considered to act normal to the face of the building.
 - 1. Wind Loads: Determine loads based on a uniform pressure as indicated on Drawings.
- C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes, without buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, or other detrimental effects.
 - 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- D. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width according to AMCA 500-L.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.
- B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.
 - 1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
 - 2. Show mullion profiles and locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For louvers indicated to comply with structural performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain louvers and vents from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- C. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.
- B. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
1. Use Phillips flat-head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized steel or 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 4. For fastening stainless steel, use 300 series stainless-steel fasteners.
 5. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, G60 zinc coating, mill phosphatized.
- D. Post-installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed, for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed, for masonry, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.

2.2 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Assemble louvers in factory to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Maintain equal louver blade spacing, including separation between blades and frames at head and sill, to produce uniform appearance.
- C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.
1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.
- E. Provide subsills made of same material as louvers for recessed louvers.
- F. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds, threaded fasteners, or both, as standard with louver manufacturer unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

2.3 FIXED, EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS (at building)

- A. Horizontal, Continuous-Line, Drainable-Blade Louver: Drainable-blade louver with blade gutters (drains) in rear two-thirds of blades only and with semi-recessed mullions capable of collecting and draining water from blades.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - b. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - d. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - e. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.
 2. Louver Depth: 6 inches.
 3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch.
 4. Louver Performance Ratings:
 - a. Free Area: Not less than 50%.
 - b. Point of Beginning Water Penetration: Not less than 850 fpm.
 - c. Air Performance: Not more than 0.10-inch wg static pressure drop at 800-fpm free-area exhaust or intake velocity.

2.4 FIXED, GALVANIZED STEEL LOUVERS (at dumpster enclosure)

- A. Horizontal, Continuous-Line, Louver: Fixed louver with tubular mullions.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Airolite Company, LLC (The).
 - b. Arrow United Industries; a division of Mestek, Inc.
 - c. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - d. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 - e. Ruskin Company; Tomkins PLC.

2. Louver Depth: 4 inches.
3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.080 inch.

2.5 LOUVER SCREENS

- A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.
 1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
 2. Screening Type: Bird screening.
- B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.
- C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.
 1. Metal: Same kind and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached.
 2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
 3. Type: Rewireable frames with a driven spline or insert.
- D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:
 1. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

2.6 BLANK-OFF PANELS

- A. Uninsulated, Blank-Off Panels: Metal sheet attached to back of louver.
 1. Aluminum sheet for aluminum louvers, not less than 0.050-inch nominal thickness.
 2. Panel Finish: Same finish applied to louvers.
 3. Attach blank-off panels with clips.

2.7 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish louvers after assembly.
- B. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish (Galvanized Metal – Dumpster Enclosure): Immediately after cleaning and pretreating, apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils.
 1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Locate and place louvers and vents level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.
- B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.
- C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.
- D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.
- E. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.
- F. Protect unpainted galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.
- G. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of louvers and vents that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.
- B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.
- C. Restore louvers and vents damaged during installation and construction so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.
 - 1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092216
NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior gypsum board assemblies.
 2. Suspension systems for interior gypsum ceilings, soffits, and grid systems.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. UL Listings: Provide UL listing data for Head of Wall conditions

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS
- A. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.
1. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653, G40Z120, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Studs and Runners: Comply with ASTM C 645.
1. Steel Studs and Runners: Minimum base-metal thickness:
 - a. 25 gage unless indicated otherwise on Drawings or below.
 - 1) Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies, Typical Locations: Withstand lateral loading (air pressure) of 5 psf with deflection limit not more than L/240 of partition height.
 - 2) Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies at Lobbies, Service Corridors, Exit Corridors, Elevator Lobbies, Vertical Shafts: Withstand lateral loading (air pressure) of 7.5 psf with deflection limit not more than L/360 of partition height
 - 3) Interior Metal Stud/Gypsum Board Assemblies at Locations with Ceramic Tile or Other Hard Surface Finishes: Withstand typical lateral loading (air pressure) with deflection limit not more than L/360 of partition height, minimum 20 gage studs at 16" on center.
 - 4) Where wall mounted equipment, woodwork, and casework items are indicated or elsewhere as shown on Drawings, provide minimum 16 gage studs
 - 5) At partitions scheduled to receive tile backing panels or ceramic tile finish, provide minimum 20 gage studs
 - 6) At jambs of openings provide two minimum 20 gage studs.
 - 7) Ceilings: At ceilings using mold-mildew resistant gypsum framing to be 16 inches o.c. for 5/8" gypsum
 - 8) Refer to Division 5 for stud framing which is exposed to wind loads and for studs carrying heavy vertical loads (cement plaster, manufactured stone masonry, stone tile thicker than 3/4 inch, etc)
 - b. Where partition heights exceed stud manufacturer's recommended spans, provide one of the following:

- 1) Heavier stud gage.
 - 2) Closer stud spacing.
 - 3) Deeper stud size (space permitting); As approved by Architect.
 - 4) Above ceiling bracing, anchored to structure above.
- c. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
- C. Head Joints: Provide one of the following at all partitions that extend to underside of structure:
1. Deflection Track: Steel sheet top runner manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) Manufacturer's standard deep leg track for non fire rated partitions.
 - 2) Dietrich Metal Framing; SLP-TRK Slotted Deflection Track (for non-rated partitions)
 - 3) Fas Track, CEMCO (for fire rated partitions only).
- D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.012 inch.
- E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.053-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-13-mm- wide flanges.
1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
 2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch- thick, galvanized steel.
- F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
 2. Depth: 7/8 inch.
- G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.
1. Configuration: Asymmetrical.
- H. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.
1. Depth: 3/4 inch.
 2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type of steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0312 inch.
 3. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS
- A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch- diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch- diameter wire.
- B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:
1. Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with holes or loops for attaching wire hangers and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 5 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 by an independent testing agency.
 - a. Type: Post-installed, expansion anchor.
 2. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials with clips or other devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by construction as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.1055 inch diameter.
- D. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.053 inch and minimum 1/2-inch- wide flanges, ASTM A653 G40 hot dipped galvanized coating.
1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches.
- E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):
1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
 2. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.
 - a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.018 inch.
 3. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.
 - a. Configuration: Asymmetrical.
- F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.; Drywall Grid Systems.
 - b. Chicago Metallic Corporation; Drywall Grid System.
 - c. USG Corporation; Drywall Suspension System.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.
 - 1. Fasteners for Metal Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.
- B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide the following:
 - 1. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.
 - 1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.
- B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:
 - 1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling runners (tracks) to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.
 - 2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.
 - 1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.
- B. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

- A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
- B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.
- C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.
- D. Install tracks (runners) at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts penetrating partitions above ceiling.
 - 1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
 - 2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install runner track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.
 - a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
 - b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
 - 3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.

4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.
 5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
 6. Curved Partitions:
 - a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
 - b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.
- E. Direct Furring:
1. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
- F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.
- 3.5 INSTALLING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS
- A. Install suspension system components according to spacing indicated, but not greater than spacing required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.
1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
 2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
 3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.
- B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
- C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:
1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
 - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, counter splaying, or other equally effective means.
 2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacing that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
 3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
 4. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
 5. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
 6. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
 7. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.
- D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.
- E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.
- F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 092900
GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
 - B. Related Work covered under the following:
 - 1. Section 092216 for metal support framing.
 - 2. Section 079500 for Expansion Joints.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior gypsum board.
 - 2. Tile backing panels.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - B. Samples: For the following products:
 - 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- long length for each trim accessory indicated.
 - C. Shop Drawings: Indicating location of fire rated partitions, smoke partitions, sound rated partitions, insulated partitions, and proposed location of control joints.
- 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING
- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.
- 1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
 - B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned. At Contractor's request, Owner and Architect may consider use of moisture and mold resistant gypsum board panel products without additional cost to Owner.
 - C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119, UL, or by an independent testing agency as indicated on Drawings.
 - B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency as indicated on Drawings.
- 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL
- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.
- 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Gypsum.
 - 2. CertainTeed Corp.
 - 3. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.

4. National Gypsum Company.
 5. Temple-Inland.
 6. USG Corporation.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396.
1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or 1325, with manufacturer's standard edges
1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. C-Cure; C-Cure Board 990
 - b. CertainTeed Corp.; FiberCement.
 - c. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
 - d. James Hardie Building Products, Inc.; Hardiebacker.
 - e. National Gypsum Company, Permabase Cement Board.
 - f. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
 2. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
 3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274

2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. Bullnose bead.
 - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
 - f. Expansion (control) joint.
 - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.
- B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
 2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475.
- B. Joint Tape:
1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
 2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
 3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
 4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.
- C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
 2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
 3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
 2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.

- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
 - 1. Laminating adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 - 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
 - 2. Recycled Content of Blankets: Total recycled content not less than 30 percent.
- E. Acoustical Joint Sealant: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Accumetric LLC; BOSS 824 Acoustical Sound Sealant.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR AIS-919.
 - c. Specified Technologies, Inc.; Smoke N Sound Acoustical Sealant.
 - d. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
 - 2. Acoustical joint sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc., except in chases braced internally).
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through

- J. assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:
1. Type X: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Cement Backer Board: At critical areas of high humidity, including hot tubs, steam rooms, indoor pools, saunas, and gang showers.
- B. Single-Layer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
 4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.
- C. Multi-layer Application:
1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
 2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
 3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
 4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.
- D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11.
- B. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings, and according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect, and as follows:
1. Wall: Control joints shall be installed where a wall or partition runs in an uninterrupted straight plane exceeding 30 linear feet, or 900 sq ft.
 2. Ceiling with Perimeter relief: Control joints in interior ceilings with perimeter relief shall be installed so that linear dimensions between control joints do not exceed 50 ft or 2500 sq. ft
 3. Ceiling, without perimeter relief: Control joints in interior ceilings without perimeter relief shall be installed so that linear dimensions between control joints do not exceed 30 ft
 4. Exterior: Control joints in exterior ceilings and soffits shall be installed so that linear dimensions between control joints do not exceed 30 ft. at acoustical or fire-rated walls: Where a control joint occurs in an acoustical or fire rated system, blocking shall be provided behind the control joint by using a backing material such as 5/8 in. type X gypsum panel products, mineral fiber, or other tested equivalent
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 3. L-Bead: Use where indicated.

- 4. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
 - D. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.
- 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD
- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
 - B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
 - C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
 - D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Utility and storage areas.
 - 3. Level 3: Beneath wall covering.
 - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
 - 5. Level 5: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view with satin, semi-gloss or gloss painted finishes scheduled, unless otherwise indicated on the drawings.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 09 Sections.
 - E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 3.7 PROTECTION
- A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.
 - B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
 - C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 093013
CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Ceramic tile.
 - 2. Thresholds.
 - 3. Waterproof membrane.
 - 4. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 5. Metal edge strips.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in "American National Standard Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Static Coefficient of Friction: For tile installed on walkway surfaces, provide products with the following values as determined by testing identical products per ASTM C 1028:
 - 1. Level Surfaces: Minimum 0.60.
 - 2. Step Treads: Minimum 0.60.
 - 3. Ramp Surfaces: Minimum 0.80.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of tile and grout indicated. Include Samples of accessories involving color selection.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of product, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Material Test Reports: For each tile-setting and -grouting product.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from one source or producer.
 - 1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.
- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from one manufacturer and each aggregate from one source or producer.
- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer for each product:
 - 1. Thresholds.
 - 2. Waterproof membrane.
 - 3. Crack isolation membrane.
 - 4. Joint sealants.
 - 5. Metal edge strips.

- D. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. To set quality standards for installation, install mockup of not less than 100 s.f. of floor area in location as directed by Architect.
 2. Prepare finished mockup of floor area as shown on Drawings to set quality standards for installation.
 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.
 - B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.
 - C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.
 - D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.
 - E. Handle tile that has temporary protective coating on exposed surfaces to prevent coated surfaces from contacting backs or edges of other units. If coating does contact bonding surfaces of tile, remove coating from bonding surfaces before setting tile.
- 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS
- A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL
- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
 1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.
 - B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
 - C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
 - D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.
- 2.2 PORCELAIN AND CERAMIC TILE PRODUCTS
- A. Basis of Design Products: As scheduled.
- 2.3 THRESHOLDS
- A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition between adjacent floor finishes.
 1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.

- B. Thresholds: Minimum abrasion resistance of 10 per ASTM C 1353 or ASTM C 241 and with honed finish.
 - 1. Acceptable Product: Thornton Tile and Marble, Cultured Marble Threshold.
 - 2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full available range.
 - 3. Size: 2 inch, double bevel, thickness to match height of adjacent flooring material.

2.4 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Non-plasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with non-woven polyester fabric; 0.030-inch nominal thickness.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Noble Company (The); Nobleseal TS.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.008-inch nominal thickness:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Schluter Systems L.P.; KERDI.
- D. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement:
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Laticrete International; 9235 Waterproofing and Anti-Fracture Membrane.

2.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for high performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Chlorinated Polyethylene Sheet: Non-plasticized, chlorinated polyethylene faced on both sides with non-woven polyester fabric; 0.030-inch nominal thickness.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Noble Company (The); Nobleseal CIS.
 - b. Schuler; Ditra.

2.6 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
 - 1. Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches by 0.062-inch diameter; comply with ASTM A 185 and ASTM A 82 except for minimum wire size.
 - 2. Latex Additive: Manufacturer's standard water emulsion, serving as replacement for part or all of gaging water, of type specifically recommended by latex-additive manufacturer for use with field-mixed portland cement and aggregate mortar bed.
- B. Latex-Portland Cement Mortar (Thin Set): ANSI A118.4.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bonsal American; an Oldcastle company.
 - b. Custom Building Products.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - 2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
 - 3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
 - 4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for non-sagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.
 - 5. Behind glass mosaic tile, provide white mortar.

2.7 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Polymer-Modified Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bostik, Inc.
 - b. Custom Building Products.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - e. Tex-Rite.
 - 2. Polymer Type: Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix. Basis of Design:

- a. GRT-1: (Wall Tile Grout, with joint width 1/8" or less) Laticrete 1600 Unsanded Grout with Laticrete 1776 Grout Enhancer
 - b. GRT-2: (Wall / Floor Tile, with joint with 1/8" to 1/2") Laticrete 1500 Sanded Grout with Laticrete 1776 Grout Enhancer
 - c. GRT-3: (Wall / Floor Tile Consistent Color) Laticrete PermaColor Grout
 - B. Water-Cleanable Epoxy Grout: ANSI A118.3.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Bostik, Inc.
 - b. Custom Building Products.
 - c. Laticrete International, Inc.
 - d. MAPEI Corporation.
 - e. Tex-Rite.
 - 2. Basis of Design:
 - a. GRT-4: (Wall / Floor Tile - High Performance Stain Resistant) Laticrete SpectraLOCK PRO (Part AB Liquid) with Laticrete SpectraLOCK Powder (Part C)
 - b. GRT-5: (Wall / Floor Tile – Industrial Grade) Laticrete 2000 Industrial Grout, if used on vertical joints 1/2" or greater LATAPOXY Part D Non-Sag Additive
- 2.8 ELASTOMERIC SEALANTS
- A. General: Provide sealants, primers, backer rods, and other sealant accessories that comply with the following requirements and with the applicable requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2. Refer to Section 079500 for specific acceptable sealants.
- 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
 - B. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- 2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT
- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
 - B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
 - C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of installed tile.
 - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm, dry, clean, free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thin-set mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
 - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
 - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
 - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
 - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
 - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thin-set mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.
- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCA's "Handbook for Ceramic Tile Installation" for TCA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 Series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
 - 1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 Series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
 - a. Exterior tile floors.
 - b. Tile floors in wet areas.
 - c. Tile swimming pool decks.
 - d. Tile floors in laundries.
 - e. Tile floors composed of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
 - f. Tile floors composed of rib-backed tiles.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in pattern as indicated on Drawings. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile, or as otherwise indicated on Drawings. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
 - 2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
 - 3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Joint Widths: Refer to Schedule.
- F. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.
- G. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
 - 1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
 - 2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- H. Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Metal Edge Strips: Install in locations indicated or where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile.
- J. Grout Sealer: Apply grout sealer to cementitious grout joints in tile floors according to grout-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as grout sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

3.4 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over waterproofing until waterproofing has cured and been tested to determine that it is watertight.

3.5 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness and bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Do not install tile or setting materials over crack isolation membrane until membrane has cured.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTING

- A. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
 - 1. Remove latex-portland cement grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
 - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.
 - 3. Remove temporary protective coating by method recommended by coating manufacturer and that is acceptable to tile and grout manufacturer. Trap and remove coating to prevent drain clogging.
- B. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- C. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- D. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

3.7 TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Exterior Wall Installation, masonry or Concrete:
 - 1. Tile Installation W202: Thin-set mortar; TCS W202.
- B. Interior Floor Installations, Concrete Subfloor:
 - 1. Tile Installation F113: Thin-set mortar; TCA F113.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded grout.
 - 2. Tile Installation F115: Thin-set mortar; epoxy grout; TCA F115.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
 - 3. Tile Installation F121: Cement mortar bed (thickset) on waterproof membrane; TCA F121 and ANSI A108.1A.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar for Cured-Bed Method: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded grout.
 - 4. Tile Installation F122: Thin-set mortar on waterproof membrane; TCA F122.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded grout.
 - 5. Tile Installation F125A: Thin-set mortar on crack isolation membrane; TCA F125A.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded grout.
- C. Interior Wall Installations, on Studs or Furring:
 - 1. Tile Installation W243: Thin-set mortar on gypsum board; TCA W243.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
 - 2. Tile Installation W245: Thin-set mortar on coated glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum backer board; TCA W245.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded Polymer-modified unsanded Water-cleanable epoxy grout.
- D. Shower Receptor and Wall Installations, Concrete or Masonry:
 - 1. Tile Installation B414: Cement mortar bed (thickset); TCA B414 and ANSI A108.1B .
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar for Cured-Bed Method: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded grout.
 - 2. Tile Installation B421: Thin-set mortar on waterproof membrane; TCA B421.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex-portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded Polymer-modified unsanded grout.

- E. Shower Receptor and Wall Installations, Metal Studs or Furring:
 - 1. Tile Installation B420: Thin-set mortar on coated glass-mat, water-resistant backer board; TCA B420.
 - a. Thin-Set Mortar: Latex- portland cement mortar.
 - b. Grout: Polymer-modified sanded Polymer-modified unsanded grout.
- F. Color and Styles: As scheduled.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 095113
ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. This Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for ceilings.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. AC: Articulation Class.
 B. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.
 C. LR: Light Reflectance coefficient.
 D. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
1. Ceiling suspension system members.
 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
 3. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 4. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot .
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.
 D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling and components and anchor and fastener type.
 E. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.
 B. Source Limitations:
1. Acoustical Ceiling Panel: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and supporting suspension system through one source from a single manufacturer.
 D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical panel ceilings that comply with the following requirements:
1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical panels with the following surface-burning characteristics complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84:
 - a. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
 B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
 C. Handle acoustical panels carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical panels and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Acoustical Ceiling Panels: Full-size panels equal to 3.0 percent of quantity installed.
 2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 3.0 percent of quantity installed.
 3. Hold-Down Clips: Equal to 3.0 percent of quantity installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface per ASTM E 795.
- B. Acoustical Panel Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical panels are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL PANELS FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 2. Cetainteed.
 3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 4. USG Interiors, Inc.
 5. Rokfon North America.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: As scheduled.

2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard direct-hung metal suspension systems of types, structural clasifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
- B. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.
- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
1. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.
- D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 64, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
 2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch- diameter

- wire.
- E. Hold-Down Clips: Where indicated, and at exterior locations, and with 10 feet of an exterior door, provide manufacturer's standard hold-down clips spaced 24 inches o.c. on all cross tees.
- 2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILING
- A. Acceptable Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 2. Certainteed.
 3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 4. USG Interiors, Inc.
- B. Unless noted otherwise in schedule, provide Wide-Face, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653, not less than G30 coating designation, with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
1. Structural Classification: Intermediate -duty system.
 2. End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) or butt-edge type.
 3. Face Design: Flat, flush.
- 2.5 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM
- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 2. Certainteed
 3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 4. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 5. Gordon, Inc.
 6. USG Interiors, Inc.
- C. Basis of Design: As scheduled.
- D. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.
1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For lay-in panels with reveal edge details, provide stepped edge molding that forms reveal of same depth and width as that formed between edge of panel and flange at exposed suspension member.
 3. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- 2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT
- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
 - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
- B. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), complying with ASTM C 834 and effective in reducing airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.
- C. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Manufacturer's standard nondrying, non-hardening, non-skinning, non-staining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant, with a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24), recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other

conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 3. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 4. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 5. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 6. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 7. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, post-installed mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 8. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 9. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 10. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 11. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
 12. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or post-installed anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
 1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide a neat, precise fit.
 1. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical panels as follows:
 - a. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
 2. For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension system runners and moldings.
 3. For reveal-edged panels on suspension system runners, install panels with bottom of reveal in firm contact with top surface of runner flanges.

4. For reveal-edged panels on suspension system members with box-shaped flanges, install panels with reveal surfaces in firm contact with suspension system surfaces and panel faces flush with bottom face of runners.
5. Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.
6. Install hold-down clips in areas indicated, in areas required by authorities having jurisdiction, and for fire-resistance ratings; space as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.
7. Install clean-room gasket system in areas indicated, sealing each panel and fixture as recommended by panel manufacturer's written instructions.
8. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096116
CONCRETE FLOOR SEALING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. This Section includes:
1. Sealing of concrete floor areas not otherwise scheduled to receive finish floor covering.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. Include data to indicate chemical, solvent, and detergent resistance.
 2. Include information for primer, sealants, accessories and other required components.
- 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For fluid-applied floor sealer to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
1. Manufacturer's instructions on maintenance renewal of applied treatments.
 2. Protocols and product specifications for joint filing, crack repair and/or surface repair.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing Products specified in this Section with minimum 10 years documented experience.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer (applicator) who is approved, trained, or certified by fluid-applied floor sealer manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations: Furnish products from one manufacturer for entire Project, unless otherwise acceptable to Architect.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials in manner to prevent damage to containers and bags.
- B. Store materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions in clean and dry location with temperature between 60 deg F and 90 deg F.
- C. Keep products away from fire or open flame.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, humidity, ventilation, and other conditions affecting flooring application.
1. Do not apply flooring until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof; wet work in spaces is complete and dry; and overhead work, including installing mechanical systems, lighting, and athletic equipment, is complete.
- B. Conditioning Period: Begins not less than 7 days before flooring application, is continuous through application, and continues not less than 3 days after application.
1. After conditioning period, maintain relative humidity and ambient temperature planned for building occupants.
- C. Ventilate area where flooring is being installed. Post and enforce no smoking and no open flame signs until flooring has cured.
- D. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during floor sealer application.
- E. Close spaces to traffic during floor sealer application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.
- 1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING
- A. Sequence work under provisions of Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Prepare and submit in accordance with Sections 016100 and 017700.
- B. Provide written warranty signed by manufacturer warranting work to be free from defective materials and workmanship, and agreeing to replace components which fail within 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
 - 1. Failed materials and workmanship includes spalling, cracking, and delamination.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Dayton Superior Specialty Chemical Corp.
 - 2. L & M Construction Chemicals, Inc.

2.2 CONCRETE FLOOR SEALER (Drawing Abbreviation: SCONC)

- A. General: Two component, water-based, high-performance, high-solids, epoxy floor coating system.
 - 1. Basis of Design Product: Refer to Master Schedule. Use sealers that have a VOC content of 100 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Sealant Materials: Manufacturer's recommended sealant compatible with flooring system for type of service and joint condition indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer (Applicator) present, for conditions affecting performance of flooring including substrate moisture content.
- B. Examine areas to receive flooring for:
 - 1. Defects in substrate that may affect proper execution of flooring work.
 - 2. Deviations beyond allowable tolerance for concrete slab work.
 - 3. Surface curing agents or sealers that would inhibit bond.
 - 4. Surface defects such as cracks that could transfer through to finished flooring surface if not corrected.
- C. Do not begin flooring work until concrete has cured a minimum of 28 days.
- D. Do not begin work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare Substrate: Tests concrete substrate for pH, contaminants, and moisture content in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Ensure concrete is within manufacturers recommended limits prior to installation.
- B. Concrete Sub-floors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
 - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond.
 - 2. Mechanically abrade or shot-blast existing concrete flooring to remove inappropriate curing agents and to open pores of concrete surfaces to allow penetration of bonding agent. Completely remove cleaning residue. Acid washing is not acceptable.
 - 3. Repair cracks, divots and surface imperfections according to manufacturer's instructions.
 - 4. Vacuum to remove dust and debris.
- C. Protect walls, floor openings, equipment, electrical openings, door frames, and other obstructions during installation. Cover floor and wall areas at mixing stations.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. General: Mix and apply flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply a minimum of 2 coats in accordance with manufacturer's recommended coverage rates.

3.4 CURING

- A. Cure flooring materials according to manufacturer's directions, taking care to prevent contamination during application stages and before completing curing process.
 - 1. Indoor Air Quality Procedures: Ventilate in accordance with Division 01 Section "Environmental Project Procedures."

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean as recommended by manufacturer. Do not use materials or methods which may damage surface or surrounding construction.
 - 1. Cleaner, Maximum VOC Content: In accordance with applicable codes.
- B. Remove temporary covering and clean flooring prior to final inspection. Use cleaning materials and procedures recommended by flooring manufacturer.
- C. Protect finished work in accordance with Division 01 Section "Common Execution Requirements."
- D. Do not permit traffic over finished flooring surfaces.
- E. Protect flooring materials from damage and wear during construction operation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096513
RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Resilient base.
 2. Resilient molding accessories.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Selection: For each type of product indicated.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- 1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:
1. 48 hours before installation.
 2. During installation.
 3. 48 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.
- 1.6 EXTRA MATERIALS
- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Furnish not less than 3% of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RESILIENT BASE
- A. Resilient Base:
1. Basis of Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Millwork Resilient Wall Base" by Johnsonite Inc., 16910 Munn Road, Chagrin Falls, OH. 44023 (440-543-8916).
- B. Resilient Base Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP, Group 1.
1. Material Requirement: Type TP (thermoplastic rubber).
 2. Manufacturing Method: Group I (solid, homogeneous).
 3. Style:
 - a. Hard Floor: Cove (base with toe)
 - b. Carpet: Straight (flat or toeless).
- C. Minimum Thickness: As scheduled.
- D. Height: As scheduled.
- E. Lengths: Coils in manufacturer's standard length.
- F. Outside Corners: Job formed.
- G. Inside Corners: Job formed.
- H. Finish: Satin.
- I. Colors and Patterns: As scheduled.

2.2 RESILIENT MOLDING ACCESSORY

- A. Resilient Molding Accessory:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Burke Mercer Flooring Products; Division of Burke Industries, Inc.
 - b. Flexco, Inc.
 - c. Johnsonite.
 - d. R.C.A. Rubber Company (The).
 - e. Roppe Corporation, USA.
 - f. VPI, LLC; Floor Products Division.
 - B. Description: Cap for cove resilient floor covering, Carpet edge for glue-down applications, Reducer strip for resilient floor covering, Joiner for tile and carpet, Transition strips.
 - C. Material: Rubber.
 - D. Profile and Dimensions: As scheduled.
 - E. Colors and Patterns: As scheduled.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
 - 1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - a. Cove Base Adhesives: Not more than 50 g/L.
 - b. Rubber Floor Adhesives: Not more than 60 g/L.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- C. Do not install resilient products until they are same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- D. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.
- B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.
- C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.
- D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.
- E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.
- F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.
- G. Job-Formed Corners:
 - 1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
 - 2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible.

3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.
- B. Resilient Stair Accessories:
 - 1. Use stair-tread-nose filler to fill nosing substrates that do not conform to tread contours.
 - 2. Tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece.
 - 3. For treads installed as separate, equal-length units, install to produce a flush joint between units.
- C. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of carpet and resilient floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of resilient products.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096519
RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Vinyl composition floor tile.
 - 2. Rubber Floor Tile.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
 - 1. Show details of special patterns.
 - C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.
 - D. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
 - E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
 - F. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for floor tile including resilient base and accessories.
 - a. Size: Minimum 100 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern in locations directed by Architect.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. During installation.
 - 3. 48 hours after installation.
 - B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
 - C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
 - D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
 - E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 VINYL COMPOSITION FLOOR TILE
- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. Congoleum Corporation.
 - 3. Mannington Mills, Inc.
 - 4. Tarkett, Inc.
 - B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1066, Class 2, through-pattern tile.
 - C. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
 - D. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
 - E. Size: Refer to Finish Schedule.

2.2 Colors and Patterns: Refer to Finish Schedule.

2.3 RUBBER FLOOR TILE

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Burke Mercer Flooring Products, Division of Burke Industries Inc.
 - 2. Endura Rubber Flooring, a division of Burke Industries Inc.
 - 3. Johnsonite
 - 4. Mondo Rubber International, Inc.
 - 5. Nora Rubber Flooring, Freudenberg Building Systems, Inc.
 - 6. R.C.A. Rubber Company (The)
 - 7. Roppe Corporation, USA;
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1344, Class I-A, homogeneous rubber tile, solid color.
- C. Hardness: Not less than 85 as required by ASTM F 1344, measured using Shore, Type A durometer per ASTM D 2240.
- D. Wearing Surface: Smooth.
- E. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- F. Size: As selected by Architect from manufacturers full range.
- G. Seaming Method: Standard.
- H. Colors and Patterns: Refer to Finish Schedule.

2.4 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
 - 1. Use adhesives that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - a. VCT and Asphalt Tile Adhesives: Not more than 50 g/L.
 - b. Rubber Floor Adhesives: Not more than 60 g/L.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective liquid floor polish products as recommended by manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
 - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
 - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and as follows. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
 - a. Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test, ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
 - b. Perform relative humidity test using in situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75% relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
 - 1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48

hours in advance of installation.

- E. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
 - 1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated on Drawings.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
 - 1. Lay tiles in direction per manufacturer's recommendation.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.
- G. Do not adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates unless directed by architect. If fully adhered is required, use a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile products from marks, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, visible adhesives, and surface blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
 - 1. Apply per manufacturer's recommendation.
- E. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 096813
TILE CARPETING

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes modular carpet tile.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
1. Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
 2. Include installation recommendations for each type of substrate.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show the following:
1. Columns, doorways, enclosing walls or partitions, built-in cabinets, and locations where cutouts are required in carpet tiles.
 2. Carpet tile type, color, and dye lot.
 3. Type of subfloor.
 4. Type of installation.
 5. Pattern of installation.
 6. Pattern type, location, and direction.
 7. Pile direction.
 8. Type, color, and location of insets and borders.
 9. Type, color, and location of edge, transition, and other accessory strips.
 10. Transition details to other flooring materials.
- C. Samples: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.
 2. Exposed Edge, Transition, and Other Accessory Stripping: 12-inch- long Samples.
- D. Product Schedule: For carpet tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.
- B. Product Test Reports: For carpet tile, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
1. Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
 2. Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.
- 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Ratings: Where indicated, provide carpet tile identical to those of assemblies tested for fire response according to NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
1. Build mockups at locations and in sizes shown on Drawings.
 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Comply with CRI 104.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with CRI 104 for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.
- B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Where demountable partitions or other items are indicated for installation on top of carpet tiles, install carpet tiles before installing these items.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
 - 2. Failures include, but are not limited to, more than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, runs, dimensional stability, excess static discharge, loss of tuft bind strength, loss of face fiber, and delamination.
 - 3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CARPET TILE

- A. Basis of Design: As scheduled.
- B. Color: As scheduled.
- C. Pattern: As scheduled.

2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, non-staining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that complies with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile and is recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
 - 1. Adhesives shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- B. Concrete Subfloors: Verify that concrete slabs comply with ASTM F 710 and the following:
 - 1. Slab substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, hardeners, and other materials that may interfere with adhesive bond. Determine adhesion and dryness characteristics by performing bond and moisture tests recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Subfloor finishes comply with requirements specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for slabs receiving carpet tile.
 - 3. Subfloors are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.]

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 6.2, "Site Conditions; Floor Preparation," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile installation.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch wide or wider and protrusions more than 1/32 inch unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.

- C. Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- D. Clean metal substrates of grease, oil, soil and rust, and prime if directed by adhesive manufacturer. Rough sand painted metal surfaces and remove loose paint. Sand aluminum surfaces, to remove metal oxides, immediately before applying adhesive.
- E. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI 104, Section 14, "Carpet Modules," and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive.
- C. Maintain dye lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on finish flooring as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, non-staining marking device.
- G. Install pattern parallel to walls and borders.
- H. Stagger joints of carpet tiles so carpet tile grid is offset from access flooring panel grid. Do not fill seams of access flooring panels with carpet adhesive; keep seams free of adhesive.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
 - 1. Remove excess adhesive, seam sealer, and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
 - 2. Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
 - 3. Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI 104, Section 16, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 098116
ACOUSTICAL BLANKET INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Concealed building insulation.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 09 Sections "Gypsum Board Assemblies" for installation in metal-framed assemblies of insulation specified by reference to this Section.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
 - 2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
 - 3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Glass-Fiber Insulation:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation.
 - b. Johns Manville Corporation.
 - c. Owens Corning.
 - 2. Slag-Wool-/Rock-Wool-Fiber Insulation:
 - a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.
 - b. Owens Corning.
 - c. Thermafiber.

2.2 INSULATING MATERIALS

- A. Sustainability Requirements: Provide glass-fiber blanket insulation as follows:
 - 1. Free of Formaldehyde: Insulation manufactured with 100 percent acrylic binders and no formaldehyde.
 - 2. Low Emitting: Insulation tested according to ASTM D 5116 and shown to emit less than 0.05-ppm formaldehyde.
- B. General: Provide insulating materials that comply with requirements and with referenced standards.
 - 1. Preformed Units: Sizes to fit applications indicated; selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths.
- C. Unfaced Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation (in walls): ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- D. Unfaced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation (above ceilings): ASTM C 612, Type IA; ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; or ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indices of 25 and 50, respectively; and of the following properties:
 - 1. Nominal density of 1.0 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 3.7 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

2. Nominal density of not less than 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nor more than 1.7 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
3. Combustion Characteristics: Passes ASTM E 136.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulations or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located on inside of insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
- E. Apply single layer of insulation to produce thickness indicated, unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

- A. Install mineral-fiber blankets in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
 1. Use blanket widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 2. Place blankets in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 3. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping stapling flanges to flanges of metal studs.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 099100**PAINTING****PART 1 GENERAL**

- 1.1 SUMMARY
- A. Related Documents: General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract, Division 01 General Requirements, and Drawings are applicable to this Section.
 - B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Complete interior and exterior surface preparation and finishing for field application of latex based coatings, and requirements for field finishing mechanical and electrical equipment.
 - 2. Examine specifications for various other trades and their provisions regarding their painting. Surfaces that are left unfinished by other sections of the specifications shall be painted or finished as a part of this Section.
 - 3. Colors, including deep tones, will be selected by the Architect. Number of colors to be used on job will be determined by Architect.
- 1.2 SURFACES NOT TO RECEIVE FIELD FINISHING
- A. Do not paint copper, bronze, chrome plated items, nickel, stainless steel, Monel metal, lead, face brick, prefinished wall, ceiling, and floor coverings, items with factory applied final finish (except where exposed on roofs and in finished spaces), elevator shafts, crawl spaces, chases, and plenums above suspended ceilings unless otherwise specified or scheduled.
- 1.3 DEFINITIONS
- A. Conform to ASTM D16 for interpretation of terms used in this Section.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Product Manufacturer: Company specializing in manufacturing quality paint and finish products with 3 years experience.
 - B. Applicator: Company specializing in commercial painting and finishing with 2 years experience.
 - C. Product Labels: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, stock number, color and label analysis on label of containers.
- 1.5 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
- A. Conform to applicable building code for flame spread/fuel contribution/smoke development rating requirements for finishes.
 - B. Comply with applicable city, county, state, and federal requirements and ordinances regarding maximum VOC (Volatile Organic Compound) content of all coatings.
- 1.6 TESTS
- A. Provide periodic testing with Wet Film Thickness gage to verify that proper thickness of finish coatings are being applied.
- 1.7 SUBMITTALS
- A. Submit product data under provisions of Section 013300.
 - B. Provide product data describing physical performance criteria and composition on all finishing products.
 - C. Submit color selection samples under provisions of Section 013300.
 - D. Submit 2 samples, 12 by 12 inches in size illustrating range of colors and textures selected for each surface finishing product scheduled.
 - E. Submit manufacturer's application instructions under provisions of Section 013300.
 - F. Submit certification from manufacturer of coatings listing all products proposed for each. Certify that each product meets current applicable regulations and ordinances regarding maximum VOC content.
- 1.8 FIELD SAMPLES
- A. Provide field samples under provisions of Section 014500.
 - B. Provide field sample panel, 96 inches long by 96 inches wide, illustrating each coating color, texture, and finish intended for use.
 - C. Locate where directed.
 - D. Accepted sample may remain as part of the Work.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver products to site under provisions of Section 016000.
- B. Store and protect products under provisions of Section 016000.
- C. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptance.
- D. Container labeling to include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.
- E. Store paint materials at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F and a maximum of 90 degrees F, in well ventilated area, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Take precautionary measures to prevent fire hazards and spontaneous combustion.

1.10 ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the ranges required by paint manufacturer.
- B. Provide continuous ventilation and heating facilities to maintain surface and ambient temperatures above 45 degrees F for 24 hours before, during, and 48 hours after application of finishes, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow, or when relative humidity is above 75 percent, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Minimum Application Temperatures for Latex Paints: 45 degrees F for interiors; 50 degrees F for exterior; unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- E. Minimum Application Temperature for Varnish and Finishes: 65 degrees F for interior or exterior, unless required otherwise by manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles measured mid- height at substrate surface.

1.11 EXTRA STOCK

- A. Provide a 5 gallon container of each color to Owner.
- B. Label each container with color, color number, texture, and room locations, in addition to the manufacturer's label.
- C. Furnish under provisions of Section 017800.

1.12 SCAFFOLDS AND PROTECTION

- A. Provide adequate safe ladders, scaffolds, and stages necessary to complete work.
- B. Protect completed finish and paint work, and protect adjacent finish surfaces from paint splatter, spills and stains. Use adequate drop cloths and masking procedures during progress of work.

1.13 PRECAUTIONS

- A. Do not store paints, oils, thinners and other flammable items inside the building and shall be stored in approved containers when not in actual use during the painting job. The fire hazard shall be kept at a minimum.
- B. Precaution shall be taken to protect the public and construction workers during the progress of the work.
- C. Furnish a temporary fire extinguisher of suitable chemicals and capacity, located near flammable materials.

PART 2 PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements indicated, provide products by Behr Process Corporation unless otherwise scheduled.
- B. Materials selected for coating systems for each type surface shall be product of a single manufacturer unless otherwise specified. Secondary products such as linseed oil, turpentine and shellacs shall be first quality products of a reputable manufacturer.
- C. Products specified in Schedule are those of Behr Process Corporation as a standard of quality unless otherwise noted.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Coatings: Ready mixed. Process pigments to a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating with good flow and brushing properties; capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
- B. Accessory Materials: Linseed oil, shellac, turpentine, paint thinners and other materials not specifically indicated but required to achieve the finishes specified, of commercial quality.
- C. Patching Materials: Latex filler.

2.3 FINISHES

- A. Color and Sheen: As scheduled.

2.4 INTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. Drywall (Gypsum):
1. Professional Interior, Acrylic:
 - a. Behr: 1 coat Kilz Pro-X P10 PVA Drywall Primer, 2 coats Behr Pro Interior Dead Flat 310 (Flat); Behr Pro Interior Eggshell 330 (Eggshell); Behr Pro Interior Semi-Gloss 370 (Semi Gloss).
- B. Drywall (Gypsum - Corridors) High Traffic-Abuse Environments:
1. Acrylic Latex:
 - a. Benjamin Moore: 1 coat Ultra Spec 500 Interior Latex Primer N534, 2 coats Ultra Spec Scuff-X Interior Eggshell Finish 485 (VOC 88.4g/L); or 2 coats Ultra Spec Scuff-X Interior Matte Finish 484 (VOC 82 g/L), as scheduled.
- C. CMU, Concrete Block:
1. Professional Interior, Acrylic:
 - a. Behr: 1 coat Behr Premium All-In-One Primer Sealer 75, 2 coats Behr Behr Pro Interior Dead Flat 310 (Flat); Behr Pro Interior Eggshell 330 (Eggshell); Behr Pro Interior Semi-Gloss 370 (Semi Gloss).
- D. CMU (Concrete Block – Corridors) High Traffic-Abuse Environments:
1. Acrylic Latex:
 - a. Benjamin Moore: 1 coat Ultra Spec Masonry Int/Ext Hi-Build Block Filler 571, 2 coats Ultra Spec Scuff-X Interior Eggshell Finish 485 (VOC 88.4 g/L); or 1 coat Ultra Spec Masonry Int/Ext Hi-Build Block Filler 571, 2 coats Ultra Spec Scuff-X Interior Matte Finish 484 (VOC 82 g/L), as scheduled.
- E. Galvanized Metal, Aluminum, and Non-Ferrous Metals:
1. High Performance, Industrial Maintenance Gloss, Premium 100% Acrylic, Direct-To-Metal Enamel
 - a. Behr: Pretreatment Krud Kutter Metal Clean & Etch; 1 coat Behr Premium Multi-Surface Primer 436; 2 coats Behr Premium Direct-To-Metal Hi-Gloss 8200.
 2. Premium Interior 100% Acrylic:
 - a. Behr: Pretreatment Krud Kutter Metal Clean & Etch; 1 coat Behr Premium Multi-Surface Primer 436; 2 coats Behr Premium Plus Interior Flat 1050 (Flat); 2 coats Behr Premium Plus Interior Eggshell 2050 (Eggshell); 2 coats Behr Premium Plus Interior Semi-Gloss 3050 (semi gloss).

2.5 EXTERIOR PAINT SCHEDULE

- A. CMU:
- 1) 100 Percent Acrylic Latex:
 - i) Behr Pro Block Filler50 Block Filler-Primer, Flat: 2 coats Behr Pro e600 Exterior Flat 610. Satin: 2 coats of Behr Pro e600 Exterior Satin 640. Gloss: 2 coats of Behr Pro e600 Exterior Semi-Gloss 670.
 - 2) Elastomeric:
 - i) Behr: 1 coat Behr Pro Block Filler50 Primer, Smooth: 2 coats Behr Premium Low Sheen Elastomeric 68.
- B. Structural Iron and Ferrous Steel:
- 1) Gloss, Premium 100% Acrylic, Direct-To-Metal Enamel:
 - i) Behr: 1 coat Behr Premium Multi-Surface Primer 436, Primer.
 - ii) Gloss: 2 coats Behr Premium Direct-To-Metal Hi-Gloss 8200.
- C. Galvanized Metal, Aluminum, Non-Ferrous Metals – High Performance, Industrial Maintenance:
- 1) Semi-Gloss, Premium 100% Acrylic, Direct-To-Metal Enamel:
 - i) Behr: Krud Kutter Metal Clean & Etch Pretreatment, 1 coat Behr Premium Multi-Surface Primer 436, 2 coats Behr Premium Direct-To-Metal Semi-Gloss 3200.
- D. Shop Primed Metal Doors, Trim, Panels and Miscellaneous Surfaces:
- 1) Ferrous Metal – High Performance, Water-Based, Industrial Maintenance: Semi-Gloss, Premium 100% Acrylic, Direct-To-Metal Enamel
 - i) Behr: 1 coat Behr Premium Multi-Surface Primer 436; 2 coats Behr Premium Direct-To-Metal Semi-Gloss 3200.
- E. Traffic and Handicap Marking (Miscellaneous Surfaces Including Concrete and Asphalt):
- 1) Alkyd:
 - i) Flat: 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Setfast ProMar Alkyd TM 5494/5493.
 - 2) Chlorinated Rubber:

- i) Flat: 2 topcoats Sherwin-Williams Setfast Chlorinated Rubber Zone Marking Paint TM5126/TM5127.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that surfaces and substrate conditions are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.
- B. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work. Report to Architect any condition that may potentially affect proper application.
- C. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces are below the following maximums
 - 1. Plaster and Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.
 - 2. Masonry, Concrete, and Concrete Unit Masonry: 12 percent.
 - 3. Interior Located Wood: 15 percent, measured in accordance with ASTM D2016.
 - 4. Concrete Floors: 8 percent.
- D. Test shop applied primers for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.
- E. Beginning of installation means acceptance of existing surfaces and substrate.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, and fittings prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.
- B. Correct minor defects and clean surfaces which affect work of this Section. Remove existing coatings which exhibit loose surface defects.
- C. Shellac and seal marks which may bleed through surface finishes.
- D. Impervious Surfaces: Remove mildew by scrubbing with solution of tri-sodium phosphate and bleach. Rinse with clean water and allow surface to dry.
- E. Aluminum Surfaces Scheduled for Paint Finish: Remove surface contamination by steam or high pressure water. Remove oxidation with acid etch and solvent washing. Apply etching primer immediately following cleaning.
- F. Insulated Coverings: Remove dirt, grease, and oil from canvas and cotton.
- G. Concrete Floors: Remove contamination, acid etch, and rinse floors with clear water. Verify required acid-alkali balance is achieved. Allow to dry.
- H. Gypsum Board Surfaces: Latex fill minor defects. Spot prime defects after repair.
- I. Galvanized Surfaces: Remove surface contamination and oils and wash with solvent. Apply coat of etching primer.
- J. Concrete and Unit Masonry Surfaces Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Remove dirt, loose mortar, scale, salt or alkali powder, and other foreign matter. Remove oil and grease with a solution of tri-sodium phosphate; rinse well and allow to dry. Remove stains caused by weathering of corroding metals with a solution of sodium metasilicate after thoroughly wetting with water. Allow to dry.
- K. Plaster Surfaces: Fill hairline cracks, small holes, and imperfections with latex patching plaster. Make smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Wash and neutralize high alkali surfaces.
- L. Uncoated Steel and Iron Surfaces: Remove grease, scale, dirt, and rust. Where heavy coatings of scale are evident, remove by wire brushing or sandblasting; clean by washing with solvent. Apply a treatment of phosphoric acid solution, ensuring weld joints, bolts, and nuts are similarly cleaned. Spot prime paint after repairs.
- M. Shop Primed Steel Surfaces: Sand and scrape to remove loose primer and rust. Feather edges to make touch-up patches inconspicuous. Clean surfaces with solvent. Prime bare steel surfaces.
- N. Aluminum with Alodine Finish: Clean by lightly scuff with sandpaper. Remove all dust.
- O. Interior Wood Items Scheduled to Receive Paint Finish: Wipe off dust and grit prior to priming. Seal knots, pitch streaks, and sappy sections with sealer. Fill nail holes and cracks after primer has dried; sand between coats.
- P. Shop Finished Items: Finish in accordance with AWI standards and guide lines.
- Q. Wood and Metal Doors Scheduled for Painting: Seal top and bottom edges with primer.

3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect elements surrounding the work of this Section from damage or disfiguration.
- B. Repair damage to other surfaces caused by work of this Section.
- C. Furnish drop cloths, shields, and protective methods to prevent spray or droppings from disfiguring other surfaces.
- D. Remove empty paint containers from site.

3.4 APPLICATION

- A. The intent of these Specifications is to produce the highest quality appearance of paint and finish surfaces. Employ skilled mechanics only. The proper preparation of all surfaces will be strictly enforced and wherever finished surfaces show any defects due to improper preparation, workmanship, etc., the defects shall be removed and the work refinished at the expense of the Contractor.
- B. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. Final finish coats shall have visual evidence of solid hiding and uniform appearance, and shall be free and smooth of brush marks, streaks, sags, runs, laps, or skipped areas.
- C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry.
- D. Apply each coat to uniform finish and thickness.
- E. Apply each coat of paint slightly darker than preceding coat unless otherwise approved.
- F. Sand lightly between coats on wood and metal items to achieve required finish.
- G. Allow applied coat to dry before next coat is applied.
- H. Where clear finishes are required, tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.
- I. Prime back surfaces of interior and exterior woodwork scheduled to be painted with primer paint.
- J. Prime back surfaces of interior woodwork scheduled to receive stain or varnish finish with gloss varnish reduced 25 percent with mineral spirits.
- K. Edges of paint adjoining other materials or colors shall be sharp and clean with no overlapping.

3.5 FINISHING MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

- A. Paint all shop primed equipment. Paint shop prefinished items where exposed to view in finished spaces. In mechanical rooms, repair shop pre-finished coatings which have been scratched or otherwise damaged with identical touch-up paint. Sand prior to touching up as required.
- B. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.
- C. Paint all grilles, registers, diffusers, and speaker grilles to match adjacent wall and ceiling surfaces, except that factory pre-finished items need not be painted if installed in a suspended acoustical ceiling system where the acoustical panels match the mechanical or electrical item color.
- D. In all finished spaces, prime and paint exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports. Paint to match adjacent surfaces.
- E. Repair or replace identification markings on mechanical or electrical equipment when painted accidentally.
- F. Paint interior surfaces of air ducts and convectors that are visible through grilles and louvers with one coat of flat black paint, to limit of sight line. Paint dampers exposed behind louvers, grilles, and convector to match face panels.
- G. Paint all surfaces of plywood backboards for electrical and telephone equipment before installing equipment.
- H. Replace electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, and fittings removed prior to finishing.
- I. Paint exposed air handlers, roof ventilators, goose necks, exhaust fans and other items on the roof with 2 coats exterior enamel. Prepare surfaces in accordance with the base metal or primer as specified herein.
- J. Paint concrete support bases with gray floor deck enamel.
- K. Pipe hangers and other supports need not be painted except where installed in crawl spaces, where they shall be painted with a thick coat of asphaltic paint.

3.6 CLEANING/TOUCH-UP

- A. As Work proceeds, promptly remove paint where spilled, splashed, or spattered.
- B. During progress of Work maintain premises free of unnecessary accumulation of tools, equipment, surplus materials, and debris.
- C. Collect cotton waste, cloths, and material which may constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers and remove daily from site.
- D. Spot painting will be allowed to correct soiled or damaged paint surfaces only when touch-up spot will blend into surrounding finish and is invisible to normal viewing (as determined by the Architect). Otherwise, re-coat entire section to corners or to a visible stopping point.

- 3.7 V.O.C. (VOLATILE ORGANIC COMPOUND) COMPLIANCE
- A. Products listed in following schedule and/or substitutes proposed for use by Contractor must be formulated to meet all applicable ordinances and regulations regarding maximum V.O.C. content. Utilize products which have been specially formulated to need such requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 101100**VISUAL DISPLAY BOARDS****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES:
- A. Visual display boards.
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for visual display surfaces.
 - B. Shop Drawings: For visual display surfaces. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Show locations of panel joints.
 - 2. Include sections of typical trim members.
- 1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver factory-built visual display surfaces, including factory-applied trim where indicated, completely assembled in one piece without joints, where possible. If dimensions exceed maximum manufactured panel size, provide two or more pieces of equal length as acceptable to Architect. When overall dimensions require delivery in separate units, pre-fit components at the factory, disassemble for delivery, and make final joints at the site.
 - B. Store visual display surfaces vertically with packing materials between each unit.
- 1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install visual display surfaces until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
 - B. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of construction contiguous with visual display surfaces by field measurements before fabrication.
 - 1. Allow for trimming and fitting where taking field measurements before fabrication might delay the Work.
- 1.5 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty for Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheets: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace porcelain-enamel face sheets that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Surfaces lose original writing and erasing qualities.
 - b. Surfaces exhibit crazing, cracking, or flaking.
 - 2. Warranty Period: . 50 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL
- A. Porcelain-Enamel Face Sheet: Manufacturer's standard steel sheet with porcelain-enamel coating fused to steel; uncoated thickness indicated.
 - 1. Gloss Finish: Gloss as indicated; dry-erase markers wipe clean with dry cloth or standard eraser.
 - B. Hardboard: ANSI A135.4, tempered.
 - C. Extruded Aluminum: ASTM B 221, Alloy 6063.
 - D. Board Color: White.
- 2.2 MARKERBOARD ASSEMBLIES
- A. Magnetic Porcelain-Enamel Markerboards: Balanced, high-pressure, factory-laminated markerboard assembly of three-ply construction consisting of backing sheet, core material, and 0.021-inch- thick, porcelain-enamel face sheet with high-gloss finish.
 - 1. Basis-Of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Magnetic Marker Board as manufactured by Deko Markerboard; www.dekomarkerboard.com, or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Best-Rite Manufacturing.

- b. Claridge Products and Equipment, Inc.
 - c. Deko Markerboard.
 - d. PolyVision Corporation; a Steelcase company.
 - e. Egan Visual Inc.
 - 2. Size: Manufactures standard "executive" 5-inch wide by 4-inch height.
 - 3. For substitution requests, refer to Section "012500 – Substitution Procedures".
 - 4. Manufacturer's Standard Core: Minimum 1/4 inch thick, with manufacturer's standard moisture-barrier backing.
 - 5. Laminating Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, moisture-resistant thermoplastic type.
- 2.3 **MARKERBOARD ACCESSORIES**
- A. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricated from not less than 0.062-inch- thick, extruded aluminum; standard size and shape.
 - 1. Factory-Applied Trim: Manufacturer's standard.
 - B. Chalktray: Manufacturer's standard, continuous.
 - 1. Box Type: Extruded aluminum with slanted front, grooved tray, and cast-aluminum end closures.
 - 2. Solid Type: Extruded aluminum with ribbed section and smoothly curved exposed ends.
 - C. Map Rail: Provide the following accessories:
 - 1. Display Rail: Continuous and integral with map rail; fabricated from cork approximately 1 to 2 inches wide.
 - 2. End Stops: Located at each end of map rail.
 - 3. Map Hooks: Two map hooks for every 48 inches of map rail or fraction thereof.
- 2.4 **FABRICATION**
- A. Factory-Assembled Visual Display Units: Coordinate factory-assembled units with trim and accessories indicated. Join parts with a neat, precision fit.
 - 1. Make joints only where total length exceeds maximum manufactured length. Fabricate with minimum number of joints.
 - 2. Provide manufacturer's standard vertical-joint spline system between abutting sections of markerboards.
 - 3. Provide manufacturer's standard mullion trim at joints between markerboards and tackboards of combination units.
 - 4. Where size of visual display boards or other conditions require support in addition to normal trim, provide structural supports or modify trim as indicated or as selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard structural support accessories to suit conditions indicated.
 - B. Aluminum Frames and Trim: Fabricate units straight and of single lengths, keeping joints to a minimum. Miter corners to a neat, hairline closure.
 - 1. Where factory-applied trim is indicated, trim shall be assembled and attached to visual display units at manufacturer's factory before shipment.
- 2.5 **ALUMINUM FINISHES**
- A. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 **INSTALLATION,**
- A. General: Install visual display surfaces in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings, or if not indicated, at heights indicated below. Keep perimeter lines straight, level, and plumb. Provide grounds, clips, backing materials, adhesives, brackets, anchors, trim, and accessories necessary for complete installation.
 - B. Visual Display Boards: Attach visual display boards to wall surfaces with adhesive gobs at 16 inches o.c., horizontally and vertically.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 101400
SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Related Documents: Provisions established in Conditions of the Contract, Division 01 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- B. Section Includes
 - 1. Identifying devices where shown on the Drawings complete and as specified including the following:
 - a. Parking signs indicating accessible spaces.
 - b. Directional and traffic signs.
 - c. Pin mounted building identification signs.
 - d. Interior code required signs.
 - e. Illuminated signs.
 - 2. Coordination for installation of signage provided by others.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's construction details relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles, and finishes for each type of sign required.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide shop drawings for fabrication and erection of signs. Include plans, elevations, and large-scale sections of typical members and other components. Show anchors, accessories, layout, and installation details.
- C. Samples for Verification:
 - 1. Physical: Submit samples of one completed sign for review and approval. Approved sample may be incorporated into Project.
 - 2. Color: Submit manufacturer's standard color selection chart. Do not proceed until colors have been selected.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Single-Source Responsibility: For each separate type of sign required, obtain signs from one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Manufacturer shall have a minimum of five years experience in the manufacturing of signs specified.
- C. Codes and Standards:
 - 1. Panel signs shall have 1/32-inch raised copy and grade 2 Braille, and shall comply with all existing federal, state, and local accessibility standards.
 - 2. Code and Standards: Comply with American with Disabilities Act of 1990, Title 3 Provisions, Public Accommodations and Commercial Facilities. Updated March 15, 2012.
 - 3. Comply with the State of Texas Accessibility Standards, 2012 edition, as administered by the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements herein, provide products from one of the following:
 - 1. Best Manufacturing Company, Montrose, Colorado.
 - 2. Mohawk Sign Systems, Schenectady, New York.
 - 3. Nelson-Harkins, Chicago, Illinois.
 - 4. ASI Signs, Dallas, Texas.
- B. Substitutions: Under provisions of Section 012500.

2.2 HANDICAPPED PARKING

- A. Screen Printed Signs:
 - 1. 18 gauge bonderized steel with blue baked enamel finish and white screen printed copy.
 - 2. Copy and Size:
 - a. "Handicapped Parking Only" - 12 inches by 18 inches.
 - b. "Van Accessible" - 12 inches by 6 inches.
 - 3. Acceptable Product: Best Traffic Signs No. SS04 with SS52 as required.

- B. Post: Galvanized pipe column minimum 9 feet long.

2.3 DIRECTIONAL SIGNS

- A. Screen Printed Signs:
 1. Extruded aluminum panels with anodic finish and white screen printed copy.
 2. Size and Configuration: As indicated on Drawings.
 3. Copy: As indicated on Drawings.
 4. Acceptable Product: Best Post and Plank as detailed on Drawings.

2.4 BUILDING IDENTIFICATION SIGNAGE

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 1. ASI Sign Systems, 3890 W. Northwest Highway, Suite 102, Dallas, TX 75220; (214) 352 9140 telephone; (214) 352 9741 facsimile; (800) ASI-SPEC (274-7446).
 2. Substitutions: Submit in accordance with Section 01600.
- B. Acceptable Product: ASI Series LC Cast Metal Dimensional Letters.
- C. Material:
 1. Cast Aluminum in Satin Anodized finish.
- D. Fabricated Letters:
 1. Letter Style: Refer to Drawings.
 2. Letter Cap Height: Refer to Drawings.
 3. Letter Depth: 1 inch.
- E. Mounting Method: Projected Mount.

2.5 ROOM SIGNAGE SYSTEMS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 1. ASI Sign Systems, 3890 W. Northwest Highway, Suite 102, Dallas, TX 75220; (214) 352 9140 telephone; (214) 352 9741 facsimile; (800) ASI-SPEC (274-7446).
 2. Substitutions: Submit in accordance with Section 016000.
- B. Acceptable Product: ASI Unframed SP Series Signs with requirements indicated for materials, thickness, finish colors, designs, shapes, sizes and details.
- C. Sign Face: Clear acrylic, 0.080 inch thick, matte first surface.
 1. Adhesive: Pressure sensitive adhesive film, second surface.
- D. Tactile Graphics and Text:
 1. Fabrication: Provide tactile copy and grade 2 Braille raised 1/32 inch minimum from plaque first surface by manufacturer's stratification process as follows:
 - a. ASI Intouch™, photo-mechanical method.
 2. Provide lettering and graphics precisely formed, uniformly opaque to comply with relevant ADA regulations and requirements indicated for size, style, spacing, content, position, and colors.
- E. Non-Tactile Graphics and Text:
 1. Fabrication options:
 - a. Series SPE/SPJ: Non-tactile graphic plaque, no back plate.
 2. Text or graphic technique:
 - a. Screen process using subsurface method.
 3. Provide lettering and graphics precisely formed, uniformly opaque, and consistent in size, style, spacing, content, position, and colors.
- F. Overall panel size: Refer to Drawings.
- G. Panel colors: As selected by Architect.
- H. Text or graphic colors: As selected by Architect.
- I. Letter styles, colors, letter sizes and layout position: As selected by Architect.
- J. Installation Method: System SA, silicone adhesive.

2.6 ILLUMINATED SIGNAGE

- A. Fabricated Channel Characters: Metal face and side returns, formed free from warp and distortion; with uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; internally braced for stability and for securing fasteners; and as follows.
 1. Illuminated Characters: Backlighting character construction with fiber-optic or LED lighting including transformers, insulators, and other accessories for operability, with provision for servicing and concealing connections to building electrical system. Use tight or sealed joint construction to prevent unintentional light leakage. Space lamps apart from each other and away from character surfaces as needed to illuminate evenly.
 - a. Power: As indicated on electrical Drawings.
 - b. Weeps: Provide weep holes to drain water at lowest part of exterior characters.

2. Character Material: Sheet or plate steel.
3. Material Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for size and design of character.
4. Character Height: As indicated.
5. Character Depth: As indicated.
6. Finish: Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard, in color matching Architect's sample.
7. Mounting: Manufacturer's standard for size and design of character.
 - a. Hold characters at manufacturer's recommended distance from wall surface.
8. Typeface: As selected from Manufacturer's full line.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Deliver and store identifying devices in protective wrappings until ready for installation. Install letters in protective wrappings and remove wrappings just prior to substantial completion.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install signs plumb, level and square and in proper planes with other work, at heights required by accessibility codes and standards.
- B. Anchor each plastic laminate sign with adhesive.
- C. Install signs with sufficient amount of foam tape for proper installation.
- D. Attach as recommended by sign manufacturer.
- E. Anchor each sign with adhesive.
- F. Coordinate arrival and installation of graphic signs with hardware installation. Graphic signs function as and are coordinated with the hardware as shown on the Drawings.
- G. Room name signs shall be placed on the public side of the door except where noted otherwise.
- H. Single Door Sign: Provide one sign as specified above, mounted to wall adjacent to door on knob side.
- I. Pair of Doors: Provide one sign as specified above, mounted to adjacent wall closest to active leaf of door. Do not install sign where it will be obstructed by door when door is in the 'open' position.
- J. Attachment: Mounting to surfaces shall be done by pressure sensitive frame double-faced tape. Signs shall be delivered to the project site with the tape in place and trimmed on each sign, but with the protective paper layer not removed. Paper layer shall be removed just prior to installation of signs.

3.3 EXTERIOR INSTALLATION - PARKING AND DIRECTIONAL SIGNS

- A. Mount posts in 12-inch round by 2'-6" deep concrete footing.
- B. Handicapped Signs: Mount signs at height to comply with accessibility codes.

3.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate the installation of the identifying devices with the hardware manufacturer for lockset and knob leave outs as detailed and scheduled.

3.5 DAMAGE

- A. Any identifying device which is scratched or defaced will be rejected.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove protective materials and clean all signs. Clean surfaces with plain water or water with soap or household detergent.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102600
WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Corner guards.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each impact-resistant wall protection unit.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each impact-resistant wall protection unit showing locations and extent. Include sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples: For each type of impact-resistant wall protection unit indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain impact-resistant wall protection units from single source from single manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other non-corrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.

2.2 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Metal Corner Guards: Fabricated from one-piece, formed or extruded metal with formed edges; with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Koroseal.
 - b. Arden Architectural Specialties, Inc.
 - c. Balco, Inc.
 - d. Construction Specialties, Inc.
 - e. IPC Door and Wall Protection Systems; Division of InPro Corporation.
 - f. Korogard Wall Protection Systems; a division of RJF International Corporation.
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel, Type 304.
 - a. Thickness: Minimum 0.0500 inch.
 - b. Finish: Directional satin, No. 4.
 - 3. Wing Size: Refer to Finish Legend.
 - 4. Corner Radius: 1/8 inch.
 - 5. Mounting: Flat-head, countersunk screws through factory-drilled mounting holes.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate impact-resistant wall protection units to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Fabricate components with tight seams and joints with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.
- D. Miter corners and ends of wood handrails for returns.

2.4 METAL FINISHES

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
 - 2. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
 - 3. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
 - 4. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
- B. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Examine walls to which impact-resistant wall protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing impact-resistant wall protection system components.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install impact-resistant wall protection units level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard, ammonia-based, household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 102800
TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Washroom accessories.
 2. Shower room accessories.
 3. Underlavatory guards.
 4. Custodial accessories.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include the following:
1. Construction details and dimensions.
 2. Anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
 3. Material and finish descriptions.
 4. Features that will be included for Project.
 5. Manufacturer's warranty.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.
1. Identify locations using room designations indicated.
 2. Identify products using designations indicated.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: For products listed together in the same Part 2 articles, obtain products from single source from single manufacturer.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.
- 1.6 WARRANTY
- A. Special Mirror Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace mirrors that develop visible silver spoilage defects and that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: 15 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Brass: ASTM B 19, flat products; ASTM B 16, rods, shapes, forgings, and flat products with finished edges; or ASTM B 30, castings.
- C. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036-inch minimum nominal thickness.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, with G60 hot-dip zinc coating.
- E. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- F. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-and-theft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- G. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).

- H. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.
- I. ABS Plastic: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene resin formulation.

2.2 WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Bradley Corporation.
 - 3. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
- B. Surface-Mounted Roll-Toilet Tissue Dispenser:
 - 1. Acceptable Product: Classic Series Model B-2888, by Bobrick Washroom equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Description: Double-roll dispenser.
 - 3. Mounting: Surface.
 - 4. Bracket/Backplate: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- C. Paper Towel Dispensing and Waste Combination Unit:
 - 1. Basis of Design: Contura Series Model B-43944, by Bobrick Washroom equipment, Inc.
 - 2. Mounting: Surface.
 - 3. Controlled delivery; 3/4 spindle revolution on each dispensing operation.
 - 4. Counterbalanced spindle automatically returns to original position. Accommodates paper towel rolls up to 6 inches in diameter.
- D. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:
 - 1. To be provided by Owner.
- E. Grab Bar:
 - 1. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
 - 3. Outside Diameter: 1-1/4 inches per TAS requirements.
 - 4. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Mirror Unit:
 - 1. Frame: Stainless-steel channel.
 - a. Corners: Manufacturer's standard.
 - 2. Integral Shelf: 5 inches deep where indicated.
 - 3. Hangers: Produce rigid, tamper- and theft-resistant installation, using method indicated below.
 - a. One-piece, galvanized-steel, wall-hanger device with spring-action locking mechanism to hold mirror unit in position with no exposed screws or bolts.
 - b. Wall bracket of galvanized steel, equipped with concealed locking devices requiring a special tool to remove.
 - 4. Size: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 SHOWER ROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. American Specialties, Inc.
 - 2. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 - 3. Bradley Corporation.
 - 4. GAMCO Specialty Accessories; a division of Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
- B. Shower Rod:
 - 1. Description: 1-inch OD; fabricated from nominal 0.0375-inch- thick stainless steel.
 - 2. Mounting Flanges: Stainless-steel flanges designed for exposed fasteners.
 - 3. Finish: No. 4 (satin).
- C. Shower Curtain:
 - 1. Size: Minimum 6 inches wider than opening by 72 inches high.
 - 2. Material: Vinyl.
 - 3. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
 - 4. Grommets: Corrosion resistant at minimum 6 inches o.c. through top hem.
 - 5. Shower Curtain Hooks: Stainless-steel, spring wire curtain hooks with snap fasteners, sized to accommodate specified curtain rod. Provide one hook per curtain grommet.
- D. Folding Shower Seat:
 - 1. Configuration: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Seat: Phenolic or polymeric composite of one-piece construction in color as selected by Architect.
 - 3. Mounting Mechanism: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- E. Shower Grab Bar:
 - 1. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.

2. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.
 - a. Finish: Smooth, No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
 3. Outside Diameter: 1-1/4 inches per TAS requirements.
 4. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings.
- F. Robe Hook:
1. Description: Double-prong unit.
 2. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- G. Towel Shelf and Towel Bar:
1. Basis of Design: Model B-676x24 by Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
 2. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
 3. Mounting: Surface with concealed flanges/fasteners.
 4. Length: 24 inches, unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Material and Finish: Stainless steel, No. 4 finish (satin).
- 2.4 FABRICATION
- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
 - B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and re-supplying. Provide minimum of six keys to Owner's representative.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written recommendations.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 104413
FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fire protection cabinets for the following:
 - a. Portable fire extinguishers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire protection cabinets.
 - 1. Fire Protection Cabinets: Include roughing-in dimensions, details showing mounting methods, relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction, door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style.
 - 2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire protection cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:
 - 1. Size: 6 by 6 inches square.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated, Fire Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E 814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate size of fire protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire hoses, hose valves, and hose racks indicated are accommodated.
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire protection cabinets with wall depths.

1.6 SEQUENCING

- A. Apply vinyl lettering on field-painted, fire protection cabinets after painting is complete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- B. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated, and as follows:
 - 1. Sheet: ASTM B 209.
- C. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- D. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.2 FIRE EXTINGUISHER CABINET

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
 - 1. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. J. L. Industries, Inc., a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
 - b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.

- c. Potter Roemer LLC.
 - 2. Basis of Design: Refer to Master Schedule.
 - B. Cabinet Construction: Non-rated in non-rated walls; 1-or- 2-hour fire rated in rated walls to match rating of wall.
 - 1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.0428-inch-thick, cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick, fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 - C. Cabinet Material: Steel sheet.
 - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
 - D. Semi-recessed Cabinet: Cabinet box partially recessed in walls of sufficient depth to suit style of trim indicated; with one-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend). Provide where walls are of insufficient depth for recessed cabinets but are of sufficient depth to accommodate semi-recessed cabinet installation.
 - 1. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.
 - E. Cabinet Trim Material: Aluminum sheet.
 - F. Door Material: Steel sheet Aluminum sheet Stainless-steel sheet.
 - G. Door Style: Vertical duo panel with frame.
 - H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).
 - I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
 - 1. Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.
 - 2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
 - J. Accessories:
 - 1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
 - 2. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.
 - a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."
 - 1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
 - 2) Application Process: Decals.
 - 3) Lettering Color: Black.
 - 4) Orientation: Vertical.
 - K. Finishes:
 - 1. Exterior of cabinet , door, and trim except for those surfaces indicated to receive another finish:
 - a. Clear anodized aluminum.
 - 2. Interior of cabinet and door: Baked enamel.
- 2.3 FABRICATION
- A. Fire Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.
 - 1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
 - 2. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
 - 3. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
 - 4. Install door locks at factory.
 - B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles selected.
 - 1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
 - 2. Miter and weld perimeter door frames.
 - C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for cabinets to verify actual locations of piping connections before cabinet installation.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where semi-recessed cabinets will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for semi-recessed fire protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Fire Protection Cabinets: per Texas Accessibility Standards.
- B. Fire Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire protection cabinets. If wall thickness is not adequate for recessed cabinets, provide semi-recessed fire protection cabinets.
 - 2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
 - 3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire protection cabinets, square and plumb.
 - 4. Fire-Rated Cabinets:
 - a. Install cabinet with not more than 1/16-inch tolerance between pipe OD and knockout OD. Center pipe within knockout.
 - b. Seal through penetrations with firestopping sealant as specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- C. Identification: Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 104416
FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FMG.
- 1.5 COORDINATION
- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.
- 1.6 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
- a. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.
3. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS (Drawing Designation FE)
- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each mounting bracket indicated.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
- b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
- c. Potter Roemer LLC.
2. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
3. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B and bar coding for documenting fire extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Basis of Design: Larsens MP-10, 4A-80B:C unless noted otherwise.
- 2.2 MOUNTING BRACKETS
- A. Location: For all extinguishers not placed in fire extinguisher cabinet, provide mounting bracket.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- a. J. L. Industries, Inc.; a division of Activar Construction Products Group.
- b. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
- c. Potter Roemer LLC.
- C. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and

location.

1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.
 - a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 105122**GEAR LOCKERS****PART 1 - GENERAL****1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. Related Documents: General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 - General Requirements, and Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Free standing "turn-out" gear locker units.
 - 2. Locker benches.
 - 3. Installation accessories and hardware.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit technical data and descriptive literature for all products proposed for use. Include manufacturer's printed storage, handling and installation instructions
- B. Shop Drawings: Submit drawings indicating locker locations, types, sizes, configurations, layout of groups, numbering, and accessories. Indicate details of fillers, trim, base and accessories.
- C. Samples: Provide 2 samples, 3 by 6 inches in size of each color in manufacturer's standard color range for Architect's selection.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Submit detailed installation instructions for lockers and accessories.

1.3 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Do not deliver products until building is enclosed and ready for locker installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - 1. Mid-Minnesota Wire, 670 SW 15th Street, Forest Lake, MN. 55025 (651-464-4780).

2.2 FLOOR MOUNTED LOCKERS

- A. Type: Floor mounted, free standing, wire grid storage system.
 - 1. Locker Size: Standard 20 inch opening, 74-1/2 inches high by 24 inches wide by 20 inches deep.
- B. Wire Grid: 0.25 inch diameter, ASTM 510, cold drawn wire in three inch square pattern.
- C. Divider Framing: 1.25 inch diameter by 16 gauge wall thickness ASTM A513 tubing.
- D. Shelves: Two (1) top and (1) bottom, ASTM 510 cold drawn wire with sheet metal brackets.
- E. Apparel Hooks: Three per opening, 0.25 inch diameter ASTM 510 cold drawn wire.
- F. Name Placards: 2 inch by 16 inch, manufacturer's standard construction and finish, one per opening.
- G. Fasteners: Cadmium, zinc, or nickel plated steel; no exposed bolts or rivet heads on front of lockers or frames.
- H. Fabrication
 - 1. Frames and Grids: Totally welded construction.
- I. Optional Manufacturer's Equipment:
 - 1. Horizontal hung stainless steel bar.
 - 2. Helmet Holder.
- J. Basis of Design: In accordance with specified requirements provide "GEARGRID" Wall Mounted Storage System, by Mid-Minnesota Wire.

2.3 LOCKER BENCHES

- A. Provide bench units with overall assembly height of 17-1/2 inches.
- B. Bench Tops: Manufacturer's standard one-piece units, with rounded corners and edges.
 - 1. Size: Minimum 9-1/2 inches wide by 1-1/4 inches thick.
 - 2. Laminated clear hardwood with one coat of clear sealer on all surfaces and one coat of clear lacquer on top and sides.
- C. Fixed Pedestals: Manufacturer's standard supports, with predrilled fastener holes for attaching bench top and anchoring to floor, complete with fasteners and anchors, and as follows:
 - 1. Tubular Steel: 1-1/4-inch diameter steel tubing, with 0.1265-inch thick steel flanges welded at top and base; with powder coated finish, color as selected; anchored with exposed fasteners.
- D. Size: As indicated.
- E. Acceptable Product:
 - 1. Maple Hardwood Locker Bench, by Global Industrial, (888-978-7759).
 - 2. Locker Room Bench, by Gilmore Kramer Company (800-544-3137).
 - 3. Maple Top Bench, by Anytime Products (818-709-8125)

2.4 FINISHES

- A. Clean, degrease, and neutralize metal; prime and finish with manufacturer's standard powder coated finish system.
- B. Paint storage units of one color throughout.
- C. Color: As selected.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Beginning of installation indicates acceptance of existing conditions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install using skilled workmen in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Install storage units, plumb, level, rigid, and flush.
- C. Space fastening in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions and approved submittals. Conceal fasteners wherever possible. Use anchorage devices appropriate to suit materials encountered.
- D. Bolt adjoining locker units together to provide rigid installation.
- E. Install end panels, filler panels and other closures for complete installation and to close off all openings.
- F. Fixed Locker Benches: Provide no fewer than two pedestals for each bench, uniformly spaced not more than 72 inches apart. Securely fasten tops of pedestals to undersides of bench tops, and anchor bases to floor.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Touch-up marred finishes.
- B. Use only materials and finishes recommended or furnished by locker manufacturer.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect storage units from damage and defacement until final acceptance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 107500
FLAGPOLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. This Section includes ground-set flagpoles made from aluminum.
- 1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS
- A. Structural Performance: Provide flagpole assemblies, including anchorages and supports, capable of withstanding the effects of wind loads, determined according to NAAMM FP 1001, "Guide Specifications for Design of Metal Flagpoles."
1. Base flagpole design on polyester flags of maximum standard size suitable for use with flagpole or flag size indicated, whichever is more stringent.
 2. Basic Wind Speed: As indicated; 3-second gust speed at 33 feet aboveground.
- 1.4 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of flagpole required.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include elevations and details showing general arrangement, jointing, fittings and accessories, grounding, and anchoring and supporting systems.
1. Include details of foundation system for ground-set flagpoles.
- C. Structural Calculations: For flagpoles indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Finish Samples for Verification: For each finished material used for flagpoles and accessories.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each flagpole as a complete unit, including fittings, accessories, bases, and anchorage devices, from a single manufacturer.
1. Obtain flagpoles through one source from a single manufacturer.
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. General: Spiral wrap flagpoles with heavy paper and enclose in a hard fiber tube or other protective container.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. American Flagpole; a Kearney-National Inc. Company.
 2. Baartol Company Inc. (The)
 3. Concord Industries, Inc.
- 2.2 FLAGPOLES
- A. Flagpole Construction, General: Construct flagpoles in one piece if possible. If more than one piece is necessary, comply with the following:
1. Fabricate shop and field joints without using fasteners, screw collars, or lead calking.
 2. For tapered flagpoles, provide flush hairline joints using self-aligning, snug-fitting, internal sleeves.
- B. Exposed Height: **One at 35 feet above finish grade.**
- C. Aluminum Flagpoles: Provide cone -tapered flagpoles fabricated from seamless extruded tubing complying with ASTM B 241, Alloy 6063, with a minimum wall thickness of 3/16 inch. Heat treat after fabrication to comply with ASTM B 597, Temper T6.
- D. Foundation Tube: Galvanized corrugated-steel foundation tube, 0.064-inch- minimum nominal wall thickness. Provide with 3/16-inch steel bottom plate and support plate; 3/4-inch-diameter, steel ground spike; and steel centering wedges all welded together. Galvanize steel parts, including foundation tube, after assembly. Provide loose hardwood wedges at top of foundation tube for plumbing pole.
1. Provide flashing collar of same material and finish as flagpole.

- E. Sleeve for Aluminum Flagpole: foundation sleeve, made to fit flagpole, for casting into concrete foundation.
 - 1. Provide flashing collar of same material and finish as flagpole.
- 2.3 FITTINGS
 - A. Finial Ball: Manufacturer's standard flush-seam ball, sized as indicated or, if not indicated, to match flagpole-butt diameter.
 - 1. 0.063-inch spun aluminum, finished to match flagpole.
 - B. External Halyard: Ball-bearing, nonfouling, revolving truck assembly of cast metal with continuous 5/16-inch- diameter, braided polypropylene halyard and 9-inch cast-metal cleats with fasteners. Finish exposed metal surfaces to match flagpole.
 - 1. Halyards and Cleats: One at each flagpole.
 - 2. Cleat Covers: Cast metal, finished to match flagpole, secured with cylinder locks.
 - 3. Halyard Covers: 2-inch channel, 60 inches long, finished to match flagpole.
 - C. Halyard Flag Snaps: Provide two stainless-steel swivel snap hooks per halyard.
 - 1. Provide with neoprene or vinyl covers.
- 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS
 - A. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi)
 - B. Concrete: Provide concrete composed of portland cement, coarse and fine aggregate, and water mixed in proportions to attain a 28-day compressive strength of not less than 3000 psi, complying with ASTM C 94.
 - C. Sand: ASTM C 33, fine aggregate.
 - D. Elastomeric Joint Sealant: Single-component neutral-curing silicone joint sealant complying with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for Use NT (nontraffic) and for Use M, G, A, and, as applicable to joint substrates indicated, O joint substrates.
- 2.5 FINISHES
 - A. Metal Finishes, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - B. Aluminum: Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 1. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: non-specular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 PREPARATION
 - A. Prepare uncoated metal flagpoles that are set in foundation tubes by painting below-grade portions with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.
 - B. Foundation Excavation: Excavate to neat clean lines in undisturbed soil. Remove loose soil and foreign matter from excavation and moisten earth before placing concrete.
 - C. Provide forms where required due to unstable soil conditions and for perimeter of flagpole base at grade. Secure and brace forms and foundation tube, sleeve, or anchor bolts in position, to prevent displacement during concreting.
 - D. Place concrete immediately after mixing. Compact concrete in place by using vibrators. Moist-cure exposed concrete for not less than seven days or use non-staining curing compound.
 - E. Trowel exposed concrete surfaces to a smooth, dense finish, free of trowel marks, and uniform in texture and appearance. Provide positive slope for water runoff to perimeter of concrete base.
- 3.2 FLAGPOLE INSTALLATION
 - A. General: Install flagpoles where shown and according to Shop Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - B. Foundation-Tube Installation: Install flagpole in foundation tube, seated on bottom plate between steel centering wedges. Plumb flagpole and install hardwood wedges to secure flagpole in place. Place and compact sand in foundation tube and remove hardwood wedges. Seal top of foundation tube with a 2-inch layer of elastomeric joint sealant and cover with flashing collar.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 109900
MISCELLANEOUS SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
 - A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
 - A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Miscellaneous specialty items as listed herein.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
 - A. Product Data: Including all pertinent performance characteristics and criteria.
 - B. Shop Drawings: Indicate materials, construction, sizes, quantities, finishes, and installation details.
- 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS
 - A. Manufacturer's Instructions: For installation, maintenance, and repair.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 PRODUCTS
 - A. Fire Control Key Box: Provide fire department key control box complete with alarm tamper switch at location near main entrance to be determined.
 - 1. Acceptable Product: Model 3200 by Knox Box.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
 - A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to receive work of this Section.
 - B. Notify Architect of any existing conditions which will adversely affect execution.
 - C. Beginning of execution will constitute acceptance of existing conditions.
- 3.2 PREPARATION
 - A. Prepare substrate surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION
 - A. Install using skilled workers in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and recommendations.
- 3.4 ADJUSTING
 - A. Adjust and fit items to be flush with adjacent construction.
 - B. Fasten or adhere for tight connections and joints.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 113100
RESIDENTIAL APPLIANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Appliances at locations indicated on the Drawings.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, dimensions, furnished accessories, and finishes for each appliance.
- B. Product Schedule: For appliances. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each residential appliance to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Maintains, within 25 miles of Project site, a service center capable of providing training, parts, and emergency maintenance repairs.
- B. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of residential appliance from single manufacturer.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with the following:
1. NFPA: Provide electrical appliances listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- 1.5 WARRANTY
- A. Special Warranties: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace residential appliances or components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period except as qualified below:
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Microwave Oven: Full warranty including parts and labor for on-site service on the magnetron tube.
1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Refrigerator/Freezer/Icemaker, Sealed System: Full warranty including parts and labor for on-site service on the product.
1. Warranty Period for Sealed Refrigeration System: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Other Components: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 RANGE
- A. Product: Gas Range, freestanding range with one oven, 48 inches wide.
1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. General Electric Company (GE).
 - b. Whirlpool Corporation.
- 2.2 MICROWAVE OVENS
- A. Basis of Design: 2.2 Cu. Ft. Countertop Microwave Oven Model No. PEB7226SF/EH, Profile Series by General Electric Company (GE).
- 2.3 REFRIGERATOR
- A. Product: 36-inch wide, one-door, refrigerator; Comply with AHAM HRF-1.
1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. General Electric Company (GE).

- b. Whirlpool Corporation.

2.4 FREEZER

- A. Product: 36-inch wide, one-door, freezer; Comply with AHAM HRF-1.
 - 1. Acceptable manufacturers:
 - a. General Electric Company (GE).
 - b. Whirlpool Corporation.

2.5 ICEMAKER

- A. Ice-Making Machine:
 - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Scotsman, Ice Cube Machine, Model CO630MA-32, air cooled, self-contained condenser, 30 inches wide.
 - 2. Output: 640 lb per 24 hours.
 - 3. Ice Bin: Scotsman Model B-530 420 lb ice storage capacity, 30 inches wide.

2.6 DISHWASHER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: D5654XXLHS/PH Pro Handle by ASKO.

2.7 CLOTHES WASHER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: GE® 5.0 DOE cu. ft. capacity washer with stainless steel basket and steam Model No. GTWS8650DWS

2.8 CLOTHES DRYER

- A. Basis-of-Design Product: GE® 7.8 cu. ft. capacity gas dryer with stainless steel drum and steam Model No. GTDS850GDWS

2.9 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, power connections, and other conditions affecting installation and performance of residential appliances.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before appliance installation.
- C. Examine walls, ceilings, and roofs for suitable conditions where overhead exhaust hoods and microwave ovens with vented exhaust fans will be installed.
- D. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Built-in Equipment: Securely anchor units to supporting cabinets or countertops with concealed fasteners. Verify that clearances are adequate for proper functioning and that rough openings are completely concealed.
- C. Freestanding Equipment: Place units in final locations after finishes have been completed in each area. Verify that clearances are adequate to properly operate equipment.
- D. Range Anti-Tip Device: Install at each range according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Utilities: See Divisions 22 and 26 for plumbing and electrical requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 122413
ROLLER WINDOW SHADES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes manual roller shades.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include styles, material descriptions, construction details, dimensions of individual components and profiles, features, finishes, and operating instructions.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of roller shades. Include elevations, sections, details, and dimensions not shown in Product Data. Show installation details, mountings, attachments to other work, operational clearances, and relationship to adjoining work.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension system members and attachment to building structure.
 - 2. Ceiling-mounted or penetrating items including light fixtures, air outlets and inlets, speakers, sprinklers, recessed shades, and special moldings at walls, column penetrations, and other junctures of acoustical ceilings with adjoining construction.
 - 3. Shade mounting assembly and attachment.
 - 4. Size and location of access to shade operator, motor, and adjustable components.
 - 5. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot.
- D. Samples: Shade Material: Not less than 12-inch- square section of fabric, from dye lot used for the Work, with specified treatments applied. Show complete pattern repeat. Mark top and face of material.
- E. Maintenance Data: For roller shades to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:
 - 1. Methods for maintaining roller shades and finishes.
 - 2. Precautions about cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to fabrics, finishes, and performance.
 - 3. Operating hardware.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain roller shades through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide roller shade band materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Flame-Resistance Ratings: Passes NFPA 701.
- D. Product Standard: Provide roller shades complying with WCMA A 100.1.
- E. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver shades in factory packages, marked with manufacturer and product name, and location of installation using same designations indicated on Drawings and in a window treatment schedule.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install roller shades until construction and wet and dirty finish work in spaces, including painting, is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
- B. Field Measurements: Where roller shades are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Allow clearances for operable glazed units' operation hardware throughout the entire operating range. Notify Architect of discrepancies. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to

avoid delaying the Work.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Rollers Shades: Before installation begins, for each size, color, texture, and pattern indicated, full-size units equal to 2 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ROLLER SHADES

- A. Acceptable Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Draper Inc.
 - 2. Hunter Douglas, Inc.; Hunter Douglas Window Fashions Division.
 - 3. Levolor; Levolor-Kirsch Window Fashions; a Newell Rubbermaid Company.
 - 4. Lutron Shading Solutions by VIMCO.
 - 5. MechoShade Systems, Inc.
 - 6. Nysan Shading Systems Ltd.
 - 7. Silent Gliss USA, Inc.
 - 8. Sol-R-Veil.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: As scheduled, some open mesh and some black-out.
- C. Shade Band Material: PVC-coated fiberglass and polyester blends.
 - 1. Pattern, Style, Color, open-ness: As scheduled
 - 2. Bottom Hem: Straight.
- D. Rollers: Electro-galvanized or epoxy primed steel or extruded-aluminum tube of diameter and wall thickness required to support and fit internal components of operating system and the weight and width of shade band material without sagging; designed to be easily removable from support brackets; with manufacturer's standard method for attaching shade material. Provide capacity for two roller shade band(s) per roller, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
- E. Direction of Roll: Regular, from back of roller.
- F. Mounting Brackets: Fascia end caps, fabricated from steel finished to match fascia or headbox.
- G. Fascia: L-shaped, formed-steel sheet or extruded aluminum; long edges returned or rolled; continuous panel concealing front and bottom of shade roller, brackets, and operating hardware and operators; length as indicated; removable design for access.
- H. Top/Back Cover: L-shaped; material and finish to match fascia; combining with fascia and end caps to form a six-sided headbox enclosure sized to fit shade roller and operating hardware.
- I. Bottom Bar: Steel or extruded aluminum, with plastic or metal capped ends. Provide-type bottom bar with concealed weight bar as required for smooth, properly balanced shade operation.
- J. Mounting: Inside Recessed in ceiling pocket mounting permitting easy removal and replacement without damaging roller shade or adjacent surfaces and finishes.
- K. Hold-Down Brackets and Hooks or Pins: Manufacturer's standard for fixing shade in place, keeping shade band material taut, and reducing light gaps when shades are closed.
- L. Shade Operation: Manual; with continuous-loop bead-chain, clutch, and cord tensioner and bracket lift operator.
 - 1. Pull: Manufacturer's standard hand-grip engaged pull.
 - 2. Clutch: Capacity to lift size and weight of shade; sized to fit roller or provide adaptor.
 - 3. Lift-Assist Mechanism: Manufacturer's standard spring assist for balancing roller shade weight and lifting heavy roller shades.
 - 4. Loop Length: Length required to make operation convenient from floor level.
 - 5. Bead Chain: Nickel-plated metal or stainless steel.
- M. Shade Operation: Manual.

2.2 ROLLER SHADE FABRICATION

- A. Product Description: Roller shade consisting of a roller, a means of supporting the roller, a flexible sheet or band of material carried by the roller, a means of attaching the material to the roller, a bottom bar, and an operating mechanism that lifts and lowers the shade.
- B. Concealed Components: Non-corrodible or corrosion-resistant-coated materials.
 - 1. Lifting Mechanism: With permanently lubricated moving parts.
- C. Unit Sizes: Obtain units fabricated in sizes to fill window and other openings as follows, measured at 74 deg F:
 - 1. Shade Units Installed between (Inside) Jambs: Edge of shade not more than 1/4 inch from face of

- jamb. Length equal to head to sill dimension of opening in which each shade is installed.
2. Shade Units Installed Outside Jamb: Width and length as indicated, with terminations between shades of end-to-end installations at centerlines of mullion or other defined vertical separations between openings.
- D. Installation Brackets: Designed for easy removal and reinstallation of shade, for supporting fascia, headbox, roller, and operating hardware and for hardware position and shade mounting method indicated.
 - E. Installation Fasteners: No fewer than two fasteners per bracket, fabricated from metal non-corrosive to shade hardware and adjoining construction; type designed for securing to supporting substrate; and supporting shades and accessories under conditions of normal use.
 - F. Color-Coated Finish: For metal components exposed to view, apply manufacturer's standard baked finish complying with manufacturer's written instructions for surface preparation including pretreatment, application, baking, and minimum dry film thickness.
 - G. Colors of Metal and Plastic Components Exposed to View: As indicated by manufacturer's designations, unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, operational clearances, accurate locations of connections to building electrical system, and other conditions affecting performance.
 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 ROLLER SHADE INSTALLATION

- A. Install roller shades level, plumb, and aligned with adjacent units according to manufacturer's written instructions, and located so shade band is not closer than 2 inches to interior face of glass. Allow clearances for window operation hardware.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust and balance roller shades to operate smoothly, easily, safely, and free from binding or malfunction throughout entire operational range.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean roller shade surfaces after installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer that ensure that roller shades are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Replace damaged roller shades that cannot be repaired, in a manner approved by Architect, before time of Substantial Completion.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain roller shades. Refer to Division 01 Section Demonstration and Training."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 123617
STAINLESS STEEL COUNTERTOPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Stainless steel countertops.
 2. Stainless steel integral sinks where indicated.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For stainless steel countertops. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for grommets, plumbing fixtures and fittings, and proposed joint locations.
 2. Include details of support framing system.
 3. Indicate locations of and clearances from adjacent walls, doors, windows, other building components.
- C. Samples for Verification: For countertop material and finish indicated, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: For stainless steel countertops to include in maintenance manuals. Include Product Data for countertop-care products used or recommended by Installer and names, addresses, and telephone numbers of local sources for products.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Source Limitations: Obtain laboratory casework from single source from single manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Obtain countertops, sinks, accessories, and service fittings from casework manufacturer.
- C. Product Designations: Drawings indicate sizes and configurations of laboratory casework by referencing designated manufacturer's catalog numbers. Other manufacturers' laboratory casework of similar sizes and similar door and drawer configurations and complying with the Specifications may be considered. Refer to Division 01 Section "Common Product Requirements."
- 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Protect finished surfaces during handling and installation with protective covering of polyethylene film or other suitable material.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Where stainless steel countertops are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating stainless steel countertops without field measurements. Coordinate construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
- B. Coordinate layout and installation of framing and reinforcements for support of stainless steel countertops.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MANUFACTURERS
- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Advanced Lab Concepts.
 2. Bedcolab Ltd.

3. Fisher Hamilton LLC.
 4. Jamestown Metal Products.
 5. Kewaunee Scientific Corporation; Laboratory Products Group.
- B. Fabrication: Assemble and finish units at point of manufacture. Perform assembly on precision jigs to provide units that are square. Reinforce units with angles, gussets, and channels. Except where otherwise specified, integrally frame and weld to form dirt and vermin-resistant enclosures.
- 2.2 COUNTERTOP MATERIALS
- A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 240, Type 304.
- 2.3 COUNTERTOPS AND SINKS
- A. Countertops, General: Provide units with smooth surfaces in uniform plane free of defects. Make exposed edges and corners straight and uniformly beveled. Provide front and end overhang of 1 inch, with continuous drip groove on underside 1/2 inch from edge.
- B. Sinks, General: Provide sizes indicated or laboratory casework manufacturer's closest standard size of equal or greater volume, as approved by Architect.
- C. Drain Outlets: Provide with strainers and tailpieces, NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40), unless otherwise indicated.
1. Overflows: Provide overflow of standard beehive or open-top design with separate strainer. Height 2 inches less than sink depth. Provide in same material as strainer.
- D. Stainless-Steel Countertops: Made from stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.062-inch nominal thickness, with No. 4 satin finish.
- E. Extend top down 1 inch at edges with a 1/2-inch return flange under frame. Apply heavy coating of heat-resistant, sound-deadening mastic to undersurface.
1. Form backsplash coved to and integral with top surface.
 2. Provide raised (marine) edge around perimeter of countertops containing sinks; pitch two ways to sink to provide drainage without channeling or grooving.
 3. Provide raised (marine) edge around perimeter of countertops at sinks, where indicated; pitch two ways to sink to provide drainage without channeling or grooving.
 4. Punch holes for service fittings at factory.
 5. Reinforce underside of countertop with channels or use thicker metal sheet where necessary to insure rigidity without deflection.
 6. Weld shop-made joints.
 7. Where field-made joints are required, provide hairline butt-joints mechanically bolted through continuous channels welded to underside at edges of joined ends. Keep field jointing to a minimum.
 8. Where stainless-steel sinks occur in stainless-steel countertops, factory weld into one integral unit.
 9. After fabricating and welding, grind surfaces smooth and polish as needed to produce uniform, directionally textured finish with no evidence of welds and free of cross scratches. Passivate and rinse surfaces; remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces clean.
- F. Stainless-Steel Sinks: Made from stainless-steel sheet, not less than 0.050-inch nominal thickness. Fabricate with corners rounded and coved to at least 5/8-inch radius. Slope sink bottoms to outlet. Provide double-wall construction for sink partitions with top edge rounded to at least 1/2-inch diameter. Provide continuous butt-welded joints. After fabricating and welding, grind surfaces smooth and polish as needed to produce uniform finish with no evidence of welds and free of cross scratches. Passivate and rinse surfaces; remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces clean.
- G. Punch holes for fittings at factory.
1. Provide with stainless-steel strainers and tailpieces.
 2. Provide with integral rims except where located in stainless-steel countertops.
 3. Apply 1/8-inch-thick coating of heat-resistant, sound-deadening mastic to undersink surfaces.
- H. Sealant: Sanitary silicone as specified in Section 079201.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 EXAMINATION
- A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, location of reinforcements, and other conditions affecting performance of laboratory casework.
 - B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION OF COUNTERTOPS
- A. Comply with installation requirements in SEFA 2.3. Abut top and edge surfaces in one true plane with flush hairline joints and with internal supports placed to prevent deflection. Locate joints only where shown on Shop Drawings.

- B. Field Jointing: Where possible, make in same manner as shop-made joints using dowels, splines, fasteners, adhesives, and sealants recommended by manufacturer. Prepare edges in shop for field-made joints.
 - 1. Use concealed clamping devices for field-made joints in plastic-laminate countertops. Locate clamping devices within 6 inches of front and back edges and at intervals not exceeding 24 inches. Tighten according to manufacturer's written instructions to exert a uniform heavy pressure at joints.
 - C. Fastening: Secure countertops to cabinets with Z-type fasteners or equivalent, using two or more fasteners at each cabinet front, end, and back.
 - 1. Where necessary to penetrate countertops with fasteners, countersink heads approximately 1/8 inch (3 mm) and plug hole flush with material equal to countertop in chemical resistance, hardness, and appearance.
 - D. Provide required holes and cutouts for service fittings.
 - E. Seal unfinished edges and cutouts in plastic-laminate countertops with heavy coat of polyurethane varnish.
 - F. Provide scribe moldings for closures at junctures of countertop, curb, and splash with walls as recommended by manufacturer for materials involved. Match materials and finish to adjacent laboratory casework. Use chemical-resistant, permanently elastic sealing compound where recommended by manufacturer.
 - G. Carefully dress joints smooth, remove surface scratches, and clean entire surface.
- 3.3 INSTALLATION OF PLUMBING FITTINGS
- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Sections for installing water service fittings and drain plumbing.
 - B. Install fittings according to Shop Drawings, installation requirements in SEFA 2.3, and manufacturer's written instructions. Set bases and flanges of sink- and countertop-mounted fittings in sealant recommended by manufacturer of sink or countertop material. Securely anchor fittings to work unless otherwise indicated.
- 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTING
- A. Clean finished surfaces, touch up as required, and remove or refinish damaged or soiled areas to match original factory finish, as approved by Architect.
 - B. Protect countertop surfaces during construction with 6-mil plastic or other suitable water-resistant covering. Tape to underside of countertop at a minimum of 48 inches o.c.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 123662
ENGINEERED SURFACINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Drawing Designation: SM
- B. This Section includes solid surfacing for countertops as indicated on the Drawings.
- 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show thickness, finish, layout, and anchorage details. Indicate attachment methods, seams, joint treatments, and supports.
1. Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for plumbing fixtures, faucets, soap dispensers, and other items installed in countertops for architectural woodwork
 2. Show seam locations.
 3. Full-size details, edge details, attachments, etc
 4. Locations and sizes of furring, blocking, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections
- C. Samples for Verification: For the following:
1. Solid stone surfacing materials, 6 inches square.
 2. Cut sample and seam together for representation of seaming techniques.
 3. Indicate full range of color and pattern variation.
- 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS
- A. Maintenance Data: Submit manufacturer's recommended cleaning and maintenance procedures.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Company specializing in fabricating engineered stone surfacing material with minimum 5 years experience.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide surfacing material with the following surface-burning characteristics (if required by code) as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84 by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction:
1. Class I per ASTM E-84 including:
 - a. Flame Spread: 25 or less.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Field Measurements: Where surfacing is indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- 1.7 WARRANTY
- A. Manufacturer's 10 year warranty against defects in materials. Warranty shall provide material and labor to repair or replace defective materials. Damage caused by physical or chemical abuse or damage from excessive heat will not be warranted.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 QUARTZ SURFACING
- A. Basis of Design: As scheduled.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Quartz Surfacing Material: Nonporous, sound, hard, durable, heat resistant engineered stone meeting the following criteria:
1. Stain Resistance (ASTM D 2299, NEMA LD3): No effect.
 2. Izod Impact Strength (ASTM D 256): Average 0.361 ft.lbs/inch of notch.
 3. Impact Strength (2 lb. Ball from 8'-0"): Passed.
 4. Liquid Absorption (ASTM C 97): 0.022 percent.
 5. Surface Burning Characteristics (ASTM E 84):
 - a. Flame Spread: 10.
 6. Thermal Shock (ASTM C 484): Passed 5 cycles.
 7. Thickness: As scheduled.
 8. Colors and Sheen: As scheduled.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives and Cements: Non-staining, type as recommended by engineered stone manufacturer.
1. Waterproof, permanent material which will not induce mildew and fungus growth.
- B. Joint Sealants: Two part color matched polyester knife grade adhesive.
- C. Special Features: Provide edge treatments as detailed in Drawings.

2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Assemble work at shop and deliver to job ready for installation. Manufacture in largest practical lengths with seams in least conspicuous locations.
- B. Fabricate work square and to required lines.
- C. Recess and conceal fasteners, connections, and reinforcing.
- D. Design construction and installation details to allow for expansion and contraction of materials. Properly frame material with tight, hairline joints held rigidly in place.
- E. Comply with adhesive manufacturer's recommendations for adhesive shelf life, pot life, working life, mixing, spreading, assembly time, time under pressure and ambient temperatures.
- F. Fabricate countertops with backsplash and side splashes to profiles indicated or detailed.
- G. Fabricate items to profiles shown with connections and supports as detailed or as required for proper installation per manufacturer's recommendations.
- H. Provide cut-outs for plumbing fixtures and trim, washroom accessories, appliances, and related items. Confirm layout with manufacturer's cut-outs templates before beginning work. Round corners of cut-outs and sand edges smooth.
- I. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended unsupported overhang distances.
- J. Finish exposed surfaces smooth and polish to a sheen indicated.
- K. Radius corners and edges.
- L. Special Features: Provide edge treatments, and other detailed features.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's printed instructions and approved shop drawings. Provide templates and rough-in measurements.
- B. Install surfacing true in line and plane, level, rigid and solidly adhered to substrate.
- C. Pre-fit items: Adjust supports to make fit. Align joints over support framing.
1. Provide intermediate supports to that material will not span more than 3 feet in any direction.
 2. Cantilevers shall not exceed 12 inches without supplementary support.
- D. Apply dabs of mastic on supports; place items on supports and attach.
- E. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths available. Cope at returns and square at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Radius cutouts with minimum 3/8 inch corner radius.
- F. Install splashes using adhesive. Apply adhesive to back surface only. Place thin bead of seam adhesive along edge where splashes seat.

3.2 TOLERANCES

- A. Variation in Component Size: Plus or minus 1/8 inch over 10'-0" length.
- B. Location of Openings: Plus or minus 1/8 inch from indicated location.
- C. Install countertops level to within 1/8 inch in 10 feet.
- D. Allow minimum 1/16 inch clearance between edges of countertops and adjacent walls.
- E. Maximum Offset From True Position: 1/8 inch.

- 3.3 CLEANING
- A. Clean work under provisions of Section 017700.
 - B. Clean and polish fabrications in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 313116**TERMITE CONTROL****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section Includes:
1. Soil treatment with termiticide.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each type of termite control product.
1. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.
- B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- C. Product Certificates: For termite control products, from manufacturer.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Formulate and apply termiticides and termiticide devices according to the EPA-Registered Label.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain termite control products from single source from single manufacturer.
- 1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Environmental Limitations: To ensure penetration, do not treat soil that is water saturated or frozen. Do not treat soil while precipitation is occurring. Comply with requirements of the EPA-Registered Label and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Coordinate soil treatment application with excavating, filling, grading, and concreting operations. Treat soil under footings, grade beams, and ground-supported slabs before construction.
- 1.6 WARRANTY
- A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work, consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment, will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 SOIL TREATMENT
- A. Termiticide: Provide an EPA-Registered termiticide, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum termiticide concentration allowed for each specific use, according to product's EPA-Registered Label.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. BASF Corporation, Agricultural Products; Termidor.
 - b. Bayer Environmental Science; Premise 75.
 - c. FMC Corporation, Agricultural Products Group; Dagnet FT Prevail.
 2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for moisture content of soil per termiticide label requirements, interfaces with earthwork, slab and foundation work, landscaping, utility installation, and other conditions affecting performance of termite control.
- B. Proceed with application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's written instructions for preparation before beginning application of termite control treatment. Remove all extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.
- B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated. Loosen, rake, and level soil to be treated except previously compacted areas under slabs and footings. Termiticides may be applied before placing compacted fill under slabs if recommended in writing by termiticide manufacturer.
 - 1. Fit filling hose connected to water source at the site with a backflow preventer, complying with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3 APPLICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with the most stringent requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and with manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label for products.

3.4 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

- A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Provide quantity required for application at the label volume and rate for the maximum specified concentration of termiticide, according to manufacturer's EPA-Registered Label, to the following so that a continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction. Distribute treatment evenly.
 - 1. Slabs-on-Grade and Basement Slabs: Under ground-supported slab construction, including footings, building slabs, and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete footings and slabs are placed.
- B. Avoid disturbance of treated soil after application. Keep off treated areas until completely dry.
- C. Protect termiticide solution, dispersed in treated soils and fills, from being diluted until ground-supported slabs are installed. Use waterproof barrier according to EPA-Registered Label instructions.
- D. Post warning signs in areas of application.
- E. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 315000
EXCAVATION SUPPORT AND PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes temporary excavation support and protection systems.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design, furnish, install, monitor, and maintain excavation support and protection system capable of supporting excavation sidewalls and of resisting soil and hydrostatic pressure and superimposed and construction loads.
 - 1. Delegated Design: Design excavation support and protection system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
 - 2. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
 - 3. Install excavation support and protection systems without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
 - 4. Monitor vibrations, settlements, and movements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Delegated-Design Submittal: For excavation support and protection system indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- B. Coordinate first paragraph below with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements. ---"Qualification Data: For qualified [land surveyor] [and] [professional engineer].

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by geotechnical engineer. Owner will not be responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from the data.
 - 1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for excavation support and protection.
 - 2. The geotechnical report is [included] [referenced] elsewhere in the Project Manual.
- B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.
 - 1. During installation of excavation support and protection systems, regularly resurvey benchmarks, maintaining an accurate log of surveyed elevations and positions for comparison with original elevations and positions. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations or positions occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials that are either new or in serviceable condition.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards that could develop during excavation support and protection system operations.
 - 1. Shore, support, and protect utilities encountered.

- B. Install excavation support and protection systems to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
 - 1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - C. Locate excavation support and protection systems clear of permanent construction so that forming and finishing of concrete surfaces are not impeded.
 - D. Monitor excavation support and protection systems daily during excavation progress and for as long as excavation remains open. Promptly correct bulges, breakage, or other evidence of movement to ensure that excavation support and protection systems remain stable.
 - E. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by installing excavation support and protection systems.
- 3.2 REMOVAL AND REPAIRS
- A. Remove excavation support and protection systems when construction has progressed sufficiently to support excavation and bear soil and hydrostatic pressures. Remove in stages to avoid disturbing underlying soils or damaging structures, pavements, facilities, and utilities.
 - 1. Remove excavation support and protection systems to a minimum depth of 48 inches below overlaying construction and abandon remainder.
 - 2. Fill voids immediately with approved backfill compacted to density specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."
 - 3. Repair or replace, as approved by Architect, adjacent work damaged or displaced by removing excavation support and protection systems.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 31 63 29

DRILLED PIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Drilled concrete piers.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 1 Section "Unit Prices" for list of unit prices.
 - 2. Division 1 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
 - 3. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for general structural and building applications of concrete.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

- A. Basis of Bids: Base bids on indicated number of drilled piers; design length from top elevation to bottom of shaft, extended through the bell, if applicable; and diameter of shaft and bell.
- B. Basis for Payment: Payment for drilled piers will be made on actual net volume of drilled piers in place and approved. Actual length, shaft diameter and, if applicable, bell diameter may vary to coincide with elevations where satisfactory bearing strata are encountered, and with actual bearing value of bearing strata determined by an independent testing and inspecting agency. Adjustments will be made on net variation of total quantities, based on design dimensions for shafts and bells.
 - 1. Unit prices include labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals required for excavation, trimming, shoring, casings, dewatering, reinforcement, concrete fill, and other items for complete drilled-pier installation.
 - 2. See Division 1 Section "Unit Prices" for list of unit prices.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For concrete reinforcement detailing fabricating, bending, and placing.
- C. Design Mixes: For each class of concrete. Include revised mix proportions when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.
 - 1. Laboratory Test Reports: For evaluation of concrete materials and mix design.
- D. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

- E. Record drawings at Project closeout according to Division 1 Section "Closeout Procedures."

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drilled-Pier Standard: Comply with provisions in ACI 336.1, "Reference Specifications for the Construction of Drilled Piers," unless modified in this Section.
- B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to perform surveys, layouts, and measurements for drilled piers. Before excavating, lay out each drilled pier to lines and levels required. Record actual measurements of each drilled pier's location, shaft diameter, bottom and top elevations, deviations from specified tolerances, and other specified data.
 - 1. Record and maintain information pertinent to each drilled pier and cooperate with Owner's testing and inspecting agency to provide data for required reports.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixes, as documented according to ASTM E 548.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Locate existing underground utilities before excavating drilled piers. If utilities are to remain in place, provide protection from damage during drilled-pier operations.
 - 1. Should uncharted or incorrectly charted piping or other utilities be encountered during excavation, adapt drilling procedure if necessary to prevent damage to utilities. Cooperate with Owner and utility companies in keeping services and facilities in operation without interruption. Repair damaged utilities to satisfaction of utility owner.
- B. Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.
 - 1. Fly Ash Admixture: ASTM C 618, Class C or F.
 - 2. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
- B. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C 33, uniformly graded, 3/4-inch (19-mm) maximum aggregate size.
- C. Water: Potable, complying with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements.
- D. Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to contain not more than 0.1 percent water-soluble chloride ions by mass of cementitious material and to be compatible with other admixtures and cementitious materials. Do not use admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type A.
 - 2. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type D.

3. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494, Type G.
4. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

2.3 CONCRETE MIX

- A. Prepare design mixes according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301 for each type and strength of concrete determined by either laboratory trial mix or field test data bases.
 1. Use a qualified testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mix designs for laboratory trial mix basis.
- B. Proportion mixes according to ACI 211.1 and ACI 301 to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:
 1. Compressive Strength (28 Days): As indicated.
 2. Minimum Slump: Capable of maintaining the following slump until completion of placement:
 - a. 4 inches (100 mm) for dry, uncased, or permanent-cased drilling method.
 - b. 6 inches (150 mm) for temporary-casing drilling method.
 3. Do not air entrain concrete for drilled piers.
- C. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement according to ACI 301 limits as if concrete were exposed to deicing chemicals.
- D. Concrete-mix design adjustments may be considered if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant. Resubmit and obtain approval of proposed changes to concrete-mix proportions.

2.4 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.
 1. Do not add water to concrete mix after mixing.
 2. Maintain concrete temperature to not exceed 90 deg F (32 deg C).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, vibration, and other hazards created by drilled-pier operations.

3.2 EXCAVATION

- A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavation is unclassified and includes excavation to bearing elevations regardless of character of materials or obstructions encountered.
 1. Obstructions: Removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other unforeseen obstructions that cannot be removed by conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets, or underreaming tools attached to drilling equipment of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work, will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

- B. Classified Excavation: Excavation is classified as standard excavation, special excavation, and obstruction removal and includes excavation to bearing elevations, as follows:
1. Standard excavation includes excavation accomplished with conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets, and underreaming equipment attached to drilling equipment of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work.
 2. Special excavation includes excavation that requires special equipment or procedures above or below indicated depth of drilled piers where drilled-pier excavation equipment used in standard excavation, operating at maximum power, torque, and downthrust, cannot advance the shaft.
 - a. Special excavation requires use of special rock augers, core barrels, air tools, blasting, or other methods of hand excavation.
 - b. Earth seams, rock fragments, and voids included in rock excavation area will be considered rock for full volume of shaft from initial contact with rock.
 3. Obstructions: Removal of unanticipated boulders, concrete, masonry, or other unforeseen obstructions that cannot be removed by conventional augers fitted with soil or rock teeth, drilling buckets, or underreaming tools attached to drilling equipment of size, power, torque, and downthrust necessary for the Work, will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- C. Prevent surface water from entering excavated shafts. Conduct water to site drainage facilities.
- D. Excavate shafts for drilled piers to indicated elevations. Remove loose material from bottom of excavation.
1. Excavate bottom of drilled piers to level plane within 1:12 tolerance.
 2. Remove water from excavated shafts before concreting.
- E. Notify and allow Owner's testing and inspecting agency to test and inspect bottom of excavation. If unsuitable bearing stratum is encountered, make adjustments to drilled piers as determined by Architect.
1. Do not excavate shafts deeper than elevations indicated, unless approved by Architect.
 2. Additional authorized excavation will be paid according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
- F. Excavate shafts for closely spaced drilled piers and those occurring in fragile or sand strata, only after adjacent drilled piers are filled with concrete and allowed to set.
- G. Temporary Casings: Install watertight steel casings of sufficient length and thickness to prevent water seepage into shaft; to withstand compressive, displacement, and withdrawal stresses; and to maintain stability of shaft walls.
1. Remove temporary casings, maintained in plumb position, during concrete placement and before initial set of concrete.
- H. Bells: Excavate bells for drilled piers to shape, base thickness, and slope angle indicated. Excavate bottom of bells to level plane and remove loose material before concrete is placed.
1. Shore bells in unstable soil conditions to preclude cave-in during excavation, inspection, and concreting.
- I. Tolerances: Construct drilled piers to remain within ACI 336.1 tolerances.
1. If location or out-of-plumb tolerances are exceeded, provide corrective construction. Submit design and construction proposals to Architect for review before proceeding.
- J. Inspection: Each drilled pier must be inspected and tested by Owner's testing and inspecting agency before placing concrete.

1. Provide and maintain facilities with equipment required for testing and inspecting excavations. Cooperate with testing and inspecting personnel to expedite the Work.
2. Notify Architect and testing agency at least six hours before excavations are ready for tests and inspections.

3.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Comply with recommendations in CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
- C. Fabricate and install reinforcing cages symmetrically about axis of shafts in a single unit.
- D. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement during concreting. Maintain minimum cover to reinforcement.
- E. Use templates to set anchor bolts, leveling plates, and other accessories furnished in work of other Sections. Provide blocking and holding devices to maintain required position during final concrete placement.
- F. Protect exposed ends of extended reinforcement, dowels, or anchor bolts from mechanical damage and exposure to weather.

3.4 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Place concrete in continuous operation and without segregation immediately after inspection and approval of shaft by Owner's independent testing and inspecting agency.
 1. Construct a construction joint if concrete placement is delayed more than one hour. Level top surface of concrete and insert joint dowel bars. Before placing remainder of concrete, clean surface laitance, roughen, and slush concrete with commercial bonding agent or with sand-cement grout mixed at ratio of 1:1.
- B. Dry Method: Place concrete to fall vertically down the center of drilled pier without striking sides of shaft or steel reinforcement.
 1. Where concrete cannot be directed down shaft without striking reinforcing, place concrete with chutes, tremies, or pumps.
 2. Vibrate top 60 inches (1500 mm) of concrete.
- C. Coordinate withdrawal of temporary casings with concrete placement to maintain at least a 60-inch (1500-mm) head of concrete above bottom of casing.
 1. Vibrate top 60 inches (1500 mm) of concrete after withdrawal of temporary casing.
- D. Screed concrete at cutoff elevation level and apply scoured, rough finish. Where cutoff elevation is above the ground elevation, form top section above grade and extend shaft to required elevation.
- E. Protect concrete work, according to ACI 301, from frost, freezing, or low temperatures that could cause physical damage or reduced strength.
 1. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 2. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other mineral-containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators.

- F. When hot-weather conditions exist that would seriously impair quality and strength of concrete, place concrete according to ACI 301 to maintain delivered temperature of concrete at no greater than 90 deg F (32 deg C).

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to sample materials, perform tests, and submit reports during excavation and concrete placement for drilled piers.
- B. A drilled-pier report will be prepared by Owner's testing and inspecting agency for each drilled pier as follows:
1. Actual top and bottom elevations.
 2. Description of soil materials.
 3. Variation of shaft from plumb.
 4. Levelness of bottom and adequacy of cleanout.
 5. Ground-water conditions and water-infiltration rate, depth, and pumping.
 6. Description of soil or water movement, sidewall stability, loss of ground, and means of control.
 7. Bell dimensions and variations from original design.
 8. Date and time of starting and completing excavation.
 9. Inspection report.
 10. Position of reinforcing steel.
 11. Locations of construction joints.
 12. Remarks, unusual conditions encountered, and deviations from requirements.
 13. Concrete testing results.
- C. Soil Testing: Bottom elevations, bearing capacities, and lengths of drilled piers indicated have been estimated from available soil data. Actual elevations and drilled-pier lengths and bearing capacities will be determined by Owner's testing and inspecting agency. Final evaluations and approval of data will be determined by Architect.
- D. Concrete: Sampling and testing of concrete for quality control may include the following:
1. Sampling Fresh Concrete: ASTM C 172, except modified for slump to comply with ASTM C 94/C 94M.
 - a. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each compressive-strength test, but no fewer than one test for each concrete load.
 - b. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below and when 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each set of compressive-strength specimens.
 - c. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; one set of four standard cylinders for each compressive-strength test, unless otherwise indicated. Mold and store cylinders for laboratory-cured test specimens, unless field-cured test specimens are required.
 - d. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39; one set for each drilled pier, but not more than one set for each truck load. One specimen will be tested at 7 days, 2 specimens will be tested at 28 days, and one specimen will be retained in reserve for later testing if required.
 2. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five strength tests for a given class of concrete, testing will be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 3. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, evaluate current operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
 4. Strength level of concrete will be considered satisfactory if averages of sets of 3 consecutive strength test results equal or exceed specified compressive strength and no individual strength test result falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.45 MPa).
 5. Test results will be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 24 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests will contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, concrete

type and class, location of concrete batch in drilled pier, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete-mix proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

6. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted but shall not be used as sole basis for acceptance or rejection.
7. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency will make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate concrete strengths or other requirements have not been met.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF MATERIALS

- A. Remove surplus excavated material and slurry and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 6329

SECTION 321714
PRECAST CONCRETE SITE ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes: Providing precast concrete [parking bumpers] [wheel stops] where shown on the Drawings and as specified.

1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Reference Standards:
1. ASTM A 615 - Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
 2. ASTM C 94 - Ready-Mixed Concrete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRECAST CONCRETE WHEEL STOPS

- A. Qualities: Precast concrete wheel stops, with chamfered corners, drainage slots on underside, reinforced, and having 2 pre-drilled pin holes having 2 cast-in anchor pins.
1. Concrete: Normal weight concrete, minimum 5000 psi 28 day compressive strength.
 2. Reinforcing: ASTM A 615, Grade 40, two continuous No. 3 deformed reinforcement bars.
 3. Size: 8 inch wide, 6 inch tall, 72 inch long.
- B. Anchor Pins: 5/8 in. deformed bar, 2 for each wheel stop, extending a minimum of 6 inches below bottom of wheel stop.

2.2 PRECAST CONCRETE SPLASH BLOCKS

- A. Precast concrete, reinforced with manufacturer's standard mesh or deformed bars.
- B. Concrete: Normal weight, minimum 4000 psi 28 day compressive strength.
- C. Size: As indicated on Drawings.

2.3 FABRICATION

- A. Use rigid molds, constructed to maintain precast units uniform in shape, size and finish. Maintain consistent quality during fabrication.
- B. Embed reinforcing steel, and drill or sleeve for two dowels.
- C. Cure units to develop concrete quality, and to minimize appearance blemishes such as non-uniformity, staining, or surface cracking.
- D. Minor patching in plant is acceptable, providing appearance of units is not impaired.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Verify layout of wheel stop locations with pavement marking layout.
- B. Verify that paving and pavement marking is completed and ready for installation of wheel stops.
- C. Thoroughly clean surfaces to receive wheel stops free of dirt, sand, oil, grease or other foreign matter.

3.2 INSTALLATION – WHEEL STOPS

- A. Install a precast wheel stop at each parking space indicated.
- B. Install wheel stops with anchors in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Recess head of dowel slightly beneath top surface of wheel stop.
- D. Leave wheel stops securely anchored and in proper alignment

3.3 INSTALLATION - SPLASH BLOCKS

- A. Place blocks and pads on smooth, even topsoil. Place level and solidly supported.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 321723**PAVEMENT MARKINGS****PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS
- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. Section includes the following:
1. Preparation and application of painted parking lot pavement markings.
 2. Preparation and application of paint on asphalt paving, concrete paving, curbs, accessible ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
- 1.3 SUBMITTALS
- A. Product Data: For each paint system specified. Include primers.
- B. Manufacturer's Information: Provide manufacturer's technical information, including label analysis and instructions for handling, storing, and applying each coating material proposed for use.
- 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Applicator Qualifications: Engage an experienced applicator who has completed pavement marking applications similar in material and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain primers, and undercoat materials for each coating system from the same manufacturer as the finish coats.
- 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING
- A. Deliver materials to the Project Site in manufacturer's original, unopened packages and containers bearing manufacturer's name and label, and the following information:
1. Product name or title of material.
 2. Product description (generic classification or binder type).
 3. Manufacturer's stock number and date of manufacture.
 4. Contents by volume, for pigment and vehicle constituents.
 5. Thinning instructions.
 6. Application instructions.
 7. Color name and number.
 8. VOC content.
- B. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in a well-ventilated area at a minimum ambient temperature of 45 deg F. Maintain containers used in storage in a clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
1. Protect from freezing. Keep storage area neat and orderly. Remove oily rags and waste daily. Take necessary measures to ensure that workers and work areas are protected from fire and health hazards resulting from handling, mixing, and application.
- 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Apply water-based paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 50 and 90 deg F.
- B. Apply solvent-thinned paints only when the temperature of surfaces to be painted and surrounding air temperatures are between 45 and 95 deg F.
- C. Do not apply paint in snow, rain, fog, or mist; or when the relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; or at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.
1. Painting may continue during inclement weather if surfaces and areas to be painted are enclosed and heated within temperature limits specified by manufacturer during application and drying periods.
- 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS
- A. Maintain access for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as required for other construction activities. Utilize flagmen, barricades, warning signs, and warning lights as required.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Material Compatibility: Provide undercoats and finish-coat materials that are compatible with one another and the substrates indicated under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- B. Paint for Application on Concrete Paving: Non-bleeding, quick drying, alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free traffic marking paint, suitable for use on traffic bearing surfaces.
 - 1. Acceptable Products:
 - a. Sherwin Williams set fast chlorinated rubber 8000-01927 for Yellow
 - b. Sherwin Williams set fast chlorinated rubber 8000-01877 for White
 - c. Sherwin Williams set fast chlorinated rubber [8000-_____] for Black.
 - d. Sherwin Williams Primer set fast alkyd tint base mixed for blue
 - e. Sherwin Williams set fast alkyd 8000-02099 for Red.
 - 2. Substitutions: Under provisions of Section 012500.
- C. Paint for Application on Asphalt Paving: Latex, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.
 - 1. Acceptable Products:
 - a. Sherwin Williams latex 8000-02347 for Yellow
 - b. Sherwin Williams latex 8000-03238 for White
 - c. Sherwin Williams traffic grade latex base tinted to match 6401-14641 for Blue
 - d. Sherwin Williams set fast latex 6401-14666 for Red.
 - 2. Substitutions: Under provisions of Section 012500.
- D. All paints shall be mixed in accordance with manufacture's instructions before application for colors White, Yellow, Blue and Red.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine the work area and correct conditions detrimental to timely and proper completion of the work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.
- B. Where existing pavement markings are indicated on Drawings to be removed or would interfere with adhesion of new paint, a motorized abrasive device shall be used to remove the markings. Equipment employed shall not damage existing paving or create surfaces hazardous to vehicle or pedestrian traffic. Within public rights-of-way, appropriate governing authority shall approve method of marking removal.
- C. New pavement surfaces shall be allowed to cure for a period of no fewer than 30 days before application of marking materials.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges.
- B. Apply two coats of paint at manufacturer's recommended rate, without addition of thinner, with maximum of 100 square feet per gallon or as required to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils and dry film thickness of 7 ½ mils per coat. Paint shall be applied for a total dry film thickness of 15 mils. Apply with mechanical equipment to produce uniform straight edges. At sidewalk curbs and crosswalks, use straightedge to ensure uniform, clean, and straight stripe.
- C. Install pavement markings according to manufacturer's recommended procedures for the specified material.
- D. Following items shall be painted with colors noted below:
 - 1. Pedestrian Crosswalks: White.
 - 2. Fire Lanes: Red or per local code.
 - 3. Lane Striping where separating traffic moving in opposite directions: White.
 - 4. Lane Striping where separating traffic moving in the same direction: White.
 - 5. Accessibility Symbols: White on blue background.
 - 6. Parking Stall Striping: White, unless otherwise noted on Drawings.
 - 7. No Parking Areas: Yellow with Black Text "NO PARKING"

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. After the paint has thoroughly dried, visually inspect the entire application and touch up as required to provide clean, straight lines and surfaces throughout.
- B. Testing of wet film thickness shall be performed a minimum of two (2) times on each parking row (including striped islands) and pedestrian cross walks, and a minimum of one (1) test on each lane/alignment striping. At least one test shall be performed after refilling paint striping machine, changing operators of striping machine, and changing paint types, brands, etc. (This shall be performed in addition to the testing stated above). These tests shall be performed on each coat applied. Testing shall be per ASTM D4414-95 (2001).

3.5 CLEAN UP

- A. Waste materials shall be removed at the end of each workday. Upon completion of the work, all containers and debris shall be removed from the site. Paint spots upon adjacent surfaces shall be carefully removed by approved procedures that will not damage the surfaces and the entire job left clean and acceptable.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 323119
DECORATIVE METAL FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Decorative metallic-coated steel tubular picket fences.
 - 2. Horizontal-slide gates.
 - 3. Gate operators, including controls.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For each fence material and for each color specified.
 - 1. Provide Samples 12 inches in length for linear materials.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. UL Standard: Provide gate operators that comply with UL 325.
- E. Emergency Access Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for automatic gate operators on gates that must provide emergency access.
- F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
 - 1. Include 10-foot length of fence complying with requirements.
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL AND IRON

- A. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36.
- B. Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold formed steel tubing.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653, structural quality, Grade 50, with G90Z275 coating.
- D. Castings: Either gray or malleable iron unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Gray Iron: ASTM A 48, Class 30.
 - 2. Malleable Iron: ASTM A 47.

2.2 COATING MATERIALS

- A. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer for Steel: Complying with MPI #20 and compatible with coating specified to be applied over it.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 2. Use primer with a VOC content of 400 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Polyurethane Topcoat: Complying with MPI #72 and compatible with undercoat.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 2. Use product with a VOC content of 400 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.
 - 1. For aluminum, provide type and alloy as recommended by producer of metal to be welded and as required for strength and compatibility in fabricated items.
- B. Concrete:
 - 1. Normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete complying with requirements in Division 03, Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete".
 - 2. Minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, 3-inch slump, and 1-inch maximum aggregate size or dry, packaged, normal-weight concrete mix.
 - 3. Complying with ASTM C 387.
 - 4. Mixed with potable water, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

2.4 DECORATIVE METALLIC-COATED STEEL TUBULAR PICKET FENCES

- A. Decorative Metallic-Coated Steel Tubular Picket Fences: Comply with ASTM F 2408, for light industrial (commercial) application (class) unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ameristar Fence Products.
 - b. Fortress Iron; a division of Woodmark International, LP.
 - c. Master Halco.
 - d. Merchants Metals; a division of MMI Products, Inc.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Galvanized-steel sheet or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
- C. Interior surface of tubes formed from uncoated steel sheet shall be hot-dip zinc coated same as exterior.
- D. Posts:
 - 1. End and Corner Posts: Square tubes 4 by 4 inches formed from 1/4-inch nominal-thickness, metallic-coated steel sheet or formed from 0.105-inch nominal-thickness steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
 - 2. Horizontal-Slide Gate Post, Openings Wider Than 12 Feet: Square steel tubing 2 by 2 inches with 3/16-inch wall thickness, hot-dip galvanized.
- E. Post Caps: Formed from steel sheet and hot-dip galvanized after forming.
- F. Rails: Square tubes.
- G. Pickets: Square tubes.
 - 1. Terminate tops of pickets at top rail for flush top appearance.
 - 2. Picket Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard concealed fastening system.
- I. Galvanizing: For components indicated to be galvanized and for which galvanized coating is not specified in ASTM F 2408, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153.
- J. Finish: Powder coating.

2.5 HORIZONTAL-SLIDE GATES

- A. Gate Configuration: As indicated.
 - 1. Type: Cantilever slide, with external roller assemblies.
- B. Gate Frame Height: As indicated.
- C. Gate Opening Width: As indicated.
- D. Steel Frames and Bracing: Fabricate members from square tubing. Hot-dip galvanize frames after fabrication.
 - 1. Frame Members: As indicated on Drawings.
 - 2. Bracing Members: As indicated on Drawings.
- E. Frame Corner Construction:
 - 1. Welded frame.
- F. Additional Rails: Provide as indicated, complying with requirements for fence rails.
- G. Infill: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
- H. Picket Size, Configuration, and Spacing: Comply with requirements for adjacent fence.
- I. Hardware: Latches permitting operation from both sides of gate, roller assemblies and stops fabricated from galvanized steel.
- J. Finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA Guideline 1, Finish #2 - completely sanded joint, some undercutting and pinholes okay.
- K. Galvanizing: For items other than hardware that are indicated to be galvanized, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 123 unless otherwise indicated. For hardware items, hot-dip galvanize to comply with ASTM A 153.

2.6 GATE OPERATORS

- A. General: Provide factory-assembled automatic operating system designed for gate size, type, weight, and operation frequency. Provide operation control system with characteristics suitable for Project conditions, with remote-control stations, safety devices, and weatherproof enclosures; coordinate electrical requirements with building electrical system.
1. Provide operator designed so motor may be removed without disturbing limit-switch adjustment and without affecting auxiliary emergency operator.
 2. Provide operator with UL approval.
 3. Provide electronic components with built-in troubleshooting diagnostic feature.
 4. Provide unit designed and wired for both right-hand/left-hand opening, permitting universal installation.
 5. Provide controllers, electrical devices, and wiring that comply with requirements specified in Division 26 Sections.
- B. Motors: Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Division 11 Section "Common Motor Requirements for Equipment."
1. Basis-Of-Design: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Viking V10, or comparable product under guidance of Section "012500 – Substitution Procedures".
 2. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
 3. Horsepower: Not less than 3/4.
 4. Enclosure: Manufacturer's standard.
 5. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105 deg F and at altitude of 3300 feet 1005 m above sea level.
 6. Service Factor: 1.15 for open drip-proof motors; 1.0 for totally enclosed motors.
 7. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Division 26 Sections.
- C. Gate Operators: Concrete base mounted and as follows:
1. Hydraulic Swing Slide Gate Operators:
 - a. Duty: Heavy duty, commercial/industrial.
 - b. Gate Speed: Minimum 45 feet per minute.
 - c. Frequency of Use: 10 cycles per hour.
 - d. Locking: Hydraulic in both directions.
- D. Obstruction Detection Devices: Provide each motorized gate with automatic safety sensor(s). Activation of sensor(s) causes operator to immediately function as follows:
1. Action: Reverse gate in both opening and closing cycles and hold until clear of obstruction.
 2. Photoelectric/Infrared Sensor System: Designed to detect an obstruction in gate's path when infrared beam in the zone pattern is interrupted.
- E. Limit Switches: Adjustable switches, interlocked with motor controls and set to automatically stop gate at fully retracted and fully extended positions.
- F. Emergency Release Mechanism: Quick-disconnect release of operator drive system of the following type of mechanism, permitting manual operation if operator fails. Design system so control-circuit power is disconnected during manual operation.
1. Type: Integral fail-safe release, allowing gate to be pushed open without mechanical devices, keys, cranks, or special knowledge.
 2. Type: Mechanical device, key, or crank-activated release.

2.7 METALLIC-COATED STEEL FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces with non-petroleum solvent so surfaces are free of oil and other contaminants. After cleaning, apply a conversion coating suited to the organic coating to be applied over it. Clean welds, mechanical connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.
- B. Powder Coating: Immediately after cleaning and pre-treating, apply 2-coat finish consisting of epoxy prime coat and TGIC polyester topcoat, with a minimum dry film thickness of 2 mils 0.05 mm for topcoat. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions to achieve a minimum total dry film thickness of 4 mils.
1. Comply with surface finish testing requirements in ASTM F 2408.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for site clearing, earthwork, pavement work, construction layout, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Do not begin installation before final grading is completed unless otherwise permitted by Architect.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Stake locations of fence lines, gates, and terminal posts. Do not exceed intervals of 500 feet or line of sight between stakes. Indicate locations of utilities, lawn sprinkler system, underground structures, benchmarks, and property monuments.
 - 1. Construction layout and field engineering are specified in Division 01 Section "Execution"

3.3 DECORATIVE FENCE INSTALLATION

- A. Install fences according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Post Excavation: Drill or hand-excavate holes for posts in firm, undisturbed soil. Excavate holes to a diameter of not less than 4 times post size and a depth of not less than 24 inches plus 3 inches for each foot or fraction of a foot that fence height exceeds 4 feet .
- C. Post Setting: Set posts in concrete at indicated spacing into firm, undisturbed soil.
 - 1. Verify that posts are set plumb, aligned, and at correct height and spacing, and hold in position during setting with concrete or mechanical devices.
 - 2. Concrete Fill: Place concrete around posts and vibrate or tamp for consolidation. Protect aboveground portion of posts from concrete splatter.
 - a. Exposed Concrete: Extend 2 inches above grade. Finish and slope top surface to drain water away from post.
 - b. Concealed Concrete: Top 2 inches below grade to allow covering with surface material. Slope top surface of concrete to drain water away from post.
 - 3. Posts Set in Concrete: Extend post to within 6 inches of specified excavation depth, but not closer than 3 inches to bottom of concrete.
 - 4. Space posts uniformly as indicated on Drawings.

3.4 GATE INSTALLATION

- A. Install gates according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means. Install ground-set items in concrete for anchorage. Adjust hardware for smooth operation and lubricate where necessary.

3.5 GATE OPERATOR INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install gate operators according to manufacturer's written instructions, aligned and true to fence line and grade.
- B. Excavation for Concrete Bases: Hand-excavate holes for bases, in firm, undisturbed soil to dimensions and depths and at locations as required by gate operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated.
- C. Concrete Bases: Cast-in-place or precast concrete, depth not less than 12 inches below frost line or detail on Drawings, dimensioned and reinforced according to gate operator component manufacturer's written instructions and as indicated on Drawings.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70 and manufacturer's written instructions for grounding of electric-powered motors, controls, and other devices.

3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Gates: Adjust gates to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free of binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Confirm that latches and locks engage accurately and securely without forcing or binding.
- B. Automatic Gate Operators: Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices. Adjust operators, controls, safety devices, and limit switches.
 - 1. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lubricate hardware, gate operators, and other moving parts.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 323129
WOOD FENCES AND GATES

PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
- A. Fence framework, pickets and accessories.
 - B. Excavation for post bases.
 - C. Concrete anchorage for posts.
 - D. Should anything contained in this section be in conflict with requirements indicated on the landscape drawings, the landscape drawing notes will govern.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Posts: ASTM A 120; Schedule 40 steel pipe, standard weight, one piece without joints; galvanized finish.
 - B. Wood Rails and Pickets: Western Red Cedar, No. 1 clear grade, smooth surface.
- 2.2 CONCRETE MIX
- A. Concrete: ASTM C 94; normal Portland Cement; 2,500 psi at 28 days; 3 inch slump; 3/4 inch maximum sized aggregate.
- 2.3 COMPONENTS
- A. Line Posts: 2.38 inch diameter steel pipe.
 - B. Corner and Terminal Posts: 3.5 inch steel pipe.
 - C. Gate Posts: 3.5 inch diameter steel pipe.
 - D. Gate Frame: 1.66 inch diameter steel pipe for welded fabrication. Provide with standard mounting and hinging hardware.
 - E. Caps: Cast steel or malleable iron, galvanized; sized to post dimension, set screw retained.
 - F. Fittings: Sleeves, bands, clips, rail attachment devices, fasteners and fittings; galvanized steel.
 - G. Gate Hardware: Latch with gravity drop; two 180 degree gate hinges per leaf and hardware for padlock.
 - H. Rails: 2 by 4 nominal size.
 - I. Pickets: 1 by 4 nominal size, flat top or as otherwise indicated on Landscape Architect's drawings.
- 2.4 FINISHES
- A. Galvanized: ANSI/ASTM A123; 1.8 ounces per square foot coating.
 - B. Accessories: Same finish as framing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 INSTALLATION (provide as follows or as otherwise indicated on Landscape Architect's drawings).
- A. Provide fence 6 feet nominal height.
 - B. Space line posts at intervals not exceeding 8 feet.
 - C. Set terminal, gate and line posts plumb, in concrete footings with top of footing 2 inches above and 6 inches below finish grade. Slope top of concrete for water runoff.
 - D. Footing depth below finish grade: 36 inches. Excavate deeper as required for adequate support in soft and loose soils, and for posts with heavy lateral loads.
 - E. Provide 3 rails (4 rails on fences over 6' in height), with top and bottom spaced 12" center line from end of pickets.
 - F. Attach rails to posts with pre-manufactured, radiused, steel devices. Use minimum 2 lag bolts per device.
 - G. Attach pickets to each rail with two galvanized nails. If power actuated nailers are used, adjust to make sure fasteners are not driven past face of picket.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 328400
PLANTING IRRIGATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED:

- A. Furnish all labor, materials, supervision, supplies, transportation, and equipment necessary for the proper installation of the irrigation system in strict accordance with these specifications, schedules, and drawings (but shall not be limited to):
 - 1. Trenching and backfilling.
 - 2. Automatically controlled irrigation system.
 - 3. Testing and adjusting of all systems.
 - 4. "As-built" drawings.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS OF REGULATORY AGENCIES:

- A. All work under this section shall comply with the provisions of these Specifications, as illustrated on the accompanying drawings, or as directed by the Owner and shall satisfy all applicable local codes, ordinances, or regulations of the governing bodies and all authorities having jurisdiction over this Project.
- B. Installation of equipment and materials shall be done in accordance with requirements of the National Electrical Code, City Plumbing Code, and standard plumbing procedures. The drawings and these Specifications are intended to comply with all the necessary rules and regulations; however, some discrepancies may occur, the Contractor shall immediately notify the Landscape Architect in writing of the discrepancies and apply for an interpretation. Should the discovery and notification occur after the execution of a contract, any additional work required for compliance with the regulations shall be paid for as covered by these Contract documents.
- C. The Contractor shall give all necessary notices, obtain all permits, and pay all costs in connection with his work; file with all governmental departments having jurisdiction; obtain all required certificates of inspection for his work and deliver to the Owner.
- D. The Contractor shall include in the work any labor, materials, services, apparatus, or drawings in order to comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, rules, and regulations whether or not shown on the drawings and/or specified.
- E. The installation of the irrigation system shall be made by an individual or firm duly licensed under Article No. 8751 VTCS, Titled "Licensed Irrigators Act", S.B. No. 259 as passed by the 66th Texas Legislature.

1.3 APPROVAL:

- A. Wherever the terms approve or approval are used in these specifications, they shall mean the approval of the Owner/Owner's Representative and/or Landscape Architect/Irrigation Consultant (to be noted as Owner/Landscape Architect throughout remainder of these specifications).

1.4 COORDINATION OF WORK:

- A. Irrigation Contractor shall coordinate his work with the other trades and professions on the job site in accordance to scheduling guidelines as provided by Owner/Landscape Architect. The Irrigation Contractor shall notify Owner/Landscape Architect if Irrigation Contractor believes there is danger of his work being damaged or destroyed by the work of other trades or

professions in normal pursuit of their trades. The Irrigation Contractor shall notify the Landscape Architect of any conditions not shown on the plans which would make any adjustments or delays necessary.

- B. Before any work is started, a meeting shall be held between the Irrigation Contractor, Owner/Landscape Architect, and Landscape Contractor pertaining to work under these specifications.
- C. Owner/Landscape Architect, Irrigation Contractor, and Landscape Contractor shall attend all progress meetings as requested by the Owner during installation.

1.5 INSPECTION OF SITE:

- A. The Irrigation Contractor shall take necessary precautions to protect all site conditions to remain (i.e. utilities, concrete paving, structures, plant material, grades, etc.). Should any damage occur, the Contractor shall repair the damage to its original condition at his own expense.
- B. Irrigation Contractor shall be responsible for damage to utilities, including all electrical, telephone, gas, water, sanitary and storm sewer, and other applicable utilities. Irrigation Contractor shall obtain as much information as possible from sources such as Owner/Landscape Architect, other contractors, and utility companies to locate utilities prior to beginning work.
- C. If required, hand excavation shall be used to minimize possible damage.
- D. Irrigation Contractor shall make necessary minor adjustments in the layout as required (with approval of Owner/Landscape Architect) to work around existing conditions at no increase of cost to the Owner.
- E. Contractor shall make necessary adjustments in the layout as may be required to connect to existing stub-outs, should such stub-outs not be located exactly as shown and as may be required to work around existing work, at no increase in cost to the Owner. All such work will be recorded on record drawings and turned over to the Owner prior to final acceptance.

1.6 SUBSTITUTIONS:

- A. Several items in this section and on the plans are specified by a manufacturer's brand name and catalog number, followed by the phrase "or approved equal". This is not intended to unduly restrict competitive procurements or bidding, but is done to assure a minimum standard of quality which is believed to be best for the item specified and to match existing equipment.

1.7 REJECTIONS:

- A. The Owner/Landscape Architect reserves the right to reject material and/or work which does not conform to the contract. Rejected work shall be removed or corrected at the earliest possible time.

1.8 WATER SUPPLY:

- A. Water supply and water meter shall be furnished by the Owner.

1.9 ELECTRICAL SUPPLY:

- A. Electric power shall be provided within five feet of each controller location by the G.C. The irrigation contractor shall provide final hardwire connection.

1.10 SPARE PARTS:

- A. The Contractor shall supply the Owner with five spray heads, one for each head designated on the plan. The Contractor shall supply one additional key and hose swivel for the quick coupler.

1.11 SUBMITTALS:

A. RECORD DRAWINGS:

1. Record dimensioned locations and depths for each of the following:
 - a. Point of connection.
 - b. Sprinkler pressure line routing (provide dimensions for each 100 lineal feet (maximum) along each routing, and for each change in directions).
 - c. Gate valves.
 - d. Sprinkler control valves (buried only).
 - e. Control wire routing.
 - f. Other related items as may be directed by the Landscape Architect.
2. Locate all dimensions from two permanent points (buildings, monuments, sidewalks, curbs, or pavements).
3. Record all changes which are made from the Contract drawings, including changes in the pressure and non-pressure lines.
4. Record all required information on a set of blackline prints of the Contract drawings. Do not use these prints for any other purpose.
5. Maintain information daily. Keep Contract drawings at the Worksite at all times and available for review by the Owner's representative.
6. When record drawings have been approved by the Owner's Representative, transfer all information to a set of reproducible mylars using permanent India ink. Changes using ball-point pen are not acceptable. Make dimensions accurately at the same scale used on original Drawings, or larger. If photo reduction is required to facilitate controller chart housing, notes or dimension must be a minimum 1/4 inch in size.
7. Reproducible mylars will be furnished by the Owner cost for printing and handling.

B. CONTROLLER CHARTS:

1. Do not prepare charts until record drawings have been approved by the Owner's representative.
2. Provide one controller chart for each automatic controller installed.
 - a. Chart may be a reproduction of the record drawing, if the scale permits fitting within the controller door. If photo reduction prints are required, keep reduction to maximum size possible to retain full legibility.
 - b. Chart shall be blackline print of the actual system, showing the area covered by that controller.
3. Identify the area of coverage of each remote control valve, using a distinctly different pastel color, drawn over the entire area of coverage.
4. Following approval of charts by the Owner's representative, they shall be hermetically sealed between two layers of 20 mil. thick plastic sheet.

5. Charts must be completed and approved prior to final acceptance of the irrigation system.

C. OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS:

1. Provide individual bound manuals detailing operating and maintenance requirements for irrigation systems.
2. Manuals shall be delivered to the Owner's representative for review and approval no later than 10 days prior to completion of work. Revise manual as required.
3. Provide descriptions of all installed materials and systems in sufficient detail to permit maintenance personnel to understand, operate, and maintain the equipment.
4. Provide the following in each manual:
 - a. Index sheet, stating Irrigation Contractor's name, address, telephone number, and name of person to contact.
 - b. Duration of guarantee period.
 - c. Equipment list providing the following for each item:
 1. Manufacturer's name.
 2. Make and model number.
 3. Name and address of local manufacturer's representative.
 4. Spare parts list in detail.
 5. Detailed operating and maintenance instructions of major equipment.
 - d. Recommended programs for watering by season.

1.12 INSPECTION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE:

- A. Each phase or total project shall be inspected for final acceptance by the Owner/Landscape Architect within five days after written notification of anticipated completion of all Irrigation Contractor's work.
- B. After inspection, the Irrigation Contractor will be notified in writing of acceptance or of further punch list requirements needed for completion and final acceptance. This procedure will be repeated as often as necessary until job meets the approval of Owner/Landscape Architect.
- C. Final acceptance of the work shall be obtained from the Owner/Landscape Architect upon satisfactory completion of all punch-list items.

1.13 GUARANTEE:

- A. All work shall be guaranteed for one year from the date of final acceptance against all defects in material, equipment, and workmanship. Guarantee shall also cover repairs of damage to any part of the premises resulting from leaks or other defects in material, equipment, and workmanship to the satisfaction of the Owner/Landscape Architect. Repairs, if any, shall be done promptly at no cost to the Owner.
- B. Backfilling of trenches - if any settlement should occur during the one year guarantee, the Irrigation Contractor shall return and repair all settlements in areas where trenches were dug for installation.
- C. Backfilling of sprinkler heads - if at any time during the one year guarantee period the sprinkler heads should become loose in the soil, the Irrigation Contractor shall return and re-tamp loose heads and provide and install any additional fill required.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 GENERAL:

- A. All materials throughout the system shall be in new and perfect condition.

2.2 SLEEVES:

- A. All sleeving shall be existing as installed by General Contractor unless otherwise noted.

2.3 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE (PVC PIPE):

PVC pipe manufactured in accordance with ASTM Standards noted herein.

- A. Marking and Identification: PVC pipe shall be continuously and permanently marked with following information: Manufacturer's name, size, type of pipe, and material, SDR number, Product Standard number, and the NSF (National Sanitation Foundation) Seal.
- B. PVC pipe fittings: Shall be of the same material as the PVC pipe specified and compatible with PVC pipe furnished. Solvent weld type shall be Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Pipe: Shall be Class 200 solvent weld, SDR-21, PS 22-70 for all sizes 3/4 inch to 3 inches. All 1/2 inch pipe shall be solvent weld SDR- 13.5, Class 315. Mainline pipe size 4" and larger shall be PVC o-ring gasket type with ductile iron fittings by Harco Industries.
- D. Flexible PVC Risers (Nipples): All flexible PVC nipples shall be made from virgin PVC material, and shall comply with ASTM D2287, shall be tested at 200 P.S.I. static pressure for 2 hours and have a quick burst rating of a minimum 400 P.S.I. Flexible PVC pipe nipples shall be factory assembled only.
- E. Pipe sleeves: Shall be Class 200 solvent weld, SDR-21, PSD 22-70 for all sizes 3/4 inch to 2 inches; all 1/2 inch pipe shall be solvent weld SDR-13.5, Class 315; and located as shown on drawings.

2.4 POP-UP SPRAY, BUBBLERS AND ROTARY HEADS:

- A. Sprinkler heads are specified on the drawings. Spray heads shall have a minimum 4 inch pop-up.
- B. The sprinkler body and all related parts shall be plastic cyclac or polycarbonate. They shall have a spring retraction for positive return action of the pop-up nozzle.
- C. The spring for retraction and the adjustable nozzle screw shall be made of corrosion resistant materials.

2.5 QUICK COUPLER VALVE:

- A. Quick coupling valves shall be composed of a bronze cast body with a purple, (NP) cover.
- B. The valve shall accept a single lug 3/4 inch bronze valve key for operation.
- C. Provide one coupler and one hose swivel ell for every five quick coupling valves shown on the plans.

2.6 ELECTRIC REMOTE CONTROL VALVES:

- A. Electric remote control valves shall have plastic bodies and covers and shall be globe-type diaphragm valves of normally closed design. The valves are specified on the drawings.
- B. Operation shall be accomplished by means of integrally mounted heavy-duty 24-V DC solenoid complying with National Electrical Code, Class II Circuit. Solenoid coil shall be potted in epoxy resin within a plastic coated stainless steel housing. Solenoids shall be completely waterproof, suitable for direct underground burial.
- C. A flow stem adjustment shall be included in each valve.

2.7 MANUAL VALVES:

- A. Manual valves 2-1/2 inches and smaller shall be all brass, globe type with composition disc rated at 150 pounds W.O.G. Manual valve size 4" and larger shall be Kennedy cast iron type.
- B. All valves shall have wheel handles unless cross handles are called for on the plan.

2.8 WIRE AND SPLICES:

- A. All valve wire shall be single strand solid copper, minimum 14 gauge with type UF insulation which is Underwriters Laboratory approved for direct underground burial when used in a National Electrical Code Class II Circuit (30 volts AC or less) as per Articles 725 and 300. Voltage drop shall be taken into consideration.
- B. All connectors shall be UL listed, rated 600 volt, for PVC insulated wire. No wire splices shall be buried.
- C. All wire connectors shall have a two-piece PVC housing which, when filled with resin epoxy and pressed together, forms a permanent, one-piece, moisture-proof wire splice.

2.9 VALVE BOXES:

- A. A box shall be provided for all valves.
- B. Valve boxes shall be made of high-strength plastic suitable for turf irrigation purposes.
- C. Boxes shall be suitable in size and configuration for the operability and adjustment of the valve.
- D. Extension sections will be used as appropriate to the depth of piping.
- E. All valve box covers shall bolt down or have locking mechanisms and shall be colored green or black as selected by the Contracting Officer.

2.10 SWING JOINTS:

- A. All swing joints shall be O-ring seal type, Lasco or approved equal.

2.11 DRIPPERLINE WITH PRESSURE COMPENSATING EMITTERS:

Dripperline shall be of nominal sized one-half ($\frac{1}{2}$ ") inch low density, ultra-violet-resistant, linear polyethylene tubing with internal pressure-compensating, continuous self-cleaning, integral drippers at a specified interval. The tubing shall be brown in color throughout and shall conform to an outside diameter (O.D.) of 0.66" and an inside diameter (I.D.) of 0.56". The dripperline shall be capable of a discharge rate of 0.4, 0.6, or 0.9 gallons per hour (GPH) between operating pressures of 7 - 70 psi for each individual dripper.

The individual continuous self-cleaning, pressure compensating drippers shall be welded to the inside of the tubing wall. The drippers shall be constructed of three individual pieces:

- A. A black-colored dripper containing a filtration system on the inlet side, compensation cell, and recessed chamber with a water outlet,
- B. A hard plastic diaphragm retainer with color denoting discharge rate, with chamfered edges and a recessed groove in the center extending the full length of the diaphragm and,
- C. A flexible elastomer diaphragm that allows pressure to build up within the chamber to purge sediment or other debris that may not have been captured by the disc filter.

Dripper spacings shall be available in the following on-center intervals - 12", 18", and 24".

2.12 BARBED INSERT FITTINGS:

All barbed insert fittings shall be constructed of molded, ultra-violet-resistant, black colored plastic having a nominal inside dimension (I.D.) of 0.24"

Each fitting shall have a minimum of two ridges or barbs per outlet with a raised barb nearest the fitting outlet. All fittings shall be of one manufacturer and shall be available in one of the following end configurations:

- barbed insert fittings,
- male pipe threads (MPT) with barbed insert fittings, or
- female pipe threads (FPT) with barbed insert fittings.

2.13 CONTROLLER:

- A. Electric irrigation controller shall be capable of operating the number of stations as indicated on the drawings. The system is designed to operate two section valves at a time, per controller unless otherwise noted. The controller is specified on the drawings.
- B. Power source shall be 110v A.C. Output for operation of companion solenoid actuated valves shall be 24 volts 60 Cycle AC.
- C. Operation of the controller shall be full automatic, incorporating one 24 hour clock and 14 day calendar per controlled number of electric valves shown on the plan to start the sprinkling cycle any hour or hours of the day or night of any day or days over a repeating 14 day period.
- D. The controller shall be capable of repeating watering cycles as required with a maximum delay between the ending of one cycle and the beginning of the next not to exceed 2 hours. Control shall provide optional semi-automatic operation whereby the automatic cycle may be started independent of the clock and manual operation whereby any station may be operated by hand independent of all timing mechanism. The choice of automatic day or hour programming shall be available to the operator on the face of the control panel without the use of tools.
- E. The automatic controller shall be equipped with rainproof housing.

2.14 BACKFLOW PREVENTION DEVICE (DOUBLE CHECK VALVE):

- A. A double gate valve, double check assembly shall be located and sized as shown on the plans. The double check valve is specified on the drawings.
- B. Construction shall be all brass for sizes 3/4 inch to 2 inches.
- C. This assembly shall be installed in a box and shall conform to the City Plumbing Codes.

2.15 TEMPERATURE SENSORS AND RAIN SENSORS:

- A. Rain and freeze sensors shall be as manufactured by Hunter Industries, as noted on the plans.

PART 3 – WORKMANSHIP

3.1 WORKMANSHIP:

- A. Design Pressure: This irrigation system has been designed to operate with a minimum static inlet water pressure as indicated on the drawings. The Contractor shall take a pressure reading prior to beginning construction. If the pressure reading is 5% less than above, the Contractor shall notify the Owner's Representative.
- B. Contractor Responsibility: The Contractor shall not willfully install the irrigation system as shown on the drawings when it is obvious in the field that obstructions, grade differences or discrepancies in equipment usage, area dimensions or water pressure exist that might not have been considered in the engineering. Such obstructions or differences shall be brought to the attention of the Owner's Representative in writing. In the event this notification is not performed, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for any revision necessary.
- C. Staking: Before installation is started, place a stake or flag where each sprinkler is to be located, in accordance with drawing. Staking shall be approved by the Landscape Architect before proceeding.
- D. Piping Layout: Piping layout is diagrammatic. Route piping around existing trees and root zones in such a manner as to avoid damage to plantings. Do not dig within the ball of newly planted trees or shrubs.
- E. In areas where trees are present, trenches will be adjusted on site to provide a minimum clearance of four times the trunk diameter of the tree (at its base) between any tree and any trench.
- F. All material and equipment shall be delivered to the Worksite in unbroken reels, cartons or other packaging to demonstrate that such material is new and of a quality and grade in keeping with the intent of these Specifications.

PART 4 - EXECUTION

4.1 EXCAVATION AND TRENCHING:

- A. The Contractor shall perform all excavation to the depth indicated in these Specifications and Contract drawings. The banks of trenches shall be kept as nearly vertical as practicable. Trenches shall be wide enough to allow a minimum of 4" between parallel pipelines or electrical wiring. Where rock excavation is required, or where stones are encountered in the bottom of the trench that would create a concentrated pressure on the pipe, the rock or stones shall be removed to a depth of six (6) inches minimum below the trench depth indicated. The over depth rock excavation and all excess trench

excavation shall be backfilled with loose, moist earth or sand, thoroughly tamped. Whenever wet or otherwise unstable soil that is incapable of properly supporting the pipe is encountered in the trench bottom, such shall be removed to a depth and length required, and the trench backfilled to trench bottom grade as hereinafter specified, with course sand, fine gravel or other suitable material.

- B. Bottom of trench grade shall be continued past ground surface deviations to avoid air pockets and low collection points in the line. The minimum cover specifications shall govern regardless of variations in ground surface profile and the occasional deeper excavation required at banks and other field conditions. Excavation shall be such that a uniform trench grade variation will occur in all cases where variations are necessary.
- C. Trench excavation shall comprise the satisfactory removal and disposition of all materials, and shall include all shoring and sheeting required to protect the excavation and to safeguard employees.
- D. During excavation, material suitable for backfilling shall be stockpiled in an orderly manner a sufficient distance back from edge of trenches to avoid overloading and prevent slides or cave-ins. Material unsuitable for backfilling shall be wasted as directed by the Owner's Representative. When excavated material is of a rocky nature and the topsoil or any other layer of excavated material is suitable for pipe bedding and backfill in the vicinity of the pipe, such material shall be separately stockpiled for use in such bedding and pipe backfill operations, unless satisfactory imported material is used.
- E. All excavations and backfill shall be unclassified and covered in the basic bid. No additional compensation will be allowed for rock encountered.
- F. Restore all surfaces, existing underground installations, etc., damaged or cut as a result of the excavations to their original conditions in a manner acceptable to the Owner's Representative.

4.2 PIPE INSTALLATION:

- A. Sprinkler Mains: Sprinkler mains are that portion of piping from water source to electric valves. This portion of piping is subject to surges since it is a closed portion of the sprinkler system. Sprinkler mains shall be installed in a trench with a minimum of 18 inches of cover.
- B. Lateral Piping: Lateral piping is that portion of piping from electrical valve to sprinkler heads. This portion of piping is not subject to surges since it is an "open end" portion of the sprinkler system. Lateral piping shall be installed in a trench with a minimum of 12 inches of cover.

4.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTING ASSEMBLY:

- A. Solvent: Use only solvent recommended by manufacturer to make solvent-welded joints following standards noted herein. Thoroughly clean pipe and fittings of dirt, dust, and moisture with an approved PVC primer before applying solvent.
- B. PVC to Metal Connection: Work metal connections first. Use a non-hardening pipe dope such as Permatex No. 2 or "Teflon" tape on threaded PVC to metal joints. Use only light wrench pressure.
- C. Threaded PVC Connections: Where required, use threaded PVC adapters into which pipe may be welded.

- D. Remove lumber, rubbish, and rocks from trenches. Provide firm, uniform bearing for entire length of each pipeline to prevent uneven settlement. Wedging or blocking of pipe will not be permitted. Remove foreign matter or dirt from inside of pipe before welding, and keep piping clean during and after laying pipe.
- E. PVC pipe shall not be installed where there is water in the trench, nor shall PVC pipe be laid when temperature is 40 deg. F or below or when rain is imminent. PVC pipe will expand and contract as the temperature changes. Therefore, pipe shall be snaked from side to side of trench bottom to allow for expansion and contraction.

4.4 HYDROSTATIC TESTS:

Pressure Test: After the pipe is laid, the joints completed, and the trench partially backfilled, leaving the joints exposed for examination, the newly laid piping or any valved section of main pressure line piping shall, unless otherwise specified, be subjected for four hours to a hydrostatic pressure test of normal city water pressure. Each valve shall be opened and closed during the test. Enclosed pipe, joints, fittings, and valves shall be carefully examined during the partially open trench test. Joints showing visible leakage shall be replaced or remade, as necessary. Cracked or defective pipe, joints, fittings, or valves discovered in consequence of this pressure test shall be repeated until the test results are satisfactory. All replacement and repair shall be at contractor's cost.

4.5 CONTROL WIRE INSTALLATION:

- A. All control wire less than 500 feet in length shall be continuous without splices or joints from the controller to the valves. Connections to the electric valves shall be made within 18 inches of the valve using connectors specified in Paragraph 2.4 of this section, unless otherwise approved by the Owner's Representative in writing.
- B. All control wires shall be installed at least 18 inches deep. Contractor shall obtain the Owner's Representative's approval for wire routing when installed in a separate ditch. Control wires may be installed in a common ditch with piping; however, wires must be installed a minimum of 4 inches below or to one side of piping.
- C. All wire passing under existing or future paving, sidewalk, construction, etc., shall be encased in PVC Schedule 40 conduit extending at least 2 feet beyond edges of paving, sidewalks, or construction.

4.6 POP-UP SPRAY, BUBBLER HEADS:

- A. Provide heads and nozzles as specified and install in locations as shown on the Contract Drawings.
- B. Pop-up spray heads shall be installed on "flex" pvc as detailed on the Contract drawings. Rotary heads shall be installed on a double swing joint connected to the lateral pipe as detailed on the drawings.
- C. Heads shall be installed with underside of flange flush with the finished grade.
- D. Contractor will be required to adjust heads as necessary after establishment of grass or other plant material.

4.7 DRIP EQUIPMENT:

A.. Dripperline can be installed in one of the four following methods:

Over-excavation: Over-excavate the entire area to a depth of 2" to 4" below finish grade. Plant all specimen trees and shrubs 15 gallon size and larger, then place dripperline at the row spacing interval indicated on the plans.

Pipe Pulling: Where ground disruption is to be minimized, pneumatic tire, pipe-pulling machinery shall be used. Potholes shall be used at the ends of each run for making connection to supply and exhaust headers of rigid PVC pipe or polyethylene pipe.

Trenching: Hand or mechanically trench to the pipe depth indicated on the plans or in these specifications and backfill flush with finish grade. Avoid mechanically trenching within the dripline of existing trees. Hand-trench around existing tree roots when roots of 2" and larger are encountered. Remove all rock 1½" and larger when excavating and remove from site. Do not backfill trenches with rock that will come in direct contact with tubing or rigid PVC piping.

B. Placement of Rigid PVC Piping: Install pipe in a serpentine (snaked) manner to allow for expansion and contraction in trench before backfilling. Install pipes at temperatures over 40° F. Pipe markings shall face upward out of the trench whenever possible.

C. Dripperline: Dripperline can be installed with the water outlets facing up, down, or sideways. In irregular areas, some water outlets could end up too close to fixed improvements and may have to be capped off with a dripper plug ring.

D. Cover: Install underground piping horizontally and as evenly as possible to a maximum depth of 4", unless otherwise specified. (Typical pipe depth is 2" shrub beds, 4" in turf unless periodic aeration is anticipated, and then pipe depth should be lowered to 6".)

E. Barbed Insert Fittings: Connect dripperline to barbed insert fittings by pushing the tubing on and over both barbs of the fitting until the tubing has seated against another piece of tubing or has butted against another portion of the barbed fitting. For water pressures in excess of the 30 psi, or the maximum stated system pressure for the dripperline, whichever is less, use stainless steel clamps as noted in paragraph 3.2.4, "Pipe Clamping" on all barbed fittings.6. Pipe.

F. Clamping: When design-operating pressure exceeds 30 psi, or maximum stated system pressure for the dripperline, whichever is less, stainless steel pipe clamps shall be used. Slip clamps over tubing before slipping tubing over barbed insert fitting. Place clamp between the first and second ridge of the barbed fittings and crimp the "ear" of the clamp tightly. Crimp the "ear" twice to ensure proper seating.

4.8 QUICK COUPLING VALVES:

- A. Quick coupling valves shall be installed with the underside of flange flush with the finished grade.
- B. Quick coupling valves shall be installed on a swing joint assembly as detailed on the drawings.
- C. Under the warranty, the Contractor shall return after grass is established and adjust valves and valve boxes to proper grade.

4.9 MANUAL VALVES:

- A. Manual valves shall be sized and located where shown on the Contract drawings.
- B. Valve boxes shall be adjusted to be flush with finished grade. The Contractor will be required to adjust after establishment of grass.
- C. Valve boxes shall be properly supported and of sufficient construction that tractors and mowers crossing over the boxes will not push boxes down and crush the pipe, valve, or box.

4.10 VALVE AND VALVE BOX PLACEMENT:

- A. All manual, electric, and quick coupling valves shall be in boxes as specified in Paragraph 2.7 of this section, and shall be set with a minimum of six (6) inches of space between their top surface and the bottom of the valve box. The base of the box shall be filled with pea gravel as
- B. Valves shall be fully opened and fully closed to ensure that all parts are in operating condition.
- C. Valve boxes shall be set plumb, vertical, and concentric with the valve stem.
- D. Any valve box which has moved from this required position so as to prevent the use of the operating wheel of the valve shall be reset by the Contractor at his own expense.

4.11 ELECTRIC CONTROLLER:

- A. Electric controller shall be located as shown on the plans and shall be capable of operating the number of stations indicated.
- B. The system is designed to operate two sections at a time, per controller, unless otherwise noted on the plans in strict accordance with the manufacturer's published installation instructions.

4.12 ELECTRIC REMOTE CONTROL VALVES:

- A. Remote control valves shall be located and sized as shown on the plans. All electrical connections shall be made when the weather is dry with connection kits as specified in Paragraph 2.4 of this section in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommended procedures. All remote control valves shall be installed in a horizontal position, in accordance to the manufacturer's published installation instructions.
- B. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to furnish and install the proper size wire on each of the low voltage circuits from the master control center to the various electric remote control valves.

- C. Consideration shall be given to each circuit for allowance of voltage drop and economy consistent with accepted practices of electrical installation. Under no circumstances shall the voltage of any branch circuit be reduced more than proper due to length of run exceeding the maximum allowable for the wire size used.

PART 5 - BACKFILLING AND COMPACTING

5.1 BACKFILLING AND COMPACTING:

- A. After irrigation system is operating and required test and inspections have been made, backfill excavations and trenches with clean soil, free of all rubbish, rocks, clods, and roots.
- B. Backfill all trenches, regardless of the type of pipe covered. All trenches to be compacted to minimum of 90% density.
- C. Compact trenches in areas to be planted by tamping thoroughly or flooding the backfill. Jetting process may be used in these areas.
- D. Specially tamp backfill under heads for a one foot radius by a suitable means after trench backfill has dried from flooding to prevent heads from loosening in the ground and moving when run over by mowers possibly damaging the heads. Refer to guarantee for repair and replacement requirements.
- E. Dress off all areas to finish grade. Hand rake all trenches and adjoining areas to leave grade in as good or better condition than before installation. Remove all debris from site.

PART 6 - FINAL ADJUSTMENTS:

6.1 GENERAL:

- A. After the irrigation system has been installed, completely flush the system to remove any and all debris from the pipe.

6.2 SPRAY HEADS:

- A. Remove the nozzle from all the heads on ends of pipe and turn on the system. Replace the nozzles and check operation of the system, section by section, to determine that there is no debris left in the heads to obstruct proper operation.
- B. If any heads do not operate properly, repeat operation by removing nozzles of heads not operating properly and refushing.

6.3 POP-UP ROTARY HEADS:

- A. Pipe lines of sections of rotary heads must be flushed with heads in same section. Install a temporary nipple on the riser of sufficient length that the open end is above grade.
- B. Turn on section and flush lines well.
- C. Replace heads, being careful not to get dirty water or debris in the riser.

6.4 ALL HEADS:

- A. Check all sprinkler heads for proper operation and alignment for direction and distance of throw.
- A. (Spray heads only): check all nozzling for proper arc of spray. Correct arc of spray of all nozzles by determining area to be covered and prevailing wind conditions of the area.
- B. If arc of spray is not correct, change nozzle to provide correct coverage at no expense to the Owner.
 - 1. Types of nozzles desired are: 90 degrees, 180 degrees, 240 degrees, 360 degrees, or as required by Owner/Landscape Architect.
 - 2. No head shall overspray beyond the face of curb into pavement area under zero wind conditions.

PART 7 - PRESSURE SYSTEM

7.1 METHOD TO ADJUST HEAD PRESSURE:

- A. After system is thoroughly flushed and ready for operation, adjust each section of sprinklers top control pressure at the heads. Use the following method, one section at a time:
 - 1. Remove last head on section and install temporary riser above grade.
 - 2. Install tee with pressure gauge attached on top of riser and reinstall head with nipple to tee.
 - 3. Check for correct pressure at the last head of each station in accordance with the following chart:

Spray heads - 30 to 35 psi
 - 4. Drip zone valve pressure regulating devices shall be set at not to exceed 40 psi.
- B. After adjusting pressure as required, replace each head at grade and tamp thoroughly around head.

PART 8 - CLEAN-UP

8.1 CLEAN-UP:

- A. During the course of the work, keep the job site neat and orderly at all times.
- B. Remove debris and surplus material which is not to be used from the premises daily, as the work progresses.
- C. Keep storage areas neat with all materials organized so that they are neat and orderly.
- B. At completion of work, remove all materials, debris, and rubbish from all areas and restore any damaged areas to new condition.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 329000
LANDSCAPE PLANTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 WORK INCLUDED:

- A. Furnish all materials, labor, supervision, supplies, transportation, equipment, etc. necessary to complete the work in strict accordance with these specifications, schedules, and drawings. Work to include (but shall not be limited to):
 - 1. Finish grading.
 - 2. Bed preparation.
 - 3. Planting (trees, shrubs, groundcover, annuals, and lawn).
 - 4. Maintenance until final acceptance.
 - 5. Guarantee and replacements as necessary.

1.2 REQUIREMENTS OF REGULATORY AGENCIES:

- A. Meet the requirements and recommendations of the applicable portion of the following standards:
 - 1. Standardized Plant Names: 1942 Edition, American Joint Committee on Horticulture Nomenclature.
 - 2. American Standard for Nursery Stock: 1986 Edition, American Association of Nurserymen.

1.3 APPROVAL:

- A. Wherever the terms approve or approval are used in these specifications, they shall mean the approval of the Owner/Owner's Representative and/or Landscape Architect (to be noted as Owner/Landscape Architect throughout remainder of these specifications).

1.4 PRODUCT HANDLING:

- A. Deliver plants to site at the time of planting. Do not deliver more plant materials than can be installed in one day unless proper care and storage are provided.

1.5 SUBMITTALS:

- A. Notify Landscape Architect of proposed sources of plant materials and bed preparation materials within the (10) days of acceptance of bid.
- B. Submit one representative of each type of tree, shrub, and groundcover in specified sizes for approval as requested by the Landscape Architect prior to installation. Any material not matching approved submittals will be rejected by Landscape Architect.

1.6 SITE CONDITIONS:

- A. All landscaped areas will be accepted at grades approximately one-tenth of one foot from finished grade (unless otherwise indicated on the landscape plans), free of rocks, clods, debris, etc. greater than 2" in diameter.
- B. Owner shall be responsible for all rental, labor, and overhead costs when, in the process of installation, said costs are necessitated by buried or partially buried rock, debris, or other obstacles. Landscape Contractor shall notify Owner/Landscape Architect upon discovery of buried rock or debris for instruction regarding site changes or change order to contract.
- C. Contractor shall determine location of all underground utilities and shall perform work in

such a manner as to avoid possible damage. If required, hand excavation shall be used to minimize possible damage.

- D. Coordinate all landscape work to prevent possible damage to underground irrigation system. Any damage shall be repaired immediately as not to adversely affect newly installed landscape materials.

1.7 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS:

- A. Conduct all planting operations in favorable weather and soil conditions during the seasons normal for such work as determined by the Landscape Architect.

1.8 COORDINATION:

- A. Landscape Contractor shall coordinate his work with the other trades and professions on the job site in accordance to scheduling guidelines as provided by the Owner/Landscape Architect. The Landscape Contractor shall not start or resume work if there is danger of his work being damaged or destroyed by the work of other trades or professions in normal pursuit of their trades. The Landscape Contractor shall notify the Landscape Architect at the time of planting of any conditions not shown on the plans which make any adjustments necessary.

1.9 MAINTENANCE:

- A. Water to be available for use on the site. Provide hoses and other water equipment as required at no cost to the Owner.
- B. Maintain all trees, shrubs, groundcover, and lawn areas until final acceptance by Owner/Landscape Architect.
- C. Maintenance shall include (but shall not be limited to) watering, weeding, cultivation, pruning, spraying, mowing, edging, and clean-up as necessary to sustain the landscape in a vigorous and healthy condition until final acceptance.
- D. Owner assumes responsibility for maintenance upon final acceptance.

1.10 GUARANTEE:

- A. Landscape Contractor shall guarantee all shade trees for a period of one (1) year from date of final acceptance. All ornamental trees, shrubs, groundcover, and annuals shall be guaranteed for a period of ninety (90) days from date of final acceptance.
- B. All replacements shall be of the same type and size as original materials. Replacements shall carry same guarantee as original material, effective on date of replacement planting.
- C. At Owner's/Landscape Architect's approval, all native B&B shade trees may be replaced at the start of the next years digging season. In such cases, all dead material is to be removed immediately.
- D. Any damage, including ruts in lawn and bed areas, incurred during the replacement process shall be repaired immediately at no cost to the Owner.
- E. Guarantee excludes replacements of plants due to damage caused by flooding, freezing, freezing rain, hail, sleet, lightning storms, winds over 60 MPH, or other Acts of God, vandalism, and/or Owner's neglect.
- F. Hydromulch areas: maintain and guarantee until a coverage rate of 95% of the specified grass is established. Re-seed as often as necessary to establish a 95% coverage.
- G. Sod areas: guarantee sod to root within thirty (30) days after installation. Replace all patches twelve (12) inches square or larger with new sod as often as necessary to establish a 100% living coverage.

1.11 INSPECTION AND FINAL ACCEPTANCE:

- A. Each phase or total project shall be inspected for final acceptance by the Owner and/or Landscape Architect within ten (10) days after written notification of anticipated completion of the Landscape Contractor's work.
- B. After inspection, the Landscape Contractor will be notified in writing of acceptance or of further punch-list requirements needed for completion and final acceptance.
- C. All plants to remain the property of the Landscape Contractor's until final acceptance.

PART 2 - MATERIALS

2.1 PLANT MATERIALS:

- A. Quality and size of plant material: healthy, well-branched, normally shaped, vigorous, free of disease and insect pests, well-developed, and true to botanical name and specified size.
- B. Earth balls: loose or broken balls will be rejected. Tree balls shall be a minimum of nine (9) inches in diameter for every one (1) inch of caliper.
- C. Caliper all trees six (6) inches above ground level. Specified plant heights are to be from top of root ball to nominal top of plant. Spread requirements refer to the body of the plant, not branch tip to branch tip. Material furnished shall be a fair average between the minimum and maximum sizes specified. Contractor may, at his option, supply oversized plants at no additional cost to the Owner.
- D. Do not make substitutions. If specified plant material is not available, submit letter stating nursery sources investigated, together with proposal for use of equivalent material. No substitutions shall be permitted except by written permission from Owner/Landscape Architect.
- E. In case of discrepancies in quantities between plant list and landscape plans, the plans shall govern.

2.2 SOD:

- A. Grass shall be the specified grass (refer to plans for grass type) and shall be vigorous, well-rooted, healthy turf, free from disease, weeds, stones, and other harmful deleterious matter.
- B. Sod shall be machine stripped and delivered at a uniform soil thickness.

2.3 HYDROMULCH:

- A. Seed shall be hulled, treated lawn-type seed, delivered to the site in original sealed, standard containers labeled in accordance with Texas State Seed Laws. Minimum purity germination shall be 90%.
- B. Fertilizer shall be a complete fertilizer, dry, free-flowing, and balanced in composition. It shall be delivered to the site in unopened containers, bearing the manufacturer's statement of analysis, and shall conform to all State fertilizer laws.
- C. Mulch shall be an approved, finely textured compost.
- D. Tacking agent shall be delivered to site in original unopened containers and shall be "Terra Tack-One" or approved equal. Tacking agent to be used on slopes 3:1 or greater.

2.4 BED PREPARATION MATERIALS:

- A. Organic material shall be one of the following materials (or a submitted and approved equal):

1. Vital Earth compost.
 2. Back-to-Earth Soil Conditioner.
 3. Living Earth Compost.
 4. Soil Building Systems compost
 5. Silver Creek Materials compost
- B. Mulch topdress shall shredded native cedar in bags or bulk.
- C. Organic fertilizer shall be Garden-Ville Soil Food, Greensense, Nature's Guide, Total Organics or approved equal.
- D. Topsoil shall be fertile, dark topsoil, free of rubble, stones, limbs, plant roots, and reasonably free of weeds.
- E. Sand shall be clean, washed, fine to coarse sizes.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS:

- A. Steel edging shall be 1/8" thick X 4" width Ryerson Estate Edging painted green, or approved equal.
- B. Tree staking and guying: if applicable, refer to landscape details.
- C. Tree wrap shall not be used. To prevent sunscald a wash of 50% latex may be applied.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION FOR PLANTING OPERATIONS:

- A. Landscape Contractor is to inspect all existing conditions under which work is to be installed and shall notify Landscape Architect of any unsatisfactory conditions. If no problems are present, notify the Landscape Architect before proceeding.
- B. Re-stake individual trees / shrub bed locations as indicated on the landscape plans for approval by Owner/Landscape Architect prior to start of planting (initial location staking shall be done prior to installation of irrigation system). Make adjustments as directed.

3.2 PLANTING INSTALLATION:

- A. Excavation:
1. Shade tree pit size shall be 3 times greater in diameter than that of the tree ball and the depth shall be equal to just less than the height of the tree ball.
 2. Ornamental tree pit size shall be 3 times greater in diameter than that of the tree ball and the depth shall be equal to the height of the tree ball.
 3. Shrub pit sizes shall be 3 times greater in diameter than that of the container size and 3" deeper than the height of the shrub ball.
 4. Set all plants straight and plumb and to the same relationship to finish grade as they had to the ground from which they were dug. Allow for future settling.
- B. Pruning of all plant material shall be limited to removal of injured twigs or branches or to compensate for the loss of roots from transplanting. Pruning shall be done so as not to change the natural shape of the plant. All cuts to be typical to standard industry practices. Make no flush cuts and use no pruning paints.
- C. Tree pit backfill shall be performed as follows:

1. Backfill with the existing native soil only.
 2. Water in each tree with hoses to eliminate air pockets.
 3. Fertilize with compost tea or Garrett Juice.
 4. Do not build water retention rings around each tree
 5. Taper the topdressing mulch from ½" at the tree trunk to 3-5" (depending on the tree size) at the outside edge of the tree hole.
 6. Excavated material should be used on-site.
 7. No staking is to be used on trees. Problem trees should be held in place with Tree Staples or approved equal.
 8. No tree wrapping is to be used. Paint wash of 50% latex paint to match bark color and 50% water can be used to prevent sunscald if necessary.
- D. Shrub pit backfill (for pit-planted materials as noted on plans) shall be performed as follows:
1. Use same procedure as noted in 3.2.C.1-6.
- E. Shrub and groundcover bed preparation shall be performed as follows:
1. Excavate beds as follows:
 - Groundcover bed subgrade shall be 2" below adjacent finish grades.
 - Shrub bed subgrade shall be 3" below adjacent finish grades.
 2. Till bed subgrade to a depth of 4-6".
 3. Add to be areas the following soil mix at the following depths and till into subgrade:
 - Groundcover beds - 2" depth of compost
 - Shrub beds - 3" depth of compost
 4. Topdress entire bed area with one (1) inch mulch.
 5. Use all excavated material off-site.

3.3 EDGING:

- A. Set edging one (1) inch above finish grade.
- B. Install all edging straight and true as indicated on landscape plans. Where layout is curvilinear in design, maintain a constant radius.
- C. Align edging with site features as indicated on landscape plans.
- D. Bend all corners; do not cut.

3.4 HYDROMULCH INSTALLATION:

- A. Prior to hydromulching, the finish grade shall be brought to a firm, even surface. Landscape Contractor to rake areas smooth, removing all rocks, sticks, and other foreign materials greater than 1" diameter. Finish grade shall be accepted by Landscape Architect before installation.
- B. Hydromulch with a slurry mixture of Bermuda seed, fertilizer, and mulch as follows:

1. Bermuda seed shall be applied at the rate of two (2) pounds per one thousand (1000) square feet.
 2. Fertilizer shall be applied at the rate of twenty (20) pounds per one thousand (1000) square feet.
 3. The mulch component shall be applied at the rate of fifty (50) pounds per one thousand (1000)square feet.
- C. Use 4' X 8' batter board along all concrete and bed areas.
- D. Keep hydromulch as moist as necessary to promote seed germination. Landscape Contractor to coordinate watering cycle with General Contractor and Irrigation Contractor as required.
- E. Landscape Contractor shall be required to mow turf a minimum of two (2) times, with initial mowing to be performed when grass reaches height of three (3) inches. Mow turf to a height of two and one-half (2 1/2) inches.

3.5 SOD INSTALLATION:

- A. Prior to sodding, the finish grade shall be brought to a firm, even surface. Landscape Contractor to rake all areas smooth, removing all rocks, sticks, and other foreign materials. Finish grade shall be accepted by Owner/Landscape Architect before installation activity.
- B. Sod is to be laid with staggered joints and with seams tightly fitted together.
- C. Sod shall be rolled smooth using a 150 lb. roller. Method of rolling is at the Landscape Contractor's option; however, method shall be subject to common practices and procedures.
- D. All sod shall be watered immediately after planting.

3.6 CLEAN-UP:

- A. During installation, the premises shall be kept neat and orderly at all times. All trash, including debris resulting from removing weeds or rock from planting areas, preparing beds, or planting plants shall be removed from the site daily as the work progresses.
- B. Upon completion of landscaping, all walks and drives will be swept and hosed off to give a clean appearance. All storage shall be cleaned and left in finished condition.

END OF SECTION

ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

Project Manual

Volume 2



**New Fire Station No. 5
Mansfield, Texas**



KOMATSU
ARCHITECTURE

3880 Hulen Street Suite 300
Fort Worth, Texas 76107
(817) 332-1914

KA Project No. 2016.166
Bid Number: 2019-32-01

**PROJECT MANUAL
FOR
NEW FIRE STATION NO. 5
Mansfield, Texas**

OWNER:

CITY OF MANSFIELD
1200 E. Broad Street
Mansfield, Texas 76063

ARCHITECT:

KOMATSU ARCHITECTURE
3880 Hulen Street, Suite 300
Fort Worth, Texas 76107
817.332.1914 phone

STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

ARMSTRONG-DOUGLAS PARTNERS
6060 North Central Expressway, Suite 800
Dallas, Texas 75206
214.237.7022 phone

CIVIL ENGINEER:

JAMES DEOTTE (JD) ENGINEERING, INC.
6707 Brentwood Stair Road, Suite 200
Fort Worth, Texas 76112
817.446.6877 phone

MEP ENGINEER:

SOLARE ENGINEERING UNLIMITED
1300 Summit Avenue, Suite 514
Fort Worth, Texas 76102
817.529.6800 phone

LANDSCAPE ARCHITECT:

LEEMING DESIGN GROUP
4913 Rufe Snow Drive, Suite 101b
North Richland Hills, Texas 76180
817.577.0889 phone

BID NO.:

2019-32-01

DATE:

7 November 2019 (100% Construction Documents)

**SECTION 000107
PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE**

The following specifications sections have been provided by the MEP Engineer:

MEP ENGINEER: SOLARE ENGINEERING UNLIMITED
1300 Summit Avenue, Suite 514
Fort Worth, Texas 76102
817.529.6800 phone



DIVISION 21 – FIRE PROTECTION

- 210500 Common Work Results for Fire Suppression
- 211313 Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems

DIVISION 22 – PLUMBING

- 220500 Common Work Results for Plumbing
- 220517 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
- 220518 Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
- 220519 Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
- 220523 General Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping
- 220529 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- 220553 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
- 220719 Plumbing Piping Insulation
- 221116 Domestic Water Piping
- 221119 Domestic Water Piping Specialties
- 221316 Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
- 221623 Natural Gas Piping
- 223400 Fuel-Fired Domestic-Water Heaters
- 224000 Plumbing Fixtures

DIVISION 23 – HEATING, VENTILATING, AND AIR CONDITIONING

- 230000 Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods
- 230529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Equipment
- 230553 Identification for HVAC Equipment and Duct
- 230593 Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC (Small CV)
- 230713 Duct Insulation
- 232300 Refrigerant Piping
- 233113 Metal Ducts
- 233300 Air Duct Accessories
- 233423 HVAC Power Ventilators
- 235400 Split-System Air-Conditioners (Gas Heat)

DIVISION 26 – ELECTRICAL

- 260500 Common Work Results for Electrical
- 260519 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
- 260526 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
- 260529 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
- 260533 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
- 260544 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
- 260553 Identification for Electrical Systems
- 262416 Panelboards
- 262726 Wiring Devices
- 262813 Fuses
- 262816 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
- 263213 Engine Generators

263600 Transfer Switches with Bypass Isolation
265119 LED Interior Lighting
265619 LED Exterior Lighting

DIVISION 27 – COMMUNICATIONS

270500 Common Work Results for Communications
270526 Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems
270544 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways
and Cabling
271100 Communications Equipment Room Fittings
271300 Communications Backbone Cabling
271500 Communications Horizontal Cabling

DIVISION 28 – ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

280500 Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
280526 Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security
280528 Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security
280553 Identification for Electronic Safety and Security
280600 Testing for Electronic Safety and Security
281000 Electronic Access Control System
283111 Digital, Addressable Fire-Alarm System

END OF PROFESSIONAL SEALS PAGE

SECTION 210500**COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 3. Sleeves.
 - 4. Escutcheons.
 - 5. Grout.
 - 6. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 7. Painting and finishing.
 - 8. Concrete bases.
 - 9. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 2. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for Fire-Suppression Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight and physical damage. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for fire-suppression installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for fire-suppression items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 8.

1.8 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to the owner or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 21 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

2.6 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish or bright white, as selected by the architect.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or bright white, as selected by the architect.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated or bright white, as selected by the architect.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and polished chrome-plated or bright white, as selected by the architect.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and polished chrome-plated or bright white, as selected by the architect.

- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.7 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.

- c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - j. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 21 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.3 PAINTING

- A. Painting of fire-suppression systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 9.

- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 3.

3.5 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 5 for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor fire-suppression materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.6 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for fire-suppression equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

3.7 TRAINING

- A. "Training of the Owner's operation and maintenance personnel is required in cooperation with the Owner's Representative. Provide competent, factory authorized personnel to provide instruction to operation and maintenance personnel concerning the location, operation, and troubleshooting of the installed systems. The instruction shall be scheduled in coordination with the Owner's Representative after submission and approval of formal training plans.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 211313**WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes fire-suppression piping and equipment for the following building systems:
 - 1. Wet-pipe, fire-suppression sprinklers, including piping, valves, specialties, and automatic sprinklers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Working Plans: Documents, including drawings, calculations, and material specifications prepared according to NFPA 13 for obtaining approval from authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design sprinklers and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Design sprinkler piping according to the following and obtain approval from authorities having jurisdiction:
 - 1. Include 10 percent margin of safety for available water flow and pressure.
 - 2. Include losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
 - 3. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications: As follows:
 - a. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - c. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
 - e. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
 - 4. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design: As follows:
 - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
 - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500- sq. ft. area.
 - c. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 2 Occupancy: 0.20 gpm over 1500- sq. ft. area.
 - 5. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler: As follows:
 - a. Office Space: 225 sq. ft.
 - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft..
 - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
 - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
 - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Components and Installation: Capable of producing piping systems with 175-psig minimum working-pressure rating, unless otherwise indicated.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 1. Pipe and fitting materials and methods of joining for sprinkler piping.
 2. Pipe hangers and supports.
 3. Valves, including specialty valves, accessories, and devices.
 4. Alarm devices. Include electrical data.
 5. Fire department connections. Include type; number, size, and arrangement of inlets; caps and chains; size and direction of outlet; escutcheon and marking; and finish.
 6. Hose connections. Include size, type, and finish.
 7. Sprinklers, escutcheons, and guards. Include sprinkler flow characteristics, mounting, finish, and other pertinent data. Color of concealed head cover plate shall be selected during the submittal process.
- B. Fire-Hydrant Flow Test Report: As specified in "Preparation" Article.
- C. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction. Include hydraulic calculations, if applicable.
- D. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping" and "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Underground Piping."
- E. Maintenance Data: For each type of sprinkler specialty to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who has designed and installed fire-suppression piping similar to that indicated for this Project and obtained design approval and inspection approval from authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Design Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by an individual licensed by the State of Texas to design such systems. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Firms whose equipment, specialties, and accessories are listed by product name and manufacturer in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" and FM's "Fire Protection Approval Guide" and that comply with other requirements indicated.
- D. Sprinkler Components: Listing/approval stamp, label, or other marking by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- F. NFPA Standards: Equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing complying with the following:
 1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounting steel cabinet and hinged cover, with space for a minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include the number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and wrench for sprinklers. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler on Project.

1.8 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to the owner or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Specialty Valves and Devices:
 - a. Central Sprinkler Corp.
 - b. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corp.
 - c. Grinnell Corp.
 - d. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - e. Viking Corp.
 - f. Tyco
 2. Water-Flow Indicators and Supervisory Switches:
 - a. Gamewell Co.
 - b. Grinnell Corp.
 - c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - d. Viking Corp.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Tyco
 3. Sprinkler, Drain and Alarm Test Fittings:
 - a. Central Sprinkler Corp.
 - b. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
 - c. Grinnell Corp.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - e. Tyco
 4. Sprinkler, Branch-Line Test Fittings:
 - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
 - b. Fire-End and Croker Corp.

- c. Smith Industries, Inc.; Potter-Roemer Div.
 - d. Tyco
5. Sprinkler, Inspector's Test Fittings:
- a. Fire-End and Croker Corp.
 - b. G/J Innovations, Inc.
 - c. Triple R Specialty of Ajax, Inc.
6. Fire Department Connections:
- a. Badger Fire Protection, Inc.
 - b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Co., Inc.
 - c. Grinnell Corp.
 - d. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
7. Sprinklers:
- a. Badger Fire Protection, Inc.
 - b. Central Sprinkler Corp.
 - c. Grinnell Corp.
 - d. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
 - e. Viking Corp.
 - f. Tyco
8. Indicator Valves:
- a. Central Sprink, Inc.
 - b. Grinnell Corp.
 - c. Milwaukee Valve Co., Inc.
 - d. Nibco, Inc.
 - e. Victaulic Co. of America.
9. Fire-Protection-Service Valves:
- a. Central Sprink, Inc.
 - b. Central Sprinkler Corp.
 - c. Grinnell Corp.
 - d. Nibco, Inc.
 - e. Stockham Valves & Fittings, Inc.
 - f. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - g. Tyco
10. Keyed Couplings for Steel Piping:
- a. Central Sprink, Inc.
 - b. Ductilic, Inc.
 - c. Grinnell Corp.
 - d. National Fittings, Inc.
 - e. Victaulic Co. of America.
 - f. Tyco
11. Keyed Couplings for Ductile-Iron Piping:
- a. Victaulic Co. of America.
12. Press-Seal Fittings for Steel Piping:

- a. Victaulic Co. of America.

13. Mechanically Formed Tee Outlets:

- a. T-Drill Industries, Inc.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 PIPES

- A. Piping shall be black schedule 30 for sizes six inches and smaller. Piping larger than six inches shall be black schedule 10.
- B. Schedule 30, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135; ASTM A 795/A 795M, Type E; or ASME B36.10M, wrought steel; with wall thickness not less than Schedule 30 and not more than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- C. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.

2.4 PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Steel, Threaded Couplings: ASTM A 865.
- B. Steel, Grooved-End Fittings: UL-listed and FM-approved, ASTM A 47, malleable iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron; with dimensions matching steel pipe and ends factory grooved according to AWWA C606.
- C. Steel, Press-Seal Fittings: UL 213 and FM-approved, 175-psig pressure rating; with steel housing, butylene O-rings, and pipe stop; for use with Schedule 5, plain-end, steel pipe. Include UL 45-listed fitting manufacturer's pressure-sealing tools.
- D. Cast-Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24.
- E. Where galvanized piping is indicated for use in dry pipe and pre-action systems all fittings shall be galvanized.

2.5 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Steel, Keyed Couplings: UL 213 and AWWA C606, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ASTM A 536, ductile-iron housing, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts and nuts. Include listing for dry-pipe service for couplings for dry piping.
- B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, Classification BCuP-3 or BCuP-4.
- C. Transition Couplings: AWWA C219, sleeve type, or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and with ends compatible with piping to be joined.

2.6 FIRE-PROTECTION-SERVICE VALVES

- A. General: UL listed and FM approved, with minimum 175-psig nonshock working-pressure rating. Valves for grooved-end piping may be furnished with grooved ends instead of type of ends specified.
- B. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: UL 262; cast-bronze, threaded ends; solid wedge; OS&Y; and rising stem.
- C. Indicating Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller: UL 1091; butterfly or ball-type, bronze body with threaded ends; and integral indicating device.
 - 1. Indicator: Electrical 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch.
- D. Gate Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: UL 262, iron body, bronze mounted, taper wedge, OS&Y, and rising stem. Include replaceable, bronze, wedge facing rings and flanged ends.
- E. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: UL 312 or MSS SP-80, Class 150; bronze body with bronze disc and threaded ends.
- F. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: UL 312, cast-iron body and bolted cap, with bronze disc or cast-iron disc with bronze-disc ring and flanged ends.
- G. Split-Clapper Check Valves, NPS 4 and Larger: UL 312, cast-iron body with rubber seal, bronze-alloy discs, and stainless-steel spring and hinge pin.

2.7 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Alarm Check Valves: UL 193, 175-psig working pressure; designed for horizontal or vertical installation, with cast-iron flanged inlet and outlet, bronze grooved seat with O-ring seals, and single-hinge pin and latch design. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electric sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
 - 1. Option: Grooved-end connections for use with keyed couplings.
 - 2. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves, and separate from main drain piping.
- B. Pressure-Regulating Valves: UL 1468, 400-psig minimum rating, brass. Include NPS 2-1/2, female NPS inlet and outlet; adjustable setting feature; and straight or 90-degree angle pattern design as indicated.
 - 1. Finish: Rough chrome-plated.
- C. Ball Drip Valves: UL 1726, automatic drain valve, NPS 3/4, ball check device with threaded ends.

2.8 SPRINKLERS

- A. Automatic Sprinklers: With heat-responsive element complying with the following:
 - 1. UL 199, for applications except residential.
- B. Sprinkler Types and Categories: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating, unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
 - a. Orifice: 1/2 inch, with discharge coefficient K between 5.3 and 5.8.
 - b. Orifice: 17/32 inch, with discharge coefficient K between 7.4 and 8.2.
- C. Sprinkler types, features, and options include the following:

1. Concealed ceiling sprinklers, including cover plate. The cover plate shall have a factory applied custom color, if required, to match the ceilings. The architect shall select the cover plate colors.
2. Flush ceiling sprinklers, including escutcheon.
3. Pendent sprinklers.
4. Sidewall sprinklers.
5. Upright sprinklers.

- D. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome-plated, bronze, and painted.
- E. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
1. Ceiling Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
 2. Sidewall Mounting: Plastic, white finish, one piece, flat.
- F. Sprinkler Guards: Wire-cage type, including fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.9 SPECIALTY SPRINKLER FITTINGS

- A. Specialty Fittings: UL listed and FM approved; made of steel, ductile iron, or other materials compatible with piping.
- B. Press-Seal Fittings: UL 213, steel housing with butylene O-rings and pipe stop.
- C. Locking-Lug Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron body with locking-lug ends.
- D. Mechanical-T Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron housing with pressure-responsive gasket, bolts, and threaded or locking-lug outlet.
- E. Mechanical-Cross Fittings: UL 213, ductile-iron housing with pressure-responsive gaskets, bolts, and threaded or locking-lug outlets.
- F. Drop-Nipple Fittings: UL 1474, with threaded inlet, threaded outlet, and seals; adjustable.
- G. Sprinkler, Drain and Alarm Test Fittings: UL-listed, cast- or ductile-iron body; with threaded inlet and outlet, test valve, and orifice and sight glass.
- H. Sprinkler, Branch-Line Test Fittings: UL-listed, brass body; with threaded inlet and capped drain outlet and threaded outlet for sprinkler.
- I. Sprinkler, Inspector's Test Fittings: UL-listed, cast- or ductile-iron housing; with threaded inlet and drain outlet and sight glass.

2.10 FIRE DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

- A. Wall, Fire Department Connections: UL 405; cast-brass body with brass, wall, escutcheon plate; brass, lugged caps with gaskets and brass chains; and brass, lugged swivel connections. Include inlets with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire department sizes and threads, outlet with pipe threads, extension pipe nipples, check devices or clappers for inlets, and escutcheon plate with marking "AUTO SPKR & STANDPIPE."
1. Type: Exposed, projecting mounting.
 2. Escutcheon Plate: Square.

3. Finish: Bronze Finish.

2.11 ALARM DEVICES

- A. General: Types matching piping and equipment connections.
- B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarms: UL 753, mechanical-operation type with pelton-wheel operator with shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction and 10-inch- diameter, cast-aluminum alarm gong with red-enamel factory finish. Include NPS 3/4 inlet and NPS 1 drain connections.
- C. Water-Flow Indicators: UL 346; electrical-supervision, vane-type water-flow detector; with 250-psig pressure rating; and designed for horizontal or vertical installation. Include two single-pole, double-throw, circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
- D. Pressure Switches: UL 753; electrical-supervision-type, water-flow switch with retard feature. Include single-pole, double-throw, normally closed contacts and design that operates on rising pressure and signals water flow.
- E. Valve Supervisory Switches: UL 753; electrical; single-pole, double throw; with normally closed contacts. Include design that signals controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

2.12 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Pressure Gages: UL 393, 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch- diameter dial with dial range of 0 to 250 psig.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article in Part 1 of this Section.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for hose connections and stations to verify actual locations of piping connections before installation.
- B. Examine walls and partitions for suitable thickness, fire- and smoke-rated construction, framing for hose-station cabinets, and other conditions where hose connections and stations are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Do not use welded joints with galvanized steel pipe.

- B. Unions, and transition and special fittings with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system's pressure rating may be used in aboveground applications, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Piping between Fire Department Connections and Check Valves: Use galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; steel, grooved-end fittings; steel, keyed couplings; and grooved joints.
- D. Underground Service-Entrance Piping: One piece stainless steel riser with the connection to the main outside the perimeter of the building.
- E. Wet-Pipe Sprinklers: Use the following:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Schedule 40 steel pipe with threaded ends; or threaded joints.
 - 2. NPS 2 to NPS 6: Schedule 40 steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; steel, grooved-end fittings; and grooved joints.

3.4 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Fire-Protection-Service Valves: UL listed and FM approved for applications where required by NFPA 13.
 - a. Shutoff Duty: Use gate valves.
 - 2. General-Duty Valves: For applications where UL-listed and FM-approved valves are not required by NFPA 13.
 - a. Shutoff Duty: Use gate, ball, or butterfly valves.
 - b. Throttling Duty: Use globe, ball, or butterfly valves.

3.5 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Steel-Piping, Grooved Joints: Use Schedule 40 steel pipe with cut or roll-grooved ends and Schedule 30 or thinner steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; steel, grooved-end fittings; and steel, keyed couplings. Assemble joints with couplings, gaskets, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling manufacturer's written instructions. Use gaskets listed for dry-pipe service for dry piping.
- B. Press-Seal-Fitting Joints: Use UL-listed tool and procedure and follow fitting manufacturer's written instructions. Include use of specific equipment, pressure-sealing tool, and accessories.
- C. Locking-Lug-Fitting, Twist-Locked Joints: Follow fitting manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Dissimilar-Piping-Material Joints: Construct joints using adapters or couplings compatible with both piping materials. Use dielectric fittings if both piping materials are metal.

3.6 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Service Entrance pipe riser to be a one piece stainless steel riser. The connections to the riser are to be outside the perimeter of the building grade beam.

- B. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping of size and in location indicated for service entrance to building.
- C. Install Febco 856 Double Check Detector, shutoff valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.

3.7 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
 - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Install underground service-entrance piping according to NFPA 24 and with restrained joints.
- C. Install black schedule 30 piping for six inches and smaller.
- D. Use approved fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller. Unions are not required on flanged devices or in piping installations using grooved joints.
- F. Install flanges or flange adapters on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger connections.
- G. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler piping, complete with shutoff valve, sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- I. Install sprinkler zone control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- J. Install drain valves on standpipes.
- K. Install ball drip valves to drain piping between fire department connections and check valves. Drain to floor drain or outside building.
- L. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- M. Hangers and Supports: Comply with NFPA 13 for hanger materials. Install according to NFPA 13 for sprinkler piping and to NFPA 14 for standpipes.
- N. Install piping with grooved joints according to manufacturer's written instructions. Construct rigid piping joints, unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they will not be subject to freezing.

3.8 SPECIALTY SPRINKLER FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install specialty sprinkler fittings according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install fire-protection specialty valves, trim, fittings, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13, manufacturer's written instructions, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Gate Valves: Install fire-protection-service valves supervised-open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire department connections. Provide permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water supply sources.
- D. Alarm Check Valves: Install valves in vertical position for proper direction of flow, including bypass check valve and retard chamber drain-line connection.

3.10 SPRINKLER APPLICATIONS

- A. General: Use sprinklers according to the following applications:
 1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
 2. Rooms with Suspended Acoustic Ceilings: Flush sprinklers.
 3. Rooms with Suspended Gypsum board Ceilings, Sanctuary and all Public Lobbies: Concealed sprinklers.
 4. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
 5. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright; pendent, dry-type; and sidewall, dry-type sprinklers.
 6. Sprinkler Finishes: Use sprinklers with the following finishes:
 - a. Upright, Pendent, and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome-plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.
 - b. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted cover plate. Contractor shall coordinate with Architect to select the required cover plate cover color for application at the factory.
 - c. Flush Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with painted white escutcheon.

3.11 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of narrow dimension of acoustical panels.
- B. Install sprinklers in center of tiles.
- C. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing. Use dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space.

3.12 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water-supply piping and sprinklers. Include backflow preventers.
- B. Install ball drip valves at each check valve for fire department connection. Drain to floor drain or outside building.

- C. Connect piping to specialty valves, hose valves, specialties, fire department connections, and accessories.
- D. Electrical Connections: Power wiring is specified in Division 16.
- E. Connect alarm devices to fire alarm.

3.13 LABELING AND IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler piping according to NFPA 13, "System Acceptance" Chapter.
- B. Replace piping system components that do not pass test procedures and retest to demonstrate compliance. Repeat procedure until satisfactory results are obtained.
- C. Report test results promptly and in writing to Architect and authorities having jurisdiction.

3.15 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Remove and replace sprinklers having paint other than factory finish.

3.16 PROTECTION

- A. Protect sprinklers from damage until Substantial Completion.

3.17 COMMISSIONING

- A. Verify that specialty valves, trim, fittings, controls, and accessories are installed and operate correctly.
- B. Verify that air compressors and their accessories are installed and operate correctly.
- C. Verify that specified tests of piping are complete.
- D. Verify that damaged sprinklers and sprinklers with paint or coating not specified are replaced with new, correct type.
- E. Verify that sprinklers are correct types, have correct finishes and temperature ratings, and have guards as required for each application.
- F. Verify that potable-water supplies have correct types of backflow preventers.
- G. Verify that hose connections and fire department connections have threads compatible with local fire department equipment.
- H. Fill wet-pipe sprinkler piping with water.

- I. Verify that hose connections are correct type and size.
- J. Verify that hose stations are correct type and size.
- K. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
- L. Adjust operating controls and pressure settings.
- M. Coordinate with fire alarm tests. Operate as required.

3.18 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Demonstrate equipment, specialties, and accessories. Review operating and maintenance information.
- B. Schedule demonstration with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR PLUMBING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 9. Painting and finishing.
 - 10. Concrete bases.
 - 11. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in chases.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Plumbing Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for plumbing installations.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.

- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for plumbing items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 22 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. ABS Piping: ASTM D 2235.
 - 2. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 - 3. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
 - 4. PVC to ABS Piping Transition: ASTM D 3138.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
 - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.
 - d. JCM Industries.
 - e. Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - f. Viking Johnson.
 - 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
 - 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve-type coupling.
 - 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- D. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

- E. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.
 - c. Mission Rubber Company.
 - d. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Calpico, Inc.
- b. Lochinvar Corp.

G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Perfection Corp.
- b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
- c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
- b. Calpico, Inc.
- c. Metraflex Co.
- d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.

3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.

4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.

C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with rough-brass finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.

1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes NPS 6 and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.2 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 22 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - 2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
 - 3. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - 4. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 5. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
 - 6. PVC to ABS Nonpressure Transition Fittings: Join according to ASTM D 3138 Appendix.
- J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.
- K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.
- L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
 - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
 - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.4 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install plumbing equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.6 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.7 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.8 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor plumbing materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.9 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for plumbing equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220517

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves.
 - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 4. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 5. Grout.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.
- D. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
 - 2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. CALPICO, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Company (The).
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 5. Proco Products, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Presealed Systems.
- B. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for imbedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit has plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.5 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.
 - 1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
 - 1. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes in slabs formed by molded-PE or -PP sleeves.
 - 2. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 3. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
 - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
 - 2. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
 - 1. Install fittings that are large enough to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
 - 3. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - 4. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 - 5. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.

- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.4 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

- A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
 - 1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
 - 2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
 - 3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

- 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
- b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
 - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
5. Interior Partitions:
 - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
 - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220518

ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Escutcheons.
 - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
 - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
 - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
 - 2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220519

METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Thermometers.
 - 2. Gages.
 - 3. Test plugs.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated; include performance curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Schedule for thermometers and gages indicating manufacturer's number, scale range, and location for each.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of thermometer and gage, signed by product manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
 - 2. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 3. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 4. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
- B. Case: Die-cast aluminum or brass, 7 inches long.

- C. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.
- D. Tube Background: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- E. Window: Glass.
- F. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.
- G. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- H. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

2.2 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED DIAL THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - 2. Ernst Gage Co.
 - 3. Eugene Ernst Products Co.
 - 4. Marsh Bellofram.
 - 5. Miljoco Corp.
 - 6. NANMAC Corporation.
 - 7. Noshok, Inc.
 - 8. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
 - 9. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - 10. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - 11. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 13. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - 14. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - 15. Winters Instruments.
- B. Description: Direct-mounting, bimetallic-actuated dial thermometers complying with ASME B40.3.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled type, stainless steel with 3-inch diameter.
- D. Element: Bimetal coil.
- E. Dial: Satin-faced, nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- F. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
- G. Window: Glass.
- H. Ring: Stainless steel.
- I. Connector: Adjustable angle type.

- J. Stem: Metal, for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- K. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

2.3 THERMOWELLS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.
 - 2. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - 3. Ernst Gage Co.
 - 4. Marsh Bellofram.
 - 5. Miljoco Corp.
 - 6. NANMAC Corporation.
 - 7. Noshok, Inc.
 - 8. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
 - 9. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - 10. Tel-Tru Manufacturing Company.
 - 11. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 13. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - 14. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - 15. Winters Instruments.
- B. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.
- C. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

2.4 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AMETEK, Inc.; U.S. Gauge Div.
 - 2. Ashcroft Commercial Instrument Operations; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - 3. Ernst Gage Co.
 - 4. Eugene Ernst Products Co.
 - 5. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc.
 - 6. Marsh Bellofram.
 - 7. Miljoco Corp.
 - 8. Noshok, Inc.
 - 9. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
 - 10. REO TEMP Instrument Corporation.
 - 11. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 - 12. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
 - 13. Weksler Instruments Operating Unit; Dresser Industries; Instrument Div.
 - 14. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
 - 15. Winters Instruments.
- B. Pressure-Gage Fittings:

1. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
2. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

2.5 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
 2. MG Piping Products Co.
 3. National Meter, Inc.
 4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
 5. Sisco Manufacturing Co.
 6. Trerice, H. O. Co.
 7. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- D. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.
1. Insert material for water service at 20 to 200 deg F shall be CR.
 2. Insert material for water service at minus 30 to plus 275 deg F shall be EPDM.
- E. Test Kit: Furnish one test kit(s) containing one pressure gage and adaptor, one thermometer(s), and carrying case. Pressure gage, adapter probes, and thermometer sensing elements shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
1. Pressure Gage: Small bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be 0 to 200 psig.
 2. Low-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 25 to 125 deg F.
 3. High-Range Thermometer: Small bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial ranges shall be 0 to 220 deg F.
 4. Carrying case shall have formed instrument padding.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

- A. Install liquid-in-glass thermometers in the outlet of each domestic, hot-water storage tank.
- B. Install liquid-filled-case-type, bimetallic-actuated dial thermometers at suction and discharge of each pump.
- C. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:
1. Domestic Hot Water: 30 to 180 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
 2. Domestic Cold Water: 0 to 100 deg F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

3.2 GAGE APPLICATIONS

- A. Install dry-case-type pressure gages for discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
- B. Install liquid-filled-case-type pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

3.3 INSTALLATIONS

- A. Install direct-mounting thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- B. Install remote-mounting dial thermometers on panel, with tubing connecting panel and thermometer bulb supported to prevent kinks. Use minimum tubing length.
- C. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of diameter of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.
- D. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.
- E. Install remote-mounting pressure gages on panel.
- F. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage.
- G. Install test plugs in tees in piping.
- H. Install permanent indicators on walls or brackets in accessible and readable positions.
- I. Install connection fittings for attachment to portable indicators in accessible locations.
- J. Install thermometers and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for thermometers, gages, machines, and equipment.
- K. Adjust faces of thermometers and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220523

GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Brass ball valves.
3. Bronze ball valves.
4. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
5. Bronze lift check valves.
6. Bronze swing check valves.
7. Iron swing check valves.
8. Bronze globe valves.
9. Iron globe valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 22 plumbing piping Sections for specialty valves applicable to those Sections only.
2. Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
3. Division 33 water distribution piping Sections for general-duty and specialty valves for site construction piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
 - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
 - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
 - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
 - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
 - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
 - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
 - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
 - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
 - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
 - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
 - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
 - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.

2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller except plug valves.
4. Wrench: For plug valves with square heads. Furnish Owner with 1 wrench for every 5 plug valves, for each size square plug-valve head.
5. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator; of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:

1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.

F. Valve-End Connections:

1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
2. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
3. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.

G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Hammond Valve.
 - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
 - d. Ends: Threaded.
 - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
 - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
 - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.3 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Brass Ball Valves with Brass Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. DynaQuip Controls.

- d. Flow-Tek, Inc.; a subsidiary of Bray International, Inc.
- e. Hammond Valve.
- f. Jamesbury; a subsidiary of Metso Automation.
- g. Jomar International, LTD.
- h. Kitz Corporation.
- i. Legend Valve.
- j. Marwin Valve; a division of Richards Industries.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- n. RuB Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Forged brass.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Brass.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

2.4 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. One-Piece, Reduced-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. CWP Rating: 400 psig.
- c. Body Design: One piece.
- d. Body Material: Bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Bronze.
- h. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- i. Port: Reduced.

B. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Valve, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Lance Valves; a division of Advanced Thermal Systems, Inc.
- f. Legend Valve.
- g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- h. NIBCO INC.
- i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
- b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
- c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
- d. Body Design: Two piece.
- e. Body Material: Bronze.
- f. Ends: Threaded.
- g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- h. Stem: Bronze.
- i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- j. Port: Full.

2.5 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- f. DeZurik Water Controls.
- g. Flo Fab Inc.
- h. Hammond Valve.
- i. Kitz Corporation.
- j. Legend Valve.
- k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- l. NIBCO INC.
- m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
- n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
- p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.

- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
- e. Seat: EPDM.
- f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
- g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

B. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with NBR Seat and Aluminum-Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
 - c. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - f. DeZurik Water Controls.
 - g. Flo Fab Inc.
 - h. Hammond Valve.
 - i. Kitz Corporation.
 - j. Legend Valve.
 - k. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - l. NIBCO INC.
 - m. Norriseal; a Dover Corporation company.
 - n. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - o. Spence Strainers International; a division of CIRCOR International, Inc.
 - p. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
 - e. Seat: NBR.
 - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
 - g. Disc: Aluminum bronze.

2.6 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.

- c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
- d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flo Fab Inc.
 - b. Hammond Valve.
 - c. Kitz Corporation.
 - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - e. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
 - f. NIBCO INC.
 - g. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: NBR, PTFE, or TFE.

2.7 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Valve, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Kitz Corporation.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - l. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.

- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

B. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
 - e. Ends: Threaded.
 - f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.

2.8 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
 - d. Hammond Valve.
 - e. Kitz Corporation.
 - f. Legend Valve.
 - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - h. NIBCO INC.
 - i. Powell Valves.
 - j. Red-White Valve Corporation.
 - k. Sure Flow Equipment Inc.
 - l. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - m. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.

- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Nonmetallic-to-Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Composition.
 - g. Seat Ring: Bronze.
 - h. Disc Holder: Bronze.
 - i. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
 - j. Gasket: Asbestos free.

2.9 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
 - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
 - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
 - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
 - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
 - e. Ends: Flanged.
 - f. Trim: Bronze.
 - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
 - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

B. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Weight-Closure Control:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
- d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Trim: Bronze.
- g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
- h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and weight.

2.10 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. Hammond Valve.
- d. Kitz Corporation.
- e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- f. NIBCO INC.
- g. Powell Valves.
- h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- i. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- j. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

B. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Nonmetallic Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.

- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- c. NIBCO INC.
- d. Red-White Valve Corporation.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 2.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
- d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
- e. Stem: Bronze.
- f. Disc: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Packing: Asbestos free.
- h. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.11 IRON GLOBE VALVES

A. Class 125, Iron Globe Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
- b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
- c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- d. Hammond Valve.
- e. Kitz Corporation.
- f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. Powell Valves.
- i. Red-White Valve Corporation.
- j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- k. Zy-Tech Global Industries, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-85, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
- c. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
- d. Ends: Flanged.
- e. Trim: Bronze.
- f. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install chainwheels on operators for butterfly valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor.
- F. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
 - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
 - 2. Center-Guided and Plate-Type Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
 - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
 - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
 - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
 - 3. Throttling Service: Globe valves.
 - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, metal or resilient-seat check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
 4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
 5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
 6. For Steel Piping, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.

3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
 2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
 3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, brass or bronze with bronze trim.
 4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
 5. Bronze Gate Valves: Class 125, NRS.
 6. Bronze Globe Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Valves, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: May be provided with threaded ends instead of flanged ends.
 2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, NBR seat, aluminum-bronze disc.
 3. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
 4. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
 5. Iron, Center-Guided Check Valves: Class 125, , metal seat.
 6. Iron, Plate-Type Check Valves: Class 125; single plate; metal seat.
 7. Iron Globe Valves: Class 125.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following hangers and supports for plumbing system piping and equipment:

1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
4. Metal framing systems.
5. Fiberglass strut systems.
6. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
7. Fastener systems.
8. Pipe stands.
9. Pipe positioning systems.
10. Equipment supports.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.
2. Division 22 Section "Expansion Fittings and Loops for Plumbing Piping" for pipe guides and anchors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
- B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe hangers and supports.
 - 2. Fiberglass pipe hangers.
 - 3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
 - 4. Powder-actuated fastener systems.
 - 5. Pipe positioning systems.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
 - 1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 - 2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 - 3. AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
 - 4. ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 STEEL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to Part 3 "Hanger and Support Applications" Article for where to use specific hanger and support types.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. AAA Technology & Specialties Co., Inc.
 - 2. Bergen-Power Pipe Supports.
 - 3. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 4. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 - 5. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - 6. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - 7. Globe Pipe Hanger Products, Inc.

8. Grinnell Corp.
9. GS Metals Corp.
10. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
11. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
12. PHS Industries, Inc.
13. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
14. Tolco Inc.

- C. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
- E. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion for support of bearing surface of piping.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made of steel channels and other components.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.; ERISTRUT Div.
 3. GS Metals Corp.
 4. Power-Strut Div.; Tyco International, Ltd.
 5. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 6. Tolco Inc.
 7. Unistrut Corp.; Tyco International, Ltd.
- C. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard finish unless bare metal surfaces are indicated.
- D. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Description: 100-psig- minimum, compressive-strength insulation insert encased in sheet metal shield.
- B. Manufacturers:
1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
 2. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 3. PHS Industries, Inc.
 4. Pipe Shields, Inc.
 5. Rilco Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with vapor barrier.
- D. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate or ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass.
- E. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- F. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- G. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Hilti, Inc.
 - b. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
 - c. Masterset Fastening Systems, Inc.
 - d. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - e. Powers Fasteners.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - b. Empire Industries, Inc.
 - c. Hilti, Inc.
 - d. ITW Ramset/Red Head.
 - e. MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - f. Powers Fasteners.

2.7 PIPE STAND FABRICATION

- A. Pipe Stands, General: Shop or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod-roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - b. MIRO Industries.

- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. MIRO Industries.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. ERICO/Michigan Hanger Co.
 - b. MIRO Industries.
 - c. Portable Pipe Hangers.
 - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. High-Type, Multiple-Pipe Stand: Assembly of bases, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe supports, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Portable Pipe Hangers.
 - 2. Bases: One or more plastic.
 - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more protective-coated-steel channels.
 - 4. Horizontal Member: Protective-coated-steel channel.
 - 5. Pipe Supports: Galvanized-steel, clevis-type pipe hangers.
- F. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe support made from structural-steel shape, continuous-thread rods, and rollers for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

2.8 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces for plumbing fixtures for commercial applications.
- B. Manufacturers:
 - 1. C & S Mfg. Corp.
 - 2. HOLDRITE Corp.; Hubbard Enterprises.
 - 3. Samco Stamping, Inc.

2.9 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural-steel shapes.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are specified in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized, metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- F. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
 - 4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 24, if little or no insulation is required.
 - 5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 4, to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
 - 6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.
 - 7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
 - 9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 2.
 - 10. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
 - 11. Extension Hinged or 2-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 3.

12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
 13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
 14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
 16. Adjustable, Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
 17. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from 2 rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
 19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
 21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- G. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
 2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- H. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
 2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
 3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
 4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
 5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
- I. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.

7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 11. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
 13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- J. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- K. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
 2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
 3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.
 4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
 5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
 6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
 7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to absorb expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
 8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
 - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
 - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
 - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.

- L. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- M. Comply with MFMA-102 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- N. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.
- O. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Steel Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Trapeze Pipe Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
 - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
 - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
 - 1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
 - 2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
 - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounting Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.
 - 2. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. Refer to Division 07 Section "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Pipe Positioning System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures" for plumbing fixtures.

- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 (for building services piping) are not exceeded.
- O. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
 - 1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
 - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
 - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
 - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits according to ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
 - 2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
 - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
 - 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
 - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
 - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
 - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
 - e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
 - 5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
 - 6. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.

7. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Touch Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touch Up: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

ISSUED FOR CONSTRUCTION

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220553

IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Warning signs and labels.
 - 3. Pipe labels.
 - 4. Stencils.
 - 5. Valve tags.
 - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 0.032-inch in mechanical spaces, stainless steel, 0.025-inch minimum thickness in all pool equipment rooms, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Letter Color: Black.
 - 3. Background Color: White.
 - 4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
 - 5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
 - 8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Red.
- C. Background Color: White.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
 - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
 - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Aluminum.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, acrylic enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
 - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.032-inch in all spaces with the exception of Stainless steel, 0.025-inch minimum thickness in pool equipment rooms and swimming pool areas, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or

space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
 1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
 2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
 3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
 4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 09 Section "Interior Painting."
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
 1. Near each valve and control device.
 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

- D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
 - 1. Domestic Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: White.
 - b. Letter Color: Black.
 - 2. Non-Potable Water Piping:
 - a. Background Color: White.
 - b. Letter Color: Red.
 - 3. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
 - a. Background Color: White.
 - b. Letter Color: Black.

3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
 - 1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
 - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches, round.
 - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches, square.
 - c. Non-Potable Water: 1-1/2", round
 - 2. Valve-Tag Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Natural.
 - b. Hot Water: Natural.
 - c. Non-Potable Water: Green.
 - 3. Letter Color:
 - a. Cold Water: Black.
 - b. Hot Water: Black.
 - c. Non-Potable Water: Red

3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220719

PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes preformed, rigid and flexible pipe insulation; insulating cements; field-applied jackets; accessories and attachments; and sealing compounds. Paint per other Sections of these specifications. Not all listed systems may be utilized for this project. Use applicable systems, as required.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Identify thermal conductivity, thickness, and jackets (both factory and field applied, if any), for each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for the following:
 - 1. Application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at pipe hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Attachment and covering of heat trace inside insulation.
 - 3. Insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
 - 4. Insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
 - 5. Removable insulation at piping specialties and equipment connections.
 - 6. Application of field-applied jackets.
- C. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing materials identical to those specified in this Section according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and sealer and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread rating of 25 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread rating of 75 or less, and smoke-developed rating of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Ship insulation materials in containers marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM specification designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for insulation application.
- C. Coordinate installation and testing of steam or electric heat tracing.

1.7 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after testing piping systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat-trace tape. Insulation application may begin on segments of piping that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Molded Mineral-Fiber Insulation:
 - a. Johns-Manville Insulation, Inc.
 - b. Knauf FiberGlass GmbH.
 - c. Owens-Corning Fiberglas Corp.
 - 2. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation:
 - a. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - b. Rubatex Corp.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Molded Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin complying with the following:
 - 1. Preformed Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type 1, with factory-applied, all-purpose, vapor-retarder jacket.
 - 2. Fire-Resistant Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C in the following classes and grades:
 - a. Class 1, Grade A for bonding glass cloth and tape to unfaced glass-fiber insulation, for sealing edges of glass-fiber insulation, and for bonding lagging cloth to unfaced glass-fiber insulation.
 - b. Class 2, Grade A for bonding glass-fiber insulation to metal surfaces.
 - 3. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Fire- and water-resistant, vapor-retarder mastic for indoor applications. Comply with MIL-C-19565C, Type II.
 - 4. Mineral-Fiber Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 195.
 - 5. Expanded or Exfoliated Vermiculite Insulating Cements: Comply with ASTM C 196.
 - 6. Mineral-Fiber, Hydraulic-Setting Insulating and Finishing Cement: Comply with ASTM C 449/C 449M.

- B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
 - 1. Adhesive: As recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
 - 2. Ultraviolet-Protective Coating: As recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Prefabricated Thermal Insulating Fitting Covers: Comply with ASTM C 450 for dimensions used in preforming insulation to cover valves, elbows, tees, and flanges.

2.3 ACCESSORIES AND ATTACHMENTS

- A. Glass Cloth and Tape: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I for cloth and Type II for tape. Woven glass-fiber fabrics, plain weave, presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd..
 - 1. Tape Width: 4 inches.
- B. Bands: 3/4 inch wide, in one of the following materials compatible with jacket:
 - 1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304; 0.020 inch thick.
- C. Wire: 0.062-inch, soft-annealed, stainless steel.

2.4 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Mastics: Materials recommended by insulation material manufacturer that are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry pipe and fitting surfaces. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Apply insulation materials, accessories, and finishes according to the manufacturer's written instructions; with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.
- B. Refer to schedules at the end of this Section for materials, forms, jackets, and thicknesses required for each piping system.

- C. Use accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Use accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.
- D. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal pipe runs.
- E. Apply multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.
- F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.
- G. Seal joints and seams with vapor-retarder mastic on insulation indicated to receive a vapor retarder.
- H. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.
- I. Apply insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply insulation with the least number of joints practical.
- K. Apply insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties, with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated. Refer to special instructions for applying insulation over fittings, valves, and specialties.
- L. Hangers and Anchors: Where vapor retarder is indicated, seal penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-retarder mastic.
 - 1. Apply insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs at least 12 inches from point of attachment to pipe and taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
 - 3. Install insert materials and apply insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.
 - 4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect the jacket from tear or puncture by the hanger, support, and shield.
- M. Insulation Terminations: For insulation application where vapor retarders are indicated, taper insulation ends. Seal tapered ends with a compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor retarder.
- N. Apply adhesives and mastics at the manufacturer's recommended coverage rate.
- O. Apply insulation with integral jackets as follows:
 - 1. Pull jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Circumferential Joints: Cover with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip and spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Longitudinal Seams: Overlap jacket seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Apply insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. Exception: Do not staple longitudinal laps on insulation having a vapor retarder.
 - 4. Vapor-Retarder Mastics: Where vapor retarders are indicated, apply mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to flanges, unions, valves, and fittings.

5. At penetrations in jackets for thermometers and pressure gages, fill and seal voids with vapor-retarder mastic.
- P. Roof Penetrations: Apply insulation for interior applications to a point even with top of roof flashing.
1. Seal penetrations with vapor-retarder mastic.
 2. Apply insulation for exterior applications tightly joined to interior insulation ends.
 3. Extend metal jacket of exterior insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 4. Seal metal jacket to roof flashing with vapor-retarder mastic.
- Q. Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through walls and floors.
- R. Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Apply insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions per UL requirements for the construction of the partition/wall.

3.4 MOLDED MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire, tape, or bands without deforming insulation materials.
 2. Where vapor retarders are indicated, seal longitudinal seams and end joints with vapor-retarder mastic. Apply vapor retarder to ends of insulation at intervals of 15 to 20 feet to form a vapor retarder between pipe insulation segments.
 3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
 4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets with vapor retarders, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by the insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-retarder mastic.
- B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:
1. Apply preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
 4. Apply canvas jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlapping seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with vapor-retarder mastic.
- C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:
1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. When premolded insulation elbows and fittings are not available, apply mitered sections of pipe insulation, or glass-fiber blanket insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire, tape, or bands.
 3. Cover fittings with standard PVC fitting covers.
- D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:
1. Apply premolded insulation sections of the same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available. Secure according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. When premolded insulation sections are not available, apply glass-fiber blanket insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, arrange insulation for access to stainer basket without disturbing insulation.

3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
4. Use preformed standard PVC fitting covers for valve sizes where available. Secure fitting covers with manufacturer's attachments and accessories. Seal seams with tape and vapor-retarder mastic.
5. For larger sizes where PVC fitting covers are not available, seal insulation with canvas jacket and sealing compound recommended by the insulation material manufacturer.

3.5 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC THERMAL INSULATION APPLICATION

- A. Apply insulation to straight pipes and tubes as follows:
 1. Follow manufacturer's written instructions for applying insulation.
 2. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.
- B. Apply insulation to flanges as follows:
 1. Apply pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
 2. Make width of insulation segment the same as overall width of the flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of the pipe insulation.
 3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of the same thickness as pipe insulation.
 4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.
- C. Apply insulation to fittings and elbows as follows:
 1. Apply mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.
- D. Apply insulation to valves and specialties as follows:
 1. Apply preformed valve covers manufactured of the same material as pipe insulation and attached according to the manufacturer's written instructions.
 2. Apply cut segments of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation. For check valves, fabricate removable sections of insulation arranged to allow access to stainer basket.
 3. Apply insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive. Cement to avoid openings in insulation that will allow passage of air to the pipe surface.

3.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET APPLICATION

- A. Apply PVC jacket where indicated, with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
- B. Apply metal jacket where indicated, with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.7 FINISHES

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of the insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.
- B. Color: Final color shall comply with the master color chart as specified in another section.

3.8 PIPING SYSTEM APPLICATIONS

- A. Insulation materials and thicknesses are specified in schedules at the end of this Section.
- B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:
 1. Flexible connectors.
 2. Vibration-control devices.
 3. Fire-suppression piping.
 4. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
 5. Below-grade piping, unless otherwise indicated.
 6. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings, unless potential for personnel injury.
 7. Air chambers, unions, strainers, check valves, plug valves, and flow regulators.

3.9 INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Refer to insulation application schedules for required insulation materials, vapor retarders, and field-applied jackets.
- B. Application schedules identify piping system and indicate pipe size ranges and material, thickness, and jacket requirements.

3.10 INTERIOR INSULATION APPLICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Service: Domestic cold water.
 1. Operating Temperature: 55 to 65 deg F.
 2. Insulation Material: Molded Mineral fiber, with jacket
 3. Insulation Thickness: Apply the following insulation thicknesses:
 - a. Copper Pipe, Up to 2": 1"
 - b. Copper Pipe, 2" through 4": 1-1/2"
 4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC in mechanical rooms, cloth jacket elsewhere inside building, Aluminum for outdoor applications
 5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes.
 6. Finish: Painted.
- B. Service: Domestic hot and recirculated hot water.
 1. Operating Temperature: 60 to 140 deg F.
 2. Insulation Material: Molded Mineral fiber, with jacket
 3. Insulation Thickness: Apply the following insulation thicknesses:
 - a. Copper Pipe, Up to 1-1/2": 1-1/2"
 - b. Copper Pipe, 1-1/2" through 4": 2"
 4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC in mechanical rooms, cloth jacket elsewhere inside building.
 5. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
 6. Finish: Painted.

- C. Service: Rainwater conductors (roof drain bowls, horizontal and vertical piping)
1. Operating Temperature: 32 to 100 deg F.
 2. Insulation Material: Molded Mineral fiber, with jacket
 3. Insulation Thickness: Apply the following insulation thicknesses:
 - a. Up to 4" pipe – ½" insulation.
 - b. Over 4" – 1" insulation.
 4. Field-Applied Jacket: PVC in mechanical rooms, cloth jacket elsewhere inside building.
 5. Vapor Retarder Required: Yes
 6. Finish: Painted.
- D. Service: Condensate drain piping.
1. Operating Temperature: 35 to 75 deg F.
 2. Insulation Material: Flexible elastomeric
 3. Insulation Thickness: ½"
 4. Field-Applied Jacket: None.
 5. Vapor Retarder Required: No.
 6. Finish: Painted.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221116
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
- 2. Encasement for piping.
- 3. Specialty valves.
- 4. Flexible connectors.
- 5. Escutcheons.
- 6. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
- 7. Wall penetration systems.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following products:

- 1. Specialty valves.
- 2. Transition fittings.
- 3. Dielectric fittings.
- 4. Flexible connectors.
- 5. Backflow preventers and vacuum breakers.
- 6. Escutcheons.
- 7. Sleeves and sleeve seals.
- 8. Water penetration systems.

- B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.
 - 1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
 - 2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
 - 3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
 - 4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K and ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, annealed temper.
 - 1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.

2.3 DUCTILE-IRON PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Mechanical-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with mechanical-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 1. Standard-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 - 2. Compact-Pattern, Mechanical-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
 - a. Glands, Gaskets, and Bolts: AWWA C111, ductile- or gray-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.
- B. Push-on-Joint, Ductile-Iron Pipe: AWWA C151, with push-on-joint bell and plain spigot end unless grooved or flanged ends are indicated.
 - 1. Standard-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C110, ductile or gray iron.
 - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.
 - 2. Compact-Pattern, Push-on-Joint Fittings: AWWA C153, ductile iron.
 - a. Gaskets: AWWA C111, rubber.

2.4 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free, unless otherwise indicated; full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 ENCASEMENT FOR PIPING

- A. Standard: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- B. Form: Sheet or Tube.
- C. Material: LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness or high-density, cross-laminated PE film of 0.004-inch minimum thickness.
- D. Color: Black or Natural.

2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for general-duty metal valves.

2.7 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements:
 - 1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
 - 2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
 - 3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

2.8 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
- b. Central Plastics Company.
- c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
- d. Hart Industries International, Inc.
- e. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.

2. Description:

- a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
- b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Flanges:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
- b. Central Plastics Company.
- c. EPCO Sales, Inc.
- d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
- b. Calpico, Inc.
- c. Central Plastics Company.
- d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Description:

- a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
- b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
- d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
- e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Calpico, Inc.
- b. Lochinvar Corporation.

2. Description:
 - a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
 - b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
 - c. End Connections: Female threaded.
 - d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.

2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
 2. Flexicraft Industries.
 3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
 4. Flex-Weld, Inc.
 5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
 6. Mercer Rubber Co.
 7. Metraflex, Inc.
 8. Proco Products, Inc.
 9. Tozen Corporation.
 10. Unaflex, Inc.
 11. Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
 1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
 2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
 3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General: Manufactured ceiling, floor, and wall escutcheons and floor plates.
- B. One Piece, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish with setscrews.
- C. One Piece, Deep Pattern: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish.
- D. One Piece, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with setscrew or spring clips.
- E. Split Casting, Cast Brass: Polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- F. Split Plate, Stamped Steel: Chrome-plated finish with concealed exposed-rivet hinge, setscrew or spring clips.
- G. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- H. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

2.11 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Fabricated of cast iron, and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel-Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- C. Molded-PE Sleeves: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- D. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc-coated, with plain ends.
- E. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

2.12 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex, Inc.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- B. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, used to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.13 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEMS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. SIGMA.
- B. Description: Wall-sleeve assembly, consisting of housing and gland, gaskets, and pipe sleeve.
 - 1. Carrier-Pipe Deflection: Up to 5 percent without leakage.
 - 2. Housing: Ductile-iron casting with hub, waterstop, anchor ring, and locking devices. Include gland, bolts, and nuts.
 - 3. Housing-to-Sleeve Gasket: EPDM rubber.
 - 4. Housing-to-Carrier-Pipe Gasket: AWWA C111, EPDM rubber.

5. Pipe Sleeve: AWWA C151, ductile-iron pipe or ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, zinc-coated steel pipe.

2.14 GROUT

- A. Standard: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install ductile-iron piping under building slab with restrained joints according to AWWA C600 and AWWA M41.
- D. Install underground copper tube and ductile-iron pipe in PE encasement according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- E. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages and Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for drain valves and strainers.
- F. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- G. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for pressure-reducing valves.
- H. Install domestic water piping level with 0.25 percent slope downward toward drain without pitch and plumb.

- I. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- J. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- K. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- L. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.
- M. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- N. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- P. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- Q. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.
- R. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for pressure gages.
- S. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps" for thermostats.
- T. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Braze Joints" Chapter.
- E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

- F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- G. Ductile-Iron-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join ductile-iron pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for ductile-iron-pipe, cut-grooved joints.
- H. Steel-Piping Grooved Joints: Cut or roll groove end of pipe. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- J. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements. Apply primer.
 2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.
- K. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.4 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. General-Duty Valves: Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping" for valve installations.
- B. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- C. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping. Drain valves are specified in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
 1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
 2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.
- D. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller and butterfly valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties" for balancing valves.

3.5 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

3.6 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits or nipples.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet If Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
 - 1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
 - 2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections for connection sizes.
 - 3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.9 ESCUTCHEON INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- B. Escutcheons for New Piping:
 - 1. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One piece, deep pattern.
 - 2. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - 3. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One piece, cast brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - 4. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One piece, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips.
 - 5. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One piece, stamped steel with set screw or spring clips.
 - 6. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece floor plate.

3.10 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

- A. General Requirements: Install sleeves for pipes and tubes passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
- B. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- C. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- D. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install sleeves in new partitions, slabs, and walls as they are built.
- F. For interior wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- G. For exterior wall penetrations above grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

- H. For exterior wall penetrations below grade, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe using sleeve seals specified in this Section.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves in concrete slabs and walls with grout.
- J. Install sleeve materials according to the following applications:
 - 1. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs: Steel pipe.
 - 2. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Floor Slabs of Mechanical Equipment Areas or Other Wet Areas: Steel pipe.
 - a. Extend sleeves 2 inches above finished floor level.
 - b. For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing, extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 3. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Gypsum-Board Partitions:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
 - c. Exception: Sleeves are not required for water supply tubes and waste pipes for individual plumbing fixtures if escutcheons will cover openings.
 - 4. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Concrete Roof Slabs: Steel pipe.
 - 5. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Exterior Concrete Walls:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Cast-iron wall pipe sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
 - c. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation when sleeve seals are used.
 - d. Do not use sleeves when wall penetration systems are used.
 - 6. Sleeves for Piping Passing through Interior Concrete Walls:
 - a. Steel pipe sleeves for pipes smaller than NPS 6.
 - b. Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves for pipes NPS 6 and larger.
- K. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for firestop materials and installations.

3.11 SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve seals in sleeves in exterior concrete walls at water-service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble sleeve seal components and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.12 WALL PENETRATION SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall penetration systems in new, exterior concrete walls.
- B. Assemble wall penetration system components with sleeve pipe. Install so that end of sleeve pipe and face of housing are flush with wall. Adjust locking devices to secure sleeve pipe in housing.

3.13 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Piping Inspections:
 - 1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
 - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
 - 3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
 - 4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Piping Tests:
 - 1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
 - 2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.

6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.
- D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.15 ADJUSTING

- A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:
 1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
 2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
 3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
 4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
 - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
 - b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
 5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
 6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
 7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
 8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

3.16 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
 1. Purge new piping before using.
 2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
 - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
 - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
 - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
 - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
 - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
 - d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.17 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be the following:
 - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building-service piping, NPS 4 to NPS 8 and larger, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
 - 2. Mechanical-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- pattern mechanical-joint fittings; and mechanical joints (provide thrust restraint at each joint).
 - 3. Push-on-joint, ductile-iron pipe; standard- pattern push-on-joint fittings; and gasketed joints.
 - 4. PVC, Schedule 80 pipe; PVC, Schedule 80 socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper push-on-joint fittings; and push-on joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
 - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
 - 3. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; grooved-joint copper-tube appurtenances; and grooved joints.

3.18 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
 - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221119

DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following domestic water piping specialties:

- 1. Vacuum breakers.
- 2. Backflow preventers.
- 3. Water pressure-reducing valves.
- 4. Balancing valves.
- 5. Temperature-actuated water mixing valves.
- 6. Strainers.
- 7. Hose bibbs.
- 8. Wall hydrants.
- 9. Post hydrants.
- 10. Drain valves.
- 11. Water hammer arresters.
- 12. Air vents.
- 13. Trap-seal primer valves.
- 14. Trap-seal primer systems.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig, unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. NSF Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
 - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
 - 2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
 - 3. Size: NPS 1/4 to NPS 3, as required to match connected piping.
 - 4. Body: Bronze.
 - 5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
 - 6. Finish: Chrome plated.
- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Arrowhead Brass Products, Inc.
 - b. Cash Acme.
 - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - d. Legend Valve.
 - e. MIFAB, Inc.
 - f. Prier Products, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.

- j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
- 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
- 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
- 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

2.2 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

A. Reduced-Pressure-Principle Backflow Preventers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1013.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 4. Pressure Loss: 12 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- 5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron or ductile iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 7. Accessories:
 - a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
 - b. Air-Gap Fitting: ASME A112.1.2, matching backflow-preventer connection.

B. Double-Check Backflow-Prevention Assemblies:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Ames Co.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - d. Flomatic Corporation.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - f. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1015.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications, unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig maximum, through middle 1/3 of flow range.
- 5. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron or ductile iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 6. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 7. Accessories:

- a. Valves: Ball type with threaded ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2 and smaller; outside screw and yoke gate-type with flanged ends on inlet and outlet of NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

C. Beverage-Dispensing-Equipment Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1022.
3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
4. Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 3/8.
5. Body: Stainless steel.
6. End Connections: Threaded.

D. Hose-Connection Backflow Preventers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1052.
3. Operation: Up to 10-foot head of water back pressure.
4. Inlet Size: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4.
5. Outlet Size: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Capacity: At least 3-gpm flow.

E. Backflow-Preventer Test Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. FEBCO; SPX Valves & Controls.
 - c. Flomatic Corporation.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - e. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Description: Factory calibrated, with gages, fittings, hoses, and carrying case with test-procedure instructions.

2.3 BALANCING VALVES

A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Flo Fab Inc.
 - c. ITT Industries; Bell & Gossett Div.
 - d. NIBCO INC.
 - e. TAC Americas.
 - f. Taco, Inc.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- 2. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory setting indicator.
 - 3. Body: Brass or bronze,
 - 4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.
 - 5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

B. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
 - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
 - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
 - e. Hammond Valve.
 - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
 - g. NIBCO INC.
 - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
- 2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
- 4. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
- 5. Body: Copper alloy.
- 6. Port: Standard or full port.
- 7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
- 8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
- 9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
- 10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

2.4 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Primary, Thermostatic, Water Mixing Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
 - b. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - c. Leonard Valve Company.
 - d. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - e. Symmons Industries, Inc.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1017.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- 4. Type: Exposed-mounting, thermostatically controlled water mixing valve.
- 5. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.

6. Connections: Threaded union inlets and outlet.
7. Accessories: Manual temperature control, check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle.
8. Valve Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
9. Valve Finish: Rough bronze.
10. Piping Finish: Copper.
11. Cabinet: Factory-fabricated, stainless steel, for surface mounting and with hinged, stainless-steel door.

B. Manifold, Thermostatic, Water-Mixing-Valve Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Leonard Valve Company.
 - b. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - c. Symmons Industries, Inc.
2. Description: Factory-fabricated, exposed-mounting, thermostatically controlled, water-mixing-valve assembly in two-valve parallel arrangement.
3. Large-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic water mixing valve and downstream pressure regulator with pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
4. Small-Flow Parallel: Thermostatic water mixing valve.
5. Thermostatic Mixing Valves: Comply with ASSE 1017. Include check stops on hot- and cold-water inlets and shutoff valve on outlet.
6. Water Regulator(s): Comply with ASSE 1003. Include pressure gage on inlet and outlet.
7. Component Pressure Ratings: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
8. Thermostatic Mixing Valve and Water Regulator Finish: Rough bronze.
9. Piping Finish: Copper.

C. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Cash Acme.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
 - c. Honeywell Water Controls.
 - d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - e. Leonard Valve Company.
 - f. Powers; a Watts Industries Co.
 - g. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1016, thermostatically controlled water tempering valve.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.
- 8.

2.5 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining complying with AWWA C550 or FDA-approved, epoxy coating and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
 - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
 - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.062 inch.
 - c. Strainers NPS 5 and Larger: 0.125 inch.
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

2.6 OUTLET BOXES

A. Clothes Washer Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.
 - b. Guy Gray Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - c. IPS Corporation.
 - d. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - e. Oatey.
 - f. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
 - g. Symmons Industries, Inc.
 - h. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - i. Whitehall Manufacturing; a div. of Acorn Engineering Company.
 - j. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
4. Faucet: Combination, valved fitting or separate hot- and cold-water, valved fittings complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlets.
5. Supply Shutoff Fittings: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valves and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.
6. Drain: NPS 2 standpipe and P-trap for direct waste connection to drainage piping.
7. Inlet Hoses: Two 60-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer inlet hoses with female, garden-hose-thread couplings. Include rubber washers.
8. Drain Hose: One 48-inch- long, rubber household clothes washer drain hose with hooked end.

B. Icemaker Outlet Boxes:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Acorn Engineering Company.

- b. IPS Corporation.
 - c. LSP Products Group, Inc.
 - d. Oatey.
 - e. Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies.
2. Mounting: Recessed.
 3. Material and Finish: Enameled-steel or epoxy-painted-steel box and faceplate.
 4. Faucet: Valved fitting complying with ASME A112.18.1. Include NPS 1/2 or smaller copper tube outlet.
 5. Supply Shutoff Fitting: NPS 1/2 gate, globe, or ball valve and NPS 1/2 copper, water tubing.

2.7 HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:

1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
2. Body Material: Bronze.
3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
4. Supply Connections: NPS 1/2 or NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.
5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish for Equipment Rooms: Rough bronze, or chrome or nickel plated.
9. Finish for Service Areas: Rough bronze.
10. Finish for Finished Rooms: Chrome or nickel plated.
11. Operation for Equipment Rooms: Wheel handle or operating key.
12. Operation for Service Areas: Wheel handle.
13. Operation for Finished Rooms: Operating key.
14. Include operating key with each operating-key hose bibb.
15. Include integral wall flange with each chrome- or nickel-plated hose bibb.

2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Josam Company.
 - b. MIFAB, Inc.
 - c. Prier Products, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed exposed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
4. Operation: Loose key.

5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS 3/4 or NPS 1.
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounting with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Chrome plated.
10. Outlet: Exposed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
11. Nozzle and Wall-Plate Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
12. Operating Keys(s): One with each wall hydrant.

2.9 POST HYDRANTS

A. Nonfreeze, Draining-Type Post Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. Prier Products, Inc.
 - c. Simmons Manufacturing Co.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - f. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company.
 - h. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Operation.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M.
3. Type: Nonfreeze, exposed-outlet post hydrant.
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of at least length required for burial of valve below frost line.
6. Casing: Bronze with casing guard.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
9. Drain: Designed with hole to drain into ground when shut off.
10. Vacuum Breaker: Nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011; and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 on outlet.
11. Operating Key(s): One with each loose-key-operation wall hydrant.

2.10 DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy.
5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.

9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

B. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for ball valves or MSS SP-80 for gate valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 200-psig minimum CWP or Class 125.
3. Size: NPS 3/4.
4. Body: Copper alloy or ASTM B 62 bronze.
5. Drain: NPS 1/8 side outlet with cap.

2.11 WATER HAMMER ARRESTERS

A. Water Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. AMTROL, Inc.
 - b. Josam Company.
 - c. MIFAB, Inc.
 - d. PPP Inc.
 - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
 - h. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
 - i. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Copper tube with piston.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

2.12 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER VALVES

A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. MIFAB, Inc.
 - b. PPP Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
 - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
 - e. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS 1/2 threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS 1/2 threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

2.13 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER SYSTEMS

A. Trap-Seal Primer Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. PPP Inc.
2. Standard: ASSE 1044,
3. Piping: NPS 3/4, ASTM B 88, Type L; copper, water tubing.
4. Cabinet: Recessed Surface-mounting steel box with stainless-steel cover.
5. Electric Controls: 24-hour timer, solenoid valve, and manual switch for 120-V ac power.
6. Vacuum Breaker: ASSE 1001.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Refer to Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing" for piping joining materials, joint construction, and basic installation requirements.
- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe to floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are not acceptable for this application.
 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Install water control valves with inlet and outlet shutoff valves. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- D. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- E. Install temperature-actuated water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
 1. Install thermometers and water regulators if specified.
 2. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- F. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- G. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu. yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu. ft. of concrete block at grade.
- H. Install water hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.

- I. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- J. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 22 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Ground equipment according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- C. Connect wiring according to Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
 - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
 - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
 - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
 - 4. Double-check backflow-prevention assemblies.
 - 5. Carbonated-beverage-machine backflow preventers.
 - 6. Water pressure-reducing valves.
 - 7. Calibrated balancing valves.
 - 8. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
 - 9. Manifold, thermostatic, water-mixing-valve assemblies.
 - 10. Outlet boxes.
 - 11. Hose stations.
 - 12. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
 - 13. Trap-seal primer systems.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and prepare test reports:
 - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer double-check backflow-prevention assembly according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Remove and replace malfunctioning domestic water piping specialties and retest as specified above.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221316
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for soil, waste, and vent piping inside the building:
 - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
 - 2. Special pipe fittings.
 - 3. Encasement for underground metal piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- C. LLDPE: Linear, low-density polyethylene plastic.
- D. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. TPE: Thermoplastic elastomer.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For pipe, tube, fittings, and couplings.
- B. Field quality-control inspection and test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-dwv" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping; "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping; "NSF-tubular" for plastic continuous waste piping; and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.

2.3 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class(es).
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

2.4 HUBLESS CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. Shielded Couplings: ASTM C 1277 assembly of metal shield or housing, corrosion-resistant fasteners, and rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
 - 1. Standard, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: CISPI 310, with stainless-steel corrugated shield; stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
 - a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) ANACO.
 - 2) Fernco, Inc.

- 3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
 - 4) Mission Rubber Co.
 - 5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.
2. Heavy-Duty, Shielded, Stainless-Steel Couplings: With stainless-steel shield, stainless-steel bands and tightening devices, and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve.
- a. Manufacturers:
 - 1) ANACO.
 - 2) Clamp-All Corp.
 - 3) Ideal Div.; Stant Corp.
 - 4) Mission Rubber Co.
 - 5) Tyler Pipe; Soil Pipe Div.

2.5 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.
 - 1. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.
- B. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Types L and M, water tube, drawn temper.
 - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
 - 2. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
 - 3. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- C. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L, water tube, annealed temper.
 - 1. Copper Pressure Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.

2.6 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
 - 1. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, socket type, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.

2.7 SPECIAL PIPE FITTINGS

- A. Flexible, Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: Comply with ASTM C 1173, elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring, ends of same sizes as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
 - b. Fernco, Inc.

- c. Logan Clay Products Company (The).
- d. Mission Rubber Co.
- e. NDS, Inc.
- f. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

2. Sleeve Materials:

- a. For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- b. For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
- c. For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

B. Shielded Nonpressure Pipe Couplings: ASTM C 1460, elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
- b. Mission Rubber Co.

C. Flexible Ball Joints: Ductile-iron fitting with combination of flanged and mechanical-joint ends complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Include gasketed ball-joint section and ductile-iron gland, rubber gasket, and steel bolts.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.

D. Expansion Joints: Two or three-piece, ductile-iron assembly consisting of telescoping sleeve(s) with gaskets and restrained-type, ductile-iron, bell-and-spigot end sections complying with AWWA C110 or AWWA C153. Select and assemble components for expansion indicated. Include AWWA C111, ductile-iron glands, rubber gaskets, and steel bolts.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. EBAA Iron Sales, Inc.
- b. Romac Industries, Inc.
- c. Star Pipe Products; Star Fittings Div.

2.8 ENCASEMENT FOR UNDERGROUND METAL PIPING

- A. Description: ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105, high-density, crosslaminated PE film of 0.004-inch or LLDPE film of 0.008-inch minimum thickness.
- B. Form: Sheet or tube.
- C. Color: Black or natural.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXCAVATION

- A. Refer to Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

3.2 PIPING APPLICATIONS

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, Condensate Drainage Piping: Use the following piping materials for each size range:
 1. NPS 3/4 and NPS 1-1/2: Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 2. NPS 2 to NPS 4: Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; standard, shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
 3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
 - a. Option for Vent Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3-1/2: Hard copper tube, Type M; copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.
- E. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:
 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
 2. Hubless cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty shielded, stainless-steel couplings; and hubless-coupling joints.
 3. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Flexible, nonpressure pipe couplings for joining dissimilar pipe materials with small difference in OD.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Sanitary sewer piping outside the building is specified in Division 22 Section "Facility Sanitary Sewers."

- B. Basic piping installation requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- C. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers.
- D. Install cast-iron sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight. Sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- E. Install wall-penetration fitting at each service pipe penetration through foundation wall. Make installation watertight.
- F. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
 - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- G. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if 2 fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- H. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- I. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes, unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.
 - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
 - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- J. Sleeves are not required for cast-iron soil piping passing through concrete slabs-on-grade if slab is without membrane waterproofing.
- K. Install PVC soil and waste drainage and vent piping according to ASTM D 2665.
- L. Install underground PVC soil and waste drainage piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- M. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Basic piping joint construction requirements are specified in Division 22 Section "Common Work Results for Plumbing."
- B. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- C. Join hubless cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-coupling joints.
- D. Soldered Joints: Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux; ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder; and ASTM B 828 procedure, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. PVC Nonpressure Piping Joints: Join piping according to ASTM D 2665.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Seismic-restraint devices are specified in Division 22 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Pipe hangers and supports are specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment." Install the following:
 - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
 - 2. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs according to the following:
 - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
 - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
 - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
 - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
 - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- C. Install supports according to Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- D. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- E. Rod diameter may be reduced 1 size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.
- F. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
 - 1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 - 2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 - 3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
- G. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.
- H. Install hangers for steel piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 84 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2: 108 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2: 10 feet with 3/8-inch rod.
 4. NPS 2-1/2: 11 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 5. NPS 3: 12 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
 6. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 12 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
- I. Install supports for vertical steel piping every 15 feet.
- J. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 4. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
- K. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- L. Install hangers for PVC piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 48 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
 2. NPS 3: 48 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
 3. NPS 4 and 5: 48 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
- M. Install supports for vertical PVC piping every 48 inches.
- N. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
 4. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve, if indicated, and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
 - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
 - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
 - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
 - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping, except outside leaders, on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
 - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
 - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
 - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Exposed PVC Piping: Protect plumbing vents exposed to sunlight with two coats of water-based latex paint.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221623
NATURAL GAS PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
 - 2. Piping specialties.
 - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
 - 4. Valves.
 - 5. Pressure regulators.
 - 6. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. Concrete bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
 - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: More than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig.
- C. Natural-Gas System Pressures within Buildings: Two pressure ranges. Primary pressure is more than 0.5 psig but not more than 2 psig, and is reduced to secondary pressure of 0.5 psig or less.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
 - 1. Piping specialties.
 - 2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
 - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
 - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
 - 5. Dielectric fittings.
 - 6. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 7. Escutcheons.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- C. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- D. Qualification Data: For qualified professional engineer.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handling Flammable Liquids: Remove and dispose of liquids from existing natural-gas piping according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- C. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Perform site survey, research public utility records, and verify existing utility locations. Contact utility-locating service for area where Project is located.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
 - a. Material Group: 1.1.
 - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
 - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
 - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
 - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
 6. Mechanical Couplings:
 - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.
 - 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.
 - b. Steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
 - c. Buna-nitrile seals.
 - d. Steel bolts, washers, and nuts.

- e. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.
- B. Drawn-Temper Copper Tube: Comply with ASTM B 88, Type L.
- 1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought copper, and streamlined pattern.
 - 2. Bronze Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.24, Class 150.
 - a. Gasket Material: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
 - b. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel or stainless steel.
 - 3. Protective Coating for Underground Tubing: Factory-applied, extruded PE a minimum of 0.022 inch thick.

2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

- 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
- 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
- 3. Outdoor, Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.75.
- 4. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig.
- 5. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
- 6. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 7. Maximum Length: 72 inches

B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

- 1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
- 2. Nitrile seals.
- 3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
- 4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
- 5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
- 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

D. Basket Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, high-tensile cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
- 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

- E. T-Pattern Strainers:
 1. Body: Ductile or malleable iron with removable access coupling and end cap for strainer maintenance.
 2. End Connections: Grooved ends.
 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 57 percent free area.
 4. CWP Rating: 750 psig.
- F. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.
- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch and smaller.
 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches to NPS 2 shall have initials "WOG" permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig.
 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
 4. Service Mark: Initials "WOG" shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
 - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
 - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
8. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

E. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Lee Brass Company.
 - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
3. Plug: Bronze.
4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
6. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

F. Cast-Iron, Nonlubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - b. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - c. Xomox Corporation; a Crane company.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.

6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

G. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Flowserve.
 - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
 - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - d. Milliken Valve Company.
 - e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
 - f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig.
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

H. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

2.5 MOTORIZED GAS VALVES

A. Automatic Gas Valves: Comply with ANSI Z21.21.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
 - b. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
 - c. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
 - d. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.

- e. Honeywell International Inc.
 - f. Johnson Controls.
2. Body: Brass or aluminum.
 3. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 4. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
 5. Normally closed.
 6. Visual position indicator.
 7. Electrical operator for actuation by appliance automatic shutoff device.
- B. Electrically Operated Valves: Comply with UL 429.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; Division of Emerson.
 - b. Dungs, Karl, Inc.
 - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - d. Goyen Valve Corp.; Tyco Environmental Systems.
 - e. Magnatrol Valve Corporation.
 - f. Parker Hannifin Corporation; Climate & Industrial Controls Group; Skinner Valve Div.
 - g. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 2. Pilot operated.
 3. Body: Brass or aluminum.
 4. Seats and Disc: Nitrile rubber.
 5. Springs and Valve Trim: Stainless steel.
 6. 120-V ac, 60 Hz, Class B, continuous-duty molded coil, and replaceable.
 7. NEMA ICS 6, Type 4, coil enclosure.
 8. Normally closed.
 9. Visual position indicator.

2.6 PRESSURE REGULATORS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
 2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
 3. Elevation compensator.
 4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
- B. Service Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Actaris.
 - b. American Meter Company.
 - c. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
 - d. Invensys.
 - e. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.

2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 100 psig.

C. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Actaris.
 - b. American Meter Company.
 - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
 - d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
 - e. Invensys.
 - f. Maxitrol Company.
 - g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig.

D. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
 - b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
 - c. Harper Wyman Co.
 - d. Maxitrol Company.

- e. SCP, Inc.
- 2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
- 3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
- 4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
- 5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
- 6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
- 7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
- 8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- 9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig.

2.7 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. Dielectric Unions:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
 - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
 - e. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - f. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- 2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
- 4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
- 5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

B. Dielectric Flanges:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Watts Regulator Co.; Division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
 - d. Wilkins; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.
- 2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
- 3. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials.
- 4. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
- 5. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

C. Dielectric-Flange Kits:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- 2. Minimum Operating-Pressure Rating: 150 psig.
 - 3. Companion-flange assembly for field assembly.
 - 4. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or PE bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 5. Insulating materials suitable for natural gas.
 - 6. Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, brazed-joint, plain, or welded end connections that match piping system materials.

2.8 SLEEVES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

2.9 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Company (The).
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe and sleeve.
 - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
 - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one nut and bolt for each sealing element.

2.10 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. General Requirements for Escutcheons: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with ID to fit around pipe or tube, and OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Escutcheons: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Escutcheons: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Escutcheons: With concealed hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- G. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast-iron floor plate.
- H. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Escutcheons: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.11 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.12 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches wide and 4 mils thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches deep; colored yellow.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Close equipment shutoff valves before turning off natural gas to premises or piping section.
- B. Inspect natural-gas piping according to NFPA 54 the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- C. Comply with NFPA 54 the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
 - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- D. Copper Tubing with Protective Coating:
 - 1. Apply joint cover kits over tubing to cover, seal, and protect joints.
 - 2. Repair damage to PE coating on pipe as recommended in writing by protective coating manufacturer.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than 6 inches in diameter.
 - 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves 6 inches and larger in diameter.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- H. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- I. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 54 the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- K. Install escutcheons at penetrations of interior walls, ceilings, and floors.
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - d. Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - f. Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - g. Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
- L. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- M. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- N. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- O. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
 - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.

- P. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- Q. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- R. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
 - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
 - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
 - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
 - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
 - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
 - 5. Prohibited Locations:
 - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
 - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- S. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- T. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.
- U. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- V. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- W. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- X. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping."

3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.

- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install earthquake valves aboveground outside buildings according to listing.
- E. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
 - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
 - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
 - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
 - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
 - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- D. Welded Joints:
 - 1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
 - 2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter.
- F. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.
- G. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.
- H. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.
 - 1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
 - 2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: Maximum span, 108 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 1/2 inch.
5. NPS 4 and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet; minimum rod size, 5/8 inch.

B. Install hangers for horizontal drawn-temper copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/8: Maximum span, 48 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
2. NPS 1/2 and NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
3. NPS 3/4 and NPS 7/8: Maximum span, 84 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
4. NPS 1: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.
- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 23 Section "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for piping and valve identification. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches below finished grade, except 6 inches below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 09 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.

- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
 - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
 - 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat).
 - d. Color: Gray.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

3.11 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base .
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

3.12 Use 3000-psig, 28-day, compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete." FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to NFPA 54 the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.13 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain earthquake valves.

3.14 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- B. Branch Piping in Cast-in-Place Concrete to Single Appliance: Annealed-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints. Install piping embedded in concrete with no joints in concrete.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.15 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and [brazed] [flared] joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- D. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.16 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES MORE THAN 0.5 PSIG AND LESS THAN 5 PSIG

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Annealed-temper, copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
 - 2. Steel pipe with steel welding fittings and welded joints.
 - 3. Drawn-temper copper tube with wrought-copper fittings and brazed joints.

- C. Containment Conduit: Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- D. Containment Conduit Vent Piping: Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded or wrought-steel fittings with welded joints. Coat underground pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.

3.17 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 3. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
 - 3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 and smaller shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 3. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 and larger shall be one of the following:
 - 1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 2. Bronze plug valve.
 - 3. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
 - 1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
 - 2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
 - 3. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 223400

FUEL-FIRED DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following for domestic water systems:
 - 1. Commercial, gas water heaters.
 - 2. Compression tanks.
 - 3. Accessories.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type and size of water heater. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail water heater assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control systems. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Product Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of water heaters certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.
- D. Maintenance Data: For water heaters to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.
- E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain same type of water heaters through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of water heaters and are based on specific units indicated. Other manufacturers' products complying with requirements may be considered.

- C. ANSI Compliance: Provide gas water heaters that comply with ANSI standards for gas water heaters and related products and that bear AGA certification label.
- D. ASME Compliance: Fabricate and label water heater, hot-water storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, "Pressure Vessels," Division 1.
- E. ASHRAE Standards: Comply with performance efficiencies prescribed for the following:
 - 1. ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings," for commercial water heaters.

1.5 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Article shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Commercial, Storage, Powered-Vent, Gas Water Heaters:
 - a. Lochinvar Corporation.
 - b. PVI Industries, LLC.
 - c. RECO USA.
 - d. Rheem Manufacturing Company.
 - e. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.; a division of A. O. Smith Corporation.
 - f. State Industries.
 - 2. Compression Tanks:
 - a. Amtrol, Inc.
 - b. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
 - c. Flexcon Industries.
 - d. Myers: F. E. Myers.
 - e. Smith: A. O. Smith; Aqua-Air Div.
 - f. State Industries.
 - g. Taco, Inc.
 - h. Therma Flow, Inc.
 - i. Wessels Co.
 - j. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.

2.2 COMMERCIAL, STORAGE, FORCED-DRAFT, GAS WATER HEATERS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 795.
- B. Shell Construction: ASME-code steel with 125-psig-minimum working-pressure rating.

1. Fire Tubes: Single-pass, copper-clad, seamless steel.
 2. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank for piping connections, relief valve, pressure gage, thermometer, drain, anode rods, and controls as required. Attach tappings to tank shell before testing and labeling.
 - a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1, pipe threads.
 - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.
 3. Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61, barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
 4. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE 90.1. Surround entire storage tank except connections and controls.
 5. Jacket: Steel, with enameled finish.
- C. Components, Gas Train, and Controls: Manufacturer's standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Burner: Forced-draft assembly for natural-gas fuel made with nozzles for fire tubes, and complying with appropriate requirements of UL 795.
1. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
 2. Safety Controls: Automatic, high-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
 3. Automatic Ignition: ANSI Z21.20, automatic gas-ignition system and components.
 4. Automatic Damper: ANSI Z21.66, gas-fired-appliance, automatic-vent-damper device.
- E. Anode Rods: Factory installed, magnesium.
- F. Drain Valve: ASSE 1005, corrosion-resistant metal, factory installed.
- G. Mounting: Factory-fabricated, structural-steel skids.

2.3 COMPRESSION TANKS

- A. Description: Steel, pressure-rated tank constructed with welded joints and factory-installed, butyl-rubber diaphragm. Include air precharge to minimum system-operating pressure at tank.
- B. Construction: 150-psig working-pressure rating.
- C. Tappings: Factory-fabricated steel, welded to tank before testing and labeling. Include ASME B1.20.1, pipe thread.
- D. Tank Interior Finish: Materials and thicknesses complying with NSF 61, barrier materials for potable-water tank linings. Extend finish into and through tank fittings and outlets.
- E. Tank Exterior Finish: <Insert special finish requirements.> Manufacturer's standard, unless finish is indicated.
- F. Air-Charging Valve: Factory installed.

2.4 WATER HEATER ACCESSORIES

- A. Combination Temperature and Pressure Relief Valves: According to the following:
 - 1. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22, combination temperature and pressure relief valve.
 - 2. Option: Separate temperature and pressure relief valves are acceptable instead of combination relief valve.
- B. Pressure Relief Valves: According to the following:
 - 1. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22 pressure relief valve for storage tanks of 200,000 Btuh.
- C. Vacuum Relief Valves: According to the following:
 - 1. Gas Water Heaters: ANSI Z21.22.
 - 2. Exception: Omit if water heater has integral vacuum-relieving device.
- D. Gas Shutoff Valves: ANSI Z21.15, manually operated. Furnish for installation in piping.
- E. Gas Pressure Regulators: ANSI Z21.18, appliance type, factory or field installed. Include pressure rating, capacity, and pressure differential required for water heater and gas supply.
- F. Drain Pans: Corrosion-resistant metal with raised edge. Include dimensions not less than base of water heater and include drain outlet not less than NPS 3/4.
- G. Piping Manifold Kits: Water heater manufacturer's factory-fabricated inlet and outlet piping arrangement for multiple-unit installation. Include piping and valves for field assembly that is capable of isolating each water heater and of providing balanced flow through each water heater.
- H. Piping-Type Heat Traps: Field-fabricated piping arrangement according to ASHRAE 90.1 or ASHRAE 90.2.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Install concrete bases that extend 6" beyond the perimeter of the equipment.

3.2 WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

- A. Install commercial water heaters on concrete bases.
- B. Install water heaters, level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.
- C. Anchor water heaters to substrate.
- D. Install and connect gas water heaters according to NFPA 54.
 - 1. Install appliance, gas pressure regulators on gas-burner inlets of water heaters without pressure regulators.

2. Install vent piping from gas-train pressure regulators and valves to outside of building where required. Terminate vent piping with brass-screened vent cap fitting. Do not combine vents except with approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Install temperature and pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend relief valve outlet with water piping in continuous downward pitch and discharge onto closest floor drain.
- F. Install vacuum relief valves in cold-water-inlet piping.
- G. Install water heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for water heaters that do not have tank drains.
- H. Install thermometers on water heater inlet and outlet piping.
- I. Install pressure gages on water heater piping.
- J. Assemble and install inlet and outlet piping manifold kits for multiple water heaters. Fabricate, modify, or arrange manifolds for balanced water flow through each water heater. Include shutoff valve, and thermometer in each water heater inlet and outlet, and throttling valve in each water heater outlet.
- K. Arrange for insulation on equipment and piping not furnished with factory-applied insulation.
- L. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.
- M. Fill water heaters with water.
- N. Charge compression tanks with air.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect hot- and cold-water piping with shutoff valves and unions. Connect hot-water-circulating piping with shutoff valve, check valve, and union.
- D. Connect gas piping to gas burner with drip leg, tee, shutoff valve, and union; minimum size same as inlet connection.
- E. Make connections with dielectric fittings where piping is made of dissimilar metal.
- F. Gas, Water Heater Vent Connections: Connect to vent system. Include draft hoods and diverters where required. Use vents same size as or larger than water heater outlets, but not smaller than indicated unless smaller vent size has been calculated according to NFPA 54. Comply with the manufacturer's requirements for sizing.
- G. Electrical Connections: Power wiring and disconnect switches are specified in Division 16 Sections. Arrange wiring to allow unit service.

H. Ground equipment.

1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

B. In addition to manufacturer's written installation and startup checks, perform the following:

1. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.
2. Verify that piping system tests are complete.
3. Check for piping connection leaks.
4. Check for clear relief valve inlets, outlets, and drain piping.
5. Check operation of circulators.
6. Test operation of safety controls, relief valves, and devices.
7. Energize electric circuits.
8. Adjust operating controls.
9. Adjust hot-water-outlet temperature settings. Do not set above 125 deg F unless piping system application requires higher temperature.
10. Balance water flow through manifolds of multiple-unit installations.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain water heaters.

1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures for starting and stopping troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining equipment.
2. Review data in maintenance manuals.
3. Review date in maintenance manuals.
4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 224000
PLUMBING FIXTURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes plumbing fixtures and related components.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible Fixture: Plumbing fixture that can be approached, entered, and used by people with disabilities.
- B. Fitting: Device that controls flow of water into or out of plumbing fixture. Fittings specified in this Section include supplies and stops, faucets and spouts, shower heads and tub spouts, drains and tailpieces, and traps and waste pipes. Piping and general-duty valves are included where indicated.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include selected fixture and trim, fittings, accessories, appliances, appurtenances, equipment, and supports and indicate materials and finishes, dimensions, construction details, and flow-control rates for each type of fixture indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Diagram power, signal, and control wiring and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Maintenance Data: For plumbing fixtures to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain plumbing fixtures, faucets, and other components of each category through one source from a single manufacturer.
 - 1. Exception: If fixtures, faucets, or other components are not available from a single manufacturer, obtain similar products from other manufacturers specified for that category.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in ICC A117.1, "Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities"; Public Law 90-480, "Architectural Barriers Act"; and Public Law 101-336, "Americans with Disabilities Act"; about plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- D. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Uniform Federal Accessibility Standards (UFAS), 1985-494-187" about plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
- E. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements in Public Law 102-486, "Energy Policy Act," about water flow and consumption rates for plumbing fixtures.
- F. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components--Health Effects," for fixture materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- G. Select combinations of fixtures and trim, faucets, fittings, and other components that are compatible.
- H. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for plumbing fixtures:
 - 1. Enameled, Cast-Iron Fixtures: ASME A112.19.1M.
 - 2. Porcelain-Enameled, Formed-Steel Fixtures: ASME A112.19.4M.
 - 3. Stainless-Steel Fixtures Other Than Service Sinks: ASME A112.19.3M.
 - 4. Vitreous-China Fixtures: ASME A112.19.2M.
 - 5. Water-Closet, Flush Valve, Tank Trim: ASME A112.19.5.
- I. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for lavatory and sink faucets:
 - 1. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Side Spray: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 2. Backflow Protection Devices for Faucets with Hose-Thread Outlet: ASME A112.18.3M.
 - 3. Diverter Valves for Faucets with Hose Spray: ASSE 1025.
 - 4. Faucet Hose: ASTM D 3901.
 - 5. Faucets: ASME A112.18.1M.
 - 6. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1011.
 - 7. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 8. Integral, Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 9. NSF Materials: NSF 61.
 - 10. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.
 - 11. Sensor-Actuated Faucets and Electrical Devices: UL 1951.
 - 12. Supply and Drain Fittings: ASME A112.18.1M.
- J. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous fittings:
 - 1. Atmospheric Vacuum Breakers: ASSE 1001.
 - 2. Brass and Copper Supplies: ASME A112.18.1M.
 - 3. Manual-Operation Flushometers: ASSE 1037.
 - 4. Tubular Brass Drainage Fittings and Piping: ASME A112.18.2M.
- K. Comply with the following applicable standards and other requirements specified for miscellaneous components:
 - 1. Disposers: ASSE 1008 and UL 430.
 - 2. Floor Drains: ASME A112.21.1M.
 - 3. Grab Bars: ASTM F 446.
 - 4. Hose-Coupling Threads: ASME B1.20.7.
 - 5. Hot-Water Dispensers: ASSE 1023 and UL 499.
 - 6. Off-Floor Fixture Supports: ASME A112.6.1M.
 - 7. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1.

8. Plastic Toilet Seats: ANSI Z124.5.
9. Supply and Drain Protective Shielding Guards: ICC A117.1.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate roughing-in and final plumbing fixture locations, and verify that fixtures can be installed to comply with original design and referenced standards.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Faucet Washers and O-Rings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 2. Faucet Cartridges and O-Rings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 3. Faucet, Laminar-Flow Fittings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed, but not less than 2 of each type and size.
 4. Faucet, Flow-Control Fittings: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 5. Supply, Flow-Control Fittings: Equal to 5 percent of amount of each type and size installed.
 6. Flushometer Valve, Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but not less than 12 of each type.
 7. Provide hinged-top wood or metal box, or individual metal boxes, with separate compartments for each type and size of extra materials listed above.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Refer to drawings for product description and acceptable manufacturers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for water soil and for waste piping systems and supports to verify actual locations and sizes of piping connections and that locations and types of supports match those indicated, before plumbing fixture installation. Use manufacturer's roughing-in data if roughing-in data are not indicated.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and cabinets for suitable conditions where fixtures are to be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FIXTURE INSTALLATION

- A. Assemble fixtures, trim, fittings, and other components according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. For wall-hanging fixtures, install off-floor supports affixed to building substrate.
 - 1. Use carrier supports with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet fixtures.
 - 2. Use carrier supports without waste fitting for fixtures with tubular waste piping.
 - 3. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible fixtures.
- C. Install back-outlet, wall-hanging fixtures onto waste fitting seals and attach to supports.
- D. Install wall-hanging fixtures with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
- E. Install counter-mounting fixtures in and attached to casework.
- F. Install fixtures level and plumb according to manufacturers' written instructions and roughing-in drawings.
- G. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each fixture to be connected to water distribution piping. Attach supplies to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
 - 1. Exception: Use ball, gate, or globe valve if stops are not specified with fixture.
- H. Install trap and tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be directly connected to sanitary drainage system.
- I. Install tubular waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be indirectly connected to drainage system.
- J. Install flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on wide side of compartment. Install other actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.
- K. Install faucet-spout fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- L. Install water-supply, flow-control fittings with specified flow rates in fixture supplies at stop valves.
- M. Install faucet, flow-control fittings with specified flow rates and patterns in faucet spouts if faucets are not available with required rates and patterns. Include adapters if required.
- N. Install traps on fixture outlets.
 - 1. Exception: Omit trap on fixtures with integral traps.
 - 2. Exception: Omit trap on indirect wastes, unless otherwise indicated.
- O. Install escutcheons at piping wall and ceiling penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
- P. Set service basins in leveling bed of cement grout.
- Q. Seal joints between fixtures and walls, floors, and counters using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect water supplies from water distribution piping to fixtures.
- C. Connect drain piping from fixtures to drainage piping.
- D. Supply and Waste Connections to Plumbing Fixtures: Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, risers, traps, and waste piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures. Connect to plumbing piping.
- E. Supply and Waste Connections to Fixtures and Equipment Specified in Other Sections: Connect fixtures and equipment with water supplies, stops, risers, traps, and waste piping specified. Use size fittings required to match fixtures and equipment. Connect to plumbing piping.
- F. Ground equipment.
 - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verify that installed fixtures are categories and types specified for locations where installed.
- B. Check that fixtures are complete with trim, faucets, fittings, and other specified components.
- C. Inspect installed fixtures for damage. Replace damaged fixtures and components.
- D. Test installed fixtures after water systems are pressurized for proper operation. Replace malfunctioning fixtures and components, then retest. Repeat procedure until units operate properly.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust faucets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning fixtures, fittings, and controls.
- B. Operate and adjust disposers. Replace damaged and malfunctioning units.
- C. Adjust water pressure at faucets, and flushometer valves to produce proper flow and stream.
- D. Replace washers and seals of leaking and dripping faucets and stops.

3.6 CLEANING

- A. Clean fixtures, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials. Do the following:
 - 1. Remove faucet spouts and strainers, remove sediment and debris, and reinstall strainers and spouts.
 - 2. Remove sediment and debris from drains.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures and fittings.
- B. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 235513

BASIC MECH. MATERIALS AND METHODS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Not all listed materials and systems may be utilized for this project. Use applicable items, as required
- B. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Transition fittings.
 - 2. Dielectric fittings.
 - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 4. Sleeves.
 - 5. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 6. Painting and finishing.
 - 7. Concrete bases.
 - 8. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
 - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.

4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:

1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. GENERAL MECHANICAL SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

1. In addition to submittal procedures indicated in other sections of this specification, all Division 15 items shall be submitted as one complete set, tabbed and indexed with all equipment and systems properly and clearly identified per project document designations (partial submittals will not be accepted without the written permission of the Engineer). All capacities, standard accessories, options and characteristics shall be clearly and individually identified. Any deviations from the specified systems and equipment shall be clearly identified and accompanied by descriptions, explanations, drawings and calculations, etc. to support their use, indicating specifically how the submitted items will meet requirements of the original design specifications. The Engineer shall have sole discretion, without recourse, as to the determination of what items are deemed suitable for approval. Alternative submittals/substitutions: If re-design of the building and/or systems is required to accommodate the proposed alternative equipment/systems, such re-design shall be performed by the A/E of record, and paid for (on an hourly basis, plus expenses) by the contractor requesting the substitution. Submittals not meeting these requirements are subject to return without notice or review.

B. Product Data: For the following:

1. Transition fittings.
2. Dielectric fittings.
3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
4. Escutcheons.

C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."

B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.

C. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

D. MOTOR STARTERS AND CONTROLS SHALL BE FURNISHED WITH ALL MECHANICAL

EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS, UNLESS OTHERWISE APPROVED. EXCEPTION: STARTERS THAT ARE TO BE FURNISHED AS PART OF A MOTOR CONTROL CENTER (MCC) SHALL BE COORDINATED WITH, AND FURNISHED BY ELECTRICAL.

- E. ALL CONTROL WIRING SHALL BE INSTALLED IN EMT CONDUIT (OR OTHER APPROVED RACEWAY) AS PER DIVISION 16, AND NEC REQUIREMENTS, UNLESS OTHERWISE APPROVED. EXCEPTION: PROPERLY RATED CABLE (CEILING PLENUM, ETC.) MAY BE INSTALLED IN ACCESSIBLE, CONCEALED SPACES, AS DIRECTED IN OTHER SECTIONS OF THIS SPECIFICATION.
- F. Work shall be performed in accordance with quality, commercial practices. The appearance of finished work shall be of equal importance with its operation. Materials and equipment shall be installed based upon the actual dimensions and conditions at the project site. Locations for materials or equipment requiring an exact fit shall be field measured. Rotating equipment, piping and duct system shall be isolated to avoid unacceptable noise levels from objectionable vibrations from all systems without cost to the Owner.
- G. Some mechanical equipment sizes indicated on the Drawings are based on a particular manufacturer. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to verify that the equipment he proposes to furnish will fit in the space indicated on the Drawings. Refer to Architectural and Structural Drawings for building dimensions. Equipment furnished by the Owner shall be coordinated with equipment furnished and installed under this section and other sections.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.
- D. Where the mechanical drawings indicate (diagrammatically or otherwise) the work intended and the functions to be performed, even though some minor details are not shown, the Contractor shall furnish all equipment, material (other than Owner furnished items), and labor to complete the installation, and accomplish all indicated functions of the mechanical installation. Further, the Contractor shall be responsible for taking the necessary actions to ensure that all mechanical work is coordinated and compatible with architectural, plumbing, electrical and structural plans. In the event of conflict between the plans and the enforcing code authority, the latter shall rule. Any modification resulting there from shall be made without additional cost to the Owner or Engineer. The contractor shall report such modifications to the Architect in writing and secure approval before proceeding. Where a conflict between the construction drawings and specifications occur the greater quantity and/or greater quality shall be used.

- E. Maintain "As-Built" Drawing to be included with the O & M Manuals. Maintain a set of "Blue-Line Prints and indicate changes and diagrams of those portions of work in which actual construction is significantly at variance with the Contract Drawings. Mark the Drawings with a colored pencil. Prepare, as the work progresses and upon completion of work, drawings clearly indicating locations of all devices, equipment and other pertinent items, as installed. Include invert elevation or buried depth of piping. Upon completion of the project, submit all materials to the Owner, after verifying all the above data is shown correctly.
- F. Perform work to meet or exceed the requirements of the International Mechanical Code and other applicable statutes, ordinances, codes and regulations of governmental authorities having jurisdiction. Resolve any code violation discovered in the Contract Documents with the Engineer prior to award of the Contract. After award of the Contract, make any corrections or additions necessary for compliance with applicable codes at no additional cost to the Owner.
- G. Obtain and pay for all permits, licenses and inspections as required by law for the completion of the work. Comply with the requirements of the applicable utility companies serving this project. Make all arrangements with the utility companies for proper coordination of the work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - c. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.

2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.

G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.4 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.

1. Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.5 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 - 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

2.8 DRAIN PANS

- A. Description: Aluminum or stainless steel formed or welded construction, sized to accommodate the equipment the pan is intended to protect. All equipment (i.e. water heaters, air handlers, pumps, etc.) that are required by code or as indicated on the construction documents shall be provided with a drain pan with the associated copper drain pipe routed to a code compliant receptor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.
- E. Install drain pans under equipment in such a manner that there is sufficient fall for the water to drain if an overflow/leak condition occurs. The contractor is responsible for coordinating the size and equipment installation for a drain pan and piping system that meets code and functionality requirements.

3.2 PAINTING

- A. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, where "bright" ductwork, or other piping, etc. systems are visible to the occupied space through grilles, etc., they shall be painted with "flat" black paint, as required.

3.3 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement.

3.4 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.5 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment supports.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
 - 1. Equipment supports.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
 - 1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.
 - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for designing trapeze hangers.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
 - b. Flex-Strut Inc.
 - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - d. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
 2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
 3. Standard: MFMA-4.
 4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with intumed lips.
 5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
 6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
 7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc.

2.2 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
- B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
 - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.2 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches

3.4 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- C. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- D. Use carbon-steel supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- E. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in system Sections, install the following types:
 - 1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend hangers from concrete ceiling.
 - 2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
 - 3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
 - 4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
 - 5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
 - 6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
 - 7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
 - 8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
 - 9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
 - 10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
 - 11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
 - 12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
 - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb
 - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb
 - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
 14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
 15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- F. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in system Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches
- G. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- H. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230553

IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Equipment labels.
 - 2. Duct labels.
 - 3. Stencils.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
 - 1. Material and Thickness: Aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
 - 2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
 - 3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
 - 4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number.

2.2 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
 - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
 - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
 - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean equipment and duct surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 DUCT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Stenciled Duct Label: Stenciled labels, showing service and flow direction.
- B. Locate labels near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230593

TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Balancing Air Systems:
 - a. Constant-volume air systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.
- B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.
- C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.
- E. TAB Specialist: An entity engaged to perform TAB Work.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: Within 45 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB contractor and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 45 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report as specified in Part 3.
- C. Certified TAB reports.
- D. Sample report forms.
- E. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:
 - 1. Instrument type and make.
 - 2. Serial number.
 - 3. Application.

4. Dates of use.
5. Dates of calibration.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. TAB Contractor Qualifications: Engage a TAB entity certified by AABC or NEBB.
- B. Certify TAB field data reports and perform the following:
 1. Review field data reports to validate accuracy of data and to prepare certified TAB reports.
 2. Certify that the TAB team complied with the approved TAB plan and the procedures specified and referenced in this Specification.
- C. TAB Report Forms: Use standard TAB contractor's forms approved by Engineer.
- D. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: As described in ASHRAE 111, Section 5, "Instrumentation."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Full Owner Occupancy: Owner will occupy the site and existing building during entire TAB period. Cooperate with Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems' designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.
- B. Examine systems for installed balancing devices, such as manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are accessible.
- C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.
- D. Examine equipment performance data including fan curves.
 1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.
- E. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.
- F. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

- G. Examine HVAC equipment and filters and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.
- H. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.
- I. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.
- J. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes strategies and step-by-step procedures.
- B. Complete system-readiness checks and prepare reports. Verify the following:
 - 1. Permanent electrical-power wiring is complete.
 - 2. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.
 - 3. Equipment and duct access doors are securely closed.
 - 4. Balance, smoke, and fire dampers are open.
 - 5. Isolating and balancing valves are open and control valves are operational.
 - 6. Ceilings are installed in critical areas where air-pattern adjustments are required and access to balancing devices is provided.
 - 7. Windows and doors can be closed so indicated conditions for system operations can be met.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system according to the procedures contained in certifying organization standards and in this Section.
- B. Cut insulation, ducts, pipes, and equipment cabinets for installation of test probes to the minimum extent necessary for TAB procedures.
 - 1. After testing and balancing, patch probe holes in ducts with same material and thickness as used to construct ducts.
 - 2. After testing and balancing, install test ports and duct access doors that comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
 - 3. Install and join new insulation that matches removed materials. Restore insulation, coverings, vapor barrier, and finish according to Section 230713 "Duct Insulation."
- C. Mark equipment and balancing devices, including damper-control positions, fan-speed-control levers, and similar controls and devices, with paint or other suitable, permanent identification material to show final settings.
- D. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with re-

quired fan volumes.

- B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' "as-built" duct layouts.
- C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.
- D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the return- and exhaust-air dampers through the supply-fan discharge and mixing dampers.
- E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches, electrical interlocks, and motor starters.
- F. Verify that motor starters are equipped with properly sized thermal protection.
- G. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.
- H. Check for airflow blockages.
- I. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.
- J. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.
- K. Verify that air duct system is sealed as specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts."

3.5 PROCEDURES FOR CONSTANT-VOLUME AIR SYSTEMS

- A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.
 - 1. Measure total airflow.
 - a. Where sufficient space in ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow.
 - 2. Measure fan static pressures as follows to determine actual static pressure:
 - a. Measure outlet static pressure as far downstream from the fan as practical and upstream from restrictions in ducts such as elbows and transitions.
 - b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.
 - c. Measure inlet static pressure of single-inlet fans in the inlet duct as near the fan as possible, upstream from the flexible connection, and downstream from duct restrictions.
 - d. Measure inlet static pressure of double-inlet fans through the wall of the plenum that houses the fan.
 - 3. Measure static pressure across each component that makes up an air-handling unit, roof-top unit, and other air-handling and -treating equipment.
 - a. Report the cleanliness status of filters and the time static pressures are measured.
 - 4. Measure static pressures entering and leaving other devices, such as sound traps, heat-recovery equipment, and air washers, under final balanced conditions.
 - 5. Review Record Documents to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.

6. Obtain approval from Engineer for adjustment of fan speed higher or lower than indicated speed. Comply with requirements in HVAC Sections for air-handling units for adjustment of fans, belts, and pulley sizes to achieve indicated air-handling-unit performance.
 7. Do not make fan-speed adjustments that result in motor overload. Consult equipment manufacturers about fan-speed safety factors. Modulate dampers and measure fan-motor amperage to ensure that no overload will occur. Measure amperage in full-cooling, full-heating, economizer, and any other operating mode to determine the maximum required brake horsepower.
- B. Adjust volume dampers for main duct, submain ducts, and major branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
1. Measure airflow of submain and branch ducts.
 - a. Where sufficient space in submain and branch ducts is unavailable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, measure airflow at terminal outlets and inlets and calculate the total airflow for that zone.
 2. Measure static pressure at a point downstream from the balancing damper, and adjust volume dampers until the proper static pressure is achieved.
 3. Remeasure each submain and branch duct after all have been adjusted. Continue to adjust submain and branch ducts to indicated airflows within specified tolerances.
- C. Measure air outlets and inlets without making adjustments.
1. Measure terminal outlets using a direct-reading hood or outlet manufacturer's written instructions and calculating factors.
- D. Adjust air outlets and inlets for each space to indicated airflows within specified tolerances of indicated values. Make adjustments using branch volume dampers rather than extractors and the dampers at air terminals.
1. Adjust each outlet in same room or space to within specified tolerances of indicated quantities without generating noise levels above the limitations prescribed by the Contract Documents.
 2. Adjust patterns of adjustable outlets for proper distribution without drafts.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.
 2. Motor horsepower rating.
 3. Motor rpm.
 4. Efficiency rating.
 5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
 6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
 7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass of the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations including name of controller manufacturer, model number, serial number, and nameplate data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR CONDENSING UNITS

- A. Verify proper rotation of fans.
- B. Measure entering- and leaving-air temperatures.
- C. Record compressor data.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each electric heating coil:
 - 1. Nameplate data.
 - 2. Airflow.
 - 3. Entering- and leaving-air temperature at full load.
 - 4. Voltage and amperage input of each phase at full load and at each incremental stage.
 - 5. Calculated kilowatt at full load.
 - 6. Fuse or circuit-breaker rating for overload protection.
- B. Measure, adjust, and record the following data for each refrigerant coil:
 - 1. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 2. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
 - 3. Airflow.
 - 4. Air pressure drop.
 - 5. Refrigerant suction pressure and temperature.

3.9 PROCEDURES FOR TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Perform a preconstruction inspection of existing equipment that is to remain and be reused.
 - 1. Measure and record the operating speed, airflow, and static pressure of each fan.
 - 2. Measure motor voltage and amperage. Compare the values to motor nameplate information.
 - 3. Check the refrigerant charge.
 - 4. Check the condition of filters.
 - 5. Check the condition of coils.
 - 6. Check the operation of the drain pan and condensate-drain trap.
 - 7. Check bearings and other lubricated parts for proper lubrication.
 - 8. Report on the operating condition of the equipment and the results of the measurements taken. Report deficiencies.
- B. Before performing testing and balancing of existing systems, inspect existing equipment that is to remain and be reused to verify that existing equipment has been cleaned and refurbished. Verify the following:
 - 1. New filters are installed.
 - 2. Coils are clean and fins combed.
 - 3. Drain pans are clean.
 - 4. Fans are clean.
 - 5. Bearings and other parts are properly lubricated.
 - 6. Deficiencies noted in the preconstruction report are corrected.

- C. Perform testing and balancing of existing systems to the extent that existing systems are affected by the renovation work.
 - 1. Compare the indicated airflow of the renovated work to the measured fan airflows, and determine the new fan speed and the face velocity of filters and coils.
 - 2. Verify that the indicated airflows of the renovated work result in filter and coil face velocities and fan speeds that are within the acceptable limits defined by equipment manufacturer.
 - 3. If calculations increase or decrease the air flow rates and water flow rates by more than 5 percent, make equipment adjustments to achieve the calculated rates. If increase or decrease is 5 percent or less, equipment adjustments are not required.
 - 4. Balance each air outlet.

3.10 TOLERANCES

- A. Set HVAC system's air flow rates within the following tolerances:
 - 1. Supply, Return, and Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 5 percent.
 - 2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 5 percent.

3.11 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.
 - 1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
 - 2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:
 - 1. Fan curves.
 - 2. Manufacturers' test data.
 - 3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
 - 4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and product data.
- C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:
 - 1. Title page.
 - 2. Name and address of the TAB contractor.
 - 3. Project name.
 - 4. Project location.
 - 5. Architect's name and address.
 - 6. Engineer's name and address.
 - 7. Contractor's name and address.
 - 8. Report date.
 - 9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
 - 10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
 - 11. Summary of contents including the following:
 - a. Indicated versus final performance.

- b. Notable characteristics of systems.
 - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
 13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer's name, type, size, and fittings.
 14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
 15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
 - a. Settings for outdoor-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
 - b. Conditions of filters.
 - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
 - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
 - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
 - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
 - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
 - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- D. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outdoor, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
 2. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
 3. Position of balancing devices.
- E. Air-Handling-Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:
1. Unit Data:
 - a. Unit identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and unit size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Unit arrangement and class.
 - g. Discharge arrangement.
 - h. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - i. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - j. Number, make, and size of belts.
 - k. Number, type, and size of filters.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.

- d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- f. Preheat-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- g. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- h. Heating-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.
- i. Outdoor airflow in cfm.
- j. Return airflow in cfm.
- k. Outdoor-air damper position.
- l. Return-air damper position.

F. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Coil type.
- d. Number of rows.
- e. Fin spacing in fins per inch o.c.
- f. Make and model number.
- g. Face area in sq. ft..
- h. Tube size in NPS.
- i. Tube and fin materials.
- j. Circuiting arrangement.

2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Air flow rate in cfm.
- b. Average face velocity in fpm.
- c. Air pressure drop in inches wg.
- d. Outdoor-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F.
- h. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
- i. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig.
- j. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F.

G. Gas- Fired Heat Apparatus Test Reports: In addition to manufacturer's factory startup equipment reports, include the following:

1. Unit Data:

- a. System identification.
- b. Location.
- c. Make and type.
- d. Model number and unit size.
- e. Manufacturer's serial number.
- f. Fuel type in input data.
- g. Output capacity in Btu/h.
- h. Ignition type.
- i. Burner-control types.
- j. Motor horsepower and rpm.
- k. Motor volts, phase, and hertz.
- l. Motor full-load amperage and service factor.
- m. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

- n. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total air flow rate in cfm.
 - b. Entering-air temperature in deg F.
 - c. Leaving-air temperature in deg F.
 - d. Air temperature differential in deg F.
 - e. Entering-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - f. Leaving-air static pressure in inches wg.
 - g. Air static-pressure differential in inches wg.
 - h. Low-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - i. High-fire fuel input in Btu/h.
 - j. Manifold pressure in psig.
 - k. High-temperature-limit setting in deg F.
 - l. Operating set point in Btu/h.
 - m. Motor voltage at each connection.
 - n. Motor amperage for each phase.
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
 - a. System identification.
 - b. Location.
 - c. Make and type.
 - d. Model number and size.
 - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
 - f. Arrangement and class.
 - g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 2. Motor Data:
 - a. Motor make, and frame type and size.
 - b. Horsepower and rpm.
 - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
 - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
 - e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.
 - f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave, and amount of adjustments in inches.
 - g. Number, make, and size of belts.
 3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
 - a. Total airflow rate in cfm.
 - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.
 - c. Fan rpm.
 - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.
 - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.
- I. Round, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
1. Report Data:

- a. System and air-handling-unit number.
- b. Location and zone.
- c. Traverse air temperature in deg F.
- d. Duct static pressure in inches wg.
- e. Duct size in inches.
- f. Duct area in sq. ft..
- g. Indicated air flow rate in cfm.
- h. Indicated velocity in fpm.
- i. Actual air flow rate in cfm.
- j. Actual average velocity in fpm.
- k. Barometric pressure in psig.

J. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

- a. Instrument type and make.
- b. Serial number.
- c. Application.
- d. Dates of use.
- e. Dates of calibration.

3.12 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 120 days of completing TAB, perform additional TAB to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional TAB during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 230713

DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
 - 1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
 - 2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
 - 3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
 - 5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
 - 7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
 - 8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
 - 2. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, dampers, specialties and flanges for each type of insulation.
 - 3. Detail application at linkages of control devices.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- B. Material Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction indicating, interpreting, and certifying test results for compliance of insulation materials, sealers, attachments, cements, and jackets, with requirements indicated. Include dates of tests and test methods employed.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.8 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application with other trades.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.
- B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type III with factory-applied FSP jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corp.; SoftTouch Duct Wrap.
 - b. Johns Manville; Microlite.

- c. Knauf Insulation; Friendly Feel Duct Wrap.
- d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley Wrap.
- e. Owens Corning; SOFTR All-Service Duct Wrap.

2.2 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-127.Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - b. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-60/85-70.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-82.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 225.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-50.Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.3 MASTICS

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II.
 - 1. For indoor applications, use mastics that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-80/30-90.
 - b. Vimasco Corporation; 749.
 - 2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96/E 96M, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.

3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 58 percent by volume and 70 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Solvent based; suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Childers Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; CP-30.
 - b. Eagle Bridges - Marathon Industries; 501.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 30-35.
 - d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-10.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 0.05 perm at 35-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 44 percent by volume and 62 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

2.4 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:

1. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.

2.5 SECUREMENTS

A. Insulation Pins and Hangers:

1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
 - a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Perforated Base Insul-Hangers.
 - 2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
 - 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
 - b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low-carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
 - d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in

place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- 1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
- 2) GEMCO; R-150.
- 3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
- 4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.

b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

B. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.

1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

- H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.
- I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
 - 2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
 - 3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
- J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.
- K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
 - 1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.
 - 2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
 - 3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
 - a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
 - 4. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.
- L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.
- M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.
- N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

- A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
 - 1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 - 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 - 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
 - 4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.
- B. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously

through wall penetrations.

1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
 2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
 3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
 4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.
- C. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- D. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations. Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" and fire-resistive joint sealers.
- E. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
 2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION

- A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 50 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
 2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
 3. Install pins and speed washers on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
 - a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
 - b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
 - c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
 - d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
 - e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
 - f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.
 - a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
 - b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops shall consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.
5. Overlap unfaced blankets a minimum of 2 inches on longitudinal seams and end joints. At end joints, secure with steel bands spaced a maximum of 18 inches o.c.
6. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
7. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch-wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:

1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, concealed return located in unconditioned space.
4. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned space.
5. Indoor, concealed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
6. Indoor, exposed exhaust between isolation damper and penetration of building exterior.
7. Outdoor, concealed supply and return.
8. Outdoor, exposed supply and return.

B. Items Not Insulated:

1. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
2. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
3. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
4. Flexible connectors.
5. Vibration-control devices.
6. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.7 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round, supply and return-air duct insulation shall be the following:

1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

- B. Concealed, round, outdoor-air duct insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5-lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
- C. Concealed, round, exhaust-air duct insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Mineral-Fiber Blanket: 1-1/2 inches thick and 0.75-lb/cu. ft nominal density.
- D. Concealed, rectangular, air duct insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts".
- E. Concealed, air plenum insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts".
- F. Exposed, round, air duct insulation shall be the following:
 - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts".

END OF SECTION

SECTION 232300
REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes refrigerant piping used for air-conditioning applications.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Line Test Pressure for Refrigerant R-410A:
 - 1. Suction Lines for Air-Conditioning Applications: 300 psig.
 - 2. Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: 535 psig.
 - 3. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines: 535 psig.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Show layout of refrigerant piping and specialties, including pipe, tube, and fitting sizes, flow capacities, valve arrangements and locations, slopes of horizontal runs, oil traps, double risers, wall and floor penetrations, and equipment connection details. Show interface and spatial relationships between piping and equipment.
 - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch equals 1 foot.
 - 2. Refrigerant piping indicated on Drawings is schematic only. Size piping and design actual piping layout, including oil traps, double risers, specialties, and pipe and tube sizes to accommodate, as a minimum, equipment provided, elevation difference between compressor and evaporator, and length of piping to ensure proper operation and compliance with warranties of connected equipment.
 - 3. Refrigerant piping and insulation materials.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.
- B. Field quality-control test reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
- B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."
- D. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program.
- E. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
 - 2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.8 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store piping in a clean and protected area with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, piping supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields.
- C. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.10 SCHEDULING

- A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.
- B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

- B. Wrought-Copper Fittings: ASME B16.22.
- C. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.
- D. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8.
- E. Flexible Connectors:
 1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
 2. End Connections: Socket ends.
 3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch- long assembly.
 4. Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
 5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

- A. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
 1. Body: Forged brass.
 2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
 3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in ppm.
 4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
 5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- B. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with ARI 730.
 1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
 2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
 3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
 4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
 5. End Connections: Socket.
 6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
 7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
 8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
 9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.
- C. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
 1. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
 2. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
 3. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
 4. End Connections: Socket.
 5. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch (16-GRC) conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
 6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig (2760 kPa).
 7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F (116 deg C).

2.3 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials.
 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; AeroceI.

- b. Armacell LLC; AP Armaflex.
- c. K-Flex USA; Insul-Lock, Insul-Tube, and K-FLEX LS.

2.4 ADHESIVES

- A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
 - 1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide 1 inch thick insulation form one of the following:
 - a. Aeroflex USA, Inc.; Aeroseal.
 - b. Armacell LLC; Armaflex 520 Adhesive.
 - c. Foster Brand, Specialty Construction Brands, Inc., a business of H. B. Fuller Company; 85-75.
 - d. K-Flex USA; R-373 Contact Adhesive.
 - 2. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 REFRIGERANTS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Atofina Chemicals, Inc.
 - 2. DuPont Company; Fluorochemicals Div.
 - 3. Honeywell, Inc.; Genetron Refrigerants.
 - 4. INEOS Fluor Americas LLC.
- C. ASHRAE 34, R-410A: Pentafluoroethane/Difluoromethane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS FOR REFRIGERANT R-410A

- A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.
- B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

- A. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.
- B. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve.
- C. Provide solenoid valve as required by equipment manufacturer.

3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.
- K. Arrange piping to allow inspection and service of refrigeration equipment. Install valves and specialties in accessible locations to allow for service and inspection. Install access doors or panels as specified in Section 083113 "Access Doors and Frames" if valves or equipment requiring maintenance is concealed behind finished surfaces.
- L. Install refrigerant piping in protective conduit where installed belowground.
- M. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.
- N. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
 - 1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
 - 2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
 - 3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
 - 4. Liquid lines may be installed level.
- O. When brazing remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.
- P. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.
- Q. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- R. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
- S. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.
- D. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
 - 1. Use Type BcuP, copper-phosphorus alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
 - 2. Use Type BAg, cadmium-free silver alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

- A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
 - 1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
 - 2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- C. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
 - 1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as pipe insulation when available.
 - 2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
 - 3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
 - 4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

3.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Install the following pipe attachments:
 - 1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
 - 2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
 - 3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
 - 4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
 - 5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.
- B. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:
 - 1. NPS 1/2: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 2. NPS 5/8: Maximum span, 60 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 3. NPS 1: Maximum span, 72 inches; minimum rod size, 1/4 inch.
 - 4. NPS 1-1/4: Maximum span, 96 inches; minimum rod size, 3/8 inch.
- C. Support multifloor vertical runs at least at each floor.

- D. Provide high density insulation at all support points matching the R value of the specified insulation.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
 - 2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
 - 3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article.
 - a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
 - b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
 - c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
 - d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

3.8 SYSTEM CHARGING

- A. Charge system using the following procedures:
 - 1. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
 - 2. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.

3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.
- B. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning controllers to the system design temperature.
- C. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
 - 1. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
 - 2. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233113

METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Duct liner.
5. Sealants and gaskets.
6. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Duct Design: Duct construction, including sheet metal thicknesses, seam and joint construction, reinforcements, and hangers and supports, shall comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" and performance requirements and design criteria indicated in "Duct Schedule" Article.
- B. Structural Performance: Duct hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions described in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:

1. Liners and adhesives.
2. Sealants and gaskets.
3. Hanger, supports, and anchors.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Shop Drawings: 1/4" = 1' foot scale. Show fabrication and installation details for metal ducts.
2. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
3. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.
4. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
5. Elevation of top of ducts.
6. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
7. Fittings.
8. Reinforcement and spacing.
9. Seam and joint construction.
10. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
11. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
12. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.
13. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment and vibration isolation.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal:

1. Sheet metal thicknesses.
2. Joint and seam construction and sealing not listed below.
3. Reinforcement details and spacing.
4. Materials, fabrication, assembly, and spacing of hangers and supports.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to 1/4" = 1' scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Duct installation in congested spaces, indicating coordination with general construction, building components, and other building services. Indicate proposed changes to duct layout.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which duct will be attached.
 4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 5. Penetrations of smoke barriers and fire-rated construction.
 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Perimeter moldings.
 - g. Mill work.
- B. Welding certificates.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS**

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," "Rectangular Duct Reinforcement Tables," for static-pressure class listed in this specification, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Shall be Type L-1, Pittsburgh seam and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Unless specified below select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.2 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

- A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 3, "Round, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Lindab Inc.
 - b. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - c. SEMCO Incorporated.
 - d. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
- B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
- C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

- D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.4 DUCT LINER

- A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C 1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. CertainTeed Corporation; Insulation Group.
 - b. Johns Manville.
 - c. Knauf Insulation.
 - d. Owens Corning.
 2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
 - 1) Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
 3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound shall be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
 4. Solvent or Water-Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C 916.

- a. For indoor applications, adhesive shall have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- b. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Insulation Pins and Washers:

1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.135-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Apply adhesive coating on longitudinal seams in ducts with air velocity of 2500 fpm.
7. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
8. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
 - a. Fan discharges.
 - b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
 - c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
9. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.5 SEALANT AND GASKETS

- A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested according to UL 723; certified by an NRTL.
- B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
4. Water resistant.
5. Mold and mildew resistant.
6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive and negative.
8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:

1. Application Method: Brush on.
2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
6. Water resistant.
7. Mold and mildew resistant.
8. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
9. VOC: Maximum 395 g/L.
10. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
11. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
12. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C 920.

1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
2. Type: S.
3. Grade: NS.
4. Class: 25.
5. Use: O.
6. For indoor applications, sealant shall have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
7. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:

1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for 10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.
3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.6 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Cadmium-plated steel rods and nuts.

- B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
- C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."
- D. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- E. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
 - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and Coordination Drawings.
- B. Install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install round ducts in maximum practical lengths.
- D. Install ducts with fewest possible joints.
- E. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.
- F. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.
- G. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- H. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- I. Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults, electrical equipment rooms and enclosures, and elevator equipment rooms.
- J. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.
- K. Where ducts pass through fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls, install fire dampers. Comply with requirements in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers.

- L. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF EXPOSED DUCTWORK

- A. Protect ducts exposed in finished spaces from being dented, scratched, or damaged.
- B. Trim duct sealants flush with metal. Create a smooth and uniform exposed bead. Do not use two-part tape sealing system.
- C. Grind welds to provide smooth surface free of burrs, sharp edges, and weld splatter. When welding stainless steel with a No. 3 or 4 finish, grind the welds flush, polish the exposed welds, and treat the welds to remove discoloration caused by welding.
- D. Maintain consistency, symmetry, and uniformity in the arrangement and fabrication of fittings, hangers and supports, duct accessories, and air outlets.
- E. Repair or replace damaged sections and finished work that does not comply with these requirements.

3.3 DUCT SEALING

- A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."
- B. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
 - 1. Where practical, install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
 - 2. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
 - 3. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4 inches thick.
 - 4. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
- C. Hanger Spacing: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct," for maximum hanger spacing; install hangers and supports within 24 inches of each elbow and within 48 inches of each branch intersection.
- D. Hangers Exposed to View: Threaded rod and angle or channel supports.
- E. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets; support at each floor and at a maximum intervals of 16 feet.
- F. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Paint interior of metal ducts that are visible through registers and grilles and that do not have duct liner. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex paint over a compatible galvanized-steel primer. Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" and Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
 - 1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

3.8 DUCT CLEANING

- A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- B. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
 - 1. Create new openings and install access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure class if required for cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
 - 2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
 - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:
 - 1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
 - 2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
 - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
 - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
 - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
 - 4. Coils and related components.

5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:

1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
6. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
7. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.9 START UP

- A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.10 DUCT SCHEDULE

- A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel.

B. Supply Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Constant-Volume Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

C. Return Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.

D. Exhaust Ducts:

1. Ducts Connected to Fans Exhausting (ASHRAE 62.1, Class 1 and 2) Air:
 - a. Pressure Class: Negative 2-inch wg.

- b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
- E. Outdoor-Air (Not Filtered, Heated, or Cooled) Ducts:
 - 1. Ducts Connected to Air-Handling Units:
 - a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2-inch wg.
 - b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: A.
- F. Intermediate Reinforcement:
 - 1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel.
- G. Liner:
 - 1. Supply Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 2. Return Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 3. Exhaust Air Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
 - 4. Supply Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type II, 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 5. Return- and Exhaust-Fan Plenums: Fibrous glass, Type , 1-1/2 inches thick.
 - 6. Transfer Ducts: Fibrous glass, Type I, 1 inch thick.
- H. Elbow Configuration:
 - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
 - a. Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
 - b. Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
 - 2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
 - a. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
 - b. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam or Welded.
- I. Branch Configuration:
 - 1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
 - a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
 - b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in or 45-degree lead in.
 - 2. Round: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
 - a. Velocity all: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233300
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Manual volume dampers.
2. Flange connectors.
3. Turning vanes.
4. Remote damper operators.
5. Duct-mounted access doors.
6. Flexible connectors.
7. Flexible ducts.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details and attachments to other work.
1. Detail duct accessories fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
 - a. Special fittings.
 - b. Manual volume damper installations.
 - c. Control-damper installations.
 - d. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, combination fire- and smoke-damper, ceiling, and corridor damper installations, including sleeves; and duct-mounted access doors and remote damper operators.
 - e. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved.

- B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Fusible Links: Furnish quantity equal to 10 percent of amount installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A 653/A 653M.
 - 1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
 - 2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.
- B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
 - a. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
 - c. Pottorff.
 - d. Ruskin Company.

2. Standard leakage rating, with linkage outside airstream.
3. Suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
4. Frames:
 - a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 0.094-inch- thick, galvanized sheet steel.
 - b. Mitered and welded corners.
 - c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
5. Blades:
 - a. Multiple or single blade.
 - b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
 - c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
 - d. Galvanized-steel, 0.064 inch thick.
6. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel.
7. Bearings:
 - a. Molded synthetic.
 - b. Dampers in ducts with pressure classes of 3-inch wg or less shall have axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.

B. Jackshaft:

1. Size: 0.5-inch diameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32-inch- thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inch hexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
2. Nexus PDQ; Division of Shilco Holdings Inc.
3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.

B. Description: Add-on, factory-fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

C. Material: Galvanized steel.

D. Gage and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.5 TURNING VANES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 3. METALAIRE, Inc.
 4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
- C. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- D. Vane Construction: Single wall.

2.6 REMOTE DAMPER OPERATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Pottorff.
 2. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 3. Young Regulator Company.
- B. Description: Cable system designed for remote manual damper adjustment.
- C. Tubing: Aluminum.
- D. Cable: Stainless steel.
- E. Wall-Box Mounting: Recessed.
- F. Wall-Box Cover-Plate Material: Steel.

2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 4. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 5. Nailor Industries Inc.
 6. Pottorff.
 7. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 8. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 7-2, "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:
 - a. Double wall, rectangular.
 - b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.
 - c. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inch butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
 - d. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
 - a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
 - b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
 - c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous and two compression latches.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
 3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
 4. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.
- C. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.
- D. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 5-3/4 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch-wide, 0.028-inch-thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032-inch-thick aluminum sheets. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.
- E. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
 1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd..
 2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
 3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.9 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
 2. McGill AirFlow LLC.
 3. Ward Industries, Inc.; a division of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Insulated, Flexible Duct: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.
 1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
 2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.

3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
4. Insulation R-value: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

2.10 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.
- B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless-steel accessories in stainless-steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.
- C. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
- D. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.
- E. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
 1. On both sides of duct coils.
 2. Upstream from duct filters.
 3. At outdoor-air intakes and mixed-air plenums.
 4. At drain pans and seals.
 5. Downstream from manual volume dampers, control dampers, backdraft dampers, and equipment.
 6. Adjacent to and close enough to fire dampers, to reset or reinstall fusible links. Access doors for access to fire or smoke dampers having fusible links shall be pressure relief access doors and shall be outward operation for access doors installed upstream from dampers and inward operation for access doors installed downstream from dampers.
 7. At each change in direction and at maximum 50-foot spacing.
 8. Upstream from turning vanes.
 9. Control devices requiring inspection.
 10. Elsewhere as indicated.
- G. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

- H. Access Door Sizes:
 - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
 - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
 - 3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
 - 4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.
 - 5. Body Access: 25 by 14 inches.
 - 6. Body plus Ladder Access: 25 by 17 inches.
- I. Label access doors according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Equipment" to indicate the purpose of access door.
- J. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.
- K. Connect diffusers to ducts directly or with maximum 60-inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- L. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- M. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
 - 2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that purpose of access door can be performed.
 - 3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation.
 - 4. Operate remote damper operators to verify full range of movement of operator and damper.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 233423

HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Centrifugal roof ventilators.
 - 2. Ceiling-mounted ventilators.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base fan-performance ratings on actual Project site elevations.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design roof top fan supports to comply with wind performance requirements, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Wind-Restraint Performance:
 - 1. Basic Wind Speed: 90 mph.
 - 2. Building Classification Category: Refer to structural drawings.
 - 3. Minimum 10 lb/sq. ft multiplied by the maximum area of the mechanical component projected on a vertical plane that is normal to the wind direction, and 45 degrees either side of normal.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Also include the following:
 - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
 - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
 - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
 - 4. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
 - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.

6. Roof curbs.
 7. Fan speed controllers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For unit hangars and supports indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail mounting, securing, and flashing of roof curb to roof structure. Indicate coordinating requirements with roof membrane system.
 2. Wind Restraint Details: Detail fabrication and attachment of wind and seismic restraints and snubbers. Show anchorage details and indicate quantity, diameter, and depth of penetration of anchors.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:
1. Roof framing and support members relative to duct penetrations.
 2. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
 4. Ceiling-mounted items including light fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power ventilators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.8 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Belts: One set(s) for each belt-driven unit.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. AMCA Compliance: Fans shall have AMCA-Certified performance ratings and shall bear the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CENTRIFUGAL ROOF VENTILATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
 2. Loren Cook Company.
 3. PennBarry.
 4. Twin City Fans
- B. Housing: Removable, spun-aluminum, dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece, aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.
 1. Hinged Sub-base with ventilated curb: Galvanized-steel hinged arrangement permitting service and maintenance (kitchen exhaust fans only).
- C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.
- D. Belt Drives:
 1. Resiliently mounted to housing.
 2. Fan Shaft: Turned, ground, and polished steel; keyed to wheel hub.
 3. Shaft Bearings: Permanently lubricated, permanently sealed, self-aligning ball bearings.
 4. Pulleys: Cast-iron, adjustable-pitch motor pulley.
 5. Fan and motor isolated from exhaust airstream.
- E. Accessories:
 1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
 2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
 3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
 4. Dampers: Counterbalanced, parallel-blade, backdraft dampers mounted in curb base; factory set to close when fan stops.
- F. Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
 1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
 2. Overall Height: 18 inches.

3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

G. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.2 CEILING-MOUNTED VENTILATORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
2. Loren Cook Company.
3. PennBarry.

B. Housing: Steel, lined with acoustical insulation.

C. Fan Wheel: Centrifugal wheels directly mounted on motor shaft. Fan shrouds, motor, and fan wheel shall be removable for service.

D. Grille: Painted aluminum, louvered grille with flange on intake and thumbscrew attachment to fan housing.

E. Electrical Requirements: Junction box for electrical connection on housing and receptacle for motor plug-in.

F. Accessories:

1. Variable-Speed Controller: Solid-state control to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
2. Manufactures standard electrical disconnect means.
3. Isolation: Rubber-in-shear vibration isolators.
4. Manufacturer's standard roof jack or wall cap, and transition fittings.

G. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Refer to schedule on drawings.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Certify sound-power level ratings according to AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

- B. Certify fan performance ratings, including flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Aerodynamic Performance Rating." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.
- B. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with cadmium-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.
- C. Ceiling Units: Suspend units from structure; use manufacturers support kit.
- D. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.
- E. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Equipment."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors. Flexible connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- B. Install ducts adjacent to power ventilators to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- D. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
 - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
 - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
 - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and

- adjust belts, and install belt guards.
 5. Adjust belt tension.
 6. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
 7. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
 8. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
 9. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
 10. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
 11. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- C. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- D. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- E. Lubricate bearings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 238126

SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.
- B. Related Sections:
 - 1. Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for refrigerant piping requirements for split system air conditioners.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.
 - 1. Indoor unit.
 - 2. Outdoor unit.
 - 3. Thermostat.
 - 4. Air filter.
 - 5. Refrigeration components.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 - 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
 - 2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.
- B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Filters: One set(s) for each air-handling unit.
 - 2. Fan Belts: One set(s) for each air-handling unit fan if utilized.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance: Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and clearances of mechanical rooms, access spaces, electrical, and natural gas services with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- C. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period:
 - a. For Compressor: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. For Parts: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. For Labor: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
 - d. Furnace Heat Exchanger: 10 years.
 - e. Integrated Ignition and Blower Control Circuit Board: Five years.
 - f. Draft-Inducer Motor: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Carrier Corporation.
 2. McQuay International.
 3. Trane; American Standard Companies, Inc.
 4. Johnson Controls Inc.

2.2 INDOOR UNITS

- A. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tubes mechanically expanded into aluminum fins. Comply with ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment." Match size with outdoor unit. Include condensate drain pan with accessible drain outlet.
1. Refrigerant Coil Enclosure: Steel, matching furnace and evaporator coil, with access panel and flanges for integral mounting at or on furnace cabinet and formed plastic or galvanized sheet metal drain pan coated with black asphaltic base paint.
- B. Gas-Fired Furnaces, Condensing
1. General Requirements for Gas-Fired, Condensing Furnaces: Factory assembled, piped, wired, and tested; complying with ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, "Gas-Fired Central Furnaces," and with NFPA 54.
 2. Cabinet: Steel.
 - a. Cabinet interior around heat exchanger shall be factory-installed insulation.
 - b. Lift-out panels shall expose burners and all other items requiring access for maintenance.
 - c. Factory paint external cabinets in manufacturer's standard color.
 - d. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
 3. Type of Gas: Natural.
 4. Heat Exchanger:
 - a. Primary: Aluminized steel.
 - b. Secondary: Polyethylene-coated steel.
 5. Burner:
 - a. Gas Valve: 100 percent safety two-stage main gas valve, main shutoff valve, pressure regulator, safety pilot with electronic flame sensor, limit control, transformer, and combination ignition/fan timer control board.
 - b. Ignition: Electric pilot ignition, with hot-surface igniter or electric spark ignition.
 6. Gas-Burner Safety Controls:
 - a. Electronic Flame Sensor: Prevents gas valve from opening until pilot flame is proven; stops gas flow on ignition failure.

- b. Flame Rollout Switch: Installed on burner box; prevents burner operation.
 - c. Limit Control: Fixed stop at maximum permissible setting; de-energizes burner on excessive bonnet temperature; automatic reset.
7. Combustion-Air Inducer: Centrifugal fan with thermally protected motor and sleeve bearings prepurges heat exchanger and vents combustion products; pressure switch prevents furnace operation if combustion-air inlet or flue outlet is blocked.
 8. Furnace Controls: Solid-state board integrates ignition, heat, cooling, and fan speeds; adjustable fan-on and fan-off timing; terminals for connection to accessories; diagnostic light with viewport.
 9. Vent Material:
 - a. Combination Combustion-Air Intake and Vent: CPVC plastic fitting to combine combustion-air inlet and vent through outside wall or roof as required by drawings.
 - b. CPVC Plastic Vent Materials.
 - 1) CPVC Plastic Fittings: Schedule 40, complying with ASTM F 438, socket type.
 - 2) CPVC Solvent Cement: ASTM F 493.
 - a) CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b) Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Fan: Centrifugal, forward curved, double-width wheel, factory balanced, resilient mounted, direct or belt drive.
1. Motor characteristics such as NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency are specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
 2. Special Motor Features: Single speed, Premium (TM) efficiency, as defined in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment," and with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
- D. Filters: Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2. Pleated 1" throwaway, minimum 90 percent arrestance, and MERV 13.
- E. Disconnect Switch (at unit): Nonfusible type, NEMA enclosure rated for installed environment.

2.3 OUTDOOR UNITS

- A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:
1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
 2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
 - a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
 - b. Refrigerant Charge: R-410A.
 - c. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.

3. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
4. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
5. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
6. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
7. Mounting Base: Concrete.

2.4 CONTROLS

A. Basic Unit Controls:

1. Control-voltage transformer.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat with the following features:
 - a. 7-day programmable scheduling.
 - b. Heat-cool-off switch.
 - c. Fan on-auto switch.
 - d. Fan-speed switch.
 - e. Automatic changeover.
 - f. Exposed set point.
 - g. Exposed indication.
 - h. Degree F indication.
 - i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.
- B. Refrigerant Line: Refer to Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping".
- C. Disconnect Switch (at unit): Nonfusible type, NEMA enclosure rated for installed environment.

2.6 CAPACITIES AND CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Refer to equipment schedules on drawings.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine factory-installed insulation before unit installation. Reject units that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Examine roughing-in for electric, gas, and refrigerant piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install units level and plumb.
- B. Suspended Units: Suspend from structure using threaded rods, spring hangers, and building attachments. Secure rods to unit hanger attachments. Adjust hangers so unit is level and plumb.
- C. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.
- D. Install roof-mounted, compressor-condenser components on equipment supports specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Anchor units to supports with removable, cadmium-plated fasteners.
- E. Install ground-mounted, compressor-condenser components on 4-inch- thick, reinforced concrete base; 4 inches larger on each side than unit. Coordinate anchor installation with concrete base.
- F. Install and connect refrigerant tubing to allow access to unit.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties. Connect gas piping with union or flange and appliance connector valve.
- B. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- C. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.
- D. Duct Connections: Duct installation requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts." Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. Connect supply and return ducts to split-system air-conditioning units with flexible duct connectors. Flexible duct connectors are specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
- E. Install electrical disconnects per code requirements insuring proper clearance and access.
- F. Install gas-fired furnaces and associated fuel and vent features and systems according to NFPA 54.
- G. Controls: Install thermostats at mounting height compliant with ADA guidelines.
- H. Wiring Method: Install control wiring in accessible ceiling spaces and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal control wiring except in unfinished spaces.
- I. Vent and Outside-Air Connection, Condensing, Gas-Fired Furnaces: Connect plastic piping vent material to furnace connections and extend outdoors. Terminate vent outdoors with a cap and in an arrangement that will protect against entry of birds, insects, and dirt.
 - 1. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
 - 2. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

3. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
 - a. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
 - b. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
 - c. Requirements for Low-Emitting Materials:
 - 1) CPVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 490 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 2) Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - 3) Solvent cement and adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
 4. Slope pipe vent back to furnace or to outside terminal.
- J. Connect refrigerant tubing to refrigerant coil in furnace and to air-cooled, compressor-condenser unit.
1. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- K. Comply with requirements in Section 232300 "Refrigerant Piping" for installation and joint construction of refrigerant piping.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
 2. Perform electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection.
 3. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems with refrigerant and oil and test for leaks. Repair leaks, replace lost refrigerant and oil, and retest until no leaks exist.
 4. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation, product capability, and compliance with requirements.
 5. Verify that fan wheel is rotating in the correct direction and is not vibrating or binding.
 6. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
 3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls

and equipment.

- D. Verify that vibration isolation and flexible connections properly dampen vibration transmission to structure.
- E. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.
 - 1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - a. Inspect for physical damage to unit casings.
 - b. Verify that access doors move freely and are weathertight.
 - c. Clean units and inspect for construction debris.
 - d. Verify that all bolts and screws are tight.
 - e. Adjust vibration isolation and flexible connections.
 - f. Verify that controls are connected and operational
- B. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
- C. Measure and record airflows.
- D. Verify proper operation of capacity control device.
- E. After startup and performance test, lubricate bearings and adjust belt tension.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260500

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Any changes or additional costs to other trades or to the project caused by a substitution, even if approved, shall be borne by the trade making the substitution.
- B. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
 - 2. Sleeve seals.
 - 3. Grout.
 - 4. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

- A. Any equipment or material submitted which is not in accordance with the specification requirements because of standard shop practice or other reasons, shall be specifically noted in the letter of transmittal including all points of variance. If the submittals are not marked in this way, the Contractor remains responsible to execute his work in accordance with the contract documents even if such submittals are approved.
- B. The Architect's approval of submittals indicates general compliance with the design concept, but shall not be considered as permitting any departure from the contract documents. Nor shall it relieve the Contractor's responsibility for any errors in the submittal, such as in details, dimensions, materials, etc.
- C. If requested, the Contractor shall provide samples of materials or equipment he proposes to furnish. Such samples shall remain the property of the Contractor and will be returned before contract closeout.
- D. Contractor shall submit dimensioned shop drawings of all electrical and telephone room layouts, and any other locations where electrical equipment is grouped. Shop drawings shall show relationship of electrical equipment with the building structure and equipment of other trades. Shop drawings shall also be provided for the following systems:
 - 1. Telephone and data systems
 - 2. Fire alarm system
 - 3. Public address and sound systems
 - 4. Lightning protection system
 - 5. Lighting control systems

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide product by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 3. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
 - 4. Pressure Plates: Plastic or Carbon Steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 - 5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260519

LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Building wires and cables rated 2000 V and less.
 - 2. Wires and cables for PV systems rated 2000 V and less.
 - 3. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 2000 V and less.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 260513 "Medium-Voltage Cables" for single-conductor and multiconductor cables, cable splices, and terminations for electrical distribution systems with 2001 to 35,000 V.
 - 2. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.
 - 3. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cabling used for voice and data circuits.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- C. Comply with UL 1277, UL 1685, and NFPA 70 for Type TC-ER cable used in VFC circuits.
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658.
 - 1. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for Type THW Type THW-2 Type THHN/THWN-2 Type XHHW-2 Type UF Type USE and Type SO.
- E. Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70/ICEA S-95-658 for armored cable, Type AC metal-clad cable, Type MC mineral-insulated, metal-sheathed cable, Type MI nonmetallic-sheathed cable, Type NM Type SE Type SO and Type USE with ground wire.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Feeders: Copper for feeders smaller than No. 4 AWG. Conductors shall be solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger. Aluminum is not allowed unless specifically stated on the plans.
- C. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- D. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 10 AWG and larger.
- E. VFC Output Circuits Cable: Extra-flexible stranded for all sizes.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.

- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Feeders Installed below Raised Flooring: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- H. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- I. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."
- G. Complete cable tray systems installation according to Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems" prior to installing conductors and cables.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
 - 1. Use oxide inhibitor in each splice, termination, and tap for aluminum conductors.

- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor, and identify as spare conductor.

3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

1. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
 - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
 - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
 - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
 - 3) Thermographic survey.
 - c. Inspect compression applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
 - d. Inspect for correct identification.
 - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
 - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor with respect to ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
 - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
 - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
2. Consider the cost and benefit of infrared scanning of cable and conductor splices before retaining "Initial Infrared Scanning" Subparagraph below.
3. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
 - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

- B. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:
 - 1. Procedures used.
 - 2. Results that comply with requirements.
 - 3. Results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment.
- B. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:
 - 1. Underground distribution grounding.
 - 2. Ground bonding common with lightning protection system.
 - 3. Foundation steel electrodes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. As-Built Data: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
 - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Grounding Bus: Predrilled rectangular bars of annealed copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V and shall be Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
- D. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- E. Beam Clamps: Mechanical type, terminal, ground wire access from four directions, with dual, tin-plated or silicon bronze bolts.

- F. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- G. Cable Tray Ground Clamp: Mechanical type, zinc-plated malleable iron.
- H. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- I. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- J. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- K. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.
- L. Service Post Connectors: Mechanical type, bronze alloy terminal, in short- and long-stud lengths, capable of single and double conductor connections.
- M. Signal Reference Grid Clamp: Mechanical type, stamped-steel terminal with hex head screw.
- N. Straps: Solid copper, cast-bronze clamp. Rated for 600 A.
- O. Tower Ground Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal one-piece clamp.
- P. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.
- Q. Water Pipe Clamps:
 - 1. Mechanical type, two pieces with zinc-plated bolts.
 - a. Material: Die-cast zinc alloy.
 - b. Listed for direct burial.
 - 2. U-bolt type with malleable-iron clamp and copper ground connector rated for direct burial.

2.4 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel; 3/4 inch by 10 feet.
- B. Chemical-Enhanced Grounding Electrodes: Copper tube, straight or L-shaped, charged with nonhazardous electrolytic chemical salts.
 - 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.
- C. Ground Plates: 1/4 inch thick, hot-dip galvanized.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 2/0 AWG minimum.
 - 1. Bury at least 24 inches below grade.
 - 2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.
- D. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 6 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.
- E. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

- A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

3.3 GROUNDING SEPARATELY DERIVED SYSTEMS

- A. Generator: Install grounding electrode(s) at the generator location. The electrode shall be connected to the equipment grounding conductor and to the frame of the generator.

3.4 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches will extend above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- C. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to

ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, stranded, hard-drawn copper bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

- D. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.5 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 2. Lighting circuits.
 3. Receptacle circuits.
 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 9. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.
- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service unless otherwise indicated.

- G. Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.
- H. Metallic Fences: Comply with requirements of IEEE C2.
 - 1. Grounding Conductor: Bare copper, not less than No. 8 AWG.
 - 2. Gates: Shall be bonded to the grounding conductor with a flexible bonding jumper.
 - 3. Barbed Wire: Strands shall be bonded to the grounding conductor.

3.6 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Bonding Common with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
 - 1. Ground Ring: If lightning protection system is specified, install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.
 - a. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
 - b. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches from building's foundation.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
 - 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least three rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.
 - 1. Install at least one test well for each service unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.
- E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
 - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

- F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes; use a bolted clamp connector or bolt a lug-type connector to a pipe flange by using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- H. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.
- I. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; use a minimum of 20 feet of bare copper conductor not smaller than required by section 250 of the NEC.
1. If concrete foundation is less than 20 feet long, coil excess conductor within base of foundation.
 2. Bond grounding conductor to reinforcing steel in at least four locations and to anchor bolts. Extend grounding conductor below grade and connect to building's grounding grid or to grounding electrode external to concrete.
- J. Concrete-Encased Grounding Electrode (Ufer Ground): Fabricate according to NFPA 70; using electrically conductive coated steel reinforcing bars or rods, at least 20 feet long. If reinforcing is in multiple pieces, connect together by the usual steel tie wires or exothermic welding to create the required length.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Perform tests and inspections.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground-rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- F. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- H. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 3 ohm(s).
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.
 6. Manhole Grounds: 10 ohms.
- I. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260529

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
- 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

- a. Hangers.
- b. Steel slotted support systems.
- c. Nonmetallic support systems.
- d. Trapeze hangers.
- e. Clamps.
- f. Turnbuckles.
- g. Sockets.
- h. Eye nuts.
- i. Saddles.
- j. Brackets.

- 2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

- 1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
- 2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
- 3. Nonmetallic slotted-channel systems.
- 4. Equipment supports.

5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include adjustable motor bases, rails, and frames for equipment mounting.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for electrical systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of trapeze hangers.
2. Include design calculations for seismic restraints.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Lighting fixtures.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Projectors.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Seismic Performance: Hangers and supports shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the supported equipment and systems will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 - 1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
 - 2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Material: Plain steel.
 - 2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 4. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 5. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
 - 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
 - 7. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 8. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 - 9. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
 - 10. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
 4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
 5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
 6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
 7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.
- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems unless requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- D. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.
- E. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
 - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
 - 6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts.
 - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
 - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that comply with seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

- B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete.
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base as follows:
 - 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260533

RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
 - 2. Nonmetal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
 - 3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
 - 5. Surface raceways.
 - 6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
 - 7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.
 - 8. Floorboxes

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.
- B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.
- C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For surface raceways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
 - 1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
 - 2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

- C. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components, from manufacturer.
 - 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 - 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 - 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
 - 4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
- C. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.
- D. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
- E. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.
 - 1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
 - 2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch, minimum.
- F. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
- G. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
- H. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.
- I. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
 - 1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
 - 2. Fittings for EMT:
 - a. Material: Steel.
 - b. Type: compression.
 - 3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
 - 4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch, with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- J. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
- C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
- D. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
- E. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
- F. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.
- G. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
- H. RTRC: Comply with UL 1684A and NEMA TC 14.
- I. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
- J. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- K. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70. Provide NEMA 3R for exterior locations.
 - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- C. Wireway Covers: Screw-cover type unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.

- C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.
- D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- E. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.
- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.
- D. Verify color of surface raceways with architect unless color is specifically noted on drawings.
- E. Where power receptacles and data/communications devices are located side by side, the surface raceway shall be Wiremold dual compartment V2400D Base and Blank Cover or approved equal.
- F. Conduit shall not be used for surface raceways except in unfinished spaces, unless specifically noted otherwise on plans.

2.6 FLOORBOXES

- A. Boxes in slab on-grade concrete floors:
 - 1. Floor boxes shall be multiservice steel boxes designed for use in concrete floor slabs.
 - 2. (FP) Floor Plug floor box for Power and Communications: Provide Wiremold RFB4E six-compartment multi-service recessed floor box including appropriate plates for four voice/data jacks and two duplex NEMA 5-20 receptacles. Route a minimum of one 3/4" conduit for power and two 1-1/4" conduits for data to each floorbox unless noted otherwise.
 - 3. (AV) Power, Data and Audio/Visual Floorbox: Provide Wiremold RFB6 Series equivalent floorbox. Route a minimum of one 3/4" conduit for power and three 1-1/4" conduits to each AV floorbox for communications cabling.
 - 4. (FF) Furniture Feed Floorbox: Provide Wiremold floorbox with separate conduits for power and data. Conduit shall be a minimum of 3/4" for power and two 1-1/4" for communications routed to accessible area. Conductors for modular furniture will be provided by others, and terminated in floor box by electrical contractor. Provide Furniture Feed Cover Assembly.
- B. Floor boxes in all floors not on grade:
 - 1. Electrical contractor shall core-drill slab for poke-through floorboxes. All floorboxes shall maintain the fire rating of the floor.

2. (FP) Power and Data Floorbox: Provide Wiremold 6ATC Fire Rated Poke-Through, or approved equivalent with inserts for communications and two duplex NEMA 5-20 receptacles.
 3. (AV) Power, Data and Audio/Visual Floorbox: Provide Wiremold AV3 Fire Rated Poke-Through floorbox. Route a minimum of one 1-1/4" conduit from floorbox to ceiling cavity above floorbox for AV wiring.
 4. (FF) Furniture Feed Floorbox: Provide Wiremold 6ATCFF Fire Rated Poke-Through floorbox with separate conduits for power and data. Conduit shall be a minimum of one 3/4" for power and two 1-1/4" empty conduits for communications routed to accessible area. Provide Furniture Feed Cover Assembly.
- C. All floorboxes shall include all internal barriers, covers, device plates and other components necessary for a complete installation.

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

- A. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.
- B. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- C. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- D. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- E. Metal Floor Boxes:
 1. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb. Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- G. Paddle Fan Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of paddle fan weighing 70 lb.
 1. Listing and Labeling: Paddle fan outlet boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- J. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- K. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep.
- L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R as appropriate for the application with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.

2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.8 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

C. Fiberglass Handholes and Boxes: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with frame and covers of polymer concrete.

1. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
2. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with integral closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
3. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
4. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
5. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
6. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
7. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.

2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

- A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
 2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
 3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC,.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
 5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
- B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
 2. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:
 - a. Loading dock.
 - b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
 - c. Mechanical rooms.
 3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
 4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
 5. Damp or Wet Locations: IMC.
 6. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.
- C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.
- D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.
 1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
 3. EMT: Use compression, fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
 4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.
- E. Install nonferrous conduit or tubing for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.
- F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.
- G. Surface raceway shall only be used on existing walls where construction type prohibits installation of EMT or MC cable inside wall (concrete or brick walls, for example).

- H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- B. Keep raceways at least 6 inches away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- C. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- E. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- F. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches of changes in direction.
- G. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- H. Support conduit within 12 inches of enclosures to which attached.
- I. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot intervals.
 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 2 inches of concrete cover in all directions.
 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
 5. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, before rising above floor.
- J. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- K. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- L. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- M. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

- N. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- O. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- P. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- Q. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb tensile strength. Leave at least 24 inches of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- T. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
 - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
 - 2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
 - 3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- U. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.
- V. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
 - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet.
 - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
 - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F temperature change.
 - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F temperature change.
 - d. Attics: 135 deg F temperature change.
 - 3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F of temperature change for metal conduits.
 - 4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
 - 5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

- W. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
 - 1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
 - 2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- Y. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- Z. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- AA. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- BB. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.
- CC. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.
- DD. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.
- EE. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

- A. Direct-Buried Conduit:
 - 1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches in nominal diameter.
 - 2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
 - 4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
 - 5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.
 - a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches on each side of the coupling.
 - b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Warning Planks: Bury warning planks approximately 12 inches above direct-buried conduits but a minimum of 6 inches below grade. Align planks along centerline of conduit.
7. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch sieve to No. 4 sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
 1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
 2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260544

SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
 - 2. Sleeve-seal systems.
 - 3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Silicone sealants.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:
 - 1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
 - 2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.
- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
 - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
 - 2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
 - 3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.1

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS
- A. Comply with NECA 1.
 - B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
 - C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
 - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 - D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 - 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 - 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
 - E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 260553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Identification for raceways.
2. Identification of power and control cables.
3. Identification for conductors.
4. Underground-line warning tape.
5. Warning labels and signs.
6. Instruction signs.
7. Equipment identification labels, including arc-flash warning labels.
8. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.

- B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

- C. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
 - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage.
- B. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at More Than 600 V:
 - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: "DANGER - CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING."

2.3 LABELS

- A. Self-Adhesive Labels:
 - 1. Preprinted, 3-mil-thick, polyester flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
 - a. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized to fit the raceway diameter, such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
 - 2. Polyester, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil-thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Nominal Size: 3.5-by-5-inch.
 - 3. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 - 4. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES:

- A. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches long, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceways or cables they identify, and that stay in place by gripping action.

- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameters of and shrunk to fit firmly around cables they identify. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F. Comply with UL 224.

2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS:

A. Underground-Line Warning Tape

1. Tape:
 - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical utility lines.
 - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
 - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
2. Color and Printing:
 - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
 - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
 - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".

2.6 Tags

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, 0.015 inch thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory screened permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- C. Write-On Tags:
 1. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment to raceway, conductor, or cable.
 2. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
 3. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

2.7 Signs

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches.

B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches.

C. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:
 - a. For signs up to 20 sq. inches, minimum 1/16-inch.
 - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. inches, 1/8 inch thick.
 - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
 - d. Self-adhesive.
 - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.8 CABLE TIES

A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi.
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F.
5. Color: Black.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Attach signs and plastic labels that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
- G. Attach plastic raceway and cable labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- H. Cable Ties: For attaching tags. Use general-purpose type, except as listed below:
 - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
 - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.
- I. Painted Identification: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.
- J. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags: Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- K. System Identification Color-Coding Bands for Raceways and Cables: Each color-coding band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.
- L. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds 16 inches overall.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Concealed Raceways, Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Tape and stencil 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers over orange background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch-high black letters on 20-inch centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply stripes to the following finished surfaces:
1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
 2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
 3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- B. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use color-coding conductor tape to identify the phase.
1. Color-Coding for Phase- Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded service feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
 - a. Color shall be factory applied or field applied for sizes larger than No. 8 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit.
 - b. In existing buildings, contractor shall match color existing color codes for each phase.
 - c. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Black.
 - 2) Phase B: Red.
 - 3) Phase C: Blue.
 - d. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - 1) Phase A: Brown.
 - 2) Phase B: Orange.
 - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
 - e. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, More Than 600 V: For conductors in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes, use nonmetallic preprinted tags colored and marked to indicate phase, and a separate tag with the circuit designation.
- D. Install instructional sign, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors using adhesive-film-type labels.
- E. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.

2. Use system of marker-tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- F. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
1. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
 2. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- G. Workspace Indication: Install floor marking tape to show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- H. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Self-adhesive warning labels.
1. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.
 2. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
 3. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
 4. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power-transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- I. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive thermal transfer vinyl labels.
1. Comply with NFPA 70E and ANSI Z535.4.
 2. Comply with Section 260574 "Overcurrent Protective Device Arc-Flash Study" requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- J. Operating Instruction Signs: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
- K. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
1. Labeling Instructions:
 - a. Indoor Equipment: Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch-high letters on 1-1/2-inch-high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
 - b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

- d. Unless labels are provided with self-adhesive means of attachment, fasten them with appropriate mechanical fasteners that do not change the NEMA or NRTL rating of the enclosure.
2. Equipment To Be Labeled:
- a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
 - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
 - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
 - d. Switchgear.
 - e. Switchboards.
 - f. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation shown on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
 - g. Substations.
 - h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
 - i. Motor-control centers.
 - j. Enclosed switches.
 - k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
 - l. Enclosed controllers.
 - m. Variable-speed controllers.
 - n. Power-transfer equipment.
 - o. Contactors.
 - p. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
 - q. Battery-inverter units.
 - r. Battery racks.
 - s. Monitoring and control equipment.
 - t. UPS equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262416

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- F. SPD: Surge protective device.
- G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
 - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
 - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.

2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding minus 22 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. SPD Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.
- F. Enclosures: Flush and Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
 1. In finished spaces, all panelboards shall be installed flush-mounted in the wall. Panelboards shall only be installed surface mounted in electrical rooms, mechanical rooms and janitor closets.
 2. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

- a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
3. Height: 84 inches maximum.
 4. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 5. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
 6. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 7. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 8. Finishes:
 - a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Galvanized steel.
- G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Copper.
 - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
 - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
 5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
 6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
 7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Copper.
 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.

7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- I. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- J. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.
 1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.
- L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
 2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 POWER PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.
- B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- C. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Bolt-on circuit breakers or plug-in types with a positive locking feature.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers or plug-in types with a positive locking feature.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
- B. Mains: Circuit breaker or lugs only as indicated on schedule.

- C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- D. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
 - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
 - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
 - c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:
 - a. RMS sensing.
 - b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
 - c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
 - d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
 - e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
 - f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
 - g. Field-Adjustable Settings:
 - 1) Instantaneous trip.
 - 2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - 3) Long and short time adjustments.
 - 4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.
 - 4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 - 6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 - 7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
 - 8. Subfeed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
 - 9. MCCB Features and Accessories:
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
 - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
 - d. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
 - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.

2.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in transparent card holder.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.
- D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
 - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces.

Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Floor-mounted panelboards shall be installed on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
 - 2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- E. Top most switch or breaker when in on position shall not be higher than 79 inches above finished floor or grade.
- F. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- G. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- H. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
 - 1. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- J. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- K. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- L. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- M. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.
 2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
 4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262726

WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Straight-blade convenience, hospital-grade, isolated-ground, and tamper-resistant receptacles.
2. USB charger devices.
3. GFCI receptacles.
4. SPD receptacles.
5. Hazardous (classified) location receptacles.
6. Twist-locking receptacles.
7. Pendant cord-connector devices.
8. Cord and plug sets.
9. Toggle switches.
10. Decorator-style convenience.
11. Wall switch sensor light switches with dual technology sensors.
12. Wall switch sensor light switches with passive infrared sensors.
13. Wall switch sensor light switches with ultrasonic sensors.
14. Digital timer light switches.
15. Residential devices.
16. Wall-box dimmers.
17. Wall plates.
18. Floor service outlets.
19. Poke-through assemblies.
20. Prefabricated multioutlet assemblies.
21. Service poles.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Abbreviations of Manufacturers' Names:

1. Cooper: Cooper Wiring Devices; Division of Cooper Industries, Inc.
2. Hubbell: Hubbell Incorporated: Wiring Devices-Kellems.
3. Leviton: Leviton Mfg. Company, Inc.
4. Pass & Seymour: Pass& Seymour/Legrand.

B. BAS: Building automation system.

C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

- D. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- E. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- F. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.
- G. SPD: Surge protective device.
- H. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: Only when requested by architect.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
 - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
 - 2. Devices shall comply with the requirements in this Section.
- D. Devices for Owner-Furnished Equipment:
 - 1. Receptacles: Match plug configurations.
 - 2. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.
- E. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 STRAIGHT-BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
- B. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement sd, and FS W-C-596.
 - 1. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
 - 1. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
 - 1. Description: Labeled and complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

2.3 USB CHARGER DEVICES

- A. Tamper-Resistant, USB Charger Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 1310, and FS W-C-596.
 - 1. Description: Single-piece, rivetless, nickel-plated, all-brass grounding system. Nickel-plated, brass mounting strap.
 - 2. USB Receptacles: Dual, Type A, minimum 3-amp output.
 - 3. Line Voltage Receptacles: Dual, two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
- B. Hospital-Grade, USB Charger Receptacles: 125 V, 20 A; comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498 Supplement sd, UL 1310, and FS W-C-596.
 - 1. Description: Labeled and complying with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.
 - 2. USB Receptacles: Dual, Type A, minimum 3-amp output.
 - 3. Line Voltage Receptacles: Dual, two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.

2.4 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description:
 - 1. 125 V, 20 A, straight blade, feed-through type.
 - 2. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
 - 3. Include indicator light that shows when the GFCI has malfunctioned and no longer provides proper GFCI protection.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:
- C. Tamper-Resistant, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles:
- D. Hospital-Grade, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles: Comply with UL 498 Supplement sd.

2.5 TOGGLE SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
 - 1. Description: Single pole or double pole and three-way or four way switches as indicated on plans.
- C. Key-Operated Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A.
 - 1. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
- D. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary-Contact, Center-off Switches: 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.

2.6 WALL SWITCH SENSOR LIGHT SWITCH, DUAL TECHNOLOGY

- A. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using dual technology.
 - 1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 A at 277-V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120-V ac.
 - 2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
 - 3. Adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes.
 - 4. Able to be locked to either Automatic-On or Manual-On mode.
 - 5. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
 - 6. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.7 WALL SWITCH SENSOR LIGHT SWITCH, PASSIVE INFRARED

- A. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using passive infrared technology.
 - 1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 A at 277-V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120-V ac.
 - 2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
 - 3. Adjustable time delay of 30 minutes.
 - 1. Able to be locked to either Automatic-On or Manual-On mode.
 - 2. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
 - 3. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.8 WALL SWITCH SENSOR LIGHT SWITCH, ULTRASONIC

- A. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination, lighting-control sensor and conventional switch lighting-control unit using ultrasonic technology.
 - 1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 A at 277-V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120-V ac.
 - 2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.
 - 3. Adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes.
 - 1. Able to be locked to either Automatic-On or Manual-On mode.
 - 2. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc.
 - 3. Comply with NEMA WD 1, UL 20, and FS W-S-896.

2.9 DIGITAL TIMER LIGHT SWITCH

- A. Description: Switchbox-mounted, combination digital timer and conventional switch lighting-control unit, with backlit digital display, with selectable time interval in 10-minute increments.
 - 1. Rated 960 W at 120-V ac for tungsten lighting, 10 A at 120-V ac or 10 A at 277-V ac for fluorescent or LED lighting, and 1/4 hp at 120-V ac.
 - 2. Integral relay for connection to BAS.

2.10 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. In all locations, contractor or lighting supplier shall verify compatibility of dimmer control with fixtures to be supplied.
- B. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- C. Control: Continuously adjustable with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- D. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.
 - 1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices.
- E. LED Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with LED lamps; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.11 WALL PLATES

- A. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.
 - 1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
 - 2. Material for Finished Spaces: Coordinate with architect for color and material. Where plastic is required, plates shall be unbreakable nylon.
- B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant thermoplastic with lockable cover.

2.12 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

- A. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.
- B. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.
- C. Service Plate: Round, with satin finish, verify color with architect.
- D. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Blank cover with bushed cable opening.

2.13 POKE-THROUGH ASSEMBLIES

A. Description:

1. Factory-fabricated and -wired assembly of below-floor junction box with multichanneled, through-floor raceway/firestop unit and detachable matching floor service-outlet assembly.
2. Comply with UL 514 scrub water exclusion requirements.
3. Service-Outlet Assembly: Flush type with four simplex receptacles and space for four RJ-45 jacks complying with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."
4. Size: Selected to fit nominal 6-inch cored holes in floor and matched to floor thickness.
5. Fire Rating: Unit is listed and labeled for fire rating of floor-ceiling assembly.
6. Wiring Raceways and Compartments: For a minimum of four No. 12 AWG conductors and a minimum of four, four-pair cables that comply with requirements in Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

2.14 PREFABRICATED MULTIOUTLET ASSEMBLIES

A. Description:

1. Two-piece surface metal raceway, with factory-wired multioutlet harness.
2. Components shall be products from single manufacturer designed for use as a complete, matching assembly of raceways and receptacles.

B. Raceway Material: Metal, with manufacturer's standard finish.

C. Multioutlet Harness:

1. Receptacles: 15-A, 125-V, NEMA WD 6 Configuration 5-15R receptacles complying with NEMA WD 1, UL 498, and FS W-C-596.
2. Receptacle Spacing: 6 inches.
3. Wiring: No. 12 AWG solid, Type THHN copper, two circuit, connecting alternating receptacles.

2.15 FINISHES

A. Device Color:

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: As selected by Architect unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
3. Standby Power System Receptacles: Orange.

B. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 INSTALLATION**

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
 - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
 - 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailing existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
 - 1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 - 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
 - 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
 - 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
 - 6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
 - 7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
 - 8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
 - 9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
- E. Receptacle Orientation:
 - 1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up.

2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.
- F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.
- G. Dimmers:
1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
 2. Verify that dimmers used for fan-speed control are listed for that application.
 3. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.
- H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.
- I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.
- J. When installing occupancy sensors, consideration shall be given to the location of the sensor, potential obstructions and occupant locations. Sensors shall not be located behind doors, columns, furniture or other obstructions that would reduce the sensor's ability to sense motion. If sensors are not as specified and are not located where indicated on plans, the contractor will be responsible for ensuring adequate operation of the sensors. The Architect's interpretation of adequate sensor operation will be final.

3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through-type GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.

3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:
1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Test straight-blade hospital-grade convenience outlets for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than 4 oz..
- F. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262813**FUSES****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
 - a. Control circuits.
 - b. Motor-control centers.
 - c. Panelboards.
 - d. Switchboards.
 - e. Enclosed controllers.
 - f. Enclosed switches.
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
 - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
 - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
 2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
 3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
 4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F, apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
 - 1. Service Entrance: Class T, fast acting.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 262816

ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Fusible switches.
 - 2. Nonfusible switches.
 - 3. Receptacle switches.
 - 4. Shunt trip switches.
 - 5. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
 - 6. Molded-case switches.
 - 7. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. NC: Normally closed.
- B. NO: Normally open.
- C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
 - 1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Current and voltage ratings.
 - 3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
 - 4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
 - 1. Single throw.
 - 2. Three pole.
 - 3. 240 or 600-V AC as required by the load.
 - 4. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:
 - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 - 5. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 - 6. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Square D
- B. Cutler Hammer
- C. Siemens
- D. General Electric

- E. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- F. Accessories:
 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
 3. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
 4. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
 5. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

2.4 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

- A. Circuit breakers shall be constructed using glass-reinforced insulating material. Current carrying components shall be completely isolated from the handle and the accessory mounting area.
- B. Circuit breakers shall have a toggle operating mechanism with common tripping of all poles, which provides quick-make, quick-break contact action. The circuit-breaker handle shall be over center, be trip free, and reside in a tripped position between on and off to provide local trip indication. Circuit-breaker escutcheon shall be clearly marked on and off in addition to providing international I/O markings. Equip circuit breaker with a push-to-trip button, located on the face of the circuit breaker to mechanically operate the circuit-breaker tripping mechanism for maintenance and testing purposes.
- C. The maximum ampere rating and UL, IEC, or other certification standards with applicable voltage systems and corresponding interrupting ratings shall be clearly marked on face of circuit breaker. Circuit breakers shall be 100 percent rated or series rated as indicated on the Drawings. Circuit breaker/circuit breaker combinations for series connected interrupting ratings shall be listed by UL as recognized component combinations. Any series rated combination used shall be marked on the end-use equipment along with the statement "Caution - Series Rated System. _____ Amps Available. Identical Replacement Component Required."
- D. MCCBs shall be equipped with a device for locking in the isolated position.
- E. Standards: Comply with UL 489 and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.
- F. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current thermal element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
- G. Adjustable, Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
- H. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Field-replaceable rating plug, rms sensing, with the following field-adjustable settings:
 1. Instantaneous trip.
 2. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 3. Long- and short-time time adjustments.

4. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I-squared t response.
- I. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller, and let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
- J. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker and trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
- K. Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Circuit Breakers: Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
- L. Ground-Fault Equipment-Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: With Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
- M. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.

2.5 MOLDED-CASE SWITCHES

- A. Description: MCCB with fixed, high-set instantaneous trip only, and short-circuit withstand rating equal to equivalent breaker frame size interrupting rating.
- B. Features and Accessories:
 1. Standard frame sizes and number of poles.
 2. Lugs:
 - a. Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
 - b. Lugs shall be suitable for 194 deg F (90 deg C) rated wire.

2.6 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized steel (NEMA 250 Type 1).
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts. NEMA 250 Types 7 and 9 enclosures shall be provided with threaded conduit openings in both endwalls.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is

released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.

- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.
- F. NEMA 250 Type 7/9 enclosures shall be furnished with a breather and drain kit to allow their use in outdoor and wet location applications.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
 - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
 - 1. Notify Architect no fewer than 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
 - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
 - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Architect's and Owner's written permission.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
 - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - 3. Kitchen Areas: NEMA 250, stainless steel.
 - 4. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - 5. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- D. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- E. Install fuses in fusible devices.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
 - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
 - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
 - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
 - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
 - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.

- a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - h. Verify that operation and sequencing of interlocking systems is as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - i. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
 - j. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
 - 2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
- B. Tests and Inspections for Molded Case Circuit Breakers:
- 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Verify that equipment nameplate data are as described in the Specifications and shown on the Drawings.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Operate the circuit breaker to ensure smooth operation.
 - f. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
 - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
 - g. Inspect operating mechanism, contacts, and chutes in unsealed units.

2. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - b. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with circuit breaker closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
 - c. Perform a contact/pole resistance test. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
 - d. Perform insulation resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground. Applied potential shall be 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable. Test duration shall be one minute. For units with solid state components, follow manufacturer's recommendation. Insulation resistance values shall be no less than two megohms.
 3. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 263213
ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes packaged engine-generator sets for emergency power supply with the following features:
 - 1. Diesel engine.
 - 2. Unit-mounted cooling system.
 - 3. and remote-mounted control and monitoring.
 - 4. Performance requirements for sensitive loads.
 - 5. Fuel system.
 - 6. Parallel generator sets.
 - 7. Load banks.
 - 8. Outdoor enclosure.
- B. Related Requirements:
 - 1. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine-generator sets.
 - 2. Section 262313 "Paralleling Low-Voltage Switchgear" for controls and paralleling equipment for large or multiple parallel engine generators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.
- B. LP: Liquid petroleum.
- C. EPS: Emergency power supply.
- D. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75 and 1.0 times generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75 and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include air flow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cfm at 0.8 power factor, with air supply temperature of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F. Provide drawings showing requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to kw rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine-generator set and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer manufacturer and testing agency.

B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For engine-generator set, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails identify center of gravity and total weight including full fuel tank, supplied enclosure, external silencer, subbase-mounted fuel tank, and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine-generator set, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source quality-control reports, including, but not limited to the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.

4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For packaged engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
 - b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
 - c. Training plan.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating but no fewer than one of each.
2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 3 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged generator sets and auxiliary components through one source from a single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Seismic Performance: Engine-generator set housing, subbase fuel tank, engine-generator set, batteries, battery racks, silencers, and sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.
 - 1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
 - 2. Component Importance Factor: 1.5.
- B. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME B15.1.
- C. NFPA Compliance:
 - 1. Comply with NFPA 37.
 - 2. Comply with NFPA 70.
 - 3. Comply with NFPA 99.
 - 4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 emergency power supply system.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.
- E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with current EPA Tier requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.
- F. Noise Emission: Comply with applicable state and local government requirements for maximum noise level at adjacent property boundaries due to sound emitted by generator set including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.
- G. Environmental Conditions: Engine-generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:
 - 1. Ambient Temperature: Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C.
 - 2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
 - 3. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).
- H. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine-generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:

2.3 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

- A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. EPSS Class: Engine-generator set shall be classified as a required by EPA in accordance with NFPA 110.
- D. Induction Method: Naturally aspirated or Turbocharged.
- E. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.
- F. Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier requirements in accordance with current regulations.
- G. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.
 - 1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and generator-set center of gravity.
- H. Capacities and Characteristics:
 - 1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries.
 - 2. Output Connections: Three-phase, four wire.
 - 3. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of component.
- I. Generator-Set Performance:
 - 1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
 - 2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
 - 3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
 - 4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
 - 5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
 - 6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
 - 7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
 - 8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.
- J. Generator-Set Performance for Sensitive Loads:

1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.
 - a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.
2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage from no load to full load.
3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency from no load to full load.
5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to neutral shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.
 - a. Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.
10. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, Type 10, system requirements.

K. Parallel Engine Generators:

1. Automatic reactive output power control and load sharing between generator sets operated in parallel.
2. Automatic regulation, automatic connection to a common bus, and automatic synchronization, with manual controls and instruments to monitor and control paralleling functions.
3. Protective relays required for equipment and personnel safety.
4. Paralleling suppressors to protect excitation systems.
5. Reverse power protection.
6. Loss of field protection.

2.4 ENGINE

- A. Fuel: Fuel oil, Grade DF-2.
- B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.
- C. Maximum Piston Speed for Four-Cycle Engines: 2250 fpm (11.4 m/s).

- D. Lubrication System: The following items are mounted on engine or skid:
1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
 2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
 3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.
- E. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity.
- F. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine-generator-set mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.
1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, ultraviolet-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.
 - a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and noncollapsible under vacuum.
 - b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.
- G. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with remote radiator and integral engine-driven coolant pump. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" for coolant piping.
1. Configuration: Vertical air discharge.
 2. Radiator Core Tubes: Aluminum.
 3. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
 4. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
 5. Fan: Driven by totally enclosed electric motor with sealed bearings.
 6. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
 7. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
- H. Muffler/Silencer: Semicritical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 18 dB at 500 Hz.
 2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be 85 dBA or less.
- I. Air-Intake Filter: Heavy-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.
- J. Starting System: 24-V electric, with negative ground.
1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
 2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
 3. Cranking Cycle: As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified.
 4. Battery: Lead acid, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least three times without recharging.
 5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
 6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 10 deg C regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
 7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
 8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35 A minimum continuous rating.
 9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing and float-charging type designed for lead-acid batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:
 - a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.
 - b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C) to 140 deg F (plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
 - c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
 - d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
 - e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
 - f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1, wall-mounted cabinet.

2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

- A. Comply with NFPA 30.

- B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanizing shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.
- C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.
- D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.
- E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.
- F. Fuel-Oil Storage Tank: Comply with requirements in Section 231313 "Facility Underground Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks" or Section 231323 "Facility Aboveground Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks."
 - 1. Fuel Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills plus fuel for the hours of continuous operation required for the indicated EPSS Class.
 - 2. Duplex Fuel-Oil Transfer Pump: Comply with requirements in Section 231213 "Facility Fuel-Oil Pumps."
- G. Day Tank: Comply with UL 142, freestanding, factory-fabricated fuel tank assembly, with integral, float-controlled transfer pump and the following features:
 - 1. Containment: Integral rupture basin with a capacity of 150 percent of nominal capacity of day tank.
 - a. Leak Detector: Locate in rupture basin and connect to provide audible and visual alarm in the event of day-tank leak.
 - 2. Tank Capacity: As recommended by engine manufacturer for an uninterrupted period of 24 hours' operation at 100 percent of rated power output of engine-generator system without being refilled.
 - 3. Pump Capacity: Exceeds maximum flow of fuel drawn by engine-mounted fuel supply pump at 110 percent of rated capacity, including fuel returned from engine.
 - 4. Low-Level Alarm Sensor: Liquid-level device operates alarm contacts at 25 percent of normal fuel level.
 - 5. High-Level Alarm Sensor: Liquid-level device operates alarm and redundant fuel shutoff contacts at midpoint between overflow level and 100 percent of normal fuel level.
 - 6. Piping Connections: Factory-installed fuel supply and return lines from tank to engine; local fuel fill, vent line, overflow line; and tank drain line with shutoff valve.
 - 7. Redundant High-Level Fuel Shutoff: Actuated by high-level alarm sensor in day tank to operate a separate motor control device that disconnects day-tank pump motor. Sensor shall signal solenoid valve, located in fuel suction line between fuel storage tank and day tank, to close. Both actions shall remain in shutoff state until manually reset. Shutoff action shall initiate an alarm signal to control panel but shall not shut down engine-generator set.
- H. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:
 - 1. Tank level indicator.
 - 2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills, plus fuel for the hours of continuous operation for indicated EPSS class.

3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

- A. Automatic Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of generator set. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, generator set starts. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms.
- B. Manual Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts generator set. The off position of same switch initiates generator-set shutdown. When generator set is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down generator set and initiate alarms.
- C. Comply with UL 508A.
- D. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the generator set. Mounting method shall isolate the control panel from generator-set vibration. Panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery.
- E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel. Panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery.
- F. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, engine gages, instrument transformers, generator disconnect switch or circuit breaker, and other indicated components shall be grouped in a combination control and power panel. Control and monitoring section of panel shall be isolated from power sections by steel barriers. Panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery. Panel features shall include the following:
 1. Wall-Mounting Cabinet Construction: Rigid, self-supporting steel unit complying with NEMA ICS 6. Power bus shall be copper. Bus, bus supports, control wiring, and temperature rise shall comply with UL 891.
 2. Switchboard Construction: Freestanding unit complying with Section 262413 "Switchboards."
 3. Switchgear Construction: Freestanding unit complying with Section 262300 "Low-Voltage Switchgear."
- G. Indicating Devices : As required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:
 1. AC voltmeter.
 2. AC ammeter.
 3. AC frequency meter.
 4. EPS supplying load indicator.
 5. Ammeter and voltmeter phase-selector switches.
 6. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
 7. Engine-coolant temperature gage.

8. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.
 9. Running-time meter.
 10. Current and Potential Transformers: Instrument accuracy class.
- H. Protective Devices and Controls in Local Control Panel: Shutdown devices and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level 1 system, including the following:
1. Start-stop switch.
 2. Overcrank shutdown device.
 3. Overspeed shutdown device.
 4. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
 5. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
 6. Low lube oil pressure shutdown device.
 7. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
 8. Overcrank alarm.
 9. Overspeed alarm.
 10. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
 11. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
 12. Coolant low-level alarm.
 13. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
 14. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
 15. Lamp test.
 16. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 17. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
 18. Generator-voltage adjusting rheostat.
 19. Main fuel tank low-level alarm.
 - a. Low fuel level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for the duration required in "Fuel Tank Capacity" Paragraph in "Diesel Fuel-Oil System" Article.
 20. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 21. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 22. Low-starting air pressure alarm.
 23. Low-starting hydraulic pressure alarm.
 24. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 25. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
 26. Battery low-voltage alarm.
 27. Battery high-voltage alarm.
 28. Generator overcurrent protective device not closed alarm.
- I. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine-generator set battery.
- K. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. An LED labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. Silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

1. Overcrank alarm.
 2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
 3. High engine temperature prealarm.
 4. High engine temperature alarm.
 5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
 6. Overspeed alarm.
 7. Low fuel main tank alarm.
 8. Low coolant level alarm.
 9. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
 11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
 12. Air shutdown damper when used.
 13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
 14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
 15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
 16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel supply alarm.
 17. Lamp test.
 18. Low cranking voltage alarm.
 19. Generator overcurrent protective device not closed.
- L. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator, unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

- A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.
1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.
- B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
 2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
- C. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
 2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

- D. Generator Circuit Breaker: Insulated-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.
 - 1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
 - 2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
 - 3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when generator set is shut down by other protective devices.
 - 4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.
- E. Generator Disconnect Switch: Molded-case type, 100 percent rated.
 - 1. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
 - 2. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip switch when signaled by generator protector or by other protective devices.
- F. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other generator-set protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:
 - 1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other generator-set malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for load shed functions.
 - 2. Under single or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
 - 3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the generator set.
 - 4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.
- G. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.
 - 1. Indicate ground fault with other generator-set alarm indications.
 - 2. Trip generator protective device on ground fault.

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

- A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.
- B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.
- C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.
- D. Range: Provide extended range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.
- E. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

- F. Enclosure: Dripproof.
- G. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.
- H. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.
 - 1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
 - 2. Maintain voltage within 15 percent on one step, full load.
 - 3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
 - 4. Maintain frequency within 5 percent and stabilize at rated frequency within 2 seconds.
- I. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.
- J. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.
- K. Subtransient Reactance: 12 percent, maximum.

2.9 OUTDOOR GENERATOR-SET ENCLOSURE

- A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.
- B. Description: Prefabricated or pre-engineered galvanized-steel-clad, integral structural-steel-framed, walk-in enclosure, erected on concrete foundation.
 - 1. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE 7 for wind loads up to 100 mph (160 km/h).
 - 2. Seismic Design: Comply with seismic requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.
 - 4. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.
 - 5. Lighting: Provide weather resistant LED lighting with 30 footcandles ((330 LUX)) average maintained.
 - 6. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine-generator-set components.
 - 7. Muffler Location: Within enclosure.
- C. Engine Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for 2 hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.
 - 1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
 - 2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
 - 3. Ventilation: Provide temperature-controlled exhaust fan interlocked to prevent operation when engine is running.

- D. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof fixtures within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.
 - 1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.
 - 2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.
- E. Convenience Outlets: Factory wired, GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

2.10 MOTORS

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction random-wound, squirrel cage motor.
- B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.
- C. Service Factor: 1.15.
- D. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- E. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.
- G. Code Letter Designation:
 - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
 - 2. Motors Smaller than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- H. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.
- I. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.

2.11 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

- A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.
 - 1. Material: Standard neoprene separated by steel shims.
- B. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.
 - 1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
 - 2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
 - 3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.

4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

- C. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for vibration isolation and flexible connectors materials for steel piping.
- D. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.
- E. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

2.12 FINISHES

- A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine-generator set using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.
 1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.
- B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine-generator set and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:
 1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
 2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
 3. Full load run.
 4. Maximum power.
 5. Voltage regulation.
 6. Transient and steady-state governing.
 7. Single-step load pickup.
 8. Safety shutdown.
 9. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
 10. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine-generator performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine-generator installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with packaged engine-generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.
- B. Equipment Mounting:
 - 1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
 - 3. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations for remote radiators. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."
- C. Install packaged engine-generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.
- D. Install packaged engine-generator with restrained spring isolators having a minimum deflection of 1 inch (25 mm) on 4-inch- (100-mm-) high concrete base. Secure enclosure to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install Schedule 40, black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.
 - 1. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in Section 232116 Hydronic Piping Specialties."
 - 2. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
 - 3. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) clearance from combustibles.
- F. Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet full size of drain connection with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40, black steel pipe with welded joints.
- G. Installation requirements for piping materials and flexible connectors are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties." Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.
- H. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.
- B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine-generator to allow service and maintenance.

- C. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.
- D. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.
 - 1. Diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
- E. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- F. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90 degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the generator set from a stationary element.
- G. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical and mechanical test listed in the first two subparagraphs as specified in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection
 - 1) Compare equipment nameplate data with drawings and specifications.
 - 2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - 3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
 - 4) Verify the unit is clean.
 - b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests
 - 1) Perform insulation-resistance tests in accordance with IEEE 43.

- a) Machines larger than 200 horsepower (150 kilowatts). Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
 - b) Machines 200 horsepower (150 kilowatts) or less. Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.
 - 2) Test protective relay devices.
 - 3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
 - 4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
 - 5) Conduct performance test in accordance with NFPA 110.
 - 6) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.
2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
 3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.
 - a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
 - b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
 - c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
 - d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.
 4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
 5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine-generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
 6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg (120 kPa). Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
 7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
 8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
 9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
 10. Noise Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from generator-set installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at four locations on the property line, and compare measured levels with required values.
- E. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.
 - F. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the last 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.
 - G. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
 - H. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

- I. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- J. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
- K. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
- L. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
- M. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - 1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - 2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - 3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include quarterly exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Provide parts and supplies same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 263600
TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENT

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes automatic transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:
 - 1. Bypass/isolation switches.
 - 2. Remote annunciator system.
 - 3. Remote annunciator and control system.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
 - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
 - 2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
 - 3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
 - 4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, annunciators, and control panels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer-authorized service representative.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
 - b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications:
 - 1. Member company of NETA.
 - a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:
 - 1. Notify Architect and Owner no fewer than 14 days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
 - 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: 12 months from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.
- C. Comply with NFPA 99.
- D. Comply with NFPA 110.

- E. Comply with UL 1008 unless requirements of these Specifications are stricter.
- F. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.
 - 1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
 - 2. Short-time withstand capability for three cycles. If extended short time withstand ratings are necessary to achieve selective coordination with overcurrent protective devices, then short-time withstand capability shall be 30 cycles.
- H. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.
- I. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.
- J. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a nonfused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.
- K. Service-Rated Transfer Switch:
 - 1. Comply with UL 869A and UL 489.
 - 2. Provide terminals for bonding the grounding electrode conductor to the grounded service conductor.
 - 3. In systems with a neutral, the bonding connection shall be on the neutral bus.
 - 4. Provide removable link for temporary separation of the service and load grounded conductors.
 - 5. Surge Protective Device: Service rated.
 - 6. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1008 for normal bus.
- L. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide overlapping neutral contacts.
- M. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.
- N. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.
- O. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.
- P. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.
 - 1. Float type, rated 2A for generators under 250kW, 10A for generators 250kW and larger..
 - 2. Ammeter to display charging current.
 - 3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.

- Q. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote device.
- R. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable with printed shrinkable sleeve markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 - 1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
 - 2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.
 - 3. Control Wiring: Equipped with lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
- S. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, Type 1 (indoors) or Type 3R (outdoors), complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- B. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
 - 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 5. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
 - 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
 - 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
 - 8. Ground bar.
 - 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- C. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
 - 1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- D. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
 - 1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
 - 2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.

3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
 4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.
- E. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Connect both sources to load momentarily. Transition is controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller.
1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation when transferring between two available power sources.
 2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
 3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.
 - a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
 - b. Automatic transfer-switch controller takes active control of generator to match frequency, phase angle, and voltage.
 - c. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the two sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.
 4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.
- F. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- G. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- H. Electric Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.
- A. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds. For transfer switches serving elevators, the electrical contractor shall install conduit and wiring from ATS to elevator controllers. ATS shall provide an "Impending Transfer" signal to the elevator controllers to stop elevators at a specified floor before power transfer occurs. Electrical contractor shall verify ATS signal time delay with elevator vendor and program ATS accordingly.
- B. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- C. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternate Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.

4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."
8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

D. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5

to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

- A. [<Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>](#)
- B. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
- C. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.
 - 1. Limitation: Switches using contactor-based components are unacceptable.
 - 2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
 - 3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching.
 - 4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
 - 5. Material: Tin-plated aluminum.
 - 6. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type.
 - 7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type.
 - 8. Ground bar.
 - 9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.
- D. -Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
 - 1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
- E. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.
 - 1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
 - 2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
 - 3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
 - 4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.
- F. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Connect both sources to load momentarily. Transition is controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller.
 - 1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation when transferring between two available power sources.
 - 2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
 - 3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.
 - a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.

- b. Automatic transfer-switch controller takes active control of generator to match frequency, phase angle, and voltage.
 - c. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the two sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.
- 4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.
- G. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- H. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.
- I. Electric Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.
- J. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds. For transfer switches serving elevators, the electrical contractor shall install conduit and wiring from ATS to elevator controllers. ATS shall provide an "Impending Transfer" signal to the elevator controllers to stop elevators at a specified floor before power transfer occurs. Electrical contractor shall verify ATS signal time delay with elevator vendor and program ATS accordingly.
- K. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.
- L. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with UL 489 and UL 869A.
- M. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:
 - 1. Controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
 - 2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal and Alternative Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
 - 3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
 - 4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
 - 5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
 - 6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
 - 7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.
 - a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
 - b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exerciser features include the following:
 - a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
 - b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
 - c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

N. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.4 TRANSFER SWITCH ACCESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the

following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:

- a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
 - b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuit for testing and maintenance purposes.
 - c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.
 - d. Transition: Provide open-transition operation when transferring between power sources.
 - e. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
 - f. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
 - g. Manual Control: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by one person in no more than two operations in 15 seconds or less. Operating handles shall be externally operated.
 - h. Automatic and Nonautomatic Control: Automatic transfer-switch controller shall also control the bypass/isolation switch.
 - i. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
 - j. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.
4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

B. Remote Annunciator System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:
 - a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 - b. Switch position.
 - c. Switch in test mode.
 - d. Failure of communication link.
4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.
 - a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
 - b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
 - c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
 - d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

C. Remote Annunciator and Control System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Include the following functions for indicated transfer switches:
 - a. Indication of sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
 - b. Indication of switch position.
 - c. Indication of switch in test mode.
 - d. Indication of failure of digital communication link.
 - e. Key-switch or user-code access to control functions of panel.
 - f. Control of switch-test initiation.
 - g. Control of switch operation in either direction.
 - h. Control of time-delay bypass for transfer to normal source.
3. Malfunction of annunciator, annunciation and control panel, or communication link shall not affect functions of automatic transfer switch. In the event of failure of communication link, automatic transfer switch automatically shall revert to standalone, self-contained operation. Automatic transfer-switch sensing, controlling, or operating function shall not depend on remote panel for proper operation.
4. Remote Annunciation and Control Panel: Solid-state components. Include the following features:
 - a. Controls and indicating lights grouped together for each transfer switch.
 - b. Label each indicating light control group. Indicate transfer switch it controls, location of switch, and load it serves.
 - c. Digital Communication Capability: Matched to that of transfer switches supervised.
 - d. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.
- B. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for emergency and legally required systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:
 - a. Overvoltage.
 - b. Undervoltage.
 - c. Loss of supply voltage.
 - d. Reduction of supply voltage.
 - e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
 - f. Temperature rise.
 - g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
 - h. Overload.
 - i. Contact opening.
 - j. Endurance.
 - k. Short circuit.
 - l. Short-time current capability.
 - m. Receptacle withstand capability.
 - n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.
 - 1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Section 033053 "Miscellaneous Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
 - 3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
 - 4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.
- B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.
- E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, motor controls, control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.
- B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 - 1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
- D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
- E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."
- F. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.
- G. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- H. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquidtight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
 - 1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
 - 2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
 - a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
 - b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
 - c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
 - d. Verify that the unit is clean.
 - e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
 - f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
 - g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
 - h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:
 - 1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
 - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.
 - i. Perform manual transfer operation.
 - j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
 - k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
 - l. Inspect control power transformers.
 - 1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
 - 2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
 - 3) Verify correct functioning of drawout disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.
 - 3. Electrical Tests:
 - a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.
 - b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
 - c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
 - d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
 - e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
 - f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
 - g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:
 - 1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
 - 2) Engine start sequence.
 - 3) Time delay on transfer.
 - 4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.

- 5) Automatic transfer operation.
 - 6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
 - 7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
 - 8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.
4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.
 - a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
 - b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
 - c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
 - d. Perform manual transfer operation.
 5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.
 - a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
 - b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
 - c. Verify time-delay settings.
 - d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
 - e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
 - f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.
 - g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.
 6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.
 - a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.
- D. Coordinate tests with tests of generator and run them concurrently.
 - E. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.
 - F. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - G. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.
 - H. Prepare test and inspection reports.
 - I. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.
- B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.
- C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 265119
LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Interior solid-state luminaires that use LED technology.
 - 2. Lighting fixture supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
 - 4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
 - 5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy efficiency data.
 - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include diagrams for control and signal wiring of relay panel systems or network/distributed type control systems if used on this project.

C. Samples: Only when requested by the architect or engineer.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Lighting luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
 - a. Other luminaires.
 - b. Air outlets and inlets.
 - c. Speakers.
 - d. Sprinklers.
 - e. Access panels.
 - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Mockups: For interior lighting luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PRODUCTS

1.10 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. For all fixtures with screw-in sockets (incandescent sockets, etc.), contractor shall provide and install a compatible LED lamp. Manufacturer shall label fixture with a maximum wattage equal to that of the specified lamp unless noted otherwise
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- D. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

- E. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
- F. CRI of minimum 80.
- G. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output where dimming is shown on plans or in schedule. Contractor is responsible for providing compatible dimming control for all fixture types provided.
- H. Internal driver.

1.11 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts:
 - 1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
 - 2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

1.12 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

1.13 LUMINAIRE FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

EXECUTION

1.14 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before fixture installation. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1.15 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

1.16 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
 - 4. Luminaire mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Secured to outlet box.
 - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
 - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Suspended Luminaire Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches, brace to limit swinging.

2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

- H. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

1.17 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1.18 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1.19 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Contractor shall test operation of all fixtures and controls. Contractor shall program and adjust all components to provide a fully functional system in accordance with owner's requirements.

1.20 ADJUSTING

- A. Contractor shall adjust all fixtures in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations, and as project specific requirements dictate.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 265619
LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
 - 2. Luminaire supports.
 - 3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.
 - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
 - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
 - 3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
 - 4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
 - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
 - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

5. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
6. Photoelectric relays.
7. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Structural members to which luminaires will be attached.
3. Underground utilities and structures.
4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
7. Building features.
8. Vertical and horizontal information.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.
2. Photoelectric relay.

D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.
2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.
- C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- E. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
 - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - 2. Warranty Period: 5 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.
- C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.
- D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- E. CRI of minimum 70 unless noted otherwise.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- C. Diffusers and Globes:
 - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
 - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.
- E. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:
 - 1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 - 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 - 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
- F. Housings:
 - 1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
 - 2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.
- G. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
 - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
 - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
 - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
 - c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.3 FINISHES

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.
- C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 - 2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
 - 3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
 - 4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
- D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
 - 1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
 - 2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
 - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
 - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
 - 3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
 - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.
- G. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- H. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.

3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:

- A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

- A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.
- B. Install on concrete base with top 4 inches above finished grade except where installed on sidewalks. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.6 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch-thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
 - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
 - 3. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
- C. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires and photocell relays and other lighting controls.

3.9 ADJUSTING

- A. Contractor shall aim and adjust all fixtures. Where fixture is to be aimed to illuminate a specific object or surface, contractor shall seek guidance from architect to ensure proper aiming is achieved.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 270500
COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Communications equipment coordination and installation.
 - 2. Sleeves for pathways and cables.
 - 3. Sleeve seals.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Common communications installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of communications equipment:
 - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
 - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
 - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
 - 4. So connecting pathways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for communications items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed.

1.6 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR PATHWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: Hilti CP 653 Speed Sleeve.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.
 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Hilti USA
 - b. STI, Inc.
 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM or NBR interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of pathway or cable.
 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel. Include two for each sealing element.
 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both communications equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

- A. Communications penetrations occur when pathways, cables, wireways, or cable trays penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors 4 inches above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pathway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal pathway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials.
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for communications installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 270526

GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Grounding conductors.
 - 2. Grounding connectors.
 - 3. Grounding busbars.
 - 4. Grounding rods.
 - 5. Grounding labeling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BCT: Bonding conductor for telecommunications.
- B. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- C. TGB: Telecommunications grounding busbar.
- D. TMGB: Telecommunications main grounding busbar.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room signal reference grid. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following:
 - 1. Ground rods.
 - 2. Ground and roof rings.
 - 3. BCT, TMGB, TGBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.
- B. Qualification Data: For Installer, installation supervisor, and field inspector.”
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

- D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
 - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of BCT connection.
 - b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 - 1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 - 2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as ITS Installer to perform the on-site inspection.

1.8 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

- A. No. 6 AWG stranded copper wire from the TGB to the TMGB in the electrical room.
- B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.
 - 1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, solid-listed, Type THHN wire.
 - 2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: No. 6 AWG.
- D. Ladder Racking:
 - 1. Not smaller than No. 6 AWG and not longer than 12 inches. If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with two holes and long barrel for two crimps.

2. Each section of ladder rack shall be bonded to each other as well as back to the TGB.

E. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

- A. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.
- B. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.
 1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.
- C. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.
- D. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.
- E. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Erico Caddy
- B. TMGB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as TMGB and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.
 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- C. TGB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with J-STD-607-A.
 1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
 2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch
 3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.
- D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with J-STD-607-A. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- inch equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 LABELING

- A. Label Manufacture: Brady
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch. Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.
- B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of BCT connection.
- C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with connection of the BCT only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.
- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Comply with J-STD-607-B.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.
 1. The bonding conductors between the TGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
 2. The bonding conductors between the TMGB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

- B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No. 2 AWG minimum.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.
- D. Conductor Support:
 - 1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches .
- E. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:
 - 1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
 - 2. Install without splices.
 - 3. Support at not more than 36-inch. intervals.
 - 4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

3.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

- A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches minimum from wall, 84 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.
- B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.
- C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
 - 2. Pretwist the conductor.
 - 3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all bolted and compression connections.
- D. Primary Protector: Bond to the TMGB with insulated bonding conductor.
- E. Interconnections: Interconnect all TGBs with the TMGB with the telecommunications backbone conductor. If more than one TMGB is installed, interconnect TMGBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The telecommunications backbone conductor and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2

kcmils/linear foot of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG 168 kcmils unless otherwise indicated.

- F. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the telecommunications bonding and grounding system. Install vertically mounted rack grounding busbar unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the TGB No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
- G. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each TGB and TMGB to the vertical steel of the building frame.
- H. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each TGB to the ground bar of the panelboard.
- I. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the TGB in communications rooms and spaces. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2 when grounding screened, balanced, twisted-pair cables.
- J. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.
- K. Access Floors: Bond all metal parts of access floors to the TGB.
- L. Equipment Room Signal Reference Grid: Provide a low-impedance path between telecommunications cabinets, equipment racks, and the reference grid, using No. 4 AWG bonding conductors.
 - 1. Install the conductors in grid pattern on 4-foot centers, allowing bonding of one pedestal from each access floor tile.
 - 2. Bond the TGB of the equipment room to the reference grid at two or more locations.
 - 3. Bond all conduits and piping entering the equipment room to the TGB at the perimeter of the room.
 - 4. Waveguides and Coaxial Cable:
 - a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the TGB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
 - b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground or roof ring using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.

3.6 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.
- B. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- C. Grounding Manholes and Handholes: Install a driven ground rod through manhole or handhole floor, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches extends above finished floor. If necessary, install ground rod before manhole is placed and provide No. 1/0 AWG bare, tinned-copper conductor from ground rod into manhole through a waterproof sleeve in manhole wall. Protect ground rods passing through concrete floor with a double wrapping of pressure-sensitive insulating tape or heat-shrunk insulating sleeve from 2 inches above to 6 inches below concrete. Seal floor opening with waterproof, nonshrink grout.
- D. Grounding Connections to Manhole Components: Bond exposed-metal parts such as inserts, cable racks, pulling irons, ladders, and cable shields within each manhole or handhole, to ground rod or grounding conductor. Make connections with No. 4 AWG minimum, bonding conductor. Train conductors level or plumb around corners and fasten to manhole walls. Connect grounding conductors to cable armor and cable shields according to written instructions by manufacturer of splicing and termination kits.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.
 - 1. Label TMGB(s) with "fs-TMGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TMGB.
 - 2. Label TGB(s) with "fs-TGB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the TGB.
 - 3. Label the BCT and each telecommunications backbone conductor at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a TMGB and a TGB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.
 - a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.
 - 3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.
 - a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the TMGB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1 A.
- D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the BCT exceeds 5 ohms, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.
- E. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 270544**SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. LEED Submittals:

1. Product Data for Credit EQ 4.1: For sealants, documentation including printed statement of VOC content.
2. Laboratory Test Reports for Credit EQ 4: For sealants, documentation indicating that products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

1.4 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 SLEEVES****A. Manufacture:**

1. Hilti Speed Sleeves CP653
2. STI EZ Path

B. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.**D. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:**

1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and with no side larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch .
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS**A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.**

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel, Stainless steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS**A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.****2.4 GROUT****A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.****B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.****C. Design Mix: 5000-psi 28-day compressive strength.**

- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
 2. Sealant shall have VOC content of 250g or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 3. Sealant shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
 - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
 - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed
 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
 5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
 1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
 2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel, pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 271100

COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Telecommunications mounting elements.
- 2. Backboards.
- 3. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
- 4. Grounding.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 270536 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and accessories.
- 2. Section 271300 "Communications Backbone Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
- 3. Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
- 4. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. LAN: Local area network.
- C. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
- 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

- 1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- B. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For equipment frames from manufacturer.
 1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
 2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions. Base certification on the maximum number of components capable of being mounted in each rack type. Identify components on which certification is based.
 3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
 1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings shall be under the direct supervision of RCDD.
 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Registered Technician, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 3. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as RCDD to perform the on-site inspection.

1.7 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4" by 48" by 96" around the perimeter of the room. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."

2.2 EQUIPMENT FRAMES

- A. Panduit
- B. General Frame Requirements:
 1. Distribution Frames: Freestanding and wall-mounting, modular-steel units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.

2. Module Dimension: Width compatible with EIA 310-D standard, 19-inch panel mounting.
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.

C. Floor-Mounted Racks: Modular-type, steel construction.

1. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.

D. Cable Management for Equipment Frames:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.3 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Rack mounting.
3. LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
4. LED indicator lights for reverse polarity and open outlet ground.
5. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: When protection is lost, circuit opens and cannot be reset.
6. Circuit Breaker and Thermal Fusing: Unit continues to supply power if protection is lost.
7. Close-coupled, direct plug-in line cord.
8. Rocker-type on-off switch, illuminated when in on position.
9. Peak Single-Impulse Surge Current Rating: 33 kA per phase.
10. Protection modes shall be line to neutral, line to ground, and neutral to ground. UL 1449 clamping voltage for all three modes shall be not more than 330 V.

2.4 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:

1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless -type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
2. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide with 9/32-inch holes spaced 1-1/8 inches apart.
3. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Comply with J-STD-607-A.

2.5 LABELING

A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

B. Shall meet the legibility, defacement, exposure and adhesion requirements of UL 969.

- C. Shall be preprinted or computer printed type. Hand written labels are not acceptable.
- D. Where insert type labels are used provide clear plastic cover over label.
- E. Outside plant labels shall be totally waterproof even when submerged.
- F. Approved Manufacturer:
 - 1. Panduit
 - 2. Brady Corporation
 - 3. Equivalent
- G. Equipment Room Copper, Fiber, and Coax Backbone Cable Labels
 - 1. Panduit Part#LS7-75NL-1 or Brady#WML-1231-292
- H. Equipment Room Copper, Fiber, and Coax Horizontal Cable Labels
 - 1. Panduit Part#LS7-75NL-1 or Brady#WML-317-292
- I. Work Area Copper, Fiber, and Coax Riser Cable Labels
 - 1. Panduit Part#LS7-75NL-1 or Brady #WML-317-292
- J. Patch Panel Labels
 - 1. Panduit Part #LS7-38-1 or Brady #CL-111-619

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

- A. Contact telecommunications service provider and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and a housing when so directed by service provider.
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for materials and installation requirements for underground and buried pathways.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.
- C. Backboards: $\frac{3}{4}$ " AC-grade plywood backboards install vertically 6" AFF to 102" AFF. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints. Paint on sides and edges with two coats of fire retardant paint light gray or off white.
- D. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

- E. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.
 - 1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
 - 2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
 - 3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
 - 4. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the equipment room.
- F. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling." Provide Hilti Speed Sleeves for all penetrations.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-B, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.
 - 1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to the grounding bus bar in communications rooms and spaces.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Comply with requirements in Section 099123 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

- C. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A for Class 2, Class 3] [Class 4] level of administration including optional identification requirements of this standard].
- D. The size, color, and contrast of all labels should be selected to ensure that the identifiers are easily read. Labels should be visible during the installation of and normal maintenance of the infrastructure.
- E. Labels should be resistant to the environmental conditions at the point of installation (such as moisture, heat, or ultraviolet light), and should have a design life equal to or greater than that of the labeled component.
- F. All labels shall be printed or generated by a mechanical device.

3.7 TELECOMMUNICATION IDENTIFIERS

- A. All voice and data outlets and patch panels shall be clearly marked using permanent means. Voice and data outlets shall be labeled with: ER/TR Number – Rack/ Wallfield Designation – Rack Unit Location of Patch Panel – Port Number. (ie. XX-A-38-01) Refer to drawings for details
- B. Outlet numbers shall be marked by permanent means on each cable at the outlet and at the TR.

3.8 LABELING PROCEDURES

- A. Visibility and durability
 - 1. The size, color, and contrast of all labels should be selected to ensure that the identifiers are easily read. Labels should be visible during the installation of and normal maintenance of the infrastructure.
 - 2. Labels should be resistant to the environmental conditions at the point of installation (such as moisture, heat, or ultraviolet light), and should have a design life equal to or greater than that of the labeled component.
 - 3. Labels are generally of either the adhesive or insert type. All labels must be legible, resistant to defacement, and maintain adhesion to the application surface.
 - 4. Outside plant labels shall be totally waterproof, even when submerged.
 - 5. Labels applied directly to a cable shall have a clear vinyl wrapping applied over the label and around the cable to permanently affix the label.
 - 6. Other types of labels, such as tie-on labels, may be used. However, the label must be appropriate for the environment in which it is used, and must be used in the manner intended by the manufacturer.
- B. Mechanical generation
 - 1. All cable and faceplate labels shall be printed or generated by a mechanical device.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 271300
COMMUNICATIONS BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pathways.
 - 2. UTP cable.
 - 3. 50/125-micrometer, optical fiber cabling.
 - 4. Coaxial cable.
 - 5. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
 - 6. Cabling identification products.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- B. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- D. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- E. LAN: Local area network.
- F. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.
- G. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.
- B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
1. For all cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
 - a. Nominal OD.
 - b. Minimum bending radius.
 - c. Maximum pulling tension.
- B. Shop Drawings:
1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
 2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
 3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
 4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics including the following:
 - a. Cross-connects.
 - b. Patch panels.
 - c. Patch cords.
 5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.
- G. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:
1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
 2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
 3. Device address list.
 4. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings and Cabling Administration Drawings by an RCDD.
 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of an RCDD, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
 3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- F. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
 1. Test optical fiber cable to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
 2. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
 3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

1.11 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing based on plenum rated Category 6 type cable for voice and data. Pricing shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals. The pricing shall breakdown the material and labor into the following categories; workstation (voice, data and pathways), copper riser, fiber riser, ER build-out, TR build-out and project management.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.

- B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
1. J-hooks, and D-rings.
 2. Velcro straps.
 - a. Erico Caddy
- C. Cable Trays:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Panduit
 - b. Cablofil Inc.
 - c. Wiremold, Inc.
 - d. Chatsworth Products
 2. Cable Tray Materials: Metal, suitable for indoors and protected against corrosion by electroplated zinc galvanizing, complying with ASTM B 633, Type 1, not less than 0.000472 inch thick.
 - a. Basket Cable Trays: 6 to 12 inches wide and 2 inches. Wire mesh spacing shall not exceed 2 by 4 inches (50 by 100 mm).
 - b. Ladder Cable Trays: Nominally 12 to 18 inches wide, and a rung spacing of 12 inches.
- D. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

2.2 BACKBOARDS

- A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, 3/4 by 48 by 96 inches. Comply with requirements for plywood backing panels specified in Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry."

2.3 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. General Cable
 2. Belden
 3. Commscope/Systemax
- B. Description: Solid copper 24 AWG, 100-ohm, multi-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair binder groups covered with a black thermoplastic jacket.
1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
 2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1 for performance specifications.
 3. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2
 4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.

2.4 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Panduit

- B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.
- C. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.
- D. Lightning Protection: Lightning protection blocks for all conductors at both ends.
- E. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.
 - 1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.
- F. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.
 - 1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair.
- G. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals.
- H. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in shall be 60 inches and 84 inches in length at Main, Intermediate and Horizontal cross-connects (MC, IC and HC respectively). 80% of the cables shall be 60 inches and 20% shall be 84 inches. At the Work Area Outlet (WAO) the cables shall be 120 inches.
 - 1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
 - 2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

2.5 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
 - 1. Commscope/Systimax
 - 2. Corning
- B. Description: Multimode, laser optimized 50/125-micrometer, OM4 multi strand-fiber optical fiber cable. OSP cable for service entrance and indoor for IDF rooms.
 - 1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
 - 2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
 - 3. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B for detailed specifications.
 - 4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
 - b. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP, complying with NFPA 262.
 - 5. Conductive cable shall be aluminum armored type.
 - 6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
 - 7. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.
- C. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50-125-micrometer cable and yellow for single mode cable.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

2.6 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. Panduit
- B. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.
 1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.
- C. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.
- D. Cable Connecting Hardware:
 1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
 2. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type to comply with equipment termination connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
 3. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

2.7 GROUNDING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems." for grounding conductors and connectors.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
- D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
- E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION**3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES**

- A. Coordinate backbone cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
 2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables within enclosures. Connect to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and TIA/EIA-569-A.
- B. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings." Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
- C. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- D. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- E. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- F. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
 4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.
- G. Backboards: $\frac{3}{4}$ " AC-grade plywood backboards install vertically 6" AFF to 102" AFF. Butt adjacent sheets tightly and form smooth gap-free corners and joints. Paint on sides and edges with two coats of fire retardant paint light gray or off white.
- H. Comply with NECA 1.
- I. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
 3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 5. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 6. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
 7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.
 8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
 10. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot long service loop on each end of cable.
 11. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
- J. UTP Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
 2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.
- K. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:
1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
 2. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
- L. Open-Cable Installation:
1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
 2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway, a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
 3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
- M. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.
- N. Separation from EMI Sources:
1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
 2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
 3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with BICSI TDMM, "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with color coding on T001
- B. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with TIA/EIA-606-A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
 1. Color-code cross-connect fields and apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.
- C. See Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for additional identification requirements. See Evaluations for discussion about TIA/EIA standard as it applies to this Section. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and shall be approved by Fort Worth Independent School District prior to implementation.
- D. Comply with requirements in Division 27 Section "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for cable and asset management software.
- E. Cable Schedule: Install in a prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.
- F. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors.
- G. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
 4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device with name and number of particular device as shown.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- H. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA 606-A, for the following:
1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flexes as cables are bent.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
 1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 3. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 4. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.1. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 - b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:
 - 1) Horizontal and multimode backbone link measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in 1 direction according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
 - 2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- C. Data for each measurement shall be documented. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

- D. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 27 15 00
COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Pathways.
 - 2. UTP cabling.
 - 3. Multiuser telecommunications outlet assemblies.
 - 4. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
 - 5. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
 - 6. Cabling system identification products.
 - 7. Cable management system.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Basket Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of wire mesh bottom and side rails.
- B. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.
- C. Channel Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of a one-piece, ventilated-bottom or solid-bottom channel.
- D. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.
- E. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.
- F. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- G. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.
- H. Ladder Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of two longitudinal side rails connected by individual transverse members (rungs).
- I. LAN: Local area network.
- J. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.
- K. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.
- L. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

- M. Solid-Bottom or Nonventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom without ventilation openings.
- N. Trough or Ventilated Cable Tray: A fabricated structure consisting of longitudinal side rails and a bottom having openings for the passage of air.
- O. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

- A. Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.
 - 1. Refer to project drawings for outlet locations and number of cables per outlet. If number is not identified a minimum of two cables shall be provided to each outlet.
 - 2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
 - 3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
 - 4. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.
- B. A work area includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.
- C. The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet. This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet to the workstation equipment. The maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet in the horizontal cross-connect.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in TIA/EIA-568-B.1, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
 - 1. For all cable, include the following installation data for each type used:
 - a. Nominal OD.
 - b. Minimum bending radius.
 - c. Maximum pulling tension.
- B. Shop Drawings:
 - 1. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules, in software and format selected by Owner.
 - 2. System Labeling Schedules: Electronic copy of labeling schedules that are part of the cabling and asset identification system of the software.
 - 3. Cabling administration drawings and printouts.
 - 4. Wiring diagrams to show typical wiring schematics, including the following:
 - a. Cross-connects.
 - b. Patch panels.
 - c. Patch cords.

5. Cross-connects and patch panels. Detail mounting assemblies, and show elevations and physical relationship between the installed components.
 6. Cable tray layout, showing cable tray route to scale, with relationship between the tray and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements. Include the following:
 - a. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
 - b. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
 - c. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or bottom of ceiling structure.
 - d. Load calculations to show dead and live loads as not exceeding manufacturer's rating for tray and its support elements.
- C. Qualification Data: For Installer, qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector.
- D. Source quality-control reports.
- E. Field quality-control reports.
- F. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contracting Company: Company must be a Certified Panduit Partner.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.
1. Layout Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, Cabling Administration Drawings, and field testing program development by an RCDD.
 2. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of a BICSI Certified Technician who shall be present at all times when work of this section is performed at project site.
 3. Testing Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.
- D. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
- E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- F. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- G. Grounding: Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.
1. Test optical fiber cables to determine the continuity of the strand end to end. Use optical fiber flashlight or optical loss test set.
 2. Test optical fiber cables while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector; including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.

3. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

1.10 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications pathways and cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.
- B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

1.11 Pricing

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing based on plenum rated Category 6 type cable for voice and data. Pricing shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals. The pricing shall breakdown the material and labor into the following categories; workstation (voice, data and pathways), copper riser, fiber riser, ER build-out, TR build-out and project management.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PATHWAYS

- A. General Requirements: Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A.
- B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 6 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.
 1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
 2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings shall be white.
 - a. Erico Caddy
- C. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
 1. Standard work area outlet rough-in will include a 1" conduit to a double gang back box with a single gang reducer plate.

D.

2.2 UTP CABLE

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. General Cable GenSPEED 6500 #7131930
 2. Panduit PUP6504BU-UJ
 3. Belden

4. Commscope/Systimax

B. Description: 100-ohm, 4-pair UTP, formed into 25-pair, binder groups covered with a **white** flame-retardant PVC jacket.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1 and IEC 61156-5.
3. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.
 - b. Communications, Riser Rated: Type CMR, complying with UL 1666.

2.3 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Panduit Corp.

B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

C. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

D. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with CFFPL4 type front removable snap in faceplates.

E. Coordinate subparagraph below with Drawings for quantity of fields.

1. Number of Jacks per Field: Two for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.

F. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded, eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals and shall comply with the rating of the communications cable routed to the assembly. Cords are generally available in lengths to 20 feet (6 m) and longer in 24-inch (600-mm) increments.

G. Patch Cords: Factory-made, four-pair cables in shall be 60 inches. Panduit #UTP28SP5BU

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.
2. Patch cords shall have color-coded boots for circuit identification.

2.4 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Commscope/Systimax
2. Corning

B. Description: Multimode, laser optimized 50/125-micrometer, OM4 multi strand-fiber optical fiber cable intended for indoor use.

1. Comply with ICEA S-83-596 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3 for performance specifications.
3. Comply with TIA/EIA-492AAAA-B for detailed specifications.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444, UL 1651, and NFPA 70 for the following types:
 - a. Plenum Rated, Nonconductive: Type OFNP, complying with NFPA 262.
 - b. Plenum Rated, Conductive: Type OFCP, complying with NFPA 262.
5. Conductive cable shall be aluminum armored type.
6. Maximum Attenuation: 3.50 dB/km at 850 nm; 1.5 dB/km at 1300 nm.
7. Minimum Modal Bandwidth: 160 MHz-km at 850 nm; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm.

C. Jacket:

1. Jacket Color: Aqua for 50-125-micrometer cable and yellow for single mode cable.
2. Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color shall be according to TIA/EIA-598-B.
3. Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inches.

2.5 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Panduit

B. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

C. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch lengths.

D. Cable Connecting Hardware:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of TIA/EIA-604-2, TIA/EIA-604-3-A, and TIA/EIA-604-12. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
2. Quick-connect, simplex and duplex, Type to comply with equipment termination connectors. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.
3. Type SFF connectors may be used in termination racks, panels, and equipment packages.

2.6 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector; four-pair, eight-position modular. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.

B. Workstation Outlets: Four-port-connector assemblies mounted in single faceplate.

1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices."
2. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP and optical fiber work area cords.

2.7 GROUNDING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Erico International

- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.
- C. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Comply with TIA/EIA-606-A and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.
- B. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. The contractor is responsible for coordinating with Fort Worth Independent School District for campus specific labeling requirements.

2.9 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test UTP and optical fiber cables on reels according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
- C. Factory test UTP cables according to TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
- D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to TIA/EIA-526-14-A and TIA/EIA-568-B.3.
- E. Factory-sweep test coaxial cables at frequencies from 5 MHz to 1 GHz. Sweep test shall test the frequency response, or attenuation over frequency, of a cable by generating a voltage whose frequency is varied through the specified frequency range and graphing the results.
- F. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

- A. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters and except in accessible ceiling spaces, in attics, and in gypsum board partitions where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
 1. Install plenum rated cable in all areas.
 2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- B. Wiring Method: Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

- A. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Division 27 Section "Communications Equipment Room Fittings." Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.
- B. Comply with TIA/EIA-569-A for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.
- D. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.
- E. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:
 - 1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
 - 2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
 - 3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
 - 4. Extend conduits 3 inches above finished floor.
 - 5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
 - 1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 - 2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
 - 3. MUTOA shall not be used as a cross-connect point.
 - 4. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:
 - a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
 - b. Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet from communications equipment room.
 - 5. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
 - 6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches and not more than 6 inches from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
 - 7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
 - 8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
 - 9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
 - 10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
 - 11. In the communications equipment room, install a 12-foot long service loop on each end of cable.
 - 12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.
- C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with TIA/EIA-568-B.2.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

E. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA/EIA-569-A for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches.
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches.
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
 - a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
 - b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches.
 - c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches.
5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches.
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches.

3.4 GROUNDING

- A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.
- B. Comply with ANSI-J-STD-607-A.
- C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.
- D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Cable and Wire Identification:
1. Coordinate with Fort Worth Independent School, for specific labeling requirements.
 2. Label each cable within 4 inches of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
 3. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
 4. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet.
 5. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.
 - a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
 - b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.
 6. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service.
- B. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in TIA/EIA-606-A.
1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with TIA/EIA-568-B.1.
 2. Visually confirm Category 6, marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
 3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
 4. Test UTP backbone copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.
 - a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA/EIA-568-B.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
 5. UTP Performance Tests:
 - a. Test for each outlet and MUTOA. Perform the following tests according to TIA/EIA-568-B.1 and TIA/EIA-568-B.2:
 - 1) Wire map.
 - 2) Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
 - 3) Insertion loss.
 - 4) Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
 - 5) Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
 - 6) Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).

- 7) Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
 - 8) Return loss.
 - 9) Propagation delay.
 - 10) Delay skew.
6. Coaxial Cable Tests: Conduct tests according to Division 27 Section "Master Antenna Television System."
 7. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP and optical fiber systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.
 - a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
 - b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.
 - C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.
 - D. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
 - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. The contractor shall train the Owner's maintenance personnel in cable-plant management operations, including changing signal pathways for different workstations, rerouting signals in failed cables, and keeping records of cabling assignments and revisions when extending wiring to establish new workstation outlets.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 280500**COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY****PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 DESCRIPTION

- A. This Section, Requirements for Electronic Safety and Security Installations, applies to all sections of Division 28.
- B. Furnish and install electronic safety and security cabling, systems, equipment and accessories in accordance with the specifications and drawings. Provide all programming and licenses as required to integrate new building elements into the existing electronic access control and surveillance systems.

1.2 Reference Standards

- A. Adherence to, and compliance with, the codes and standards referenced, and the unique requirements and design solutions identified in the manual, is mandatory. Requests to deviate from the industry standards and design solutions prescribed in these guidelines may be submitted, on a case-by-case basis, in accordance with the instructions in the Policy and Procedures section of these guidelines. No deviation from the requirements of the National Electrical Code (NEC) will be allowed.

1.3 Codes, Standards, References, and Applicability

A. NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE, NFPA 70.

1. The National Fire Protection Association has acted as the sponsor of the National Electrical Code (NEC) since 1911. The original Code was developed in 1897 as a result of the united efforts of various insurance, electrical, architectural, and allied interests. The purpose of the NEC is the practical safeguarding of persons and property from hazards arising from the use of electricity. The NEC provides the minimum code requirements for electrical safety. In security distribution design, the NEC must be used in concert with the ANSI/EIA/TIA standards identified below, which are intended to insure the performance of the security infrastructure.

B. ANSI/TIA/EIA STANDARDS

1. The Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronics Industry Association (TIA/EIA) engineering standards and publications are designed to serve the public interest through eliminating misunderstandings between manufacturers and purchasers. The standards facilitate interchangeability and improvement of products, and assist the purchaser in selecting and obtaining the proper product for his or her particular need.

C. CABLING STANDARD, ANSI/TIA/EIA-568 (SERIES)

1. The ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B (series) is the Commercial Building Cabling Standard. This standard defines a generic security wiring system for commercial buildings that will support a multi-product, multi-vendor environment. It also provides direction for the design of security cabling products for commercial enterprise.

a. The purpose of the standard is to enable planning and installation of building wiring with little knowledge of the security products that subsequently will be installed. Installation of wiring systems during building construction or renovation is significantly less expensive and less disruptive than after the building is occupied. TIA/EIA-568-A establishes performance and technical criteria for various wiring system configurations for interfacing and connecting their respective elements.

D. PATHWAYS AND SPACES, ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-B (SERIES).

1. The ANSI/EIA/TIA-569-B (series) is the Commercial Building Standard for Pathways and Spaces. This standard will be followed for all low voltage systems in all FWISD buildings. This standard encompasses security considerations both within and between buildings, and recognizes three fundamental concepts:

- a. Buildings are dynamic. Over the life of a building, or campus, remodeling is more the rule than the exception. The standard recognizes that changes will take place.
- b. Building security systems and media are dynamic. Over the life of a building, or campus, both security equipment and cabling change dramatically. The standard recognizes this fact by being as independent as possible from specific vendor equipment and media.
- c. Security is more than just locks and cameras. Security also encompasses many building systems including environmental controls, fire alarms and emergency paging.
- e. In order to have a building, or campus, successfully designed, constructed, and provisioned for security, it is imperative that the security design be incorporated during the preliminary architectural design phase. To accomplish this, the architect must work closely with the designated Security & IT staff members. Through the FWISD facilities planning and construction office.

E. GROUNDING AND BONDING, ANSI/TIA-607-A (SERIES)

1. The ANSI/TIA-607-A (series) (also known as ANSI J-STD -607-A) is the Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Security. The National Electrical Code (NEC) provides grounding, bonding, and electrical protection requirements to ensure life safety. Modern security systems require an effective grounding infrastructure to insure optimum performance of the wide variety of electronic security systems that may be used throughout the life of a building. The grounding and bonding requirements of this standard are additional technical requirements for security that are beyond the scope of the NEC. These standards are intended to work in concert with the cabling topology specified in ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B, and installed in the pathways and spaces designed in accordance with ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-B.

F. AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT (ADA)

1. The Americans with Disabilities Act defines accessible design considerations such as spacing between equipment, room layouts mounting heights and device and communications requirements applicable to Electronic Safety and Security designs and installations. It also contains regulations concerning alarms and signage.

G. OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY & HEALTH ADMINISTRATION (OSHA)

1. Through the Occupational Safety and Health Administration the federal government enforces the safety aspects of codes and standards that apply to employee working conditions. Guidelines for good practice when installing electronic safety and security systems are defined in the following documents:

a. 29CFR1910, Title 29, Labor-Part 1910 OSHA Standards.

1) 29CFR1926, Title 29, Labor-Part 1926 Safety & Health Regulations for Construction.

2) Individual states may have their own occupational safety divisions. Most states or localities accept certification of electrical products by a national testing laboratory as evidence that products and materials are safe for use in that jurisdiction.

H. UNDERWRITERS LABORATORIES INC. (UL)

1. In the United States the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) typically requires UL testing and certification on electrical equipment. Some of the applicable standards are as shown below:

a. UL 294 (1999) Standard for Access Control System Units. UL 639 (1997) Standard for Intrusion-Detection Units.

I. THE BICSI ELECTRONIC SAFETY & SECURITY DESIGN REFERENCE MANUAL

1. The Building Industry Consulting Service International, Inc. (BICSI) is an information technology association whose mission is to provide state-of-the-art information technology and security knowledge to the industry, resulting in good service to the end user. BICSI develops and publishes the Electronic Safety and Security Design Reference Manual (ES SDRM). The ES SDRM is not a code or standard. The ES SDRM is an extensive volume of information on the various aspects of security systems and security distribution.

a. The ES SDRM provides discussions and examples of various engineering methods and design solutions that can be selected and employed in order to meet the requirements of the NFPA and ANSI/TIA/EIA standards. Designers and installers are encouraged to use the ES SDRM as an engineering tool, within the constraints of the unique requirements of the FWISD Security Infrastructure Standards.

1.4 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS

A. References to industry and trade association standards and codes are minimum installation requirement standards.

B. Drawings and other specification sections shall govern in those instances where requirements are greater than those specified in the above standards.

1.5 QUALIFICATIONS (PRODUCTS AND SERVICES)

A. Manufacturers Qualifications: The manufacturer shall regularly and presently produce, as one of the manufacturer's principal products, the equipment and material specified for this project, and shall have manufactured the item for at least three years.

B. Product Qualification:

1. Manufacturer's product shall have been in satisfactory operation, on three installations of similar size and type as this project, for approximately three years.

2. The Government reserves the right to require the Contractor to submit a list of installations where the products have been in operation before approval.

C. Service Qualifications: There shall be a permanent service organization maintained or trained by the manufacturer which will render satisfactory service to this installation within four hours of receipt of notification that service is needed. Submit name and address of service organizations.

1.6 MANUFACTURED PRODUCTS

A. Materials and equipment furnished shall be of current production by manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture of such items, for which replacement parts shall be available.

B. When more than one unit of the same class of equipment is required, such units shall be the product of a single manufacturer.

C. Equipment Assemblies and Components:

1. Components of an assembled unit need not be products of the same manufacturer.

2. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies, which include components made by others, shall assume complete responsibility for the final assembled unit.

3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for the intended service.

4. Constituent parts which are similar shall be the product of a single manufacturer.

D. Factory wiring shall be identified on the equipment being furnished and on all wiring diagrams.

E. When Factory Testing Is Specified:

1. The Owner shall have the option of witnessing factory tests. The contractor shall notify FWISD through the Construction Manager a minimum of 15 working days prior to the manufacturers making the factory tests.

2. Four copies of certified test reports containing all test data shall be furnished to the Resident Engineer prior to final inspection and not more than 90 days after completion of the tests.

3. When equipment fails to meet factory test and re-inspection is required, the contractor shall be liable for all additional expenses, including expenses of the Government.

1.7 EQUIPMENT REQUIREMENTS

A. Where variations from the contract requirements are requested in accordance with Section 00 72 00, GENERAL CONDITIONS and Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA , AND SAMPLES, the connecting work and related components shall include, but not be limited to additions or changes to branch circuits, circuit protective devices, conduits, wire, feeders, controls, panels and installation methods.

1.8 EQUIPMENT PROTECTION

A. Equipment and materials shall be protected during shipment and storage against physical damage, dirt, moisture, cold and rain:

1. During installation, enclosures, equipment, controls, controllers, circuit protective devices, and other like items, shall be protected against entry of foreign matter; and be vacuum cleaned both inside and outside before testing and operating and repainting if required.
2. Damaged equipment shall be, as determined by the Resident Engineer, placed in first class operating condition or be returned to the source of supply for repair or replacement.
3. Painted surfaces shall be protected with factory installed removable heavy kraft paper, sheet vinyl or equal.
4. Damaged paint on equipment and materials shall be refinished with the same quality of paint and workmanship as used by the manufacturer so repaired areas are not obvious.

1.9 WORK PERFORMANCE

- A. Job site safety and worker safety is the responsibility of the contractor.
- B. For work on existing stations, arrange, phase and perform work to assure electronic safety and security service for other buildings at all times. Refer to Article OPERATIONS AND STORAGE AREAS under Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- C. New work shall be installed and connected to existing work neatly and carefully. Disturbed or damaged work shall be replaced or repaired to its prior conditions, as required by Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.
- D. Coordinate location of equipment and conduit with other trades to minimize interferences. See Section 00 72 00, GENERAL CONDITIONS.

1.10 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION AND REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment location shall be as close as practical to locations shown on the drawings. B. Inaccessible Equipment:

1. Where the Government determines that the Contractor has installed equipment not conveniently accessible for operation and maintenance, the equipment shall be removed and reinstalled as directed at no additional cost to the Government.
2. "Conveniently accessible" is defined as being capable of being reached without the use of ladders, or without climbing or crawling under or over obstacles such as, but not limited to, motors, pumps, belt guards, transformers, piping, ductwork, conduit and raceways.

1.11 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install an identification sign which clearly indicates information required for use and maintenance of equipment.
- B. Nameplates shall be laminated black phenolic resin with a white core with engraved lettering, a minimum of 6 mm (1/4 inch) high. Secure nameplates with screws. Nameplates that are furnished by manufacturer as a standard catalog item, or where other method of identification is herein specified, are exceptions.

1.12 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 23, SHOP DRAWINGS, PRODUCT DATA, AND SAMPLES.
- B. The Government's approval shall be obtained for all equipment and material before delivery to the job site. Delivery, storage or installation of equipment or material which has not had prior approval will not be permitted at the job site.
- C. All submittals shall include adequate descriptive literature, catalog cuts, shop drawings and other data necessary for the Government to ascertain that the proposed equipment and materials comply with specification requirements. Catalog cuts submitted for approval shall be legible and clearly identify equipment being submitted.
- D. Submittals for individual systems and equipment assemblies which consist of more than one item or component shall be made for the system or assembly as a whole. Partial submittals will not be considered for approval.
 - 1. Mark the submittals, "SUBMITTED UNDER SECTION _____".
 - 2. Submittals shall be marked to show specification reference including the section and paragraph numbers.
 - 3. Submit each section separately.
- E. The submittals shall include the following:
 - 1. Information that confirms compliance with contract requirements. Include the manufacturer's name, model or catalog numbers, catalog information, technical data sheets, shop drawings, pictures, nameplate data and test reports as required.
 - 2. Elementary and interconnection wiring diagrams for communication and signal systems, control system and equipment assemblies. All terminal points and wiring shall be identified on wiring diagrams.
 - 3. Parts list which shall include those replacement parts recommended by the equipment manufacturer, quantity of parts, current price and availability of each part.
- F. Manuals: Submit in accordance with Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

1. Maintenance and Operation Manuals: Submit as required for systems and equipment specified in the technical sections. Furnish four copies, bound in hardback binders, (manufacturer's standard binders) or an approved equivalent. Furnish one complete manual as specified in the technical section but in no case later than prior to performance of systems or equipment test, and furnish the remaining manuals prior to contract completion.

2. Inscribe the following identification on the cover: the words "MAINTENANCE AND OPERATION MANUAL," the name and location of the system, equipment, building, name of Contractor, and contract number. Include in the manual the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each subcontractor installing the system or equipment and the local representatives for the system or equipment.

3. Provide a "Table of Contents" and assemble the manual to conform to the table of contents, with tab sheets placed before instructions covering the subject. The instructions shall be legible and easily read, with large sheets of drawings folded in.

4. The manuals shall include:

a. Internal and interconnecting wiring and control diagrams with data to explain detailed operation and control of the equipment.

b. A control sequence describing start-up, operation, and shutdown.

c. Description of the function of each principal item of equipment.

d. Installation and maintenance instructions.

e. Safety precautions.

f. Diagrams and illustrations.

g. Testing methods.

h. Performance data.

i. Pictorial "exploded" parts list with part numbers. Emphasis shall be placed on the use of special tools and instruments. The list shall indicate sources of supply, recommended spare parts, and name of servicing organization.

j. Appendix; list qualified permanent servicing organizations for support of the equipment, including addresses and certified qualifications.

k. As-built documentation of wiring and control diagrams, device locations and cable routing in AutoCad .dwg format.

G. Approvals will be based on complete submission of manuals together with shop drawings.

H. After approval and prior to installation, furnish the Resident Engineer with one sample of each of the following:

1. A 300 mm (12 inch) length of each type and size of wire and cable along with the tag from the coils of reels from which the samples were taken.

2. Each type of conduit and pathway coupling, bushing and termination fitting.

3. Conduit hangers, clamps and supports.

4. Duct sealing compound.

1.13 SINGULAR NUMBER

A. Where any device or part of equipment is referred to in these specifications in the singular number (e.g., "the switch"), this reference shall be deemed to apply to as many such devices as are required to complete the installation as shown on the drawings.

1.14 TRAINING

A. Training shall be provided in accordance with Article, INSTRUCTIONS, of Section 01 00 00, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS.

B. Training shall be provided for the particular equipment or system as required in each associated specification.

C. A training schedule shall be developed and submitted by the contractor and approved by the Resident Engineer at least 30 days prior to the planned training.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 280526**GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY****PART 1 – GENERAL****1.1 GROUNDING, BONDING, AND ELECTRICAL PROTECTION**

A . Per ANSI J-STD 607-, a 4/0 bare stranded conductor cable shall be provided from the security room to the building main electrical service ground electrode. A Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB) shall be installed in the security room. All metallic conduits entering the security room all equipment racks in the security room and all exposed non-current carrying metal parts of security equipment in the security room must be bonded to the TMGB. The TR's shall be bonded to the TMGB busbar in the ER via 4/0 backbones and contain a Telecommunications Ground Busbar (TGB) for bonding of all ladder tray, racks and cabinets via minimum 6-AWG insulated stranded bonding conductor.

B. Adhere to all manufacturers' specific grounding and bonding requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS**2.1 TELECOMMUNICATIONS BUSBARS**

A . Material: Copper, ¼" thick (aluminum not permitted).

B. Pre-drilled

1. 3/8" Diameter.
2. Hole spacing per ANSI Joint Standard J-STD -607-A .
3. Hole pattern shall accommodate two hole lugs.

C. Busbars shall be listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory.

D. Telecommunications Main Grounding Busbar (TMGB)

1. Chatsworth #10622-012 ground busbar with Chatsworth #10622-000 busbar insulators or equivalent, 20"x4" minimum, or equal in Erico Intl.

E . Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB)

1. Chatsworth #10622-012 ground busbar with Chatsworth #10622-000 busbar insulators or equivalent, 12"x2" minimum, or equal in Erico Intl.

2.2 GROUNDING JOINTS/SPLICES

A . Grounding conductor joints/splices shall be mechanical type, copper alloy, with a minimum of two bolts and a separate section for each conductor equal to Burndy "QPX", OZ/Gedney "XTP " or "PMX" or Penn-Union "VX" or copper compression type with two (2) indents equal to Burndy, T&B or Blackburn.

B. Grounding conductor terminations (lugs) shall be single barrel, mechanical screw type, copper alloy with machined contact surfaces equal to OZ type "SL", T&B, or Burndy or copper compression type with two (2) indents equal to Burndy, T&B or Blackburn.

2.3 BONDING CONDUCTORS

A. Material: Solid copper (aluminum not permitted).

B. Cable Tray Bonding Conductor: Green #8 AWG insulated bonding jumper (12" max) with appropriate lugs or manufactured braided copper grounding jumper equal to B-Line #CAM-GJ, T&B #BD12, OZ/ Gedney type "FB" or Mono-Systems.

C. Equipment Frame Bonding Conductor; Panduit #TRGK672 Telecommunications Rack Grounding Kit. D. Bonding Conductor (B C): Green insulated copper bonding conductor, size as required by NEC.

E. The B C shall be, as a minimum, the same size as the TBB.

F. Telecommunications Bonding Backbone (TBB): Green insulated copper conductor, minimum size of No. 6 AWG.

G. The TBB shall be sized at 2 kcmil per linear foot of conductor length up to a maximum size of 3/0 AWG. Insulation shall meet fire ratings of its pathway.

Table 1	
Sizing of the TBB	
TBB length (ft) TBB Size (AWG)	
Less than 13	6
14-20	4
21-26	3
27-33	2
34-41	1
42-52	1/0
53-66	2/0
Greater than 66	3/0

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Provide the required elements and associated hardware necessary to provide a complete Telecommunications Grounding Infrastructure as specified.

C. TMGB

1. Locate the TMGB at the bottom of plywood backboard near the outside plant entrance conduits in the "MDF".
2. TMGB shall be installed so that the B C for telecommunications is as short and straight as possible.
3. Conductor shall be installed in continuous 3/4" PVC conduit.

D. TGB

1. Locate the TGB at the bottom of plywood backboard near the copper riser terminations in each "IDF".
2. TGB shall be installed so that the TBB for telecommunications is as short and straight as possible.

E. TBB

1. Install Green insulated copper grounding conductor (refer to 2.03.D for conductor size) from the TMGB to each TGB.

F. Grounding Conductor Joints/Splices

1. Install mechanical type, copper alloy, with a minimum of two bolts and a separate section for each conductor or copper compression type with two (2) indents.
2. Install manufactured insulating cover or heavy tape insulation over joints/splices.

G. Grounding of Cable Tray

1. Install Green #8 AWG bonding jumper (12" max) with appropriate lugs at each cable tray joint or install manufactured braided copper grounding jumper equal to B-Line #CAM-GJ, T&B #BD12, OZ/Gedney type "FB" or Mono-Systems.
2. Install Green #8 AWG grounding conductor with appropriate lugs from side of cable tray down to TMGB or TGB. Drill and tap side of cable tray (for appropriate size bolt, 1/4" x 20 min.), making sure that bolt does not extend into wire management part of tray.

H. Grounding of Equipment Frame

1. Install Panduit or equivalent Telecommunications Rack Grounding Kit from equipment frame to grounded cable tray, TMGB, or TGB.

3.2 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect grounding and bonding system connections and conductors for proper installation and tightness.

3.3 DOCUMENTATION

- A. Provide documentation of actual locations of grounding electrodes, busbars and backbone grounding conductors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 280528**PATHWAYS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY****PART 1 – GENERAL****1.1 INSIDE CONDUIT**

A. Security conduit must be properly designed and installed. The design and installation practices for security conduit have some unique requirements beyond those normally seen in standard electrical conduit. The following items are required to be included in the design and installation of interior security conduit:

1. White J-hooks will be used in open ceiling concept.
2. White basket tray with white tray liner will be used in open ceiling concept. This includes the gym and the cafeteria.
3. Conduits must be designed and installed in the most direct route possible from the security room to the device location.
4. The maximum length of LAN copper horizontal distribution cable is 295 ft from the device location to the TR or security room termination point, no exceptions. This applies in particular to IP based CCTV cameras or IP based card readers. Where this length would be exceeded the designer will need to add media converters or additional TR's as required.
5. Security cabling is always installed in a home-run fashion with individual cables running from the device location all the way to the security room. Splices in horizontal distribution cable are not allowed.
6. Factory-manufactured sweeps which meet ANSI/TIA569-A bend radius requirements shall be used for all security conduit. The bend radius of the sweeps must be a minimum of 10- times the internal conduit diameter. Bending conduit in the field using manual or mechanical methods is not acceptable. Standard electrical elbows shall not be used. This sweep radius is necessary to insure that the conduits can accept future cabling. All horizontal conduit will be tested by the conduit installation contractor with a mandrel to prove compliance with the sweep radius requirements throughout the conduit run
7. Each security back box shall have an individual conduit routing to the security room, or to the pull box or pulling point, connecting to a major cable pathway routing to the security room. Box shall be located in serviceable space. Looping, or "daisy-chaining," of conduits between outlet boxes is not allowed.
8. All conduit ends shall have plastic bushings installed before the cable is pulled into the conduit.
9. Conduits will not be run next to hot water lines, steam pipes, or other utilities that may present a safety hazard or cause a degradation of system performance.
10. Conduits entering the Security Room should be designed and located allowing for the most flexibility in the routing and racking of cables.
11. Conduits or conduit sleeves entering through the floor of the Security Room shall terminate four (4) inches above the finished floor.
12. All metallic security conduits entering the Security Room, Equipment Room, or Entrance Facility shall be bonded together, and bonded to the Main Grounding Busbar with a #6 AWG ground cable.
13. All in-use and spare conduits entering the Security Room, Equipment Room, or Entrance Facility shall be sealed to prevent the intrusion of water, gasses, and rodents throughout the construction project. Within five days of

releasing the conduit for the installation of cable, the conduit installation contractor shall prove all conduits to be clean and dry.

14. All conduits and cables that penetrate fire rated walls or floors must be fire stopped.

15. All OSP conduits and inner-duct, used and spare, shall be plugged with watertight plugs at both ends to prevent the intrusion of water, gasses, and rodents throughout the construction project. All OSP conduits shall have pull lines rated at a minimum of 200 lb pulling tension installed. The pull lines must be re-pulled each time an additional cable is installed. Prior to releasing the conduit for the installation of cables, all OSP conduits must be cleaned with a brush pulled through the conduit at least two times in the same direction and swabbed with clean rags until the rag comes out of the conduit clean and dry. All OSP conduits must be tested with a mandrel to prove compliance with the sweep radius requirements throughout the conduit run. Within five days of releasing the conduit for the installation of cable, the conduit installation contractor shall prove all conduits to be clean and dry.

1.1 PRICING

- A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSIDE PULLBOXES

A. Pull boxes used with security conduits in interior locations shall be rated NEMA-1. Pull boxes used in damp or wet locations such as plumbing chases or out of doors shall be rated NEMA-3R. Pull boxes shall be installed in conduits at an interval no greater than every 100 feet. A pull box shall be installed in conduit runs whenever there are two 90°sweeps, or a total of 180°of sweeps, in a conduit run. Any deviations from these criteria must have prior approval from FWISD Facilities Construction.

2.2 CABLE PATHWAYS AND SUPPORT STRUCTURES

A. The Inside Plant (ISP) security substructure are the cable pathways and support structures necessary for routing security cabling between security rooms, and from the security room to the device location. There are numerous different products and methods that can be employed to build the substructure. Some of these methods include: Enclosed conduit system, Open or enclosed cable trays, Routing above a false ceiling using cable supports, and in-slab floor ducts. Security cable pathways shall be separate from IT pathways whenever and where ever possible, if it is necessary to route security cabling in the same cable pathway as IT cables a metallic divider must be installed between the cables.

1. Cable support shall be white j-hooks and white basket tray.
2. The conduit system shall be routed inside ceilings, floors, and walls to the greatest extent possible. Surface mounted conduit shall be used only when there is no other route to provide service to the desired location.

2. For the main floor in, "slab on grade constructed buildings", conduit will route in walls and ceilings not in or under the slab. If this design is not possible, an alternate must be presented and approved following the "Approval for Alternate Design Solutions" process detailed in section 27 01 00. If an under slab route solution is approved, the conduit must be installed with at least 1" of concrete encasement around all sides of the conduit.

3. All device locations shall have a minimum $\frac{3}{4}$ " conduit. Increase the conduit size as necessary for the quantity of cables to be installed. Cable fill shall not exceed 40% and plan on 25% growth.
4. Security cable and conduit shall maintain the minimum separation distance from power as listed below.
5. For power systems operating at 480V or greater, maintain a minimum separation distance of 3 m (10 ft) from all security cabling. Pathways should cross perpendicular to electrical power cables or conduits.
6. For large electrical motors or transformers, maintain a minimum separation distance of 1.2 m (4 ft) from all security cabling
7. For lightning protection system conductors (NEC 800-13), maintain a minimum separation distance of 1.8 m (6 ft) from all security cabling
8. For power systems operating at less than 480V, including all conduit and cables used for electrical power distribution, maintain a minimum separation distance of 0.6 m (2 ft) from all security cabling. Pathways should cross perpendicular to electrical power cables or conduits.
9. For fluorescent lighting, maintain a minimum separation distance of 12 cm (5 in) from all security cabling. Pathways should cross at right angles to fluorescent lighting.
10. For branch circuits (secondary) power (120/240V, 20A) where electric light or power circuits coexist with security cabling, maintain a minimum separation distance of 0.50 m (2 in).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SUMMARY

- A. Final design and specifications for the Communications Systems conduits shall be made by the Electrical Engineer and Architect of Record.
- B. Conduits shall be reamed to eliminate sharp edges. Metallic conduit shall be terminated with an insulated bushing. Refer to ANSI/TIA-606 and Section 27 05 53 for Administration of the Pathway system.
- C. Openings in fire-rated walls, floors and ceilings shall be properly firestopped.
- D. Layout cable runs in advance to determine quantities of cable to be installed along pathways, and to ensure non-interference from other trade installations.
- E. Do not support cables from, or on, ceiling suspension system or use electrical, plumbing, or other pipes for support. Cable supports shall be permanently anchored to building structure or joist. Provide attachment hardware and anchors designed for the structure to which attached, and that are suitably sized to carry the weight of the cables to be supported. Confirm with Architect and/or Construction Manager on installation procedures for cable support system prior to implementation.

3.2 FIRE STOPPING

- A. Provide fire resistant materials to restore fire ratings to all wall, floor, or ceiling penetrations used in the distribution and installation for communications cabling system. Coordinate fire stopping procedures and materials with General Contractor and Electrical Contractor.
- B. Solutions and shop drawings/submittals for fire stop materials and systems shall be presented to the General Contractor for written approval of materials prior to purchase and installation.

C. Materials shall be installed per manufacturer instructions, be UL listed for intended use, and meet NEC codes for fire stopping measures.

D. The material chosen shall be distinctively colored to be clearly distinguishable from other materials, adhere to itself, and remain resilient and pliable to allow for the removal and/or addition of communication cables without the necessity of drilling holes in the material.

E. The fire stopping material shall maintain/establish the fire rated integrity of the wall/barrier that has been penetrated.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 280553

IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECURITY ADMINISTRATION

A. Administration of the security infrastructure includes documentation of cables, termination hardware, cross-connection facilities, conduits, other cable pathways, security rooms, and other security spaces. All FWISD facilities shall apply and maintain a system for documenting and administering the security infrastructure.

1. In order to create a consistent environment, FWISD maintains a campus wide numbering scheme for security devices and cable connectivity.

a. All security devices and cables shall be clearly marked using permanent means. The designation scheme must be consistent with the scheme in use on the campus where the work is being performed. The scheme shall be approved by FWISD Facilities & IT prior to use.

- 1) Each individual cable shall be clearly marked on both ends.
- 2) Multi conductor cables shall have each conductor clearly marked

1.2 RECORDS

A. A record is a collection of information about or related to a specific element of the security infrastructure. Records must be maintained in a computer spreadsheet, or in a computer database. Paper records are encouraged, but are optional. A cable record is prepared for each cable. The record will show the cable name, and must describe the origin point and destination point of the cable. The cable record will record what services and/or connections are assigned to each conductor or strand. An equipment record is prepared for services distributed from a certain piece of equipment, such as a router, or a system such as data gathering panel.

1.3 DRAWINGS

A. Drawings are used to illustrate different stages of security infrastructure planning, installation, and administration.

B. Installation or Construction Drawings

1. Installation or construction drawings are the plans that show the installer how the infrastructure is to be installed. The quality of the installation can be directly impacted by the level of detail in the installation drawings and written specifications. Installation drawings for FWISD projects shall, at a minimum, show pathway locations and routing, configuration of security spaces including backboard and equipment rack configurations, and wiring details including identifier assignments.

C. As-built Drawings

1. The as-built drawings graphically document the installed security infrastructure through floor plan, elevation, Mansfield Fire Station No. 5, Mansfield, Texas IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY
Komatsu Architecture Project No. 2016.166 280553 - 1

and detail drawings. In many cases, these drawings will differ from the installation.

2. Drawings because of changes made during construction and specific site conditions. In the as-built drawings, the identifiers for major infrastructure components must be recorded. The pathways, spaces, and wiring portions of the infrastructure each may have separate drawings if warranted by the complexity of the installation, or the scale of the drawings. As-built drawings are a vital component of the security administration system, and must be kept current as adds, moves, and changes take place. FWISD requires the installer to provide a complete and accurate set of as-built drawings.

1.4 LABELING

A. To be consistent with ANSI/TIA standards and industry practices, it is important that labeling be applied to all security infrastructure components. Labeling with the unique identifier will identify a particular component.

B. Labels are generally of either the adhesive or insert type. All labels must be legible, resistant to defacement, and maintain adhesion to the application surface.

1. Outside plant labels shall be totally waterproof, even when submerged.

2. All labels shall be machine printed.

3. Labels applied directly to a cable shall have a clear vinyl wrapping applied over the label and around the cable to permanently affix the label.

4. Other types of labels, such as tie-on labels, may be used. However, the label must be appropriate for the environment in which it is used, and must be used in the manner intended by the manufacturer.

1.1 1.5 PRICING

A. The contractor shall prepare and present to Fort Worth Independent School District or their representative pricing which shall include the list of equipment and labor in tabular form including; part numbers, item description, unit pricing, number of units, extended pricing and totals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LABELS

A. Shall meet the legibility, defacement, exposure and adhesion requirements of UL 969.

B. Shall be preprinted or computer printed type. Hand written labels are not acceptable.

C. Where insert type labels are used provide clear plastic cover over label.

D. Approved Manufacturer:

1. Brady Corporation

2. Panduit

3. Equivalent

- E. Equipment Room Copper, Fiber, and Coax Backbone Cable Labels
 - 1. Brady part #WML-1231-292 or Panduit #LS7-75NL-1
- F. Equipment Room Copper, Fiber, and Coax Horizontal Cable Labels
 - 1. Brady part #WML-317-292 or Panduit #LS7-75NL-1
- G. Work Area Copper, Fiber, and Coax Riser Cable Labels
 - 1. Brady part #WML-317-292 or Panduit #LS7-75NL-1
- H. Patch Panel Labels
 - 1. Brady part #CL-111-619 or Panduit #LS7-38-1

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 IDENTIFICATION and LABELING

- A. All labeling will be compliant with ANSI/TIA 606-A - Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructures and comply with FWISD labeling standards.
- B. All labeling must be coordinated with FWISD prior to start date.
- C. The size, color, and contrast of all labels should be selected to ensure that the identifiers are easily read. Labels should be visible during the installation of and normal maintenance of the infrastructure.
- D. Labels should be resistant to the environmental conditions at the point of installation (such as moisture, heat, or ultraviolet light), and should have a design life equal to or greater than that of the labeled component.
- E. All labels shall be printed or generated by a mechanical device.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 28 06 00

TESTING FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 DELIVERABLES

A. It is essential for FWISD Facilities Services to receive all test results and as-built drawings prior to job acceptance. The test results must adhere to the following specifications, formats and delivery conditions:

1. Specifications

a. Complete end-to-end test results for all copper STP, UTP and fiber optic cables installed are required.

1) All fiber optic cable must be visually inspected and optically tested on the reel upon delivery to the installation site. Using an Optical Time Domain Reflectometer (OTDR), an access jumper with like fiber, a pigtail, and a mechanical splice, all fibers shall be tested for continuity and attenuation. Testing for continuity and attenuation on the reel must confirm factory specifications to ensure that the fiber optic cable was not damaged during shipment. The test results must match the results of the factory-attached tag on the reel, or the fiber shall not be used. Reel data sheet must be provided showing test results.

2) End to end (bi-directional) test measurements shall be provided for single mode and multimode fibers (2 wave lengths per test are required). Test results must be submitted for review as part of the installation inspection requirements. Test results shall be in paper form and electronic form, and must contain the names and signatures of the technicians performing the tests.

3) Testing shall be performed on 100% of the fibers in the completed end-to-end system. ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-A, Annex H, provides the technical criteria and formulae to be used in fiber optic testing. Note however, that all FWISDD fiber must be tested, rated and guaranteed for Ethernet GigaSPEED 1000B -X performance. Additionally, all fiber optic cable links must pass all installation and performance tests both recommended and mandated by the cable manufacturer.

4) 100% of all pairs of copper cables shall be tested for continuity and wire-map.

2. Format

a. Test Results must be submitted in both hard and soft copy in a format previously agreed to by the client.

b. As Built drawings must be submitted with .dgn or .dwg file extensions.

3. Delivery

a. Test Results must be both hard copy and electronically submitted to the FWISDD Facilities Department. Contact information will be provided after contract is awarded and before project

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (NOT APPLICABLE)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST PROCEDURES

A . Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

B. Field Test Reports: Upon completion and testing of the installed system, test reports shall be submitted in booklet form and electronic media showing all field tests performed on, and adjustments made to each/any component and all field tests performed to prove compliance with the specified performance criteria. Indicate and interpret test results in written form and verbally to owner/Solare Engineering for compliance with performance requirements at a pre-scheduled meeting.

1. Specific test and verification requirements by demonstration or test are as follows. Owner reserves the right to witness any and all tests.

a. Following factory assembly and delivery, the security subcontractor shall individually test each component and sensor and verify the proper functioning of each component within a particular sub-system.

b. Following installation, individually test each component and sensor and verify the proper functioning of each component within a particular sub-system. Similarly test each sub-system until all detection zones, alarm assessment components, alarm reporting and display, and access control functions have been verified. Prior to final functional and operational tests of the system correct any deficiencies. After sub-system verification is complete, test the entire system to assure that all elements are compatible and function properly as a complete system.

c. Upon completion of the above outlined tests conduct a formal test to be known as the "System Operational Test", in which all components and sub-systems of the security system are demonstrated to operate together as a system. This test is to be performed over a continuous seventy-two (72) hour period. A formal test plan and test procedures for each portion of the test shall be prepared by the security subcontractor and submitted to the Owner/Architect for approval. The subcontractor must demonstrate that the security system components and sub-systems meet specification requirements in the "As-Installed" operating environment during the "System Operational Test". While no formal environmental testing is required, temperature, humidity and other environmental parameters should be measured and recorded. Include this data in the test report document for the "System Operational Test".

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A . Perform field inspection and testing in accordance with Section 01 40 00.

3.3 MANUFACTURER'S FIELD SERVICES

A . Include services of technician to supervise installation, adjustments, final connections, system testing, and to train FWISD personnel.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

Demonstrate normal and abnormal modes of operation, and required response to each. To be verified in the presence of FWISD Staff, using commissioning form below as a model:

	YES	NO	N/A
DOOR OPENS ON VALID READ			
DOOR ALARMS ON INVALID READ			
DOOR FORCED OPEN. IF CAMERA AT LOCATION, VIDEO POPS UP ON ALARM			
DOOR HELD OPEN. IF CAMERA AT LOCATION, VIDEO POPS UP ON ALARM			
NO ALARM ON REX			
REX BUILT INTO HANDLE/CRASHBAR			
DOOR HELD OPEN PRE-ALARM			
ALL ALARMS DISPLAY CORRECT IN DISPATCH CENTER.			
DOOR LABELED CORRECTLY ON MAP			
ENCLOSURE LABELED ON INSIDE WITH CIRCUIT BREAKER AND PANEL #			
ALL WIRE LABELED CORRECTLY PER DOOR			
NETWORK CONNECTIVITY			
FIRE ALARM CONNECTIVITY			
TAMPER SWITCH ON ENCLOSURE			
BEST LOCK CYLINDER ON ENCLOSURE WITH POLICE SECURITY KEY CORE.			
PANELS ON EMERGENCY POWER WITH BATTERY BACKUP			

NOTES

DATE _____
TIME _____
Building _____
DOOR #/NAME _____

TCCD Staff _____
Security Contractor _____
General Contractor _____

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 281000
ELECTRONIC ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM**

PART 1 - GENERAL**1.1 DESCRIPTION**

- A. This specification section covers the furnishing and installation of a new and complete enterprise-wide, low-voltage, electronic access control system (EACS).
- B. Contractor shall furnish and install access control hardware devices, mounting brackets, power supplies, switches, controls, consoles and other components of the system as shown and specified.
- C. Contractor shall furnish and install access control related software to allow this system expansion. Software includes required license addition for access control readers and electrified portals, workstations and Video Management System (VMS) Integration.
- D. Furnish and install outlets, junction boxes, conduit, connectors, wiring, and other accessories necessary to complete the system installation. Requirements shall be in accordance with Division 26 00 00, Electrical.

1.2 PRECEDENCE

- A. Obtain, read and comply with General Conditions and applicable sub-sections of the contract specifications. Where a discrepancy may exist between any applicable sub-section and directions as contained herein, this section shall govern.

1.3 REFERENCE

- A. Provisions of Section 27 00 00, previous sections, and Construction Documents are included as a part of this section as though bound herein.

B. SUMMARY

- 1. This Section includes access control door hardware for the following:
 - a. Swinging doors.
 - b. Sliding doors.
 - c. Other doors to the extent indicated.
- 2. Section includes, but is not necessarily limited to, the following for the integrated access control security and site management system:
 - a. Integrated Wiegand access control door hardware.
 - b. Wireless access control door hardware.
 - c. IP-enabled integrated access control door hardware.
 - d. Monitoring and signaling equipment.
 - e. System network control processors.
 - f. Reader controller interfaces and modules.

- g. Input monitor and output control interfaces and modules.
 - h. Remote card readers and display terminals.
 - i. Power sourcing equipment, network switches and wireless access points.
 - j. Access control cards and credentials.
 - k. Access control system application software.
 - l. Access control system power supplies, back-ups and surge protection.
3. Related Sections:
- a. Division 08 Section – “Operations and Maintenance”.
 - b. Division 08 Section – “Door Schedule”.
 - c. Division 08 Section – “Hollow Metal Doors and Frames”.
 - d. Division 08 Section – “Flush Wood Doors”.
 - e. Division 08 Section – “Clad Wood Doors”.
 - f. Division 08 Section – “Stile and Rail Wood Doors”.
 - g. Division 08 Section – “Integrated Door Opening Assemblies”.
 - h. Division 08 Section – “Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts”.
 - i. Division 08 Section – “All-Glass Entrances”.
 - j. Division 08 Section – “Automatic Entrances”.
 - k. Division 08 Section – “Door Hardware”.
 - l. Division 08 Section – “Automatic Door Operators”.
 - m. Division 08 Section – “Detention Door Hardware”.
 - n. Division 08 Section – “Access Control Hardware”.
 - o. Division 14 Section "Elevators" for security access to elevator floor selection controls.
 - p. Division 26 Sections for connections to electrical power system and for low- voltage wiring work.
 - q. Division 27 Section - "Communications" for connections to the LAN.
 - r. Division 28 Section - "Intrusion Detection" for detection devices installed at door openings and provided as part of an intrusion detection system.
 - s. Division 28 Section - "Video Surveillance" for motion detection and video camera devices and equipment installed at door openings and provided as part of a security and site management system.
 - t. Division 28 Section - "Fire Detection and Alarm" for connections to building fire alarm system.

4. Codes and References: Comply with the current version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.
 - a. ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
 - b. ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
 - c. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
 - d. NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
 - e. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
 - f. NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
 - g. State Building Codes, Local Amendments.
- C. SUBMITTALS
1. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.
 2. System Operational Descriptions: Complete system operational narratives for the integrated access controlled openings defining the owner's prescribed requirements for the opening functionality. Narratives include, but are not limited to, the following situations: normal secured/unsecured state of door; authorized access; authorized egress; unauthorized access; unauthorized egress; fire alarm and loss of power conditions, and interfaces with other building control systems.
 3. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified integrated locking hardware and access control firmware, indicating the following:
 - a. Wiring Diagrams: Upon receipt of approved schedules, submit detailed system wiring diagrams for power, signaling, monitoring, communication and control of the access control system electrified hardware and firmware. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include the following:
 - i. Elevation diagram of each unique access controlled opening showing location and interconnection of major system components with respect to their placement in the respective door openings.
 - ii. Complete (risers, point-to-point) access control system block wiring diagrams.
 - b. Electrical Coordination: Coordinate with related Division 26 Electrical Sections the voltages and wiring details required at electrically controlled and operated hardware openings.
 4. Proof of Certification: Provide copy of manufacturer(s) official certification or accreditation document indicating proof of status as a qualified and authorized provider of the primary access control components.
 5. Keying Schedule: Reference Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
 6. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance with cycle testing requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified independent testing agency.

7. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete access control and site management installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals. The manual to include the name, address, and telephone number of the supplier/integrator providing the installation and the nearest service representatives for each item of equipment included in the system. The final copies delivered after completion of the installation test to include "as built" modifications made during installation, checkout, and acceptance.
 - a. As-Built Drawings: During system installation, the Contractor to maintain a separate hard copy set of drawings, elevation diagrams, and wiring diagrams of the access control system to be used for record drawings. This set to be kept up to date by the Contractor with all changes and additions to the access control system accurately recorded.
8. Warranties and Maintenance: Special warranties and maintenance agreements specified in this Section.

D. QUALITY ASSURANCE

1. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum [5] years of documented experience in providing access control and security systems equipment and software similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.
 - a. Software and access control systems components to have been previously and thoroughly tested together with proven installations similar in size and functionality to the design requirements indicated for this Project.
2. Integrator Qualifications: Systems Integrators, verifiably factory trained and certified by the primary product manufacturers, with a minimum 3 years documented experience installing complete integrated access control systems similar in material, design, and scope to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a proven record of successful in-service performance. Qualifications include, but are not necessarily limited, to the following:
 - a. References: Provide a list of references for similar projects including contact name, phone number, name and type of project.
 - b. Professional Staffing: Firms to have a dedicated access control systems integration department with full time, experienced professionals on staff experienced in providing on site consulting services for both electrified door hardware and integrated access control systems installations.
 - c. Factory Training: Installation and service technicians are to be competent factory trained and certified personnel capable of maintaining the system.
 - d. Service Center: Firms to have a service center capable of providing training, in- stock parts, and emergency maintenance and repairs at the Project site with
24-hour/7-days a week maximum response time.
3. Supplier/Dealer Qualifications: Supplier/Dealers, verifiably authorized and in good standing with the primary product manufacturers, with a minimum [3] years experience supplying integrated access control systems similar in material, design, and scope to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a proven record of successful in-service performance.

4. Integrated Wiegand Output, Wireless, and IP-Enabled access control products are required to be supplied and installed only through designated ASSA ABLOY "Authorized Channel Partner" (ACP) and "Certified Integrator" (CI) accounts.
5. Source Limitations: Obtain the access control door hardware, system firmware and application software specified in this Section from a single source, qualified supplier/integrator unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.
 - b. Provide integrated access control door hardware from the same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with NFPA 70, NFPA 80, NFPA 101 and ANSI A117.1 requirements and guidelines as directed in the model building code including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Comply with NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code", including electrical components, devices, and accessories listed and labeled as defined in Article 100 by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
 - b. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG)," ANSI A117.1 as follows:
 - i. Handles, Pulls, Latches, Locks, and other Operating Devices: Shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, tight pinching, or twisting of the wrist.
 - ii. Door Closers: Comply with the following maximum opening-force requirements indicated:
 - a. Interior Hinged Doors: 5 lbf applied perpendicular to door.
 - b. Fire Doors: Minimum opening force allowable by authorities having jurisdiction.
 - c. Comply with NFPA 101 "Life Safety Code" for doors in a means of egress.
 - i. Latches, Locks, and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch. Locks shall not require the use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
 - d. Comply with NFPA 80 "Fire Doors and Windows" for fire labeled opening assemblies.
 - e. The installed access control system shall conform to all local jurisdiction requirements.
7. Keying Conference: Reference Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
8. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct coordination conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier(s), Installer(s), Systems Integrator(s), and Contractor(s) to review proper methods and procedures for receiving, handling, and installing door and access control hardware to manufacturer's recommendations and according to specifications.

- a. Prior to installation of door hardware, arrange for manufacturers' representatives to hold a project specific training meeting on the proper installation and adjustment of their respective products. Product training to be attended by the installers of access control hardware for the aluminum, hollow metal and wood door sections. Training will include the use of installation manuals, hardware schedules, templates and physical product samples as required.
- b. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, power supply connections, and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
- c. Review sequence of operation narratives for each unique access controlled opening.
- d. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.
- e. Review the required inspecting, testing, commissioning, and demonstration procedures.

E. DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

1. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up and shelving for door hardware delivered to Project site. Do not store electronic access control hardware, software or accessories at Project site without prior authorization.
 - a. Access control firmware and software: Where approved and directed, inventory upon receipt and store electronic access control equipment in a secure, temperature and humidity controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers.
2. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Access Control Door Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
3. Deliver permanent keys, cores, access control credentials, software and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Instructions for delivery to the Owner established at the "Pre-Submittal Conference".

F. COORDINATION

1. Coordinate quantity and arrangement of assemblies with ceiling space configuration and with components occupying ceiling space, including structural members, pipes, air-distribution components, raceways, cable trays, recessed lighting fixtures, and other items.
2. Integrated Access Control Door Hardware and Electrical Coordination: Coordinate the layout and installation of scheduled integrated access control door hardware, and related access control equipment, with required connections to source power junction boxes, power supplies, detection and monitoring hardware and fire alarm system.
 - a. Door Hardware Interface: The access control system to interface and be connected to electrified and integrated access control door hardware as described under Division 08 Sections "Door Hardware" or "Access Control Door Hardware". Coordinate the installation and configuration of electrified door hardware being monitored or controlled with the controls, software and access control hardware specified in this Section.

3. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing electrified door hardware and access control system components. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing access control system hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
4. Door and Frame Preparation: Related Division 08 Sections (Steel, Aluminum and Wood) doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified electrified, monitoring, signaling and access control system hardware without additional in-field modifications.

G. WARRANTY

1. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article will not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and are in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.
2. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of the installed access control system hardware and software that fails in materials or workmanship, including all related parts and labor, within specified warranty period after final testing and acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
 - b. Faulty operation of the hardware.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.
3. Standard Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Special Warranty Periods:
 - a. Two years for Integrated Access Control Door Hardware.

H. MAINTENANCE SERVICE

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of standard and access control door hardware.
2. Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, and running concurrent with the specified warranty period, provide continuous (6) months full maintenance including repair and replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper door opening operation. Provide parts and supplies as used in the manufacture and installation of original products.
3. Maintenance Support and Extended Service Agreement: Submit for Owner's consideration an optional extended Service Agreement for the installed access control

- system, including support for software related issues. The extended Service Agreement is considered elective and is without manufacturer's requirement stipulating mandatory coverage for owner and/or vendor system support.
- a. A published copy of this agreement to be included with the submittal package
 - b. Support for the installed access control system components is provided through the vendor under a 24 hour technical assistance program.
 - c. Access control and management system components are to be available on a one- day turn-around time frame from the manufacturer.
 - d. Primary systems manufacturer to offer and provide remote modem or internet access for direct factory support to the vendor. The factory level support to include diagnostics and troubleshooting support on systems related issues at no additional cost to the owner.
4. Access Control Software Upgrades: Version upgrades and "fix" releases to the access control system software are available at no extra charge as long as the version of software provided in this specification remains the current manufacturer's version or for up to (2) years after a new version release.
- a. Major access control software revisions that provide new functionality to the product provided free of charge for up to one (1) year from the date of substantial completion.
 - b. Access control system software is to be upgradeable as may be required or as necessary, to expand and manage the owner's site or sites. Upgrades are to be offered at a published flat fee for the primary system software, with single license modules included in the primary fee structure. System upgrades offered at a costing structure based upon the original number of licensed modules issued, or on those to be purchased at a future date, are not allowed.
 - c. As part of the submittal package, provide a list of available software upgrades and/or expansions modules. List to identify related costs for upgrades, or expansions to the original system, up to the next qualifying operational level.

I. SCOPE OF WORK

1. Access Control Site Management System: Furnish and install at the indicated locations the specified integrated access control door hardware and access control system firmware and software for a completely operational access control and security site management system. System includes, but is not necessarily limited, to the following:
 - a. Electrified integrated access control locks and exit hardware, network control processors, reader controller panels, I/O monitor/control interfaces, door position switches, remote card readers, keypads, and display terminals, access cards and credentials, system application software, special tools, operating manuals, and required cabling and accessories as detailed below and listed in the Access Control Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3.
 - i. Provide the appropriate number of reader controller panels and I/O monitoring/control expansion interfaces as needed to handle the number

of card readers, locking devices, door status devices, and identified alarm inputs specified in this section, and as shown on the security drawings.

- ii. Provide manufacturer approved integrated access control locks, exit hardware, and remote mounted card readers, keypads, and display terminals that are functionally compatible with the specified access control equipment interfaces.
- b. Access control system equipment to be installed in an enclosure box compatible with the specified components. This enclosure to include, but is not necessarily limited to, the network control processor, I/O monitor/control interface panels, power supplies, terminal strips, wire ducts, keyed lock cylinder, integrated outlet for A/C power, and standoffs.
 - i. Enclosure box to be located in the designated IT/Telecom room(s) with connection to the owner designated local area network for communication back to the central server host.
- c. Owner to provide the following:
 - i. Computer hardware and peripherals to be from an approved, major line computer manufacturer. The following manufacturers will be considered "pre-approved", however, specific information detailing compliance with the manufacturer's requirements must be included within the project submittal package as specified.
 - a. Dell
 - b. Hewlett-Packard
 - ii. Central Server Host Computer:
 - a. System Server to include the following minimal requirements: Windows Server 2003 (Service Pack 1 or higher) or later Operating System, Intel Pentium IV 1 GHz (equivalent or greater), SQL Server 2005 Express Edition or SQL 2005, 1GB Ram or larger, 120GB hard disk space available or more as needed, CRT or LCD minimum 15" display Monitor, CD/RW Drive. Single serial port, or multiple USB ports, and one parallel port, keyboard and mouse.
 - iii. Client Workstations:
 - a. Client Workstation to include the following minimal requirements: Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 2 or higher) or Windows Vista Business, Intel Pentium III 500 MHz (equivalent or greater), SQL Server 2000 Client Access License, 1GB Ram or larger, 30GB hard disk space available or more as needed, CRT or LCD minimum 15" display Monitor, CD/RW Drive. Single serial port, or multiple USB ports, and one parallel port, keyboard and mouse.
 - iv. Owner will be responsible for ensuring that each computer hardware component includes the required interfaces, expansion boards, and peripherals that will be necessary to allow the system to operate as described within this specification and as indicated on the drawings.
 - v. Power Sourcing, Network Switches and Wireless Access Points: Quantity as required to accommodate installed access control (and video surveillance) devices.
 - vi. Network Control Processor Connections:
 - a. LAN/Ethernet communication ports (jacks) and network interface cards as needed, CAT5e (CAT6) cabling from network router/switch to network control processor, outlet and cover plates and/or patch cables required for network connection within each designated IT/Telecom room.
 - b. Required static IP addresses.
 - c. Power Supplies, including battery or uninterrupted backup powers supply (UPS)

- and separately fused surge protection, required for the electrified door hardware, access control equipment, and PoE switches or wireless routers driving the integrated card reader locking devices.
- d. Installation, final configuration and commissioning of electrified door and access control system hardware, communication firmware, power supplies and related accessories.
 - e. System application software including installation, programming, and end user training of the access control system demonstrating operating, repair, and maintenance procedures. Include on-site central server training for designated personnel (facilities maintenance, security, IT, administration) by a factory certified representative.
 - f. Include Client Software Application (client workstation) training at each of the remote installed facilities for local administrative staff.
 - g. Provide manufacturer required power controllers, interface boards, and programming that may be required for approved electric latch retraction exit devices supplied under Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."
 - h. Electrical contractor, Division 26, to provide the following:
 - i. Source power wiring (120VAC) as required for the integrated locking and access control hardware, equipment, accessories and power supplies. This includes quad outlets as required on a dedicated circuit in the designated IT/Telecom room(s) and the related conduit, stub-in, junction boxes and connectors required for the source power delivery and connections.
 - j. Provide required conduit, stub-in, junction and back boxes for both the electrified locking hardware and access control equipment at each of the access controlled or monitored openings per plan drawings and specs. Supply and install conduit between each of the aforementioned devices and between the electrical junction boxes, power supplies and access control equipment located on or above the door opening.
 - k. At wall mounted remote readers, provide conduit on the secured side of the door, 36" from the finish floor and 6" from the edge of the frame, to the related power supplies and access control equipment.
 - l. At electrical hardware power transfers provide conduit on the secured side of the opening from the power transfer, thru-wire hinge, or serviceable panel location on the frame jamb to the related power supplies and access control equipment.
 - m. Electrical Contractor to provide all 120VAC cabling connections and terminations from the electrical junction boxes to these electrical devices.
- d. Access Control System Integrator to provide the following:
- i. Low voltage wiring (12/24VDC) and communication cabling (RS- 232/RS-485) from network control processors to reader controllers, I/O monitor/control interface panels, electrified and integrated locking

hardware, remote card readers, keypads, or display terminals, monitoring and signaling switches, and power supplies. Work includes related connectors, final terminations, and hook-ups required for a complete and functional access controlled opening in accordance with applicable codes and specified system operational narratives.

- e. Elevator Contractor to provide the following:
 - i. Interface or landing of interface cable onto the elevator call button will be performed by a certified elevator contractor.
 - ii. Coordinate with access control systems integrator provisions for a card reader with output allowing the elevator call button to be activated. A validated card read will be required for activation.
- f. Full and seamless integration of the analog, digital or IP-enabled CCTV video surveillance system (Division 28) if applicable, with the installed site access control system software.
- g. Full and seamless integration of the site intrusion alarm service and motion detector systems, (Division 28) if applicable, with the installed site access control system software.
- h. Final connections to fire alarm system, if required, by electrical and fire alarm system contractors.
- i. Provide permits, submittals and approvals required by the authority having jurisdiction, prior to commencing with work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE - ACCESS CONTROL SITE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM (ACSMS)

- 1. General: The ACSMS is a modular and networked based system providing physical access control security to a Wide Area district, campus or educational enterprise. The system to be capable of controlling and integrating multiple security functions including the configuration, management and monitoring of cardholder access, locking hardware units, events, alarms, visitors, and real-time tracking and reporting. The ACSMS is to be alterable at any time depending on the facility requirements and will allow for easy upgradeability or modification of network processors, controller, interface modules, card data, inputs, outputs, and remote work stations. The ACSMS to include, but is not be limited to, the following features and functions:
 - a. An "Enterprise" class access control software application.
 - b. Client/Server model operating central server host software modules and client workstation software applications in a multi-user and a multi-tasking environment.
 - i. The ACSMS to permit multiple instances of client software applications to run simultaneously on the network. The base system to include [] software application licenses with an unlimited number of licenses available subject to connection fees.

- c. Partitioning: The system to support security partitioning enabling system administrator to segment the configuration database and group multiple entities within the security partition.
 - i. Security partitions limit what users can view in the configuration database. Administrators, who have all rights and privileges, can segment a database into multiple security partitions. A user who is given access to a specific partition will only be able to view entities (components) within the partition they have been assigned.
 - d. Single Data Base: The system to support a single database for access control site setup, credential and identity file creation, alarm and control setup, and system user operation and command functions.
 - e. System Access Management: The system to allow operators through password authentication the ability to make access granted or denied decisions, define access levels, time zones, holidays, assign cardholders, access groups, develop tasks, and generally manage access control, alarm monitoring and response activities system wide from a single login. Operator and user privileges are managed by a system administrator allowing for different levels of system access and system control. Authorization management is fully Owner definable.
 - f. Access Groups and Access Levels: The system to provide adequate access groups and access level assignment capability to meet Owner requirements for the specified project. If required, software application can be expandable to support unlimited access groups and access levels.
 - g. Alarm Monitoring: The system is able to monitor, report, and provide information about the time and location of alarms, along with their priority.
 - h. Event Monitoring: The system is able to monitor, report, and archive network access control activity.
 - i. Transaction Logs: The system to support an unlimited number of logs and historical transactions (events and alarms) with the maximum allowed being limited by the amount of hard disk space available.
 - j. System Monitoring: The system to have ability to report on the integrity of all network assigned devices, circuits and communications and provide a diagnostics screen showing field level communications system wide
 - k. Lock/Unlock Commands: The system to allow an operator to manually lock and unlock doors overriding scheduled access control restrictions and configurations if necessary.
 - l. Hardware Interface: The system to integrate with and control specified electrified hardware, signaling and monitoring devices.
 - m. Systems Integration: The system to have the ability to be fully and seamlessly integrated with existing or specified intrusion detection alarm system.
2. Network Support: Communication network connecting the central server host software modules, client workstation software applications, and hardware controllers to be designed to support all of the following:

- a. LAN/Ethernet enterprise ring topology and localized star topology based on TCP/IP.
- b. Direct-connected RS-232 and RS-485 communication cabling.
- c. Dial-up modem connection using a standard dial-up telephone line.

B. MANUFACTURERS

1. General: Provide integrated access control door hardware and access control system equipment and accessories for each designated opening to comply with requirements in this Section and with the Access Control Hardware Sets listed at the end of Part 3.
 - a. Access Control Hardware Sets: Requirements for quantity, item, model, design, grade, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of integrated door and access control hardware are indicated in the Access Control Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3.
 - b. Named Manufacturer's Products: Product designation and manufacturer are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in the Door Hardware Schedule.
2. System Design: The equipment and materials supplied are to be standardized components regularly manufactured and utilized within the source manufacturer's access control systems.
 - a. System components to be non-proprietary in design and implementations, providing for an open protocol platform with multiple manufacturers having functional software capable of integrating with the hardware specified. The installed integrated product is to be part of a single, cohesive management and access control system.
3. Substitutions: Requests for substitution and product approval for inclusive integrated access control door and access control systems hardware in compliance with the specifications must be submitted in writing and in accordance with the procedures and time frames outlined in Division 01, Substitution Procedures. Approval of requests is at the discretion of the architect, owner, and their designated consultants.
 - a. The access control system described in this specification represents a complete engineered system. If alternate products are submitted, it is the responsibility of the Supplier/Dealer/Integrator to provide an acceptable complete and working system layout, including re-engineering of elevation and wiring diagrams, as applicable. Complete systems to include at a minimum required power supplies, power transfers, and integrated access control locking hardware and accessories.
4. Approved Access Control and Site Management System Manufacturers:
 - a. Infinias Access Control System: S-EID C32 (one for each door)
 - b. HID Global (Access Cards and Credentials, Remote Readers) #RP40 Multiclass SIA 26-b
 - c. Securitron Corporation (Power Supplies).

C. ACCESS CONTROL AND SITE MANAGEMENT SYSTEM HARDWARE

1. General: Provide all necessary access control field hardware devices required to receive alarms and administer all access granted/denied decisions. Field hardware devices must be designed and installed in accordance with applicable electrical codes.
2. Central Computer Host Server (Owner Provided): The central host server is interconnected to all system components, including client workstations and field installed controllers, providing operator interface, interaction, display, control, and real-time monitoring.

D. INTEGRATED WIEGAND OUTPUT ACCESS CONTROL LOCKS

1. Integrated Wiegand Output Mortise Locks: Wiegand output ANSI A156.13, Grade 1, mortise lockset with integrated card reader, request-to-exit signaling, door position status switch, and latchbolt monitoring in one complete unit. Hard wired, solenoid driven locking/unlocking control of the lever handle trim, 3/4" deadlocking anti-friction latch, and 1" case-hardened steel deadbolt. Lock is U.L listed and labeled for use on up to 3 hour fire rated openings. Available with or without keyed high security cylinder override.
 - a. Open architecture, hard wired platform supports centralized control of locking units with new or existing Wiegand compatible access control systems. Latchbolt monitoring and door position switch act in conjunction to report door-in-frame (DPS) and door latched (door closed and latched) conditions.
 - b. Reader supports either HID 125 kHz proximity (up to 39 bits, including Corporate 1000) or 13.56 MHz (2K-32K) iClass® credentials.
 - c. 12VDC external power supply required for reader and lock, with optional 24VDC operation available with iClass® reader (125 kHz reader is always 12VDC). Fail safe or fail secure options.
 - d. Installation requires only one cable run from the lock to the access control panel without requirements for additional proprietary lock panel interface boards or modules.
 - e. Installation to include manufacturer's access control panel interface board or module where required for Wiegand output protocol.
 - f. Acceptable Manufacturers:
 - i. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - Access 600 - ML20600 RNE1 Series.
 - ii. No substitutions.
2. Wiegand Output Integrated Card Reader Exit Hardware: Wiegand output ANSI 156.3 Grade 1 rim, mortise, and vertical rod exit device hardware with integrated card reader, latchbolt and touchbar monitoring, and request-to-exit signaling, in one complete unit. Hard wired, solenoid driven locking/unlocking control of the lever handle exit trim with 3/4" throw latch bolt. U.L listed and labeled for either panic or "fire exit hardware" for use on up to 3 hour fire rated openings. Available with or without keyed high security cylinder override.

- a. Reader supports either HID 125 kHz proximity (up to 39 bits, including Corporate 1000) or 13.56 MHz (2K-32K) iClass® credentials.

E. CABLES AND WIRING

1. Provide cabling per manufacturer's recommendations and code requirements for plenum cable types.
2. UTP data cabling required will be provided, installed, terminated and tested by the Division 27 structured cabling Contractor.
3. UTP patch cables will be provided and installed by the Owner in the IDF and provided by Owner and installed by Contractor at the door. The EACS Contractor shall provide the Owner a list of patch cable lengths at the door side.
4. Cables for electronic access controlled doors shall be bundled and include the followings conductor counts from the controller to each door hardware:
 - a. Card reader – 6 conductor, 22 awg shielded.
 - b. Lock power – 4 conductor, 18 awg unshielded.
 - c. Door contact – 2 conductor, 22 awg unshielded
 - d. Request to exit/spare – 4 conductor, 22 awg unshielded
5. Manufacturer:
 - a. Belden #658AFS
 - b. Convergent #725116
 - c. General Cable #4EPL1S

F. FABRICATION

1. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to manufacturers recognized installation standards for application intended.

G. ACCESS CONTROL HARDWARE FINISHES

1. Standard: Designations used in the Hardware Sets and elsewhere indicate hardware finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18, including coordination with traditional U.S. finishes indicated by certain manufacturers for their products.
2. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying temporary protective coverings before shipping.
3. Where specified, finishes on integrated card key locksets or exit hardware to incorporate an FDA recognized antimicrobial coating (i.e., MicroShield™) listed for use on equipment as a suppressant to the growth and spread of a broad range of bacteria, algae, fungus, mold and mildew.

2.2 INTERCOM

- A. Security Contractor shall provide and install intercom devices are each location as shown on project drawings.

- B. Intercom shall be a complete turnkey system.
- C. Exterior intercoms shall be CyberData #11186 with optional weather shroud #11188.
- D. Security contractor shall provide and install up to 5 release buttons connected to access control system at reception and staff desks as directed by Principal. Buttons shall be ROFU 94000.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

A. EXAMINATION

1. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance of the installed access control system.
2. Examine roughing-in for electrical source power to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified and integrated access control door hardware installation.
3. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.
4. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the specifications, drawings and scheduled access controlled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

B. PREPARATION

1. Doors and frames at scheduled access controlled openings to be properly prepared to receive specified electrified and access control hardware and connections without additional in-field modifications.

C. INSTALLATION

1. Install each item of integrated access control door hardware and access control equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and according to specifications.
2. Mounting Heights: Mount integrated access control door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:
 - a. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
 - b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
 - c. Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1 "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
3. Boxed Power Supplies: Verify locations.
 - a. Configuration: Provide the least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors with access control hardware and equipment.
4. Integrated Wiegand access control products, campus locks, and IP enabled products are required to be installed through current members of the ASSA ABLOY "Certified Integrator" (CI) program.

5. Final connect the system control switches (integrated access control door hardware, remote readers, keypads, display terminals, biometrics), and monitoring, and signaling equipment to the related Controller devices at each opening to properly operate the electrified door and access control hardware according to system operational narratives.
6. Retrofitting: Install each door hardware and access control item to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
7. Networked System Application Software: Install, and test application(s) software and databases for the complete and proper operation of systems involved. Assign software license(s) to Owner.

D. FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

1. Field Inspection: Perform a final inspection of the installed integrated access control door hardware and access control system and state in report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether each component representing the opening assembly is properly installed, adjusted, operating and performing to system operational narratives.
2. Commissioning and Testing Schedule: Prior to final acceptance of the access control system installation, the following testing and documentation to be performed and provided to the Owner.
 - a. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
 - b. Pre-testing: Program and adjust the system and pretest all components, wiring, and functions to verify they conform to specified requirements. Provide testing reports indicating devices tested, pass/fail status, and actions taken to resolve problem(s) on failed tests.
 - c. Acceptance Test Schedule: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations and retest until specified requirements are met.
 - d. Provide "as designed" drawings showing each device and wiring connection and electronic enclosure legends indicating cabling in and out.
 - e. Provide a complete set of operating instructions for access control hardware devices and a complete software user manual. The documentation includes module reference guides for each electronic enclosure.

E. ADJUSTING

1. Adjust and check each operating item of integrated access control door hardware, and each door opening to ensure proper secured operation and function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended.

F. CLEANING AND PROTECTION

1. Protect all hardware stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all integrated access control door hardware at the latest possible time frame.
2. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by access control system installation.
3. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish and provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure access control door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

G. DEMONSTRATION

1. Instruct Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain electronic integrated door hardware and the access control system.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 283111

DIGITAL, ADDRESSABLE FIRE-ALARM SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-alarm control unit.
2. Manual fire-alarm boxes.
3. System smoke detectors.
4. Air-sampling smoke detectors.
5. Nonsystem smoke detectors.
6. Heat detectors.
7. Notification appliances.
8. Device guards.
9. Firefighters' two-way telephone communication service.
10. Firefighters' smoke-control station.
11. Magnetic door holders.
12. Remote annunciator.
13. Network communications.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for cables and conductors for fire-alarm systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical Metallic Tubing.
- B. FACP: Fire Alarm Control Panel.
- C. HLI: High Level Interface.
- D. NICET: National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies.
- E. PC: Personal computer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product, including furnished options and accessories.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions, profiles, and finishes.
 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and electrical characteristics.
- B. Shop Drawings: For fire-alarm system.
1. Comply with recommendations and requirements in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 2. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
 3. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and locations. Indicate conductor sizes, indicate termination locations and requirements, and distinguish between factory and field wiring.
 4. Detail assembly and support requirements.
 5. Include voltage drop calculations for notification-appliance circuits.
 6. Include battery-size calculations.
 7. Include input/output matrix.
 8. Include statement from manufacturer that all equipment and components have been tested as a system and meet all requirements in this Specification and in NFPA 72.
 9. Include performance parameters and installation details for each detector.
 10. Verify that each duct detector is listed for complete range of air velocity, temperature, and humidity possible when air-handling system is operating.
 11. Include plans, sections, and elevations of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning ducts, drawn to scale; coordinate location of duct smoke detectors and access to them.
 - a. Show critical dimensions that relate to placement and support of sampling tubes, detector housing, and remote status and alarm indicators.
 - b. Show field wiring required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm.
 - c. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' control system.
 - d. Show field wiring and equipment required for HVAC unit shutdown on alarm and override by firefighters' smoke-evacuation system.
 - e. Locate detectors according to manufacturer's written recommendations.
 - f. Show air-sampling detector pipe routing.
 12. Include floor plans to indicate final outlet locations showing address of each addressable device. Show size and route of cable and conduits and point-to-point wiring diagrams.
- C. General Submittal Requirements:
1. Submittals shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction prior to submitting them to Architect.
 2. Shop Drawings shall be prepared by persons with the following qualifications:
 - a. Trained and certified by manufacturer in fire-alarm system design.
 - b. NICET-certified, fire-alarm technician; Level III minimum.
 - c. Licensed or certified by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For notification appliances and smoke and heat detectors, in addition to submittals listed above, indicate compliance with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Drawings showing the location of each notification appliance and smoke and heat detector, ratings of each, and installation details as needed to comply with listing conditions of the device.

2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting the spacing and sensitivity of detection, complying with NFPA 72. Calculate spacing and intensities for strobe signals and sound-pressure levels for audible appliances.
3. Indicate audible appliances required to produce square wave signal per NFPA 72.

1.5 Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire-alarm systems and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
 - a. Comply with the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Provide "Fire Alarm and Emergency Communications System Record of Completion Documents" according to the "Completion Documents" Article in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - c. Complete wiring diagrams showing connections between all devices and equipment. Each conductor shall be numbered at every junction point with indication of origination and termination points.
 - d. Riser diagram.
 - e. Device addresses.
 - f. Air-sampling system sample port locations and modeling program report showing layout meets performance criteria.
 - g. Record copy of site-specific software.
 - h. Provide "Inspection and Testing Form" according to the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72, and include the following:
 - 1) Equipment tested.
 - 2) Frequency of testing of installed components.
 - 3) Frequency of inspection of installed components.
 - 4) Requirements and recommendations related to results of maintenance.
 - 5) Manufacturer's user training manuals.
 - i. Manufacturer's required maintenance related to system warranty requirements.
 - j. Abbreviated operating instructions for mounting at fire-alarm control unit and each annunciator unit.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Program Software Backup: On magnetic media or compact disk, complete with data files.
3. Device address list.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Personnel shall be trained and certified by manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Installation shall be by personnel certified by NICET as fire-alarm Level II technician.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Use of Devices during Construction: Protect devices during construction unless devices are placed in service to protect the facility during construction.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire-alarm system equipment and components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Extent: All equipment and components not covered in the Maintenance Service Agreement.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Noncoded, UL-certified addressable system, with multiplexed signal transmission and horn/strobe evacuation.
- B. Automatic sensitivity control of certain smoke detectors.
- C. All components provided shall be listed for use with the selected system.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.2 SYSTEMS OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION

- A. Fire-alarm signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and systems:
 - 1. Manual stations.
 - 2. Heat detectors.
 - 3. Flame detectors.
 - 4. Smoke detectors.
 - 5. Duct smoke detectors.
 - 6. Carbon monoxide detectors.
 - 7. Automatic sprinkler system water flow.
 - 8. Preaction system.
 - 9. Fire-extinguishing system operation.
 - 10. Fire standpipe system.
 - 11. Dry system pressure flow switch.
 - 12. Fire pump running.
- B. Fire-alarm signal shall initiate the following actions:

1. Continuously operate alarm notification appliances.
2. Identify alarm and specific initiating device at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Unlock electric door locks in designated egress paths.
4. Release fire and smoke doors held open by magnetic door holders.
5. Switch heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment controls to fire-alarm mode.
6. Close smoke dampers in air ducts of designated air-conditioning duct systems.
7. Activate preaction system.
8. Recall elevators to primary or alternate recall floors.
9. Activate elevator power shunt trip.
10. Activate emergency lighting control.
11. Activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
12. Record events in the system memory.

C. Supervisory signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Valve supervisory switch.
2. High- or low-air-pressure switch of a dry-pipe or preaction sprinkler system.
3. Alert and Action signals of air-sampling detector system.
4. Elevator shunt-trip supervision.
5. Fire pump running.
6. Fire-pump loss of power.
7. Fire-pump power phase reversal.
8. Independent fire-detection and -suppression systems.
9. User disabling of zones or individual devices.
10. Loss of communication with any panel on the network.

D. System trouble signal initiation shall be by one or more of the following devices and actions:

1. Open circuits, shorts, and grounds in designated circuits.
2. Opening, tampering with, or removing alarm-initiating and supervisory signal-initiating devices.
3. Loss of communication with any addressable sensor, input module, relay, control module, remote annunciator, printer interface, or Ethernet module.
4. Loss of primary power at fire-alarm control unit.
5. Ground or a single break in internal circuits of fire-alarm control unit.
6. Abnormal ac voltage at fire-alarm control unit.
7. Break in standby battery circuitry.
8. Failure of battery charging.
9. Abnormal position of any switch at fire-alarm control unit or annunciator.
10. Hose cabinet door open.

E. System Supervisory Signal Actions:

1. Initiate notification appliances.
2. Identify specific device initiating the event at fire-alarm control unit and remote annunciators.
3. Transmit system status to building management system.

2.3 FIRE-ALARM CONTROL UNIT

A. General Requirements for Fire-Alarm Control Unit:

1. Field-programmable, microprocessor-based, modular, power-limited design with electronic modules, complying with UL 864.
 - a. System software and programs shall be held in nonvolatile flash, electrically erasable, programmable, read-only memory, retaining the information through failure of primary and secondary power supplies.
 - b. Include a real-time clock for time annotation of events on the event recorder and printer.
 - c. Provide communication between the FACP and remote circuit interface panels, annunciators, and displays.
 - d. The FACP shall be listed for connection to a central-station signaling system service.
 - e. Provide nonvolatile memory for system database, logic, and operating system and event history. The system shall require no manual input to initialize in the event of a complete power down condition. The FACP shall provide a minimum 500-event history log.
 2. Addressable Initiation Device Circuits: The FACP shall indicate which communication zones have been silenced and shall provide selective silencing of alarm notification appliance by building communication zone.
 3. Addressable Control Circuits for Operation of Notification Appliances and Mechanical Equipment: The FACP shall be listed for releasing service.
- B. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, 80 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- C. Alphanumeric Display and System Controls: Arranged for interface between human operator at fire-alarm control unit and addressable system components including annunciation and supervision. Display alarm, supervisory, and component status messages and the programming and control menu.
1. Annunciator and Display: Liquid-crystal type, two line(s) of 40 characters, minimum.
 2. Keypad: Arranged to permit entry and execution of programming, display, and control commands.
- D. Initiating-Device, Notification-Appliance, and Signaling-Line Circuits:
1. Pathway Class Designations: NFPA 72, Class B.
- E. Stairwell and Elevator Shaft Pressurization: Provide an output signal using an addressable relay to start the stairwell and elevator shaft pressurization system. Signal shall remain on until alarm conditions are cleared and fire-alarm system is reset. Signal shall not stop in response to alarm acknowledge or signal silence commands.
1. Pressurization starts when any alarm is received at fire-alarm control unit.
 2. Alarm signals from smoke detectors at pressurization air supplies have a higher priority than other alarm signals that start the system.
- F. Smoke-Alarm Verification:

1. Initiate audible and visible indication of an "alarm-verification" signal at fire-alarm control unit.
2. Activate an approved "alarm-verification" sequence at fire-alarm control unit and detector.
3. Record events by the system printer.
4. Sound general alarm if the alarm is verified.
5. Cancel fire-alarm control unit indication and system reset if the alarm is not verified.

G. Notification-Appliance Circuit:

1. Audible appliances shall sound in a three-pulse temporal pattern, as defined in NFPA 72.
2. Where notification appliances provide signals to sleeping areas, the alarm signal shall be a 520-Hz square wave with an intensity 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow.
3. Visual alarm appliances shall flash in synchronization where multiple appliances are in the same field of view, as defined in NFPA 72.

H. Elevator Recall:

1. Elevator recall shall be initiated only by one of the following alarm-initiating devices:
 - a. Elevator lobby detectors except the lobby detector on the designated floor.
 - b. Smoke detector in elevator machine room.
 - c. Smoke detectors in elevator hoistway.
2. Elevator controller shall be programmed to move the cars to the alternate recall floor if lobby detectors located on the designated recall floors are activated.
3. Water-flow alarm connected to sprinkler in an elevator shaft and elevator machine room shall shut down elevators associated with the location without time delay.
 - a. Water-flow switch associated with the sprinkler in the elevator pit may have a delay to allow elevators to move to the designated floor.

I. Door Controls: Door hold-open devices that are controlled by smoke detectors at doors in smoke-barrier walls shall be connected to fire-alarm system.

J. Primary Power: 24-V dc obtained from 120-V ac service and a power-supply module. Initiating devices, notification appliances, signaling lines, trouble signals, supervisory signals shall be powered by 24-V dc source.

1. Alarm current draw of entire fire-alarm system shall not exceed 80 percent of the power-supply module rating.

K. Secondary Power: 24-V dc supply system with batteries, automatic battery charger, and automatic transfer switch.

1. Batteries: Sealed lead calcium.

2.4 MANUAL FIRE-ALARM BOXES

A. General Requirements for Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes: Comply with UL 38. Boxes shall be finished in red with molded, raised-letter operating instructions in contrasting color; shall show visible indication of operation; and shall be mounted on recessed outlet box. If indicated as surface mounted, provide manufacturer's surface back box.

1. Single-action mechanism, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with integral addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
2. Double-action mechanism requiring two actions to initiate an alarm, breaking-glass or plastic-rod type; with addressable module arranged to communicate manual-station status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
3. Station Reset: Key- or wrench-operated switch.
4. Weatherproof Protective Shield: Factory-fabricated, clear plastic enclosure hinged at the top to permit lifting for access to initiate an alarm.

2.5 SYSTEM SMOKE DETECTORS

A. General Requirements for System Smoke Detectors:

1. Comply with UL 268; operating at 24-V dc, nominal.
2. Detectors shall be two-wire type except where four wire type is needed for AHU shutdown or other similar functions.
3. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.
4. Base Mounting: Detector and associated electronic components shall be mounted in a twist-lock module that connects to a fixed base. Provide terminals in the fixed base for connection to building wiring.
5. Self-Restoring: Detectors do not require resetting or readjustment after actuation to restore them to normal operation.
6. Integral Visual-Indicating Light: LED type, indicating detector has operated and power-on status.

B. Photoelectric Smoke Detectors:

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

C. Duct Smoke Detectors: Photoelectric type complying with UL 268A.

1. Detector address shall be accessible from fire-alarm control unit and shall be able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
2. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 - a. Primary status.
 - b. Device type.
 - c. Present average value.
 - d. Present sensitivity selected.
 - e. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

3. Weatherproof Duct Housing Enclosure: NEMA 250, Type 4X; NRTL listed for use with the supplied detector for smoke detection in HVAC system ducts.
4. Each sensor shall have multiple levels of detection sensitivity.
5. Sampling Tubes: Design and dimensions as recommended by manufacturer for specific duct size, air velocity, and installation conditions where applied.
6. Relay Fan Shutdown: Fully programmable relay rated to interrupt fan motor-control circuit.

2.6 PROJECTED BEAM SMOKE DETECTORS

- A. Projected Beam Light Source and Receiver: Designed to accommodate small angular movements and continue to operate and not cause nuisance alarms.
- B. Detector Address: Accessible from fire-alarm control unit and able to identify the detector's location within the system and its sensitivity setting.
- C. An operator at fire-alarm control unit, having the designated access level, shall be able to manually access the following for each detector:
 1. Primary status.
 2. Device type.
 3. Present average value.
 4. Present sensitivity selected.
 5. Sensor range (normal, dirty, etc.).

2.7 CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTORS

- A. General: Carbon monoxide detector listed for connection to fire-alarm system.
 1. Mounting: Adapter plate for outlet box mounting.
 2. Testable by introducing test carbon monoxide into the sensing cell.
 3. Detector shall provide alarm contacts and trouble contacts.
 4. Detector shall send trouble alarm when nearing end-of-life, power supply problems, or internal faults.
 5. Comply with UL 2075.
 6. Locate, mount, and wire according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 7. Provide means for addressable connection to fire-alarm system.
 8. Test button simulates an alarm condition.

2.8 HEAT DETECTORS

- A. General Requirements for Heat Detectors: Comply with UL 521.
 1. Temperature sensors shall test for and communicate the sensitivity range of the device.
- B. Heat Detector, Combination Type: Actuated by either a fixed temperature of 135 deg F or a rate of rise that exceeds 15 deg F per minute.
 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

- C. Heat Detector, Fixed-Temperature Type: Actuated by temperature that exceeds a fixed temperature of 190 deg F.
 - 1. Mounting: Twist-lock base interchangeable with smoke-detector bases.
 - 2. Integral Addressable Module: Arranged to communicate detector status (normal, alarm, or trouble) to fire-alarm control unit.

2.9 NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

- A. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Individually addressed, connected to a signaling-line circuit, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- B. General Requirements for Notification Appliances: Connected to notification-appliance signal circuits, zoned as indicated, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
 - 1. Combination Devices: Factory-integrated audible and visible devices in a single-mounting assembly, equipped for mounting as indicated, and with screw terminals for system connections.
- C. Chimes, Low-Level Output: Vibrating type, 75-dBA minimum rated output.
- D. Chimes, High-Level Output: Vibrating type, 81-dBA minimum rated output.
- E. Horns: Electric-vibrating-polarized type, 24-V dc; with provision for housing the operating mechanism behind a grille. Comply with UL 464. Horns shall produce a sound-pressure level of 90 dBA, measured 10 feet from the horn, using the coded signal prescribed in UL 464 test protocol.
- F. Visible Notification Appliances: Xenon strobe lights complying with UL 1971, with clear or nominal white polycarbonate lens mounted on an aluminum faceplate. The word "FIRE" is engraved in minimum 1-inch-high letters on the lens.
 - 1. Rated Light Output:
 - a. Candella level as required by the dimensions and conditions in each space, or 15/30/75/110 cd, selectable in the field.
 - 2. Mounting: Ceiling mounted where allowed by code. Wall mounted where ceiling height is too high to allow for ceiling mounted.
 - 3. For units with guards to prevent physical damage, light output ratings shall be determined with guards in place.
 - 4. Flashing shall be in a temporal pattern, synchronized with other units.
 - 5. Strobe Leads: Factory connected to screw terminals.
 - 6. Mounting Faceplate: Factory finished, white.
- G. Tone Notification Appliances:
 - 1. Comply with UL 1480.
 - 2. High-Range Units: Rated 2 to 15 W.
 - 3. Low-Range Units: Rated 1 to 2 W.
 - 4. Mounting: semirecessed or surface mounted and bidirectional.

5. Matching Transformers: Tap range matched to acoustical environment of speaker location.

2.10 MAGNETIC DOOR HOLDERS

- A. Description: Units are equipped for wall or floor mounting as indicated and are complete with matching doorplate.
 1. Electromagnets: Require no more than 3 W to develop 25-lbf holding force.
 2. Wall-Mounted Units: Flush mounted unless otherwise indicated.
 3. Rating: 24-V ac or dc.
- B. Material and Finish: Match door hardware.

2.11 REMOTE ANNUNCIATOR

- A. Description: Annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
 1. Mounting: Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1.
- B. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

2.12 ADDRESSABLE INTERFACE DEVICE

- A. General:
 1. Include address-setting means on the module.
 2. Store an internal identifying code for control panel use to identify the module type.
 3. Listed for controlling HVAC fan motor controllers.
- B. Monitor Module: Microelectronic module providing a system address for alarm-initiating devices for wired applications with normally open contacts.
- C. Integral Relay: Capable of providing a direct signal to elevator controller to initiate elevator recall.
 1. Allow the control panel to switch the relay contacts on command.
 2. Have a minimum of two normally open and two normally closed contacts available for field wiring.
- D. Control Module:
 1. Operate notification devices.
 2. Operate solenoids for use in sprinkler service.

2.13 NETWORK COMMUNICATIONS

- A. Provide network communications for fire-alarm system according to fire-alarm manufacturer's written requirements.
- B. Provide network communications pathway per manufacturer's written requirements and requirements in NFPA 72 and NFPA 70.
- C. Provide integration gateway using for connection to building automation system. Coordinate with controls contractor to determine protocol type.

2.14 DEVICE GUARDS

- A. Description: Welded wire mesh of size and shape for the manual station, smoke detector, gong, or other device requiring protection.
 - 1. Factory fabricated and furnished by device manufacturer.
 - 2. Finish: Paint of color to match the protected device.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions for compliance with requirements for ventilation, temperature, humidity, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
 - 1. Verify that manufacturer's written instructions for environmental conditions have been permanently established in spaces where equipment and wiring are installed, before installation begins.
- B. Examine roughing-in for electrical connections to verify actual locations of connections before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NFPA 72, NFPA 101, and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for installation and testing of fire-alarm equipment. Install all electrical wiring to comply with requirements in NFPA 70 including, but not limited to, Article 760, "Fire Alarm Systems."
 - 1. Devices placed in service before all other trades have completed cleanup shall be replaced.
 - 2. Devices installed but not yet placed in service shall be protected from construction dust, debris, dirt, moisture, and damage according to manufacturer's written storage instructions.
- B. Install wall-mounted equipment, with tops of cabinets not more than 78 inches above the finished floor.
- C. Manual Fire-Alarm Boxes:

1. Install manual fire-alarm box in the normal path of egress within 60 inches of the exit doorway.
 2. Mount manual fire-alarm box on a background of a contrasting color.
 3. The operable part of manual fire-alarm box shall be between 42 inches and 48 inches above floor level. All devices shall be mounted at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Smoke- or Heat-Detector Spacing:
1. Comply with the "Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for smoke-detector spacing.
 2. Comply with the "Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors" section in the "Initiating Devices" chapter in NFPA 72, for heat-detector spacing.
 3. Smooth ceiling spacing shall not exceed 30 feet.
 4. Spacing of detectors for irregular areas, for irregular ceiling construction, and for high ceiling areas shall be determined according to Annex A in NFPA 72.
 5. HVAC: Locate detectors not closer than 60 inches from air-supply diffuser or return-air opening.
 6. Lighting Fixtures: Locate detectors not closer than 12 inches from any part of a lighting fixture and not directly above pendant mounted or indirect lighting.
- E. Install a cover on each smoke detector that is not placed in service during construction. Cover shall remain in place except during system testing. Remove cover prior to system turnover.
- F. Duct Smoke Detectors: Comply with NFPA 72 and NFPA 90A. Install sampling tubes so they extend the full width of duct. Tubes more than 36 inches long shall be supported at both ends.
1. Do not install smoke detector in duct smoke-detector housing during construction. Install detector only during system testing and prior to system turnover.
- G. Air-Sampling Smoke Detectors: If using multiple pipe runs, the runs shall be pneumatically balanced.
- H. Elevator Shafts: Coordinate temperature rating and location with sprinkler rating and location. Do not install smoke detectors in sprinklered elevator shafts.
- I. Single-Station Smoke Detectors: Where more than one smoke alarm is installed within a dwelling or suite, they shall be connected so that the operation of any smoke alarm causes the alarm in all smoke alarms to sound.
- J. Remote Status and Alarm Indicators: Install in a visible location near each smoke detector, sprinkler water-flow switch, and valve-tamper switch that is not readily visible from normal viewing position.
- K. Audible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install not less than 6 inches below the ceiling. Install bells and horns on flush-mounted back boxes with the device-operating mechanism concealed behind a grille. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Visible Alarm-Indicating Devices: Install adjacent to each alarm bell or alarm horn and at least 6 inches below the ceiling. Install all devices at the same height unless otherwise indicated.
- M. Device Location-Indicating Lights: Locate in public space near the device they monitor.

3.3 PATHWAYS

- A. Pathways above recessed ceilings and in nonaccessible locations may be routed exposed.
 - 1. Exposed pathways located less than 96 inches above the floor shall be installed in EMT.
- B. Where exposed below 10', fire alarm wire shall be installed in EMT. Exposed EMT shall be painted red enamel or shall be factory colored red conduit.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. For fire-protection systems related to doors in fire-rated walls and partitions and to doors in smoke partitions, comply with requirements in Section 087100 "Door Hardware." Connect hardware and devices to fire-alarm system.
 - 1. Verify that hardware and devices are listed for use with installed fire-alarm system before making connections.
- B. Make addressable connections with a supervised interface device to the following devices and systems. Install the interface device less than 36 inches from the device controlled. Make an addressable confirmation connection when such feedback is available at the device or system being controlled.
 - 1. Alarm-initiating connection to smoke-control system (smoke management) at firefighters' smoke-control system panel.
 - 2. Alarm-initiating connection to stairwell and elevator-shaft pressurization systems.
 - 3. Smoke dampers in air ducts of designated HVAC duct systems.
 - 4. Magnetically held-open doors.
 - 5. Electronically locked doors and access gates.
 - 6. Alarm-initiating connection to elevator recall system and components.
 - 7. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency lighting control.
 - 8. Alarm-initiating connection to activate emergency shutoffs for gas and fuel supplies.
 - 9. Supervisory connections at valve supervisory switches.
 - 10. Supervisory connections at low-air-pressure switch of each dry-pipe sprinkler system.
 - 11. Supervisory connections at elevator shunt-trip breaker.
 - 12. Data communication circuits for connection to building management system.
 - 13. Data communication circuits for connection to mass notification system.
 - 14. Supervisory connections at fire-extinguisher locations.
 - 15. Supervisory connections at fire-pump power failure including a dead-phase or phase-reversal condition.
 - 16. Supervisory connections at fire-pump engine control panel.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Install framed instructions in a location visible from fire-alarm control unit.

3.6 GROUNDING

- A. Ground fire-alarm control unit and associated circuits; comply with IEEE 1100. Install a ground wire from main service ground to fire-alarm control unit.
- B. Ground shielded cables at the control panel location only. Insulate shield at device location.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
 - 1. Visual Inspection: Conduct visual inspection prior to testing.
 - a. Inspection shall be based on completed record Drawings and system documentation that is required by the "Completion Documents, Preparation" table in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - b. Comply with the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Inspection" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72; retain the "Initial/Reacceptance" column and list only the installed components.
 - 2. System Testing: Comply with the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
 - 3. Test audible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions. Perform the test using a portable sound-level meter complying with Type 2 requirements in ANSI S1.4.
 - 4. Test audible appliances for the private operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 5. Test visible appliances for the public operating mode according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 6. Factory-authorized service representative shall prepare the "Fire Alarm System Record of Completion" in the "Documentation" section of the "Fundamentals" chapter in NFPA 72 and the "Inspection and Testing Form" in the "Records" section of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
- B. Reacceptance Testing: Perform reacceptance testing to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices and appliances.
- C. Fire-alarm system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- E. Maintenance Test and Inspection: Perform tests and inspections listed for weekly, monthly, quarterly, and semiannual periods. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.
- F. Annual Test and Inspection: One year after date of Substantial Completion, test fire-alarm system complying with visual and testing inspection requirements in NFPA 72. Use forms developed for initial tests and inspections.

3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's designated service organization. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective

components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

1. Include visual inspections according to the "Visual Inspection Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
2. Perform tests in the "Test Methods" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.
3. Perform tests per the "Testing Frequencies" table in the "Testing" paragraph of the "Inspection, Testing and Maintenance" chapter in NFPA 72.

3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

- A. Comply with UL 864.
- B. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for two years.
- C. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within two years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.
 1. Upgrade Notice: At least 30 days to allow Owner to schedule access to system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

END OF SECTION